

# New Hello!

## & Treasure Island

By A Group Of Supervisors



معاك

Ma3ak App

تطبيق

التعلم التفاعلي



EL-MORASSER

GUIDE

الصف الأول الثانوي  
الفصل الدراسي الأول



موقع  
التفوق

AltFwok.com

1<sup>st</sup>  
Sec.  
2023  
FIRST TERM



بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ  
إِنَّ الدِّينَ أَمْسُوا وَعَمَلُوا الصَّالِحِينَ إِنَّا لَا نُضِيعُ أَجْرَ مَنْ أَحْسَنَ عَمَلًا  
صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ

### بطاقة فهرسة

فهرسة أثناء النشر إعداد الهيئة العامة  
لدار الكتب والوثائق القومية

El Moasser Guide based on New Hello!  
A Group of Supervisors  
Cairo : GPS For Printing, Publishing &  
Distribution, 2022 - 2023  
3 vols ; 24 cm.  
For 1<sup>st</sup> sec. - first term.

I.S.B.N : 978 - 977- 475 - 862 - 5

English language - study and teaching

428

رقم الإيداع : ٢٠٢٢ / ٩٥٠٣

موقع  
التفوق

AltFwok.com

# Manage Your Term

قم بإدارة فصلك الدراسي (منهجك)

## Plan A

1 6 Units

18

Lectures

المحتوى	المحاضرة
Part One: Lessons 1&2	الأولى
Part Two: Lessons 3&4	الثانية
Part Three: Story vocabulary, Skills & Advanced exercises	الثالثة

## Or Plan B

2 6 Units

12

Lectures

المحتوى	المحاضرة
Part One: Lessons 1&2	الأولى
Part Two: Lessons 3&4	الثانية

3

2

Lectures

المحتوى	المحاضرة
Part Three: Story vocabulary, Skills & Advanced exercises الوحدات ٣,٢,١	الأولى
Part Three: Story vocabulary, Skills & Advanced exercises الوحدات ٦,٥,٤	الثانية

## Total

وبذلك تكون قد انتهيت من دراسة المنهج بالكامل كالآتي :

المحتوى	المحاضرة
Plan A	٨ محاضرة
Plan B	٤ محاضرة

تنويه: تختلف الخطة الزمنية بحسب طريقة وأسلوب كل معلم وطالب والوقت المتاح له.



# Guidebook

دليل الكتاب

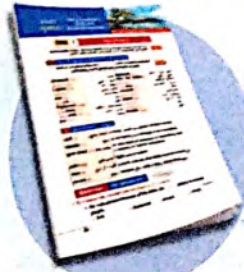


## 1 Part One: Lessons 1&2

عرض جديد للدرس الأول والثاني يشتمل على المفردات اللغوية الأساسية والمفردات اللغوية الواردة في كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات والتعريفات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر والملاحظات اللغوية ونصوص القراءة والاستماع والقواعد اللغوية.

## 2 Part Two: Lessons 3&4

عرض جديد للدرس الثالث والرابع يشتمل على المفردات اللغوية الأساسية والمفردات اللغوية الواردة في كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات والتعريفات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر والملاحظات اللغوية ونصوص القراءة والاستماع والقواعد اللغوية.



## 3 Part Three: Story vocabulary, Skills & Advanced exercises

عرض جديد يشتمل على أهم المفردات اللغوية للدرس الخامس والسادس والمهارات اللغوية وجزء خاص للمتفوقين.

## 4 Listening - Reading

عرض شامل لـ (Listening - Reading) مع التنويه عن المفردات اللغوية بلون وترجمتها على جانب الجدول.



## 5 Vocabulary Study

عرض جديد للمتلازمات اللفظية والمترادفات ومتضادات ومشتقات المفردات الرئيسية ..... الخ.

## 6 Language

شرح مفصل للقواعد اللغوية مع تدريبات تطبيقية على كل جزئية.



## 7 Just for Advanced Level

للمستويات العليا يتضمن شرح متبوعاً بتدريبات.

## 8 Language Skills

جزء خاص للمهارات اللغوية.



موقع التفوق AltFwok.com



# CONTENTS

## MODULE 1 Community

UNIT 1	Getting away .....	page 12
UNIT 2	Supporting the community .....	page 86
UNIT 3	Improving lives .....	page 148
Revision 1 .....		page 206

## MODULE 2 Communication

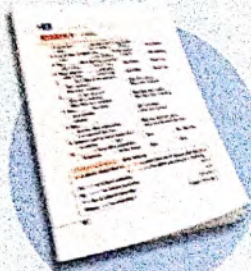
UNIT 4	Making new friends .....	page 211
UNIT 5	Communication .....	page 273
UNIT 6	Learning from literature .....	page 330
Revision 2 .....		page 382

## STORY on Treasure Island

page 388

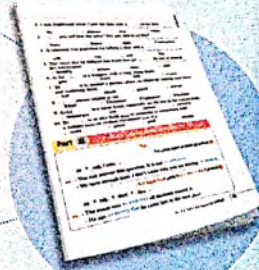
### 9 Mini Test

اختبار مصغر لتطبيق مباشر علي الشرح



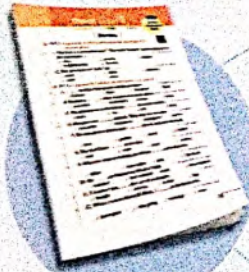
### 10 Grammatical Hints

ملاحظات لغوية بين السطور من  
نصوص القراءة والاستماع.



### 11 Test on Unit

اختبار شامل علي الوحدة كما يمكنك حل الاختبار  
وتصويبه إلكترونيا.



### 12 Story: Treasure Island

عرض جديد للقصة المقررة وتدريبات  
تقيس مدى استيعاب الطالب لها.





# UNIT 1

## Getting away

SB pages 6 : 15 WB pages 88 : 93

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

### Reading :

An article about ecotourism, two blogs about the summer holidays

### Writing :

An essay on ecotourism

### Listening :

A story about travelling and what happened when something went wrong

### Speaking :

Describe an event

### Language :

Past simple and past continuous

### Life skills :

Collaboration



• تلك الأنسكة الرائعة البوذية والبوذية  
• ملحق المصروفات المصروفات  
• زديتات المصروفات المصروفات  
• ملحق المصروفات المصروفات

الإنسان  
الوحدة

## PART ONE

LESSONS

## 1 & 2

SB pages 6 : 9

WB pages 88 & 89

### Part I

### Vocabulary

تدرب • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أول مرة في الامتحان).

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

conservation (n)	حماية البيئة - صيانة	isolated (adj)	بعيد / نائي - مُعزَّل
conservationist (n)	من أنصار حماية البيئة	lean - leaned / leant (v)	ينحني / يعمل - ينكس
ecosystem (n)	النظام البيئي	material (n - adj)	مادة خام - قماش - مادي
eco-tourism (n)	السياحة البيئية	spicy (adj)	حار - مثيل بالبهارات
eco-tourist (n)	سائح مُراعي للبيئة	sustainable (adj)	مستدام - صديق للبيئة
endangered (adj)	مُعَرَّض للخطر - مُهدَّد بالانقراض	swell - swelled - swollen (up) (v)	يتورم - يتضخم - يتزايد
environment (n)	البيئة	trek(ked) (n - v)	رحلة طويلة (سيرًا) - يسير لمسافة طويلة
environmentally (adv)	بيئيًا	unique (adj)	فريد من نوعه / مُميز
impact(ed) (n - v)	تأثير - أثر - يؤثر		
isolate(d) (v)	يُعزِّل		

تدرب • من الفهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

### 2 Important Vocabulary

### المفردات الهامة

advertise(d) (v)	يُعلن عن	giant (adj - n)	عساق
annoyed (adj)	متضايق - مزعج	harm(ed) (n - v)	ضرر - يضر به
attractions (n)	عوامل الجذب	historic (adj)	تاريخي
avoid(ed) (v)	يتجنب - يتحاشى	including (prep)	بما في ذلك - مُتضمنًا
beauty (n)	الجمال	internal (adj)	داخلي
biology (n)	علم الأحياء	introduce(d) (v)	يُطرح - يُقدِّم - يُشِير
bite - bit - bitten (n - v)	عضة - يعض	Lemur (n)	قرود الليسور
blow - blew - blown (v)	نَهَب - ينفخ - يُطْفِر	limited (adj)	محدود
carnival (n)	احتفال / مهرجانات	local (adj)	محلي
colourful (adj)	زاهي الألوان	locals (n)	السكان المحليين
community (n)	مجتمع - طائفة	luggage (n)	أمتعة المسافرين
considerate (of) (adj)	مُتَّفَهِّم - مُراعي لـ	orangutan (n)	انبيان الغاب - الكسلان
coral reefs (n)	الشعاب المرجانية	otherwise (adv)	وإلا



council (n)	مجلس	path (n)	طريق مشاة - ممر
create(d) (v)	يخلق - يبتكر - يوجد	plaza (n)	ساحة / فناء
crowded (adj)	مزدحم - مكتظ	popular (adj)	مشهور - محبوب
damage(d) (v -n)	يُتلف - تلف / ضرر	population (n)	(عدد) السكان
destination (n)	مقصد - وجهة سفر	properly (adv)	بشكل ملائم - على أكمل وجه
destroy(ed) (v)	يُدمر	provide(d) (v)	يوفر - يُزود به
develop(ed) (v)	يُنشئ / يُطوّر - ينمو / يتطور	public (adj)	عام - شعبي
disaster (n)	كارثة - مُصيبة	rebuild - rebuilt (v)	يعيد بناء
disconnected (adj)	منفصل / منعزل	remote (adj)	بعيد / نائي
dragon (n)	تنين	resident (n)	ساكن / نزيل
eco- (prefix)	بيئي ...	site (n)	موقع
eco-hotel (n)	فندق صديق للبيئة	solution (n)	حل
eco-trip (n)	رحلة صديقة للبيئة	souvenir (n)	هدية تذكارية - تذكّار
educate(d) (v)	يُعلّم	sunbathe(d) (v)	يأخذ حَمّام شمس - يتعرض للشمس
else (adv)	أَيْضاً - آخر	transport (n)	وسائل النقل المواصلات
encourage(d) (v)	يُشجّع	victim (n)	ضحية
exist(ed) (v)	يوجد / يتواجد	volunteer(ed) (n/v)	مُتطوِّع - يتطوِّع
fly (n)	ذبابة	voluntourist (n)	سائح مُتطوِّع
fussy eater (n)	شخص صعب الإرضاء	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

• تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلّم المُستهدفة - هام جداً.

Memorise	Understand
conservationist (n) من حُماة البيئة	a person whose job is to help protect natural things such as wild animals, forests, etc.
ecotourism (n) السياحة البيئية	a type of holiday that helps local people and doesn't damage the natural environment
endangered (adj) مُعْرض للخطر	in danger of disappearing forever للإبد
impact (n) أثر / تأثير	the effect that an action or a person has on someone or something
isolated (adj) منعزل	disconnected from other people and places
lean (v) ينحني	to be in a sloping position وضع مائل

materials (n)	مواد (خام)	the things that are used for making or doing something
spicy (adj)	مُثل بالبهارات	containing chilli or other spices that give a burning feeling with pleasantly strong taste
sustainable (adj)	صديق للبيئة - مستدام	able to continue without causing damage to the environment
swell (up) (v)	يتورم / يلتهب	to get bigger and rounder أكثر إستدارة than normal
trek (n)	رحلة طويلة (سيراً)	a hike / walk on a difficult journey
unique (adj)	فريد - مميز	special or the only one of its type or quality

### Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Key vocabulary

- Pollution can have disastrous effects on the delicately balanced .....  
a. industry b. culture c. civilization **d. ecosystem** (إدارة الطبيعة الجديدة ٢٠٢٢)
- As an ....., you should travel in a way that shows respect to nature.  
a. ecotourism **b. ecotourist** c. ecosystem d. eco-friendly (إدارة الطبيعة - لغات ٢٠٢٢)
- The tourist industry has had a big ..... on the local town.  
a. compact b. respect c. empathy **d. impact** = effect (أحمد محمد موسى بنات ٢٠٢٢)

- The explorers spent the day ..... through forests and over mountains.  
a. diving **b. trekking** c. developing d. raising
- Tourism is ..... when we protect our touristic places.  
**a. sustainable** b. crowded c. unique d. noisy (إدارة الطبيعة والمقطر ٢٠٢٢)
- Put some ice on your knee before it ..... up.  
a. treks **b. swells** c. leans d. isolates (العامرية الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
- There are many ..... animals in the world, which we need to save.  
**a. endangered** b. isolated c. insulated d. popular (إدارة البيئة ٢٠٢٢)



8. I like ..... food, especially that with hot pepper.  
a. fussy b. internal c. spicy d. disconnected
9. The Great Pyramid is a/an ..... monument أثر.  
a. isolated b. unique c. considerate d. crowded
10. .... helps to protect natural environment.  
a. Community b. Material c. Destination d. Ecotourism
11. Don't ..... over the balcony, Sama. You might fall.  
a. volunteer b. harm c. avoid d. lean
12. The ..... of the environment is very important.  
a. population b. attraction c. conservation d. path
13. We bought some ..... for the curtains الستائر.  
a. community b. material c. destination d. ecotourism
14. A child needs a good ..... to grow up and become a good citizen مواطن.  
a. disaster b. council c. environment d. eco-hotel
15. It is not good to keep a child ..... from other children.  
a. isolated b. unique c. considerate d. giant
16. Eco-hotels are ..... friendly, they have little bad effect on nature.  
a. spicy b. properly c. environmentally d. ecotourism
17. As a/an ....., his job is to look after the environment.  
a. volunteer b. conservationist c. resident d. voluntourist

## 2 Important Vocabulary

18. Your arm can swell up when a mosquito ..... you.  
a. bites b. welcomes c. helps d. greets
19. I ..... to look after my baby sister when my mother goes out.  
a. volunteer b. harm c. avoid d. lean
20. Luxor is an important tourist .....  
a. population b. attraction c. conservation d. path
21. I am travelling to Aswan in three days. It is my next .....  
a. community b. material c. destination d. ecotourism
22. In prison, criminals are ..... from the outside world.  
a. fussy b. internal c. spicy d. disconnected
23. Try to be ..... of other people's feelings.  
a. isolated b. unique c. considerate d. giant

24. When the food is ..... prepared, it is both healthy and tasty.  
a. spicy b. properly = well c. otherwise d. environmentally
25. .... work for a charity جمعية خيرية and get no money.  
a. Volunteers b. Conservationists c. Residents d. Voluntourists
26. "....." means related to the environment.  
a. Re- b. Ex- c. Eco- d. In-
27. Some ..... work in the tourist industry.  
a. include b. including c. local d. locals
28. The tourists lay on the beach to .....  
a. introduce b. blow c. sunbathe d. exist
29. Pollution ..... the environment.  
a. volunteers b. harms c. avoids d. leans
30. You should walk along the ..... in the garden. Don't walk on the wet grass.  
a. population b. attraction c. conservation d. path
31. Air pollution is really a/an .....  
a. disaster b. council c. environment d. eco-hotel
32. The heart is one of the ..... organs.  
a. fussy b. internal c. spicy d. disconnected
33. One of the ..... in the hotel is an important man from Canada.  
a. solutions b. attractions c. residents d. victims
34. A ..... enjoys themselves without damaging the environment.  
a. volunteer b. conservationist c. resident d. eco-tourist
35. I paid for everything, ..... the drinks.  
a. include b. including c. never d. ever
36. A good team member ..... new ideas and finds solutions to work problems.  
a. introduces b. blows c. sunbathes d. exists
37. People usually ..... going out when it is raining.  
a. volunteer b. harm c. avoid d. lean
38. Try to be a good member of your .....  
a. community b. material c. destination d. ecotourism



39. You have to arrive early. .... you won't be allowed in. **بُسمح لك بالدخول.**  
 a. spicy b. properly  
 c. otherwise d. environmentally
40. Some ancient Egyptian statues still ..... in the temple.  
 a. introduce b. blow c. sunbathe d. exist
41. I stayed in a/an ..... ; it does not cause harm to nature.  
 a. disaster b. council c. environment d. eco-hotel
42. This city has a/an ..... of about three million people.  
 a. population b. attraction c. conservation d. path
43. The Pacific is a/an ..... ocean, larger than all continents. **القارات**  
 a. isolated b. unique c. considerate d. harmful
44. Some children are ..... eaters. Mothers find it difficult to know what they like.  
 a. fussy b. internal c. spicy d. disconnected
45. He was elected as a member of city .....  
 a. Disaster b. Council c. Environment d. Eco-tourism

### 3 Definitions

46. .... means special or the only one.  
 a. Exotic b. Sustainable c. Unique d. Material
47. .... is a type of holiday that helps local people and doesn't damage the natural environment.  
 a. Ecotourism b. Eco-trip c. Ecosystem d. Eco-hotel
48. .... means in danger of disappearing forever. **للأبد**  
 a. Crowded b. Endangered c. Lean d. Relaxing
49. A ..... means something that is used for making or doing something.  
 a. castle b. path c. material d. coral
50. .... means that an activity can be repeated because it does not harm the environment.  
 a. Exotic b. Spicy c. Crowded d. Sustainable
51. A / An ..... is the effect that an action or a person has on someone or something.  
 a. impact b. advantage c. lettuce d. load

## Part II Vocabulary Study

تلميذ ساعد معلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقًا بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

bring	problems	يسبب مشكلات	go	diving	بمارس رياضة الغوص
cause	problems	يسبب مشكلات	have	a holiday	يحصل على اجازة
catch	a flight (to)	يسافر بالطائرة (إلى)		an impact (on)	له أثر (على)
create	jobs for	يوفر وظائف لـ	make	notes	يُصنِّع ملاحظات
do	something different	يفعل شيئًا مختلفًا	provide	a holiday (to)	ينظم رحلات (إلى)
find	a solution (to)	يجد حلًا (لـ)	start	university	يبدأ الدراسة الجامعية
get	lost	يتوه / يضل الطريق	take	a taxi	يأخذ تاكسي

### 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
advantage	merit, upside
crowded	congested
giant	gigantic
isolated	remote, faraway
material	fabric
spicy	hot
trek	hike
unique	special, unusually good

### 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
advantage	ميزة	disadvantage, demerit, downside	عيب - سلبية
crowded	مزدحم - مكتظ	empty, free	فارغ
isolated	بعيد / ناء	close, nearby, neighbouring	قريب - مجاور
isolated	مُنعزل / انطوائي	sociable	اجتماعي
sustainable	مستدام - صديق للبيئة	unsustainable	غير مستدام



## 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary المشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

conservation	
conserve (d) (v) يحفظون - يحمي	- It is important to <b>conserve</b> the environment.
conservation (n) الحفاضة	- The <b>conservation</b> of the environment is important.
conservationist (n) من حفاضة البيئة	- <b>Conservationists</b> work hard to protect the environment.
conservative (adj) تقليدي - محافظ على التقاليد	- My father is a <b>conservative</b> person.
endangered	
danger (n) الخطر	- A careless driver puts his life in <b>danger</b> .
endanger(ed) (v) يُعرض للخطر - يخاطر به	- A careless driver <b>endangers</b> his life.
endangered (adj) مُعرض للخطر	- The life of a careless driver is <b>endangered</b> .
dangerous (adj) خطير	- It is <b>dangerous</b> to travel with a careless driver.
environment	
environment (n) البيئة	- We all must protect the <b>environment</b> .
environmentalist (n) خبير بيئي	- Some <b>environmentalists</b> have talked to us about how to protect the environment.
environmental (adj) بيئي	- Pollution is an <b>environmental</b> problem.
environmentally (adv) بيئياً	- Cars that run on electricity are <b>environmentally</b> friendly.
isolated	
isolate(d) (v) يعزل - يفصل	- It is important to <b>isolate</b> coronavirus patients.
isolation (n) العزلة - الفصل	- The <b>isolation</b> of coronavirus patients is important.
isolated (adj) منعزل - منفصل	- Coronavirus patients must be <b>isolated</b> from other people.

material	
material (n) مادة (خام)	- Wood is a hard <b>material</b> .
material (n) قماش	- This shirt is made of soft <b>material</b> .
material (adj) مادي - ملموس	- The police have <b>material</b> evidence that he is a thief.
lean	
lean(ed) - leant (v) يميل / ينحني - يتكى	- Don't <b>lean</b> on this dirty wall.
lean (adj) نحيف / منحوت الجسد	- He was <b>lean</b> , tall, and muscular ذو عضلات.
lean (adj) خالي من الدهون	- My children like <b>lean</b> meat.
leaning (adj) مائل	- Don't go near this <b>leaning</b> wall.
spicy	
spice(d) (v) يُنبل (يضع توابل)	- Mum has <b>spiced</b> the fish.
spice (n) تابل (مفرد توابل)	- Mum has put <b>spices</b> into the fish.
spicy (adj) حريف - حار - مثيل بالبهارات	- I like <b>spicy</b> food.
sustainable	
sustain(ed) (v) يحافظ على - يتي	- A speaker should <b>sustain</b> the listener's interest.
sustainability (n) استمرارية / استدامة	- Conservationists are interested in environmental <b>sustainability</b> .
sustainable (adj) دائم - صديق للبيئة	- Cycling is a <b>sustainable</b> activity.
volunteer	
volunteer(ed) (v) يتطوع	- Sama and her friends <b>volunteered</b> to help the old woman.
volunteer (n) متطوع	- Sama and her friends were the <b>volunteers</b> who helped the old woman.
voluntary (adj) تطوعي	- We thanked Sama and her friends for their <b>voluntary</b> work.



## 5 Expressions &amp; Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات

at least	على الأقل	go on holiday	يأخذ إجازة
close to	قريب من	in progress	مستمر
environmentally friendly	قريب من	keep ... safe	يُبقى ... في أمان
except for	بما عدا	make sure	يثأكد - يتيقن
famous for	مشهور بـ	riding on boats	ركوب القوارب
first of all,	أول كل شيء	that's all for now	هذا كل ما لدي الآن
for example,	على سبيل المثال	the local council	المجلس المحلي
from all around the world	من كل أرجاء العالم	tourist destinations	أماكن يقصدها السياح
go on a boat trip	يذهب في رحلة بالقارب	tourist industry	النشاط السياحي

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

benefit from	يستفيد من	introduce ... to	يُعرف ... بـ/على
blow ... off	تُنفخ - تُنقى	keep ... as	يحتفظ بـ ... كـ
cycle across	يقود الدراجة عبر	lean ... on / against	يستند ... على
disappear from	يختفي من	lean on / against	يتكئ على
educate ... about	يُعلم ... عن	lean out of	ينحني إلى خارج
find out (about)	يكتشف/يعرف (عن)	manage to	يتمكن أن
get ... back	يسترد - يستعيد	trek across / through	يسير مسافة طويلة عبر
get to	يصل إلى	trek into / in	يسير مسافة طويلة إلى داخل / في
go back (to)	يُعود/يرجع (إلى)		

## 7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

## arrive - reach - get to

- **arrive (v)** (يصل (فعل لازم لا يتبعه مفعول)  
- My father hasn't arrived yet.
- **arrive at (v)** (يصل إلى (مكان صغير نسبياً مثل المدرسة/المطار/المحطة ....)  
- Rodayna arrived at Cairo Airport at 9:00.
- **arrive in (v)** (يصل إلى (مكان كبير نسبياً مثل مدينة/دولة ....)  
- Rodayna arrived in Cairo at 9:00.
- **get to (v)** (يصل إلى (مكان كبير أو صغير)  
- Rodayna got to Cairo Airport at 9:00.  
- Rodayna got to Cairo at 9:00.

## • reach (v)

يصل إلى (بدون حرف جر)

- Rodayna reached Cairo Airport at 9:00.

## coloured - colourful

## • coloured (adj)

ملون / ذو ألوان متعددة

- I have no coloured photographs for my grandfather. They all are black and white.

## • colourful (adj)

زاهي الألوان - مشرق / متنوع

- Little children like colourful clothes.
- My uncle has had a colourful life. He has worked and lived in different countries.

## contain - include - consist of

## • ... contain + (شيء موجود بداخله)

يحتوي على

- This bag contains some books and pens.

## • ... include + (بعض مكونات الشيء)

يتضمن / يشمل على

- The program of the trip includes a visit to the High Dam.

## • ... consist of + (كل مكونات الشيء)

يتكون من

- My flat consists of three bedrooms, a reception, a kitchen and two bathrooms.

## destination - location

## • destination (n)

جهة الوصول/الوجهة (المكان المقصود)

- I am travelling abroad next Friday. London is my destination.

## • location (n)

موقع/مكان

- GPS helps us find locations.

## educate - teach - learn - bring up

## • educate + (v) شخص/أشخاص

يُعلم/يُدّرس لـ (غالباً في مدرسة أو جامعة)

- This school educates disabled children.

## • teach (v)

يُدرّس/يعمل بالتدريس (بدون مفعول)

- Mr Nasser teaches at a secondary school.



- يُدْرَس (+ مفعول) (v) المادة/الموضوع + teach
- Mr Nasser **teaches** English at a secondary school.
- يُعَلِّم ... كيف .. (v) teach + شخص + to/how to + inf.
- Mr Nasser **teaches** students **to speak** English.
  - Mr Nasser **teaches** students **how to speak** English.
- يَتَعَلَّم (+ مفعول) (v) المادة/الموضوع + learn
- Ahmed **learns** English at a secondary school.
- يَتَعَلَّم كيف ... (v) learn + to/how to + inf.
- Ahmed **learns to** speak English at a secondary school.
  - Ahmed **learns how to** speak English at a secondary school.
- يُرَبِّي / يَهْدُب (+ مفعول) = raise = شخص / أشخاص + bring up
- This great woman has **brought up** her children alone.
  - This great woman has **raised** her children alone.

## else

- ١- تُسْتَخْدَم (else) بعد أدوات الإستفهام بمعنى (أيضاً):
- Q.W. ... أيضاً + else + أداة استفهام
- What **else** do you want? - Where **else** will you go?
- ٢- تُسْتَخْدَم (else) بمعنى (آخر) بعد الكلمات التالية:

Someone | somebody | something | somewhere | anyone | anybody  
 anything | anywhere | everyone | everybody | everything  
 everywhere | no one | nobody | nothing | nowhere

- Ahmed didn't take your camera. Someone **else** took it.
- Do you want to eat something **else** ?

## endangered / dangerous

- مُعْرَض للخطر (adj) endangered
- The workers in the cave الكهف are **endangered**.
- خطير (adj) dangerous
- The scorpion العقرب is very **dangerous**.

## national - international - local

- قَوْمِي / وَطَنِي (adj) national
- Salah is the captain of the **national** team.
  - October 6<sup>th</sup> is a **national** holiday.
- دَوْلِي / عَالَمِي (adj) international
- The Suez Canal is important for **international** trade. التجارة.
- إِقْلِيمِي / مَحَلِّي (adj) local
- He works in the **local** council.
- مَكَائِي / مَوْضِعِي (adj) local
- There is a **local** pain ألم in my leg.
- من السكان المحليين (من أهل المنطقة) (n) local
- One of the **locals** guided us to the bank.

## isolate - insulate

- يُعْزِل / يَفْصِل (عن الآخرين) (v) isolate
- Coronavirus patients are **isolated** from other people.
- يُعْزِل (باستخدام مادة عازلة) (v) insulate
- Electric wires are **insulated** with plastic.

## unique - special - private

- مُسْتَعْرِجاً (adj) unique = unusually good or special
- I had a **unique** offer to spend two weeks in Paris.
- فَرِيد من نوعه (adj) unique = the only one of its kind
- Each person has **unique** fingerprints. بصمات أصابع.
- مُسْتَعْرِج / خَاص (adj) special
- She has **special** language skills.
- خَاص (= شخصي) (adj) private
- Mr Ashraf has a **private** car.

موقع التفوق ALTfWok.com



# General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

• MCQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. He lives in an isolated village. The synonym of the word "isolated" is

- a. remote      b. unusual      c. faraway  
d. near      e. close

2. "Egypt does many giant projects nowadays." The synonyms of the word "giant" are

- a. huge      b. generous      c. delighted  
d. gigantic      e. modern

3. Pollution \_\_\_\_\_ so many problems.

- a. brings      b. does      c. goes  
d. causes      e. takes

4. You can say that someone has a/an \_\_\_\_\_

- a. lost      b. ecosystem      c. holiday  
d. low      e. impact

5. "He lives in an isolated village." In this sentence, 'isolated' is antonymous with '\_\_\_\_\_'

- a. gigantic      b. remote      c. close  
d. faraway      e. nearby

6. The old man sat down and leant \_\_\_\_\_ the wall to rest.

- a. on      b. of      c. against  
d. from      e. in

7. When I was young, I liked very much to trek \_\_\_\_\_ the countryside.

- a. cross      b. across      c. though  
d. although      e. through

8. Voluntary work is of great importance. The antonyms of "voluntary" are \_\_\_\_\_

- a. optional      b. exceptional      c. obligatory  
d. compulsory      e. customary

• MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Plastic is used to \_\_\_\_\_ electric wires.

- a. isolate      b. insulate      c. burn      d. break

2. Generous people are always ready to \_\_\_\_\_ voluntary work.

- a. do      b. make      c. give      d. take

3. The museum is opened daily \_\_\_\_\_ for Fridays.

- a. except      b. accept      c. expectedly      d. exist

4. Scientists work hard to \_\_\_\_\_ a solution to this health problem.

- a. make      b. tell      c. go      d. find

5. My brother \_\_\_\_\_ university last year.

- a. went      b. started      c. took      d. brought

6. When I first visited Cairo, I \_\_\_\_\_ lost.

- a. had      b. introduced      c. got      d. found

7. "I went trekking along the beach." The word "trekking" here is a synonym of \_\_\_\_\_

- a. fishing      b. hiking      c. losing      d. fabricating

8. The village benefited \_\_\_\_\_ the new canal.

- a. from      b. of      c. to      d. about

9. The tourist \_\_\_\_\_ is very important.

- a. factory      b. ecotourism      c. ecosystem      d. industry

10. When the fan was turned on, its air blew the paper \_\_\_\_\_

- a. off      b. of      c. to      d. at

11. He is a good father who is close \_\_\_\_\_ his children.

- a. to      b. of      c. for      d. a & b

12. Children are usually \_\_\_\_\_ about the games at the amusement park.

- a. exciting      b. excited      c. excitement      d. b & c

13. The games at the amusement park are usually \_\_\_\_\_ to children.

- a. exciting      b. excited      c. excitement      d. b & c

14. Lions are \_\_\_\_\_ animals. They can attack people.

- a. coloured      b. colourful      c. endangered      d. dangerous



15. Lions are ..... animals. They may die out **تفرض** soon.  
 a. coloured b. colourful  
 c. endangered d. dangerous
16. Don't ask Aliaa for help. Ask somebody .....  
 a. also b. else c. too d. b & c
17. We have to ..... electricity to avoid paying much money.  
 a. conserve b. conservation  
 c. conservationist d. conservative
18. ..... does the least harm to the environment.  
 a. Ecotourists b. Ecotourism  
 c. Ecology d. Ecosystem
19. .... do no harm to the environment.  
 a. Ecotourists b. Ecotourism c. Ecology d. Ecosystem
20. Never put your life in .....  
 a. endanger b. endangered c. danger d. dangerous
21. Never ..... your life.  
 a. endanger b. endangered c. danger d. dangerous
22. He is an ..... who works hard to stop damaging nature.  
 a. environment b. environmental  
 c. environmentalist d. environmentally
23. It is necessary **ضروري** to keep your children in ..... from bad company **افصحبة**.  
 a. isolate b. isolated c. isolating d. isolation
24. I refused to park my car next to the ..... wall that looked as if it was going to fall.  
 a. lean b. leant c. leaning d. leans
25. Unlike me, my children like to eat food which has the flavour of .....  
 a. spice's b. spices c. a spiced d. spicy
26. A/An ..... enjoys themselves and does charity work.  
 a. voluntourism b. ecotourism  
 c. voluntourist d. ecotourist

## 1 Reading Texts

## Ecotourism - Is this the future?

(58 page 6)

## 1. What is ecotourism?

Ecotourism<sup>(1)</sup> is about providing<sup>(2)</sup> holidays to places which are often endangered<sup>(3)</sup> and isolated<sup>(4)</sup>. The holidays are designed to have a limited<sup>(5)</sup> impact<sup>(6)</sup> on the local environment and to educate<sup>(7)</sup> tourists about conservation<sup>(8)</sup>.



Egypt is developing<sup>(9)</sup> ecotourism to protect the environments along the Red Sea coast<sup>(10)</sup>. Tourists can stay in hotels built of environmentally friendly<sup>(11)</sup> natural<sup>(12)</sup> materials<sup>(13)</sup>. When tourists go diving<sup>(14)</sup>, they are taught how to avoid<sup>(15)</sup> damaging<sup>(16)</sup> the fish and keeping the special coral reefs<sup>(17)</sup> safe.

Madagascar is famous for its ecotourism and wants to protect its ecosystem<sup>(18)</sup> (the animals and plants in its environment). 80% of the animals, and 90% of the plants that live there don't exist<sup>(19)</sup> anywhere else<sup>(20)</sup> in the world. Lemurs<sup>(21)</sup>, for example, only live in Madagascar.

The Galapagos Islands<sup>(22)</sup> in Ecuador are famous for the unique<sup>(23)</sup> animals, such as the giant<sup>(24)</sup> turtles<sup>(25)</sup> which live there. Ecuador makes sure that tourism is sustainable<sup>(26)</sup>. Only a limited number of people can visit the islands each year, so the animals and their environment are safe.

The Komodo National Park<sup>(27)</sup> in Indonesia is a popular<sup>(28)</sup> ecotourism destination<sup>(29)</sup>. Much of Indonesia's endangered wildlife<sup>(30)</sup>, including<sup>(31)</sup> the Komodo dragon<sup>(32)</sup>, can only be found here. The National Park is also famous for its beach with pink sand.

## Check Vocabulary

- (1) السياحة البيئية
- (2) توفر
- (3) معرض للخطر
- (4) منعزل
- (5) محدود
- (6) أثر
- (7) يعلم
- (8) حماية البيئة
- (9) تنمي
- (10) ساحل
- (11) صديق للبيئة
- (12) طبيعي
- (13) مواد
- (14) الغوص
- (15) يتجنب
- (16) إتلاف
- (17) الشعب المرجانية
- (18) النظام البيئي
- (19) يوجد
- (20) آخر
- (21) قردود الليمور
- (22) جزر
- (23) فريد
- (24) عملاق
- (25) سلحفاة مائية
- (26) ملائم للبيئة
- (27) الحديقة الوطنية
- (28) مشهور
- (29) مقصد
- (30) الحياة البرية
- (31) بما في ذلك
- (32) التنين

AltFwok.com موقع المتفوق



## 2. Working Together

(SB page 9)

Last year, I went to the Faroe Islands for a few days as a **(voluntourist)<sup>(1)</sup>** – I was both a **tourist<sup>(2)</sup>** and a **volunteer<sup>(3)</sup>**. I helped the **locals<sup>(4)</sup>** to rebuild **paths<sup>(5)</sup>** and **walls<sup>(6)</sup>**. It was very hard work, but great **fun<sup>(7)</sup>** and I met other volunteers from all around the world.



## Check Vocabulary

- (1) مسالحو متطوع
- (2) مسالحو
- (3) متطوع
- (4) السكان المحليين
- (5) ممرات
- (6) أسوار
- (7) متعة
- (8) بعيد / نالو
- (9) يتسلق
- (10) نل
- (11) طيرت
- (12) لحسن الحظ
- (13) ادفا
- (14) تذكار

While I was working on the islands, I talked to the people who live there about life in such a **remote<sup>(8)</sup>** place. On the second day, I **climbed<sup>(9)</sup>** to the top of a **hill<sup>(10)</sup>** when the wind **blew<sup>(11)</sup>** my hat off. **Fortunately<sup>(12)</sup>**, the family I was staying with gave me another, much **warmer<sup>(13)</sup>** hat which I kept as a **souvenir<sup>(14)</sup>**!

## 2. Listening Texts



**Luca :** Last summer I decided not to **go on holiday<sup>(1)</sup>** to Greece with my friends, but do something different.

**Klara :** So, where did you go ?

**Luca :** Well, as I'm studying **Biology<sup>(2)</sup>** I thought I'd go to Indonesia to find out more about the **orangutans<sup>(3)</sup>** there. So, I booked a holiday with an **ecotourism<sup>(4)</sup>** company and went to Borneo.

**Klara :** What was it like ?

**Luca :** A bit of a **disaster<sup>(5)</sup>** although I did love the rainforests. When we got to Jakarta, we caught an **internal flight<sup>(6)</sup>** to Borneo, but my **luggage<sup>(7)</sup>** never arrived so, I had to buy new clothes. The next morning, we took a boat up the river to the orangutan centre and while I was **leaning<sup>(8)</sup>** out of the boat to take photos, I dropped my camera.



## Check Vocabulary

- (1) يذهب في إجازة
- (2) علم الأحياء
- (3) إنسان الغابة
- (4) السياحة البيئية
- (5) كارثة
- (6) رحلة جوية داخلية
- (7) أمتعة
- (8) مئحنى

**Klara :** Oh, no. Did you manage to get it back ?

**Luca :** No way, the river's really deep, so I just had to leave it, but I was very **annoyed<sup>(9)</sup>**, but at least I had my phone. It took two days to get to the centre so while we were sitting on the boat, the guide told us all about the orangutans and what the **conservationists<sup>(10)</sup>** are doing there. It sounded really exciting. When we arrived, the guide **introduced<sup>(11)</sup>** us to the people working there and then we had dinner.

**Klara :** What was the food like ?

**Luca :** It was mainly rice and vegetables, but they were very **spicy<sup>(12)</sup>**. I don't like spicy food, so I only ate the rice. By the end of the week, I was eating the vegetables and fish though as I was so hungry.

**Klara :** Well, I'm glad to hear you're not such a **fussy eater<sup>(13)</sup>** anymore. What did you do every day ?

**Luca :** We got up about six every morning as that's when the sun rises, had breakfast and then **trekked<sup>(14)</sup>** into the forest to learn about the orangutans from the people who are looking after them.

**Klara :** Did you feed them ?

**Luca :** No, they're wild animals, not pets. We just observed them, made notes and took photos. We also learnt about other animals, birds and insects in the rainforests. Unfortunately, at the end of the first week, a **spider<sup>(15)</sup>** bit me while I was sleeping and my arm **swelled up<sup>(16)</sup>**.

**Klara :** So, what happened ?

**Luca :** I had to go to hospital-but as the nearest hospital was 200 km away, I had to go by helicopter. I stayed there for a week all alone and then went back to the centre, but as soon as I got back I was ill. One of the tourists was making the dinner that night and he wasn't a good cook. He didn't clean the fish **properly<sup>(17)</sup>** and everybody was sick. I'm staying at home this summer!

- (9) متضايق
- (10) حماة البيئة
- (11) يقدم
- (12) متقبل بالبهارات
- (13) شخص صعب إرضائه فيما يخص الأكل
- (14) يسير في رحلة
- (15) عنكبوت
- (16) يتورم
- (17) بشكل صحيح







- ١ إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف (y) مسبق بحرف ساكن يتم حذف (y) وإضافة (ed) لإنهاء الفعل :
- carry : carried - carried  
- try : tried - tried  
- deny : denied - denied  
- apply : applied - applied
- ٢ إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف (y) مسبق بحرف متحرك يبقى حرف (y) كما هو مع إضافة (ed) لإنهاء الفعل :
- stay : stayed - stayed  
- play : played - played
- ٣ إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف ساكن واحد مسبق بحرف متحرك واحد يُضاف الحرف الساكن قبل إضافة (ed) :
- drop : dropped  
- stop : stopped
- لا تنطبق هذه القاعدة على الأفعال التي يكون المقطع الأخير فيها منخفض في النطق (unstressed) :
- open - opening (Not: openning)  
- listen - listening (Not: listenning)  
- develop - developing (Not: developping)
- ٤ إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف (c) يتم إضافة (ked) لإنهاء الفعل :
- panic : panicked - panicked  
- picnic : picnicked - picnicked

## 2 Conjugation of irregular verbs : تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة :

بالنسبة للأفعال غير المنتظمة لا توجد قاعدة ثابتة للتصريفات وينبغي حفظ الفعل بتصريفاته. فهناك أفعال لا تتغير مثل :

- cut: cut - cut  
- cost: cost - cost  
- hit: hit - hit  
- shut: shut - shut
- وهناك أفعال يتشابه فيها التصريفين الثاني والثالث مثل :
- sit: sat - sat  
- bring: brought - brought
- وهناك أفعال يتشابه فيها التصريفين الأول والثالث مثل :
- come: came - come  
- run: ran - run
- وهناك أفعال يختلف تصريفها الأول عن الثاني وعن الثالث :
- write: wrote - written  
- begin: began - begun

## 3 The Past Simple Tense : زمن الماضي البسيط :

١ يتكون الماضي البسيط في الجمل الخبرية من :  
Subject فاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل .

ex. - Ahmed visited his friends yesterday. - They saw a show last night.

٢ عند النفي :  
Subject فاعل + did not / didn't + inf. ....

ex. - Ahmed did not (didn't) visit his friends yesterday.  
- They did not (didn't) see a show last night.

٣ عند الاستفهام بـ «هل» :  
Did + Subject فاعل + inf. .... ?

ex. - Did you tidy your room ? - Yes, I did.  
- Did Omar do his homework ? - No, he didn't.

٤ عند السؤال بـ «كلمة استفهام» :  
Question word أداة استفهام + did/didn't + subject. + inf. .... ?

ex. - Where did you watch the match ?  
- Why didn't you stay at a hotel ?

٥ يتحول زمن الماضي البسيط لصيغة المبني للمجهول باستخدام الصيغة التالية :  
Object مفعول + was/were + P.P. التصريف الثالث .

ex. - They watched a film last night. (معلوم)  
- A film was watched last night (by them). (مجهول)

٦ كلمات وتعبيرات زمنية تستخدم في الجمل لتشير إلى الماضي :

yesterday أمس	last ... الماضي ...	ago منذ	once ذات مرة
once upon a time ذات مرة	the other day مؤخرًا	in the past في الماضي	in 2011 ... etc
in ancient times قديمًا	previously فيما سبق		

ex. - I met some old friends in the club the other day.  
- Mr Mohammed moved to his new house two weeks ago.  
تستخدم ظروف التكرار التالية مع عادات الماضي البسيط :

always - usually - sometimes - never ... etc.

ex. - Sama always got up early when she was a student.



## Mini Test 1

Apply

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A week ago, I ~~planted~~ an apple tree in my garden.  
a. plant b. have planted c. planted d. had planted
2. A week ago, an apple tree ..... in my garden.  
a. plant b. were planted c. planted d. was planted
3. They ..... their animals yesterday.  
a. didn't feed b. haven't fed c. don't feed d. hadn't fed
4. Their animals ..... yesterday.  
a. didn't feed b. weren't fed c. don't feed d. aren't fed
5. .... that film at the cinema?  
a. You watched b. Did you watch c. You were watched d. Were you watched
6. .... at the cinema?  
a. That film watched b. Did that film watch c. That film was watched d. Was that film watched
7. Who ..... the door?  
a. you opened b. did you open c. opened d. were you opened
8. Who ..... ?  
a. was the door opened by b. did you open the door c. was opened the door d. were you opened the door
9. Ahmed read an interesting story .....  
a. everyday b. ago c. now d. the other day
10. .... a lorry hit a motorbike.  
a. Yesterday b. In the future c. Ago d. Now

## Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

في زمن الماضي البسيط، إذا كان الفعل الأساسي (was / were) لا نستخدم الفعل المساعد (did) ونستخدم (not) في النفي وفي السؤال تبدأ بـ (was / were) :

- He was at school yesterday. (إثبات)
- He wasn't at school yesterday. (نفي)
- Was he at school yesterday? (سؤال به 'هل')
- Where was he yesterday? (سؤال به أداة إستفهام)

في زمن الماضي البسيط، إذا كان الفعل الأساسي (had) فمن الأصح أن نستخدم معه (did) كفعل مساعد في النفي أو السؤال :

- She had lunch at two o'clock. (إثبات)
- She didn't have lunch at two o'clock. (نفي)
- Did she have lunch at two o'clock? (سؤال به 'هل')
- When did she have lunch? (سؤال به أداة إستفهام)

## Mini Test 2

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Hassan ..... at school yesterday.  
a. isn't b. doesn't be c. wasn't d. didn't be
2. .... at school yesterday?  
a. Was Hassan b. Did Hassan be c. Had Hassan d. Did Hassan have
3. Where ..... yesterday?  
a. was Hassan b. does Hassan be c. were Hassan d. was Hassan
4. I ..... lunch at home yesterday.  
a. haven't b. hadn't c. don't have d. didn't have
5. .... lunch at home yesterday?  
a. Had you b. Did you have c. You had d. Do you have

## Uses الاستخدامات

يستخدم الماضي البسيط في حالات كثيرة منها :

1 التعبير عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي (عادة مع تعبير زمني ماضي) :

- ex. - I visited my grandmother last Friday.  
- My father built this house ten years ago.

2 سرد مواقف أو قصص وقعت في الماضي :

- ex. The baby was called Oliver Twist. He was sent to the orphanage.

3 بعد (if) في الحالة الشرطية الثانية :

- ex. - If I studied hard, I'd pass this exam.



## Past Habits عادات الماضي

1 يمكن استخدام الصيغ التالية للتعبير عن عادات الماضي التي لم تعد موجودة في الحاضر

1. Subj. + used to + inf. —  
ex. - He used to swim in the sea.  
- She didn't use to wear glasses.
2. It was + someone's / صفة مملوكة + habit عادة + to + inf. —  
ex. - It was his habit to swim in the sea.
3. Subj. + had + the habit of + n. / inf. + ing —  
ex. - He had the habit of swimming in the sea.
4. Subj. + was / were + in the habit of + n. / inf. + ing —  
ex. - He was in the habit of swimming in the sea.
5. It was + habitual معتاد + for + someone / ضمير مفعول + to + inf. —  
ex. - It was habitual for him to swim in the sea.

2 يمكن استخدام ( was / were + used to + n. / inf. + ing ) للتعبير عن أن شيء ما كان معتاداً بالنسبة للفاعل :

- ex. - They were used to working in the sun.  
- I was used to (eating) salty food.

2 يمكن استخدام ( ing + n. / inf. + used to + got / became ) للتعبير عن التعود

ex. - I got used to the freezing weather in Canada.  
- I became used to working on a farm.

### Mini Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. If we ..... by the sea, we'd go swimming every day.  
a. live      **b. lived**      c. is lived      d. was lived
2. When I was a student, I ..... up early.  
a. get      b. used to getting  
c. was used to get      **d. was used to getting**
3. .... go for a walk every week?  
**a. Was he used to**      b. Did he use      **c. Did he use to**      d. He used to

## Notes for Advanced Level ملاحظات للناطقين

1 يمكن استخدام ( did + inf ) في الجمل الملتزمة للتوكيد :

- You **did see** who stole the money yesterday.  
- Ahmed **did break** my tablet an hour ago.

2 لاحظ استخدام جملة الماضي البسيط في الصيغ التالية للتعبير عن شيء غير متحقق في المضارع :

1. I wish + subject + past simple  
- I wish Sama **had** enough time to help me.  
= Salma **can't help** me because she **doesn't have** enough time.

2. It is + (about/almost/high) + time + subject + past simple

- It is high time you **returned** home.  
= You **are** still out.

3. Subj. + فاعل + would + rather/sooner + الفاعل الأول + past simple

- I'd rather you **arrived** on time.  
= You **don't arrive** on time.

أما إذا كان فاعل ( would rather/sooner ) هو نفس الفاعل بعدها فباتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر ويكون هذا أسلوب تعبير عن التفضيل :

- Subj. + فاعل + would + rather/sooner + inf. ...

- I'd rather **go** shopping in the afternoon.  
= I think it is better for me to go shopping in the afternoon.

4 في حالة وجود تعبير زمني يدل على الماضي بعد ( I wish / I'd rather / It's (about / almost) time )

استخدم بعدهم الماضي التام ( had + P.P ) وليس الماضي البسيط :

- ex. - I'd rather she **had arrived** home earlier **yesterday**.

ملاحظة هامة : في حالة عدم وجود فاعل بعد ( would rather ) فإننا نستخدم بعدها الفعل في المصدر.

- ex. - I'd rather have fish. (Not: had)

5 عند استخدام ظروف التكرار التي تحمل معنى النفي مثل ( never / rarely / seldom / little )

في بداية الجملة لابد من استخدام فعل مساعد قبل الفاعل :

- ex. - Rodayna **rarely left** for school before 7:30. (Rarely ...)

- **Rarely did** Rodayna leave for school before 7:30.



General Exercise On Language

Apply

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة من بين a, b, c أو d:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. I ..... prep. 3 exams two months ago.  
a. take b. took c. have taken d. was taken
2. Nada saw one of her old friends in the club .....  
a. now b. tomorrow c. the other day d. yet
3. Mohammed Salah ..... Liverpool and won Player of the Year Award.  
a. joined b. was joined c. joins d. was joining
4. I ..... have many friends at my first school.  
a. don't b. doesn't c. didn't d. never
5. I ..... had many friends at my first school.  
a. don't b. doesn't c. didn't d. never
6. Rokaya didn't ..... the mobile ringing.  
a. hears b. hear c. heard d. hearing
7. Did Sama ..... mum with the housework.  
a. was helping b. helps c. helped d. help
8. What ..... Karim do when he cut his finger?  
a. did b. do c. does d. has
9. Why did Rahma look tired when she ..... the door?  
a. shuts b. shut c. was shut d. shutting
10. .... well yesterday!  
a. Did you play b. You played c. Do you play d. How did you play
11. .... well yesterday?  
a. Did you play b. You played c. Do you play d. How did you play
12. A: ..... yesterday? B: Quite well.  
Did you play  
a. Do you play b. You played c. Do you play d. How did you play

13. I ..... off my tablet before I went out.  
a. turn b. turned c. was turned d. was turning
14. My tablet ..... off before I went out.  
a. turn b. turned c. was turned d. was turning
15. I ..... tired, so I went to bed.  
a. was b. wasn't c. didn't be d. b & c
16. I ..... tired, so I worked for three more hours.  
a. was b. wasn't c. didn't be d. b & c
17. .... the best students at your first school.  
a. They were b. Were they c. Did they be d. Are they
18. .... the best students at your first school?  
a. They were b. Were they c. Did they be d. Are they
19. .... her lunch.  
a. Did she have b. Had she c. She hadn't d. She didn't have
20. .... her lunch?  
a. Did she have b. Had she c. She hadn't d. She didn't have
21. Yesterday, we ..... some beautiful fish in the Red Sea.  
a. saw b. were seeing c. see d. have seen
22. My sister usually ..... to school when she was young.  
a. walks b. was walking c. walked d. has walked
23. My grandfather always ..... to work when he was young.  
a. walked b. walks c. is walking d. was walking
24. My uncle ..... in 1970.  
a. born b. was born c. bear d. bears
25. Nesma ..... late when she was young. She no longer does that now.  
a. usually sleeps b. is used to sleeping c. used to sleep d. was usually slept
26. One of the Egyptian scientists ..... awarded the Nobel Prize in 2010.  
a. was b. has been c. were d. had been

Altfwok.com موقع التوفيق



27. He committed the crime and ..... away.  
 a. runs b. ran c. run d. running
28. The High Dam ..... in Aswan creating the biggest artificial lake in the world.  
 a. built b. has built c. has been built d. was built
29. He ..... at the club yesterday.  
 a. isn't seen b. wasn't seen c. didn't see d. doesn't see

## Special cases

30. A: Where is the money that was on the table?  
 B: Mum ..... it. She paid the electricity bill.  
 a. spends b. spent c. did spend d. b & c
31. I ..... a car which cost me only 100,000 pounds.  
 a. offer b. offered c. was offered d. was offering
32. The door ..... and we went in.  
 a. opened b. was opened c. a & b d. opens
33. I ..... the door and we went in.  
 a. opened b. was opened c. a & b d. opens
34. At the age of five, I ..... to swim.  
 a. learned b. learn c. have learnt d. was learnt
35. As a boy, Mr Mohammed ..... for his good behaviour.  
 a. used to be praised b. was praising c. used to praise d. praised
36. He ..... to hard work on the farm.  
 a. used b. were used c. got used d. didn't use
37. My friend ..... me an email a short time ago.  
 a. sent b. is sending c. has sent d. sends
38. We'd rather you ..... us tomorrow.  
 a. are phoning b. phoning c. will phone d. phoned
39. It is high time we ..... home.  
 a. go b. have gone c. went d. going
40. When I visit a foreign country, I'd rather ..... in a good hotel.  
 a. stayed b. stay c. staying d. can stay

## Check your understanding

41. Which of the following is correctly structured?  
 a. I used to studying hard. b. I was used to study hard.  
 c. I got used to study hard. d. I became used to studying hard.
42. I don't have enough time for hobbies. I wish I .....  
 a. had enough time for hobbies  
 b. have had enough time for hobbies  
 c. had had enough time for hobbies  
 d. didn't have enough time for hobbies
43. I didn't have enough time for hobbies when I was a child. I wish I ..... when I was a child.  
 a. had enough time for hobbies  
 b. have had enough time for hobbies  
 c. had had enough time for hobbies  
 d. didn't have enough time for hobbies
44. Who .....?  
 a. was the door opened by b. was opened the door  
 c. did you open the door d. were you opened the door
45. "She wishes she were tall." What does this mean?  
 a. She was tall. b. She wasn't tall.  
 c. She isn't tall. d. She is tall.
46. "I'd rather you didn't use my mobile." This means that .....  
 a. I wanted you to use my mobile  
 b. I didn't want you to use my mobile  
 c. I want you to use my mobile  
 d. I don't want you to use my mobile
47. "You have to pay the bill right now." Which of the following gives the same meaning?  
 a. It is about time you paid the bill  
 b. It is about time you had paid the bill  
 c. It is time you pay the bill  
 d. It is time you have paid the bill
48. Mum always set the table for lunch.  
 a. This is a present habit.  
 b. This was a past habit.  
 c. This always takes place.  
 d. This never took place.





## Part 1

## Vocabulary

تلميح • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدا ومراجعتها بانتظام اليومية لتتذكر في الامتحان.

## 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

active (adj)	نشط	noisy (adj)	مزعج - صاحب
ancient (n)	قديم - عتيق	over the moon	في منتهى السعادة
beautiful (adj)	جميل	old (adj)	قديم - عجوز
boring (adj)	ممل	peace (n)	السلام - السكينة
busy (adj)	مشغول - مزدحم	peaceful (adj)	هادئ / ذو سكينة
calm (adj)	هادئ - ساكن	pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب
crowded (adj)	مزدحم	quiet (n - adj)	هلو - هادئ
exciting (adj)	مثير	relax(ed) (v)	يسترخي
exotic (adj)	غريب / نادر - أجنبي	relaxing (adj)	مريح
modern (adj)	حديث	stuck (adj)	عالق - محشور

تلميح • من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

## 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

actually (adv)	في الواقع / بالفعل	guide(d) (n - v)	مرشد - يرشد
adventure (n)	مغامرة	hobby (n)	هواية
amazing (adj)	رائع - مذهل	lettuce (n)	الخس
awful (adj)	فظيع / شديدا	market (n)	سوق
balcony (n)	بلكون	on board	على متن (طائرة/سفينة)
brilliant (adj)	رائع / خلّاب - ذكي	paradise (n)	جنة
castle (n)	قلعة	photograph(ed) (n-v)	صورة - يلتقط صورة
cheap (adj)	رخيص الثمن	resort (n)	منتجع سياحي
clear(ed) (adj - v)	صافي - نقي - واضح - يوضح	sight (n)	منظر - البصر - أحد المعالم
cruise ship (n)	باخرة سياحية / مركب ترفيه	steal - stole -	يسرق
cruise (n)	تريفة	stolen (v)	
cry(ied) (v)	يبكي	stressed (adj)	مجهّد - مضغوط
damage(d) (v/n)	تلف - يدمر - تلف	sunshine (n)	سقوط الشمس
distance (n)	مسافة - بُعد	support(ed) (n - v)	دعم - يدعم

expect(ed) (v)	يتوقع	teenager (adj - n)	مراهق
explode(d) (v)	يستكشف	temple (n)	معبد
fascinating (adj)	جميل / خلّاب	tiny (adj)	جسيم الحجم
forget - forgot -	ينسى	travel(led) (v)	يسافر
forgotten (v)		traveller (n)	مسافر - زوّار
garden(n)	بستان	try(ied) (v)	يحاول - يجرب
gardening (n)	بستنة / فلاحة البساتين	underwater (adj - adv)	تحت الماء
glad (adj)	مسرور / منتهج	unusual (adj)	غير مألوف
grow - grew -	يزرع - ينمو	worry(ied) (n - v)	القلق - يقلق
grown (v)			

تلميح • تعرف على المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلم المستهدفة - هام جدا

## 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
ancient (adj)	قديم / عتيق
crowded (adj)	مزدحم
exciting (adj)	مثير
exotic (adj)	غريب / نادر - أجنبي
lean (v)	ينحني
modern(adj)	حديث / معاصر
orangutan (n)	إنسان الغابة
peaceful (adj)	ملي بالسكينة
relaxing (adj)	مريح
	very old
	having a lot of people or things
	making you feel excited
	unusual and often from a different country
	to be in a sloping position
	new and connected to the present
	a large ape with long arms and long orange-brown hair
	feeling calm, quiet, without any problems
	making you feel relaxed and not stressed

## Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

## 1 Key vocabulary

1. Nuclear power must be used for ..... purposes.

a. annoying    **b. peaceful**    c. upsetting    d. notorious

2. The Great Pyramid is a/an ..... monument.

a. active    b. exotic    c. crowded    **d. ancient**



3. My father still uses his ..... phone which does not even connect to the internet.  
a. noisy ☒ b. old c. busy d. modern
4. She is ..... intelligent, hard working and polite.  
☒ a. beautiful b. boring ☒ c. awful d. stressed
5. I spent the weekend in a/an ..... place where it is calm and peaceful.  
a. crowded b. endangered ☒ c. relaxing d. swollen
6. I couldn't find a seat in the ..... bus.  
a. active b. exotic ☒ c. crowded d. ancient
7. I can't enjoy my time in this ..... street. It makes me nervous.  
☒ a. noisy b. old c. quiet d. modern
8. I enjoy the ..... of the night in the countryside.  
a. noise ☒ b. quiet c. guide d. village
9. After this long and tiring day, you need to .....  
a. realize b. respect c. resort ☒ d. relax
10. We got ..... in the traffic jam <sup>الازدحام المروري</sup> for an hour.  
a. arranged ☒ b. stuck c. trekked d. unique
11. Being ..... is the opposite of being lazy.  
☒ a. active b. exotic c. crowded d. ancient
12. Smartphones are ..... inventions.  
a. noisy b. old c. busy ☒ d. modern
13. It is the fourth time I have watched this ..... film.  
a. awful b. boring ☒ c. exciting d. stressed
14. I saw some ..... birds on the beach. They do not belong to this area.  
a. active ☒ b. exotic ☒ c. crowded d. ancient
15. She is so ..... doing the housework that she couldn't answer the phone.  
a. noisy b. old ☒ c. busy d. modern
16. What a/an ..... match! I'll turn off the TV.  
a. beautiful ☒ b. boring c. exciting d. stressed
17. I hate using social media. They make me .....  
☒ a. pleased ☒ b. stressed c. dressed d. praised

## 2 Important Vocabulary

(ادارة الحديقة والمتنزهات)

18. I don't want to go to the park. ...., I am meeting some friends in the club.  
a. Environmentally b. Otherwise ☒ c. Actually d. Naturally
19. Secondary school students are .....  
a. adults ☒ b. teenagers c. granddads d. toddlers
20. Smoking ..... smokers' health.  
a. describes b. benefits c. develops ☒ d. damages
21. When we travel on holidays, we usually buy ..... to remind us of the nice time we spent.  
☒ a. souvenirs b. sails c. turtles d. paths
22. He lives in a ..... village. It takes you a long time to go there.  
a. nearby b. near ☒ c. remote d. close
23. Tourists are usually fascinated to ..... the places they visit and the people they meet.  
a. dive b. destroy c. grow ☒ d. photograph
24. .... is the activity of looking after plants in a garden or a park.  
a. Garden ☒ b. Gardening c. Park d. Parking
25. I find this novel extremely ..... It interests me a lot.  
a. fascinating ☒ b. fascinated ☒ c. boring d. bored
26. While we were camping in the forest, some monkeys ..... our food.  
a. fed ☒ b. protected c. stole <sup>سرو</sup> d. benefitted
27. We have to ..... our children about nature conservation.  
☒ a. learn ☒ b. educate c. study d. steal
28. In difficulties, <sup>أوقات الصعبة</sup> we need the ..... of our relatives <sup>أقارب</sup> and friends.  
a. lettuce b. swell c. material ☒ d. support
29. The tourists enjoyed the ..... of the sun shining on the statue of Ramses.  
☒ a. sight ☒ b. cruise c. turtle d. article
30. This fascinating island is a tourist .....  
a. mosquito ☒ b. paradise c. pool d. Sahara
31. People who go on holidays in mountains and rainforests like .....  
a. resorts b. designs ☒ c. adventure d. respect
32. I enjoyed the ..... on the Nile from Luxor to Aswan.  
☒ a. cruise b. ecotourism c. drive d. unique



33. When I visited London for the first time, I spent three days ..... the city.

- a. swelling b. exploring c. leaning d. collaborating

34. The plane I was travelling on had 125 passengers on .....

- a. broad b. board c. abroad d. aboard

35. I could see some fish moving about deep in the ..... water.

- a. bored b. clear c. sick d. tiny

36. Mohammed Salah is a very ..... footballer.

- a. little b. tiny c. ancient d. brilliant

37. My grandfather ..... cotton in his field.

- a. grows b. breaks c. feels d. spends

38. Diving is a/an ..... activity.

- a. few b. warm c. sick d. underwater

3 Definitions

39. .... means too full of people or things.

- a. Awful b. Crowded c. Local d. Brilliant

40. .... describes something unusual and often from a different country.

- a. Close b. Natural c. Exotic d. Peaceful

41. .... means new and connected to the present.

- a. Modern b. Ancient c. Spicy d. Endangered

42. .... means feeling calm, quiet, without any problems.

- a. Fascinating b. Natural c. Peaceful d. coral

43. .... means making you feel relaxed and not stressed.

- a. Fascinating b. Natural c. Coral d. Relaxing

44. A/An ..... is a large ape with long arms and long orange-brown hair.

- a. lemur b. orangutan c. dragon d. turtle

45. .... means having a pleasantly strong taste, and gives you a pleasant burning feeling in your mouth.

- a. Underwater b. Spicy c. Traditional d. Fascinating

Part II Vocabulary Study

تدرب على استخدام هذه الكلمات في جملتك الخاصة

1 Verbal Collocations

do	activities	بمارس أنشطة	take	photos of	يلتقط صوراً لـ
forget	your worries	تنسى مخاوفك		a cruise	يلتزم برحلة بحرية
go	trekking	يلتزم في رحلة طويلة سيراً			

2 Synonyms

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
aboard	على متن (سفينة/طائرة)
ancient	قديم / عتيق
beautiful	جميل
boring	مُمل
exotic	أجنبي
exotic	مُذهِل / مُذهِل
over the moon	سعيد جداً
quiet	هادئ
on board	
very old	
pretty, cute	
dull, spiritless	
foreign	
unusual, unconventional	
very happy, very excited, glad	
calm	

3 Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
active	نشط - فعال	lazy, inactive	كسل - خامل
ancient	قديم / عتيق	modern, new	حديث - جديد
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح
boring	مُمل	exciting, interesting	مثير
busy	مشغول	free	متفرغ
quiet	هادئ	noisy	مزعج - صاخب
crowded	مزدحم	empty, quiet	فارغ - هادئ
exotic	أجنبي	native, local	محلي
exotic	مُذهِل / مُذهِل	usual, familiar, conventional	عادي - تقليدي
relaxing	مريح	stressful, tiring	ضاغط / متعب



1

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

crowded	People <b>crowd</b> to help when there is an accident.
crowded (v)	حشد - حشده
crowd (n)	A <b>crowd</b> of people came to help me.
crowd (n)	مجموعة من الناس - حشد
overcrowding	People in big cities suffer from <b>overcrowding</b> .
overcrowding (n)	التكدس
crowded (adj)	People in big cities suffer from the very <b>crowded</b> streets.
crowded (adj)	مزدحم
overcrowded	People in big cities suffer from the <b>overcrowded</b> streets.
overcrowded (adj)	مزدحم جداً - مكتس

peace	I like the <b>peace</b> of the countryside at night.
peace (n)	السلام - السكينة
peaceful	It is <b>peaceful</b> in the countryside at night.
peaceful (adj)	هادئ / دوسكة
peacefully	The baby is sleeping <b>peacefully</b> in its bed.
peacefully (adv)	سكينة - سلام

stick	I used glue to <b>stick</b> the picture.
stick - stuck (v)	لصق - لصق - يُلصق - يُلصق
stick (n)	My grandfather uses a <b>stick</b> when he walks.
stick (n)	عصا
sticker	There are some <b>stickers</b> which have some advice about coronavirus.
sticker (n)	ملصق
stuck	I was <b>stuck</b> in a traffic jam.
stuck (adj)	تكدس مروري - عالق - محصور

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات

a cruise to remember	رحلة بحرية لا أنسى	make good use of	يُحسن استغلال
active holiday	إجازة مفعلة	on board = aboard	على متن سفينة أو طائرة
be tired of	يسأل من	on the balcony	في البلكونة
busy with	مشغول به	on the way there	في الطريق إلى هناك
go on a cruise	يذهب في رحلة بحرية	over the moon	سعيد جداً
loads of	كثير من	there's nothing to do	لا يوجد ما الفعله

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

add to	يُضيف إلى	learn about	يتعلم عن
decide to	يقرر أن	learn to	يتعلم أن
escape from	يفر من	leave ... behind	يُغادر تاركاً
escape to	يفر إلى	stay with	يقيم مع
go away	يبتعد - يسافر	walk around	يسير - يمشي
go down	ينزل - تغرب الشمس		

7 Clear the confusion لُحظ الفرق

old - ancient

- **old (adj)** قديم
    - My grandfather still lives in his **old** house.
  - **old (adj)** عجوز
    - My grandfather is a **very old** man.
  - **ancient = very old (adj)** قديم جداً / عتيق
    - The **ancient** Egyptians had a great civilisation. حضارة
- لاحظ أن المصطلح (ancient) صفة قديمة لا تُستخدم في صيغ المقارنة والتفصيل.
- The Great Pyramid is **more ancient than** the citadel. (X) القلعة
  - The Great Pyramid is **much older than** the citadel. (✓)

Adjectives ending in -ed / -ing

- الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) تعني أن الموصوف أشاعر بالصفة - مُعرّض للصفة - يعاني من الصفة:
  - I feel **tired** / **excited** / **bored**.
    - إشعر بالتعب / السعادة / الملل
- الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) تعني أن الموصوف (مُسبب للصفة):
  - This job is **tiring** / **pleasing** / **boring**.
    - هذه الوظيفة مُتعبة / شيقة / مملّة

little

- **little + اسم** لا يُعد
  - We have **little** work to do.
  - He gave us **little** information about the accident.
- **little + اسم يُعد**
  - I saw a **little** boy selling flowers.

sight - site

- **sight (n)**
  - Taha Hussein lost his **sight** when he was a child.



- sight (n)  
- I like the sight of green plants and colourful flowers.  
sights (n)  
- The guide showed me the important sights in Aswan.  
site (n)  
- There are some tourists visiting the archaeological site.  
- Mr Mohammed has an educational site. (= website)

steal - rob

- steal (stole - stolen) + (from) ...  
- This gang stole money from the bank.  
rob (robbed) + (the place) ...  
- The gang robbed the bank.  
rob + (from) + (the person) ...  
- A thief robbed me of my bike.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

- MCQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

1. "I read a boring story." The antonyms of the word "boring" are .....

- a. dull  
b. wonderful  
c. tiring  
d. amazing  
e. spiritless

2. "Cairo is a very crowded city." The antonyms of the word "crowded" are .....

- a. empty  
b. filled  
c. busy  
d. full  
e. quiet

3. "She's over the moon about her new job." This means she is very .....

- a. happy  
b. annoyed  
c. sad  
d. excited  
e. angry

4. The antonyms of the word 'advantages' are .....

- a. merits  
b. pros  
c. disadvantages  
d. benefits  
e. demerits

5. If a place is ....., it has a lot of people.

- a. crowded  
b. exciting  
c. isolated  
d. ancient  
e. busy

6. He met a very beautiful girl in the mall. The synonyms of the word "beautiful" are .....

- a. pretty  
b. energetic  
c. cute  
d. dull  
e. quiet

7. .... and 'native' are antonyms of 'exotic':

- a. Conventional  
b. Modern  
c. Free  
d. Usual  
e. Ugly

8. Sometimes, I go .....

- a. activities  
b. trekking  
c. a hobby  
d. the shopping  
e. diving

9. You have to do .....

- a. an activity  
b. trekking  
c. mistake  
d. something different  
e. diving

10. If someone is active, this means they are not .....

- a. lazy  
b. inactive  
c. foreign  
d. modern  
e. new

11. The ship left the shore with 500 passengers .....

- a. abroad  
b. a board  
c. aboard  
d. broad  
e. on board

- MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Unfortunately, the burglar ..... the house.

- a. stole  
b. took  
c. robbed  
d. guarded

2. 'Ancient' is to ..... as 'boring' is to 'exciting'.

- a. excited  
b. new  
c. modern  
d. b & c

3. "You can ..... a cruise or a boat trip.

- a. decide to  
b. go away  
c. go on  
d. trek into

4. He escaped ..... prison.

- a. to  
b. with  
c. from  
d. on

5. It is over, Sama. There's nothing .....

- a. do  
b. doing  
c. to do  
d. to doing

6. Fans usually ..... to take selfies with football stars.

- a. crowd  
b. crowding  
c. crowds  
d. crowdedness

7. People living in a big city suffer from .....

- a. crowd  
b. crowded  
c. overcrowding  
d. crowded



## Part III Reading &amp; Listening

## 1 Reading Texts

## 1. James's blog

(SB page 10)

This is me on our hotel balcony in Sharm El-Sheikh. It's **brilliant**<sup>(1)</sup> here and there are **loads of**<sup>(2)</sup> things to do. I'm over the moon visiting Egypt. The weather's really hot so we spend most of the time in the water.



## Check Vocabulary

My sister and I are learning to dive with some other **teenagers**<sup>(3)</sup> at the resort. I love diving; it's so **relaxing**<sup>(4)</sup> and you can see all these amazing fish in the sea. I want to get an **underwater**<sup>(5)</sup> camera so I can take photos of them.

Last week, we were in Luxor and visited the **ancient temples**<sup>(6)</sup> there. I'm not usually interested in history, but I **actually**<sup>(7)</sup> found them **fascinating**<sup>(8)</sup> and am really **glad**<sup>(9)</sup> we went there.

- (1) رائع
- (2) كثير من
- (3) مراهقين
- (4) مريح
- (5) تحت الماء
- (6) المعابد القديمة
- (7) في الواقع
- (8) خلاب
- (9) سعيد

## 2. Katy's blog

Day 10 of my summer holidays! I'm so **bored**<sup>(1)</sup> – all my friends are away or busy with their family and I'm **stuck**<sup>(2)</sup> here at home. The weather's **awful**<sup>(3)</sup> and there's nothing to do.



Last week, I went to stay with my **grandparents**<sup>(4)</sup> for a few days, which was nice, but they live in a tiny village with no shops. I was helping Granddad in his garden most of the time. He **grows**<sup>(5)</sup> all his own **vegetables**<sup>(6)</sup> – he says it's **cheaper**<sup>(7)</sup> than buying them.

Maybe I'll try and grow some **lettuce**<sup>(8)</sup> in our garden when it stops raining. I was watching a programme on TV this morning about **gardening**<sup>(9)</sup> – maybe I'll have a new **hobby**<sup>(10)</sup>!

## Check Vocabulary

- (1) شاعر بالملل
- (2) عالق
- (3) فظيع
- (4) أجداد
- (5) يزرع
- (6) خضراوات
- (7) أرخص
- (8) الخس
- (9) أعمال الحديقة / تشجير
- (10) هواية

## 2 Listening Texts

## Holiday Adverts!

(WB page 90)

## A beach break

Do you want to **relax**<sup>(1)</sup> in a quiet and **peaceful**<sup>(2)</sup> place? **Escape**<sup>(3)</sup> from noisy streets and leave your busy city life **behind**<sup>(4)</sup>. Visit this amazing **paradise**<sup>(5)</sup>. Enjoy the **sunshine**<sup>(6)</sup> on **isolated**<sup>(7)</sup> beaches and swim in clean, **clear**<sup>(8)</sup> water.

## Adventure time

Are you tired of **the same**<sup>(9)</sup> old, **boring**<sup>(10)</sup> places? Are you looking for an **active**<sup>(11)</sup> holiday? Then this is the holiday for you. Day one starts with diving, then day two takes you **climbing**<sup>(12)</sup> in the beautiful **Alpine mountains**<sup>(13)</sup>.

## Eco-trip

Ecotourism is a new way to travel for a new kind of **traveller**<sup>(14)</sup>. You can go **trekking**<sup>(15)</sup> through the **Andes**<sup>(16)</sup> and **explore**<sup>(17)</sup> ancient Machu Picchu with a local **guide**<sup>(18)</sup>. You can enjoy **peace**<sup>(19)</sup> and **quiet**<sup>(20)</sup> or you can meet the local people, all without **damaging**<sup>(21)</sup> the environment.

## A cruise to remember

Why not take a calm **cruise**<sup>(22)</sup> around the **Caribbean**<sup>(23)</sup>? On **board**<sup>(24)</sup> our modern **cruise ship**<sup>(25)</sup>, you can enjoy great food and **forget**<sup>(26)</sup> your **worries**<sup>(27)</sup> in our relaxing restaurants. We stop at six different islands where you can visit the crowded **markets**<sup>(28)</sup> and see many unusual sights.

## Check Vocabulary

- (1) يسترخي
- (2) هادئ - ذو مسكنة
- (3) يهرب
- (4) خلف / وراء
- (5) جنة
- (6) شروق (أشعة) الشمس
- (7) منعزل
- (8) صافي
- (9) نفس
- (10) ممل
- (11) نشيط - مفعول
- (12) ينسلك
- (13) جبال أنديز
- (14) مسافر
- (15) تتنزه سيراً
- (16) جبال الأنديز
- (17) يستكشف
- (18) مرشد
- (19) السكينة - السلام
- (20) الهدوء
- (21) تدمر
- (22) نزهة بحرية
- (23) البحر الكاريبي
- (24) متن السفينة
- (25) مركب سياحية
- (26) ينسى
- (27) مخاوف - هموم
- (28) أسواق

## Part IV

## Language



مفاتيح

## Remember

## 1 inf. + ing

كيفية إضافة [ing] لمصدر الفعل :

- visit: visiting

- help: helping

- clean: cleaning



UNIT 1

١ إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف (e) يتم إضافة (ing) قبل نهاية الفعل  
- live: living - like: liking - decide: deciding

٢ إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحروف (ie) فإنه نحذف ويضاف (ying) لنهاية الفعل  
- lie: lying - die: dying - tie: tying

٣ إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد يضاف الحرف الساكن قبل إضافة (ing)  
- swim: swimming - run: running - travel: travelling

لا تنطبق هذه القاعدة على الأفعال التي يكون المقطع الأخير فيها متخففاً في النطق (unstressed) مثل:

- open: opening (Not: openning)  
- listen: listening (Not: listenning)  
- develop: developing (Not: developping)

٤ إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف (c) يتم إضافة (-king) لنهاية الفعل  
- panic: panicking - picnic: picnicking

2 The Past Continuous Tense

زمن الماضي المستمر

١ في الجملة المبنية:

Subject + was / were + (inf. + ing) ...

ex. - Ahmed was reading a story.  
- Rodayna and Heba were cooking lunch.

٢ في الجملة المنفية:

Subject + was not (wasn't) / were not (weren't) + (inf. + ing) ...

ex. - Ahmed was not (wasn't) reading a story.  
- Rodayna and Heba were not (weren't) cooking lunch.

٣ في السؤال الذي يبدأ بفعل مساعد بمعنى «هل»:

Was / Were + Subject + (inf. + ing) ... ?

ex. - Was Ahmed reading a book?  
- Were you eating a cake?

١ في السؤال بـ «كلمة استفهام»  
Question word أداة استفهام + was / were + Subject فاعل + (inf. + ing) ... ?

ex. - What was Ahmed reading ?

٢ في صيغة المبني للمجهول:

Object مفعول + was / were + being + P.P. ....

ex. - A story was being read by Ahmed.

Mini Test 1

• Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Some people ..... on the farm from morning to afternoon that day.  
a. was worked b. were worked c. was working d. were working
- I saw that she ..... on her mobile, so I decided to return later.  
a. talked b. was talked c. was talking d. wasn't talking
- It was not polite of him to interrupt what I .....  
a. was doing b. did c. had done d. was done
- What ..... you doing when I called ?  
a. are b. were c. did d. had
- Some boys ..... when the teacher entered the classroom.  
a. fought b. were fought c. was fighting d. were fighting

Uses of the past continuous الاستخدامات

١ يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي :

ex. - I was playing on the beach last Friday afternoon.

٢ يستخدم للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت في الماضي :

While / As / When + جملة ماضى مستمر + جملة ماضى مستمر

ex. - While I was reading a story, Ali was watching TV.

٣ يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر:

While / As / When / Just as + جملة ماضى بسيط + جملة ماضى مستمر

ex. - While he was playing a tennis match, he broke his arm.



While + inf. + ing + جملة ماضى بسيط

ex. - While playing a tennis match, he broke his arm.

During + noun اسم + جملة ماضى بسيط

ex. - During a tennis match, he broke his arm.

When + جملة ماضى بسيط + جملة ماضى مستمر

ex. - When I arrived, Shahd was watching a cartoon.

On + noun / (inf. + ing) + جملة ماضى بسيط / جملة ماضى مستمر

ex. - On my arrival at my office, the secretary was checking emails.

While + اسم + حرف جر

ex. - While in Alexandria, I ate fish for lunch every day.

While / On + being + P.P. —

ex. - While the food was being cooked, it smelled nice.

= While / On being cooked, the food smelled nice.

في المثال السابق استخدمنا (being cooked) وليس (cooking) لأن الحظة الثانية بدأت بـ (the food) الذي يُعتبر مفعول الجملة الأولى.

يُستخدم الماضي البسيط بدلا من الماضي المستمر مع الأفعال التالية:

ex. - Feelings: like, dislike, love, hate, prefer, enjoy, want, wish ... etc.

- Senses: hear, see, smell, feel, sound, taste, appear, seem, look ... etc.

- Mental state: realise, understand, know, mean, think = believe, imagine, recognise, remember, forget ... etc.

- I was hearing a noise outside. (x)

- I heard a noise outside. (✓)

لكن يمكن استخدام الماضي المستمر مع الأفعال السابقة في حالة استخدامها بمعنى آخر غير معانيها الأصلية:

ex. - I was seeing an old friend when you called. (= was meeting)

- I was having some pizza when the phone rang. (= was eating)

تذكر أن الماضي المستمر لا يُستخدم مع الأفعال اللحظية (التي لا تستغرق مدة زمنية):

ex. - My car broke down. (Not: was breaking down)

كما أن (being) لا تُستخدم كفعل أساسي في الماضي المستمر:

ex. While we were in the park, our children were playing around us. (Not: were being)

Mini Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My car ..... down as I was driving to work.  
a. breaks b. broke  
c. was breaking d. was being broken
- While I ..... at the club, I played tennis.  
a. was b. was being c. am d. am being
- Nada ..... when I rang the doorbell. I felt sorry for waking her up.  
a. slept b. was slept c. has slept d. was sleeping
- ..... the film, I ate popcorn and drank juice.  
a. As b. While c. During d. When
- ..... watching the film, I ate popcorn and drank juice.  
a. As b. While c. During d. As soon as
- When you called me, I ..... a shower. That's why I didn't answer.  
a. was having b. had c. had had d. has had
- During yesterday's match, most players ..... fit.  
a. hadn't been b. weren't c. weren't being d. have been
- I ..... my toys when I was young.  
a. was loving b. am loving  
c. was being loved d. loved
- While I ..... the door of my flat, I heard a loud noise in the street.  
a. was shutting b. had shut  
c. was being shut d. shutting

General Exercise On Language

Apply

التدريبات التالية مرتبة بشكل متدرج تصاعديا حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

- From 9 to 12 last Friday, I ..... an important meeting.  
a. had attended b. was attended  
c. was attending d. was being attended
- From 9 to 12 last Friday, an important meeting .....  
a. had attended b. was attended  
c. was attending d. was being attended



3. .... doing when I called you?  
 a. Were you b. You were  
 c. What you were d. What were you
4. .... doing homework when I called you?  
 a. Were you b. You were  
 c. What you were d. What were you
5. I couldn't hear him because two boys ..... loudly. (المزوم - الشواشة ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. were talking b. have talked c. had talked d. talked
6. The police arrested the thief while he ..... from the bank. (يوم امبو - أحمد محمد موسى بنات ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. is escaping b. was escaping c. has escaped d. escapes
7. While I was revising my lesson, my mother ..... dinner. (ادرة الخليفة والمقطم ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. is preparing b. prepares c. was preparing d. had prepared
8. When I went to the workshop, the mechanic ..... my car, so I had to wait. (العامرية الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. repaired b. is repairing c. had repaired d. was repairing
9. While Haneen ..... her homework, the light went out. (بورسعيد - الفرقة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. did b. was doing c. does d. had done
10. .... the football match, he broke his leg.  
 a. While b. As c. During d. For
11. .... she was a little girl, she wanted to be an actress.  
 a. Before b. After c. When d. On
12. .... my sleep, I had a nightmare كابوس.  
 a. While b. As c. When d. During
13. The police arrested him as he ..... the scene of the crime.  
 a. had left b. was leaving c. was left d. has left
14. I ..... into a good family in the south of Egypt.  
 a. bore b. was born c. was bearing d. have been born
15. When Mariam was young, she used to ..... in London.  
 a. lives b. living c. live d. lived
16. On ..... the monkey, my baby was frightened.  
 a. was seeing b. had seen c. he was seeing d. seeing

## 2 Special cases

17. .... Alexandria, we met many of our old friends. (الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. While in b. While c. While were d. While we was
18. While ..... the street, Amira saw her friend. (الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. had crossed b. crossing c. being crossing d. was being crossed
19. I did some shopping during ..... to Port Said. (الدهو الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. visiting b. a visit c. visited d. was visiting
20. While I ..... ill, I lost a lot of weight and became so thin. (الفرقة الزينية ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. was b. was being c. am d. had been
21. Amira ..... well yesterday.  
 a. doesn't look b. didn't look c. wasn't looked d. looks
22. I ..... ready to take the exam, so I postponed it أجلته.  
 a. didn't be b. don't be c. wasn't d. wasn't being
23. .... at home when the fire started?  
 a. Were you b. You were c. Did you be d. Were you being
24. Everybody was at the office at 08:30 yesterday. The meeting ..... at nine o'clock.  
 a. starts b. has started c. was starting d. started
25. I wish I ..... a better time.  
 a. have b. had had c. was had d. had
26. I wish I ..... a better time last year.  
 a. have b. had had c. was had d. had
27. It's time you ..... back my camera.  
 a. gave b. give c. is given d. was given
28. I'd rather ..... here than in Cairo.  
 a. live b. lives c. lived d. had lived
29. I'd rather my grandma ..... here than in Cairo.  
 a. live b. lives c. lived d. had lived
30. Rokaya always ..... to her first school on foot.  
 a. goes b. went c. was gone d. is gone
31. Every day, I ..... my uncle when he was ill.  
 a. am visited b. visit c. was visited d. visited



32. \_\_\_\_\_ touching the hot pan, Sama cried in pain.  
 a. While b. On c. When d. During
33. \_\_\_\_\_ on holiday, I had a great time.  
 a. While b. After c. When d. During
34. I last met Ahmed while he \_\_\_\_\_ off some of his British friend at the airport.  
 a. saw b. was seeing c. had seen d. was seen
35. When I visited my sister, she \_\_\_\_\_ ill.  
 a. seemed b. was seeming c. had seemed d. was seemed
36. When the teacher entered the class, the pupils who \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of noise soon became calm.  
 a. were making b. were being made c. had been made d. were made
37. While climbing onto the mountain top, I \_\_\_\_\_ a strange animal.  
 a. was seen b. saw c. was seeing d. had seen
38. While we were travelling to Luxor, our car \_\_\_\_\_ down.  
 a. was breaking b. has broken c. had broken d. broke
39. I couldn't watch the film because my brother \_\_\_\_\_ a football match.  
 a. has watched b. was watching c. watched d. had watched
40. Abdu \_\_\_\_\_ the tree when he suddenly fell down.  
 a. had been climbed b. was climbing c. climbed d. was climbed
41. \_\_\_\_\_ sleeping, I had a nightmare.  
 a. While b. As c. When d. During

3 Check your understanding

42. Which of the following is correctly structured?  
 a. Was Sama being very tired? b. Was Sama very tired?  
 c. Did Sama be very tired? d. Sama was very tired?
43. I used to be overweight. This means I am \_\_\_\_\_ now.  
 a. fat b. overweight c. no longer thin d. not overweight

44. I wish I were taller. This means I .....  
 a. like my height b. don't like my height  
 c. would like to be short d. enjoy being short
45. "While on holidays, she read romantic novels". This is a ..... habit.  
 a. past b. present c. future d. current
46. I didn't answer the phone because I ..... my shower.  
 a. had taken b. was taken c. was taking d. had been taken
47. While drinking juice, Sama was chatting with her friends online. This means .....  
 a. Sama was drinking juice.  
 b. Sama's friends were drinking juice.  
 c. Sama and her friends were drinking juice.  
 d. Sama said her friends were drinking juice.
48. "During the football match, he fell and broke his leg." This means .....  
 a. he was a player in that match.  
 b. he was one of the fans watching that match on TV.  
 c. He was not interested in that match.  
 d. His leg was broken soon after the match.





# PART THREE

## Story Vocabulary, Skills and Advanced exercises



Lesson 13

### Part I

### Vocabulary

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات الرئيسية في قصة (Treasure Island)، بالإضافة للمهارات اللغوية الموجودة في الوحدة وقواعد ما بين السطور والجزء المخصص للطلاب المتقدمين.

تلويح

### 1 Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

أهم المفردات اللغوية من قصة (Treasure Island) كما يمكنكم النطق على نص القصة والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب.

تلويح

adventure (n)	مغامرة	hand(ed) (v)	يُعطي (يدويا) - يُسلم
blind (adj)	كفيف - أعمى	hide - hid - hidden (v)	يختبئ - يُخفي
Captain (n)	قبطان - قائد	inn (n)	حانة/نزل (الوكاندة)
cliff (n)	منحدر صخري	owe(ed) (v)	يدين بـ ... (عليه دين)
coin (n)	عملة معدنية	own(ed) (v)	يملك
dare(d) (v)	يجرؤ	pale (adj)	شاحب اللون
frightened (adj)	خائف	papers (n)	مستندات - جرائد
grab(bed) (v)	يجذب بشدة - يخطف	scar (n)	ندبة - أثر جرح
guard(ed) (n - v)	يحرس - حارس	sword (n)	سيف
gun (n)	بندقية	terrible (adj)	فظيع

### 2 Definitions تعريفات

cliff(n)	منحدر صخري	a steep piece of land or rock
dare(d) (v)	يجرؤ	to be brave enough to do something
grab (bed) (v)	يجذب بشدة	to take hold of someone or something with a sudden or violent movement
pale(adj)	شاحب اللون	light in colour
scar(n)	ندبة - أثر جرح	a mark on skin from a cut or wound
sword(n)	سيف	weapon with a long, sharp blade

### Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He was arrested because of his debts. He ..... money to several people.

a. lent b. borrowed c. owned

d. owed

2. I was frightened when I saw the man with a ..... on his face.

a. fly b. glasses c. scar d. blood

3. .... you tell him the news? Are you able to do that?

a. Dare b. Brave c. Able d. Courageous

4. A criminal was punished for killing a man with a .....

a. gun b. sun c. pun d. fun

5. The strict diet he follows has made him go ..... He has to consult his nutritionist.

a. healthy b. power c. short d. pale

6. A/An ..... is a weapon with a long, sharp blade.

a. gun b. mark c. fork d. sword

7. To ..... is to protect a person, place, or object by staying near them and watching them.

a. kill b. attack c. guard d. donate

8. .... means unable to see.

a. Blind b. Generous c. Frightened d. Disabled

9. A/An ..... is a small hotel, especially an old one in the countryside.

a. restaurant b. inn c. station d. corridor

10. To ..... is to take hold of someone or something with a sudden or violent movement.

a. scare b. arrest c. grab d. release

### Part II

### Grammatical Hints

So

1 نستخدم مع الصفة أو الظرف بمعنى جداً:

so + adj. / adv.

ex. - You can answer this question. It is not so difficult.

- We have enough time. I don't know why you are driving so quickly.

2 نستخدم (so + adj. + that) بمعنى (جدا لدرجة ان):

so + adj. + that + جملة

ex. - The exam was so easy that all students passed it.

- He ran so slowly that he came last in the race.



١ تُستخدم (so) كبديل لتكرار صفة أو ظرف بمعنى (هكذا / بهذه الطريقة) :  
 ex. - The weather is **cold** and I think it will remain **so** (= cold) for another two days.

٢ تُستخدم (so) كبديل لتكرار عبارة بمعنى (ذلك) :  
 ex. - A: Do you think Rokaya will come first?  
 B: I think **so**. (= I think she will come first.)

٣ تُستخدم (so) في الصيغة التالية بمعنى (وكذلك) :  
 فاعل + فعل مساعد أو ناقص + so  
 ex. - Mr Helmi felt sick after the meal and **so** did Mr Ashraf and Fady.  
 - My mother likes spicy food. **So** do I.

٤ تُستخدم (so) كرابط بين جملتين بمعنى (لذلك / لهذا السبب) ويأتي بعدها جملة نتيجة :  
 جملة نتيجة + لذلك so

ex. - Mr Abdulrahman was tired, **so** he went to bed early.

٥ تُستخدم (so that) كرابط بين جملتين بمعنى (حتى / لكي) ويأتي بعدها جملة نتيجة :  
 جملة غرض + لكي / حتى so that

ex. - I want to get an underwater camera **so that** I can take photos of the corals.

٦ أحياناً يُستخدم (inf. + ing) كبديل لعبارة وصل - لاحظ الصيغة التالية :  
 (inf. + ing) + جملة مبنية للمعلوم = who / which / that  
 ex. - I have a cousin **who works** for a tourist company.  
 = I have a cousin **working** for a tourist company.

٧ لاحظ استخدام (with) كبديل لعبارة وصل :  
 اسم + have / has / had + who / whom / which / that = with + noun  
 ex. - I saw a little girl **who has** green eyes and long hair.  
 = I saw a little girl **with** green eyes and long hair.  
 - They live in a tiny village **which has** no shops.

## when + ing

يمكن استخدام (inf. + ing) بعد (when) بمعنى (عند / حين) بشرط أن يكون الفاعل نفس فاعل الجملة الرئيسية :

when + جملة = when + (inf. + ing)

ex. - When I **was leaving** the office, I heard the manager shouting.  
 = When **leaving** the office, I heard the manager shouting.  
 (أنا كنت أغادر وسمعت المدير يصيح).  
 = When **leaving** the office, **the manager** was shouting.  
 (المدير هو من كان يصيح وهو يغادر المكتب).

## or / otherwise

يمكن استخدام (or) أو (otherwise) في جمل شرطية بمعنى (وإلا) بدلاً من (if / unless) :  
 ex. - You must study hard, **otherwise** you won't pass the exam.  
 = If you don't study hard, you won't pass the exam.  
 = Unless you study hard, you won't pass the exam.

## someone / anything ... + adj. صفة

تأتي الصفة بعد الكلمات التالية وليس قبلها :

someone	somebody	something	somewhere	anyone
anybody	anything	anywhere	everyone	everybody
everything	everywhere	no one	nobody	nothing
			nowhere	

ex. - I sat next to **someone important** on the plane. (Not: important someone)  
 - Children like **everything new**. (Not: new everything)

## It + verb to be + ... من ...

It + be + adj. صفة + to + inf. .... من ... أن ...  
 ex. - It is difficult to understand this lesson without your teacher's help.  
 - It is enjoyable to spend your free time in the club.

It + be + adj. صفة + ing. .... من ... أن ...  
 ex. - It is dangerous **walking** in the forest alone.

It + be + adj. صفة + of / for + subj. فاعل + to + inf. .... من ... أن ...  
 ex. - It is easy for Ayman to do this work on his own. بمفرده.  
 - It is kind of you to help me solve my problems.



## help + inf. / to + inf.

يمكن استخدام (to + inf.) او (inf.) بعد (help)

- ex. I helped Sama to do the cooking.  
= I helped Sama do the cooking.  
- The babysitter helps to look after the baby.  
= The babysitter helps look after the baby.

## busy

busy with + noun اسم

- ex. - The manager is busy with some clients. العملاء.

busy + (inf. + ing)

- ex. - We were busy doing the housework.

## verb + object + inf. / ing

الافعال الاتية يستخدم بعدها المصدر ليدل على متابعة الحدث بالكامل ويأتي بعدها (inf. + ing)  
ليدل على متابعة جزء من الحدث:

see - watch - hear - notice

- ex. - I saw the sun go down. (شاهدت الغروب بالكامل)  
- I saw the sun going down. (شاهدت جزء من الغروب)

## including

تستخدم (including) كحرف جر بمعنى (بما في ذلك / مشتملاً على):

Including بما في ذلك ≠ excluding فيما عدا

- ex. - I called all my family members, including my uncle who lives in Canada.

## stop

تستخدم (stop) بمعنى (يتوقف - يُوقف - يمنع) كالتالي:

stop + to + inf. + يتوقف (عما يفعله) لكي

- ex. - While Leen was doing homework, she stopped to make herself a cup of tea.

stop + (inf. + ing) يتوقف عن فعل شيء (بشكل دائم أو مؤقت)

- ex. - Ashraf stopped chatting with his online friends to revise for the exams.

stop + obj. مفعول + (from) + inf. + ing.

يمنع ... من القيام بـ ...

- ex. - Mr Ayman stopped us from talking to each other.  
= Mr Ayman stopped us talking to each other.

## Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ali is busy ..... his homework.  
a. to do b. did c. doing d. has done
- When ..... the bank, the manager was calling the police.  
a. leaving b. leaves c. leave d. had left
- Children like Tom and Jerry cartoons because they are ..... funny.  
a. such b. such a c. so d. so much
- She saw her father ..... for work earlier than usual.  
a. leaving b. to leaving c. leaves d. left
- It is nice ..... you to help her.  
a. in b. with c. for d. of
- I have to wear the uniform, ..... I won't take part in the game.  
a. as b. so c. otherwise d. if
- He writes so ..... that I can't read anything.  
a. bade b. badly c. good d. well
- They are busy ..... the preparations of the wedding.  
a. from b. to c. for d. with
- Can you suggest ..... to do?  
a. a something important b. an important something  
c. something important d. important something
- ..... talking to a client, the manager's mobile rang.  
a. It b. So c. During d. When
- Mum was ..... tired that she slept in her chair.  
a. so b. such c. very d. too
- Mr Magdi helped us ..... the experiment.  
a. doing b. do c. to doing d. done
- It is useful ..... us to have a work plan.  
a. at b. about c. for d. of



14. He has a villa ..... a swimming pool.  
a. of b. with c. into d. out of
15. He is very tired. He will remain ..... unless he gets enough free time.  
a. else b. also c. so that d. so
16. I heard a bird ..... beautifully before it flew away.  
a. to sing b. singing c. sings d. b&c
17. We have told ..... in the new project.  
a. everybody interested b. interested everybody c. an everybody interested d. an interested everybody
18. I gave her all the keys, ..... the front door key.  
a. in b. at c. from d. including
19. A: Is Omar ill? B: I think ..... He looks pale. <sup>شاحب</sup>  
a. it b. this c. so d. as
20. It was helpful ..... some days off. <sup>تأخذ إجازة</sup>  
a. to taking b. take c. takes d. to take
21. The horse ..... by the gate is mine.  
a. stand b. stands c. standing d. to stand
22. Marwa is hard-working and so .....  
a. I am b. am I c. I do d. do I
23. Shaza helped all of us ..... ready for the competition. <sup>المسابقة</sup>  
a. to getting b. got c. getting d. to get
24. Be careful ..... you might fall.  
a. if b. unless c. or d. and
25. I know the girl ..... the big nose.  
a. with b. in c. of d. to
26. I am full, ..... I can't eat anything else.  
a. so b. as c. because d. since

Part III

Language Skills

1 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات **تنويه**

Model Essay

\* Write an essay of about 150 words about voluntary work :

Voluntary work

What is voluntary work? Simply, voluntary work is work that you do for free. You do not expect or ask to be paid money or anything else for doing it. It is a type of help to the whole society or a certain group of people in society.

Voluntary work has always been very important. There are a lot of problems and challenges <sup>تحديات</sup> that face <sup>تواجه</sup> the society. The government cannot face all these problems and challenges without the people's help. We can say that the volunteering role is complementary <sup>مكمل</sup> to that of the government.

What can people volunteer? Most people would say money. That's not an accurate answer. Money is a donation not volunteering. Volunteering is mainly <sup>أساساً</sup> taking part in doing something useful or necessary for the society or the people living in it. Those who volunteer have enough time and experience with which they can help.

Voluntary work is very important. It helps with difficult problems. It creates a type of unity <sup>الاتحاد</sup> and strength in society. If you haven't volunteered so far, you had better try now.

2 Translation الترجمة

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات **تنويه**

1 Translate into Arabic :

1. Tourism is one of the chief sources of national income. Every citizen has to do their best to help attract more tourists.
2. Ecotourism is a type of tourism that pays great attention to the environment. It is based on enjoying tourists as well as protecting the environment.
3. Some species of animals are endangered in one way or another. Those face the danger of dying out like dinosaurs and other creatures.



UNIT 1

② Translate into English :

١. يوفر النشاط السياحي الآلاف من فرص العمل للمواطنين من مختلف الأعمار، لذا فتشجيع السياحة والعمل على جذب المزيد من السياح واجب وطني.
٢. تضع السياحة البيئية في الاعتبار الحفاظ على البيئة الطبيعية، لذلك يتم تحديد أعداء السياح والأنشطة التي يقومون بها والأماكن التي يزورونها.
٣. إن حماية الأنواع النادرة من الحيوانات والنباتات من الانقراض واجب بيئي، فهذه الكائنات تلعب دوراً حيوياً في التوازن البيئي.

Vocabulary related to translation texts مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختبار على الوحدة

بالشكل الأمثل	in the idealistic way	بالإضافة إلى	as well as
يستثمر	invest	انبناء	attention
فرص عمل	job opportunities	يجذب	attract
الأثار	monuments	التوازن	balance
الدخل القومي	national income	رئيسي	chief
ضروري	necessary	مواطن	citizen
الترويج	promotion	يخلق	create
نادر	rare	كائنات / مخلوقات	creatures
مصادر	sources	يُنكر	deny
أنواع / سلالات	species	واجب	duty
نوع	type	الانقراض	dying out
دورا حيويا	vital role	للغاية	extremely

Part IV Just for Advanced level

للفائقين فقط

هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب المتقدمين فقط.

تلويح

conserve

- conserve (d) (v) = preserve(d) (v) بحفظ / يصون / يحمي
- We should conserve the environment.
- conserve (d) (v) يرشد / يقتصد في
- Everyone must conserve energy. الطاقة
- conserve = jam (n) مربى
- I like peach conserve. مربى الخوخ
- conservation = preservation (n) حماية أو صيانة (البيئة الطبيعية)
- The conservation of wildlife البرية الحياة is very important.

conservation (n)

ترشيد / تقليل

- Water conservation is necessary.

- ولاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- nature conservation حماية الطبيعة
- wildlife conservation حماية الحياة البرية
- conservation groups جماعات حماية الطبيعة

conservationist (n)

شخص محافظ على أو صديق للبيئة

- He is one of the conservationists who work hard to protect lions from extinction الانقراض.

ecotourism

ecotourism (n)

سياحة صديقة للبيئة (تُراعى الحفاظ على البيئة والحياة الطبيعية)

- The Red Sea coast is a promising area in ecotourism.

ecotourist (n)

سائح صديق للبيئة

- Some areas are visited only by ecotourists.

danger

danger (n)

خطر

- Don't expose your life to danger.

endanger(ed) (v)

يُعرض للخطر

- Don't endanger your life.

endangerment (n)

التعرض للخطر

- Child endangerment is a crime. جريمة

endangered (adj)

مُعرض للخطر / للانقراض

- Some types of animals are endangered.

environment

the environment (n)

البيئة (الطبيعية)

- لاحظ ضرورة استخدام (the) قبل كلمة (environment) بهذا المعنى :

- Pollution endangers the environment. (Not: endangers environment)

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- protect / conserve the environment يحمي البيئة
- harm / damage / destroy the environment يدمر البيئة
- pollute the environment يُلوث البيئة
- the natural environment البيئة الطبيعية



• **environment (n)**

- In class, students must find a suitable **environment** to learn.

• **environmentally (adv)**

- Ecotourism is **environmentally** friendly.

**impact**• **impact (on / upon) (n)**

- My friends have a great **impact** on me.

• **impact (n)**

- The force of the **impact** made the car turn over.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- have an impact - make an impact

- a positive impact

- a negative / damaging / adverse impact

- a long-term / lasting impact

- a short-term / immediate impact

- an environmental impact

• **impact (ed)(on / upon) (v)**

- The internet has **impacted** on life in the modern age.

**isolated**• **isolate (d) ..... (from) (v)**

- Parents always try to **isolate** their children from bad friends.

• **isolate (d) ..... (from) (v)**

- This machine **isolates** butter from milk.

• **isolation (n)**

- No one can live in **isolation**.

• **isolation (n)**

- The **isolation** of the oasis gives it a unique culture.

• **isolated (adj)**

- He lives in an **isolated** village.

• **isolated (adj)**

- Working alone on a farm makes him feel **isolated**.

**crowded**• **crowded (with) (adj)**

- The house was **crowded** with guests.

• **overcrowded (with) (adj)**

- In feasts, streets and parks are **overcrowded**.

• **overcrowding (n)**

- **Overcrowding** is a serious problem in cities.

• **crowd (n)**

- There's a **crowd** of students near the school gate.

• **crowd (ed) (v)**

- Thousands of people **crowded** to welcome the winning team.

• **crowd in on + شخص**

- Fears **crowded in on** her and she was very sad.

**exotic**• **exotic (adj)**

- This park has some **exotic** plants.

- I saw some **exotic** birds on the beach.

**lean**• **lean - (leant - leant) / (leaned - leaned) (v)**

- He **leaned** and looked down from the balcony.

• **lean ... (on / against) (v)**

- I **leaned** against the wall.

- He **leant** his bicycle against a tree.

• **lean (adj)**

- Abdulrahman is tall and **lean**.

- lean years - سنوات الضنك - lean meat - لحوم قليلة الشحم

- lean production - انتاج مقتصد

• **leaning (adj)**

- He visited the **Leaning** Tower of Pisa.

**material**• **material (n)**

- Building **materials** have become expensive.

• **material (n)**

- She bought a good blouse made of soft **material**.

- This **material** is made of Egyptian cotton.

• **material (adj)**

- He is only interested in **material** benefit.

• **material (adj)**

- The police have **material** evidence against him.



spicy

حريف / حار - منبيل بالبهارات

- **spicy (adj)**  
- I like spicy sandwiches. نوابل / بهارات
- **spice - spices (n)**  
- Fast food restaurants depend on spices to make food more delicious. اهتمام / إثارة (كلمة لا تُعد)
- **spice (n)**  
- Our teacher of English usually adds spice to the reading lesson. يتنبل .....
- **spice (ed) ... with (v)**  
- Mum never forgets to spice the food with hot pepper. يُضفي نوع من الإثارة أو التنوع
- **spice (ed) up (v)**  
- Ahmed's funny talks spiced (up) the long train journey. أحاديث

sustainable

يُحافظ على / يُبقى على

- **sustain (ed) (v)**  
- It is important that a teacher sustains his student's interest. اهتمام
- **sustain (ed) (v)**  
- Their company sustained some losses. الخسائر يتعرض لضرر
- **sustainable (adj)**  
- Bicycles are sustainable means of transport. ملائم للبيئة / صديق للبيئة
- **sustainable (adj)**  
- The government wants to achieve a sustainable economic growth. واثم / مُستدام / قابل للبقاء

swell

يتورم / يلتهب

- **swell - swelled - swollen (up) (v)**  
- He hit his head and soon it swelled (up). يتزايد / يزداد في العدد أو الكمية
- **swell - swelled - swollen (to) (v)**  
- Water in the river has swollen because of the floods. الفيضانات

- لاحظ التعبيرات والتلازمات التالية :

- swell with pride يشمر بالفخر الشديد
- swell with anger يستشيط غضباً
- swell-headed = big-headed مغرور
- **swelling (in / on) (n)**  
- She has a painful swelling in her hand. ورم / التهاب (في)
- **swollen (adj)**  
- His knee is swollen. متورم / ملتهب

trek

- **trek = hike (n)**  
- We went on a long trek(hike) through the countryside. رحلة طويلة (غالباً سيراً على الأقدام كنوع من المغامرة)

- **trek(ked) = hike(d) (v)**  
- We trekked (hiked) through the countryside. يقوم برحلة طويلة وصعبة سيراً

unique

- **unique (adj)**  
- Everyone has unique fingerprints. فريد من نوعه بصمات أصابع
- **unique (adj)**  
- We had a unique time in France. مُتميز / رائع جداً

- لا تُستخدم الصفة (unique) في صيغ المفارقة والتفضيل :

- This horse is more unique than that one. (X)

- لاحظ التعبير التالي :

- **be unique to**  
- The Komodo dragon is unique to Indonesia. It doesn't live anywhere else. يتفرد به / لا يوجد إلا في

volunteer

- **volunteer (n)**  
- A lot of volunteers work for charities. شخص متطوع (يقوم بعمل دون أجر)

- **volunteer (ed) (to / for) (v)**  
- Yara volunteered for looking after the baby. يتطوع - يعرض القيام بعمل دون أجر

- **voluntary (adj)**  
- She does voluntary work for a hospital. تطوعي (دون أجر)

voluntourism

- **voluntourism (n)**  
- We should encourage voluntourism because tourists enjoy their time and help the people or the environment. السياحة الخيرية (أحد أنواع السياحة التي يقوم بها السائح بعمل بدون أجر)
- **voluntourist (n)**  
- Some voluntourists helped treat poor patients. سائح يقوم بعمل خيري في الأماكن التي يزورها



Note these idioms

- over the moon = very excited or happy  
- Mum was over the moon when she heard that I came first.
- be stuck = be forced to stay in a place  
- I'm stuck here at home and I have nothing to do.
- loads of = a lot of  
- I didn't go to the office yesterday, so I have loads of jobs to do.

1 Prefixes

Prefix	Function	Examples
eco-	مُتعلّق بالبيئة	ecotourism ecofriendly ecology ecologist ecosystem
en-	تُكوّن فعل	endanger
teen-	بين سن ١٣ - ١٩	teenager
under-	تحت	underwater

2 suffixes

Suffix	Function	Examples
-ing	تُكوّن اسم / صفة	relaxing (adj) overcrowding (n)
-ed	تُكوّن صفة	crowded endangered
-ism	تُكوّن اسم	tourism
-ist	تُكوّن اسم فاعل / صفة	tourist

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

الترتيب : التدرجات الثانية يليها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Lung diseases are some of the problems of pollution .....  
a. protects b. brings c. has d. takes
- Never interrupt us while the meeting is ..... progress.  
a. for b. with c. on d. in
- ..... is the air, water, and land on Earth, which is affected by man's activities.  
a. Orngutan b. Orngutang  
c. Environment d. The environment
- Children need to be brought up in a warm family .....  
a. island b. Sahara c. environment d. weather
- My first teacher has ..... a long-term impact on my life.  
a. made b. done c. learned d. protected
- Thoughts ..... in on me and I found it impossible to sleep.  
a. encouraged b. isolated c. crowded d. endangered
- This is a /an ..... type of plant here in England. It is common in tropical areas only.  
a. conventional b. exotic c. sociable d. spicy
- My granddad sat in his armchair before ..... his stick against the wall.  
a. impacting b. isolating c. crowding d. leaning
- Some relations are now based on ..... benefit. People usually think how they can benefit from you.  
a. material b. spiritual c. virtual d. emotional
- He always adds ..... to our journeys with his funny comments.  
a. treks b. spices c. spice d. isolation



## الإجابة والتوضيح

No.	Answer & Explanation
1. b	الفعل (brings) هو الوحيد من بين الاختيارات الذي يُكوّن تعبير ذو معنى مناسب للسباق مع (problems)، فنحن نقول (bring problems) بمعنى (يتسبب في مشاكل)، أما (has problems) فتعني (لديه مشكلات) وهذا لا يتفق مع المعنى المقصود
2. d	التعبير (in progress) يعني (مُتَعَدِّد) وهو يصف حدث مستمر لحظة الكلام
3. d	الاختياران (a / b) خاطئان ولا يعطيان أى معنى فى هذا السياق، والاختيار (d) صحيح لأن كلمة (environment) بمعنى (البيئة الطبيعية) لابد أن يسبقها (the)
4. c	كلمة (environment) هنا تعنى (جو، مُحِيط، وَنْط، وَضْع) وليس البيئة الطبيعية
5. a	الفعل (made) هو الوحيد من بين الإختيارات الذى يُكوّن تعبير ذو معنى مناسب للسباق مع (impact)، فنحن نقول (made a long-term impact) بمعنى (ترك أثراً عميقاً)
6. c	التعبير (thoughts crowded in on me) يعنى (تراحمت عليّ الأفكار أى أنها شغلتنى جداً)
7. b	النبات الذى يكون شائعاً فى المناطق الاستوائية فقط لابد أن يكون (exotic) بمعنى (غريب / غير شائع) فى إنجلترا ذات الطقس البارد
8. d	الفعل (lean) هنا يعنى (يستند)
9. a	كلمة (material) هنا هى الإختيار الصحيح بمعنى (مادى / خاص بالمال / غير معنوي)
10. c	التعبير (add spice to) يعنى فى هذه الجملة (يضيف نوع من الإثارة والجاذبية) وليس (يضيف التوابل)

## Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه: التدرّبات التالية تتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- ..... my arrival home, I saw that no one was there.  
a. During b. On c. While d. As
- ..... on holiday, I met a lot of my old friends.  
a. During b. Just as c. While d. As
- My elder brother ..... watching a movie on his computer last night.  
a. used to enjoy b. was enjoying c. enjoyed d. would enjoy
- I waited at the door for ten minutes until he ..... it at last.  
a. opened b. had opened c. has opened d. was opening
- I had my lunch. After that, I ..... to bed.  
a. had gone b. went c. go d. gone
- Don't open the door until I ..... you.  
a. tell b. told c. had told d. was told
- Rodayna ..... to bed. Before that, she finished her homework.  
a. go b. went c. had gone d. going
- While ....., the baby was laughing to the doctor.  
a. examining b. was examining  
c. being examined d. having examined
- ..... to hospital in the ambulance, the injured man was put on a ventilator جهاز تنفس صناعي.  
a. While taking b. When taking  
c. On taking d. While being taken
- "During the football match, he fell asleep." This means .....  
a. he was a player in that match  
b. the match might have been boring  
c. that match was very exciting  
d. he watched the whole match



## No. Answer &amp; Explanation

1.	b	- لا يمكن استخدام (During / As) لأن الوصول حدث لحظي لا يتطلب استمرارية - لا يمكن استخدام (While) لأنه لا يأتي بعدها اسم ولأن الوصول حدث لحظي لا يتطلب استمرارية - لا شك أن (On) هي الإختيار الصحيح بمعنى (عند / في لحظة)
2.	c	- لا يمكن استخدام (During / Just as / As) لأنه لا يأتي بعدهم (حرف جر + اسم) - تعتبر (While) هي الإختيار الصحيح لأنه يمكن أن يأتي بعدها (حرف جر + اسم)
3.	c	- لا يمكن استخدام (used to enjoy / would enjoy) لأن العادة لا ترتبط بفترة قصيرة (last night) - لا يمكن استخدام (was enjoying) لأن الفعل (enjoy) لا يأتي في الأزمنة المستمرة بهذا المعنى
4.	a	- تُعتبر (opened) هي الإجابة الصحيحة وليس (had opened) لأن الانتظار سبق فتح الباب وليس العكس - لا يمكن استخدام (has opened) لأن زمن الجملة الرئيسية ماضي بسيط (waited) - لا يمكن استخدام (was opening) لأن فتح الباب في الغالب حدث لحظي لا يتطلب استمرارية
5.	b	- لا يمكن استخدام (had gone) بل نستخدم (went) لأنه بعد (After that) يأتي الحدث الثاني (ماضي بسيط) إذا كان زمن الحديث ماضي - لا يمكن استخدام (go) لأن السياق ماضي - لا يمكن استخدام التصريف الثالث (gone) كفعل دون فعل مساعد قبلها
6.	a	- إذا سبق (until) جملة أمر فإن زمن الجملة التي بعدها يكون مضارع بسيط أو تام (tell / have told)
7.	b	- الحدث المذكور قبل (Before that) هو الحدث الثاني وليس الحدث الأول، لذلك نستخدم الماضي البسيط (went) وليس الماضي التام (had gone)
8.	c	- لا يمكن استخدام (examining / having examined) لأن فاعل الجملة الثانية (the baby) لم يكن يفحص نفسه - لا يمكن استخدام (was examining) لعدم وجود فاعل بعد (while) - الإختيار الصحيح (being examined) لأنه من المنطقي أن فاعل الجملة الثانية (the baby) هو مفعول الجملة الأولى وهو من كان يُفحص
9.	d	- بنفس فكرة الجملة السابقة فإن مفعول الجملة الثانية (the injured man) كان يُؤخذ إلى المستشفى (أي أنه مفعول ولا بد من اختيار المبني للمجهول)
10.	b	- هذا هو الإختيار الوحيد الصحيح والمنطقي حسب معنى الجملة

## Test on Unit 1

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تدريب

يمكنك حل الاختبار وتصويبه إلكترونياً



## Part One

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- "He lives in an isolated area". The word "isolated" can be replaced by the synonyms .....  
a. close b. nearby c. remote  
d. neighbouring e. faraway
- The antonyms of "pros" are .....  
a. cons b. coins c. demerits  
d. cans e. cares

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

- ..... work is what people do for no money.  
a. Culture b. Hard c. Voluntary d. Bank
- Tourism is ..... when we protect touristic places.  
a. crowded b. sustainable c. unique d. noisy
- The police have so far failed to ..... down the criminal.  
a. track b. tick c. trek d. truck
- Penguins are ..... animals. They may die out soon.  
a. colourful b. dangerous c. endangered d. extinct
- He was sent to prison as he ..... a lot of money to the bank.  
a. won b. gained c. owed d. earned
- The thief has a ..... on his face.  
a. scar b. scare c. scary d. scaring
- When he went on holiday, he always ..... a lot of photos.  
a. takes b. have taken c. took d. has taken
- We ..... an interesting film last night.  
a. watched b. had watched c. watch d. have watched
- I'd rather you ..... this car. It's a bargain.  
a. bought b. will buy c. to buy d. buy
- When I was in Sharm El-Sheik, I ..... to the beach a lot.  
a. have gone b. was going c. would go d. went



13. While Rokaya was cooking lunch, her brother .....  
 a. had slept b. sleeping c. was sleeping d. has slept
14. I couldn't answer the phone because I .....  
 a. praying b. was praying c. prayed d. have prayed
15. While we ..... on our holiday, we played football a lot.  
 a. have been b. were c. were being d. being
16. I ..... playing football on Fridays.  
 a. was used to b. used to c. has used to d. became used

• Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Trees are beautiful and useful gifts of nature. They are great friends of man. Trees give us flowers, fruits, timber, bamboo, fuels, etc. We can rest under the cool shade of a tree. We get wood from the trees to make furniture, doors, and windows, etc. Trees are also a great source of materials for paper, rubber, gums, herbs and medicine plants. Forests bring clouds and cause rainfall. Trees prevent soil erosion. They protect us from severe weather. Trees are a part and parcel of earthly life. All life directly or indirectly owes its existence to them. Trees release oxygen which we need for our life. They also absorb carbon dioxide gas. Many living species live in trees. Trees form natural habitats of many animals, birds and insects. Trees help make the land fertile. We get good crops out of fertile land. They are the source of the fruits and flowers. They offer us cool shade during summer. During rainy season, we take shelter under trees. Trees and plants are the sources of many life-saving drugs. They prevent land erosion and guard us against pollution. Thus, trees keep up the ecological balance. Trees protect us from inclement wind, too. Seeds, nuts and fruits are food sources for humans and animals. Trees protect the biodiversity of the ecosystem. Tree resins are used in producing varnishes. Essential oils derived from trees are used in medical and aroma industry. Thus, trees play an important role in our life. Felling of trees disturbs the ecosystem. We should preserve trees and plants with great care.

17. Which of the following is NOT correct?  
 a. Trees help keep ecological balance.  
 b. Trees take in oxygen  
 c. Trees provide life-saving drugs.  
 d. Trees protects the biodiversity.
18. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?  
 a. Trees b. Plants c. Insects d. Fruits

19. The word ..... in the passage means "wood used for making things".  
 a. timber b. fuels c. stretch d. involve
20. Give a suitable title to the passage.  
 a. The cool shade of trees b. Many living species live in trees  
 c. Trees are useful gifts of nature d. Essential oils derived from trees
21. How are trees useful in medicine?  
 a. Essential oils derived from trees are used in medicinal and aroma industry.  
 b. Tree resins are used in producing varnishes.  
 c. Trees release oxygen which we need for our life.  
 d. Trees help make the land fertile and suitable for growing crops.  
 e. Trees are sources of many life-saving drugs.
22. How do you think life would be if there were no trees?  
 a. There would be a lot of forests.  
 b. They would offer us cool shade during summer.  
 c. They would keep up the ecological system.  
 d. It would disturb the eco-system.  
 e. It would disturb the ecological system.
23. All life directly or indirectly owes its existence to .....  
 a. many animals b. trees c. materials  
 d. care e. plants

### Part Two

1. **Translate into Arabic :**  
 The conservation of the environment is a must to protect the future of life on earth. We have to protect it or we will surely die out.
2. **Translate into English :**  
 إن أحد أسباب الهجرة من القرى إلى المدن هو الوضع الاقتصادي، فالعمل في الزراعة لا يوفر نفس الدخل الذي يحصل عليه الفرد في المجالات الأخرى.
3. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on :**

### How to protect the environment

• للتدريب على أشكال مختلفة من قطع الفهم بنظام أسئلة MRQ، هناك الأسئلة.



# UNIT 2

## Supporting the community

SB pages 16 : 25 WB pages 94 : 99

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

### Reading :

A text about Egyptian people who help their communities

### Writing :

write a blog on a famous person; a biography of Dr Leelah Hazzah

### Listening :

An interview with Dr Leelah Hazzah

### Speaking :

Discussion about helping people; Making arrangements

### Language :

Present simple and past simple; Present simple passive

### Life skills :

Empathy



موقع  
التفوق

AltFwok.com

• بنك الأسئلة للامتحان اليومية والاسبوعية  
• ملحق المهارات اللغوية  
• تدريبات للأزهر الشريف وفي بنك الأسئلة  
• Dictation وفي ملحق بنك الأسئلة

الامتحان  
الأسبوعي

# PART ONE

LESSONS

# 1 & 2

SB pages 16 : 19 WB pages 94 & 95



## Part I

## Vocabulary

تتولى من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

agreement(n)	موافقة - اتفاق	iron(ed) (n - v)	حديد - مكواة - يكرى
blood(n)	الدم	level(n)	مستوي / نسبة
blood donation(n)	التبرع بالدم	long-term(adj)	طويل المدى
blood pressure(n)	ضغط الدم	pressure(n)	منغص
desire(d) (n - v)	رغبة - يرغب	prestige (n - adj)	نفوذ / هيئة / رفاة -
donate(d) (v)	يتبرع	roar(ed) (v - n)	عالي الجودة
donation(n)	التبرع	role model(n)	بزار - زئير
donor(n)	متبرع	model(n)	قدوة - نموذج يُحتذى
generous(adj)	كريم - سخّي	speed(n)	نموذج
intelligence(adj)	ذكاء	support(ed) (n - v)	سرعة
iron level(n)	نسبة الحديد في الدم		دعم / مساندة - يدعم
transplant(ed) (n - v)	نقل / زراعة أعضاء		

تتولى من لفهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

ability(n)	قدرة	inspire(d) (v)	يلهم - يحث / يحفز
admire(d) (v)	يُعجب بـ	instead(adv)	بدلاً من ذلك
amongst(preposition)	بين	intelligence(n)	الذكاء
be based in	يوجد مقره في	knowledge(n)	المعرفة
belief(n)	اعتقاد	maker(n)	صانع
benefit(ted) (n - v)	فائدة - يستفيد	movement(n)	حركة
biography(n)	السيرة الذاتية	name(d) (n - v)	اسم - يُسمى - يذكر اسم
cancer(n)	مرض السرطان	nickname(n)	لقب - اسم شهرة
chance(n)	فرصة	persuade(d) (v)	يُقنع
charity(n)	جمعية خيرية - العمل الخيري	praise(d) (n - v)	المديح - يُثنى على /
check(ed) (v)	يفحص / يتحقق	purpose(n)	يتمتع
compassion(n)	رحمة	recognize(d) (v)	غرض
			يتعرف على



UNIT 2

conservation(n)	حماية البيئة - صيانة	regular(adj)	معتاد / مألوف - منظم
conservationist(n)	شخص يهتم بحماية البيئة	relationship(n)	علاقة
culture(n)	الثقافة	research(ed) (n-v)	بحث - يجري أبحاث
cost(adj)	حساب - حسابي	respect(ed) (n-v)	احترام - يحترم
documentary (n-adj)	سيرة ذاتية - وثائقي	roleplay (n-v)	(اللعبة) تمثيل الأدوار - يُمثل
final(n)	النهائيات	save(d) (v)	يُخزّن / يوفّر - يُفد
kindness(n)	قراءة / إعجاب / إعجاب شديد	score(d) (v-n)	يُحرز / يسجل - النقاط
kindness(n)	نواصير	share(d) (v)	المسجلة
generation(n)	جيل	soccer(n)	يشارك / ينقسم
go - went - gone (v)	جاء / ذهب	succeed(ed) (v)	كرة القدم
grow up	نما - يكبر / يتفرع	task(n)	يتبع
happiness(n)	السعادة	teenager(n)	مراهق
hometown(n)	مستقر / أصل	the wild	البرية
hunter(n)	صائد	traditionally(adv)	بشكل تقليدي
illness(n)	مرض	view(n)	وجهة نظر / رأي - منظر
income(n)	دخل - مورد رزق	volunteer(n)	متطوع
injure(d) (v)	جرح - يؤذي	wish(ed) (v-n)	يتمنى - أمنية
injured (adj)	جرح - مصاب		
reduce(d) (v)	يقلل / يُخفّض		

3 Definitions تعريفات

تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من لوائح التعلّم المتوسطة - صمّم دة

Memorise	Understand
agreement	عقد - اتفاقية an official document that people sign to show that they have agreed to something
blood pressure	ضغط الدم the force with which blood travels through your body
community	المجتمع all the people who live in the same area, city etc.
desire	رغبة a strong hope or wish
donate	يسرع to allow some blood or a body organ to be removed from your body so that it can be used in a hospital to help someone who is ill or injured
generous	كرم willing to give money, spend time etc., in order to help people or give them pleasure
intelligence	الذكاء having a high level of mental ability, and good at thinking clearly and understanding ideas

iron level	مستوى الحديد the iron is a chemical element (symbol) which exists in small amounts in the blood. The level is the amount or quantity of iron presence وجود
long-term	طويل المدى continuing for a long period of time, or relating to what will happen in the distant future
prestige	تفوق / هبة / فخافة the respect and admiration that someone or something gets because of their success or important position مكانة in society
roar	زئير - يزار (to make) a deep, loud noise made by an animal such as a lion, or by someone's voice
role model	قدوة someone whose behaviour, attitudes, etc. people try to copy because they admire them
transplant	زرعة أعضاء - نقل the operation of moving an organ, piece of skin etc. from one person to another

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- My father is very ..... He always donates money to many charities.  
a miserly b cruel c generous d dirty (السخاء ٢٠٢٢)
- Salah's skill provides a ..... model for inspiring young people.  
a reel b rule c role d roll (نموذج ٢٠٢٢)
- People can ..... to the Egyptian Food Bank to help others.  
a donate b steal c support d call (يؤيد ٢٠٢٢ - التبرع الغذائية بنك ٢٠٢٢)
- High blood pressure is considered a ..... disease.  
a long-term b medium-term c short-term d first-term (الضغط ٢٠٢٢)
- It's too cold and I've no ..... to visit anyone.  
a desire b identity c problem d prestige (الزيارة ٢٠٢٢)
- Blood ..... should be measured regularly.  
a pleasure b treasure c pressure d donation (الدم ٢٠٢٢)



7. The child with a diseased kidney will have a transplant, but we are waiting for a .....  
 a. borer b. mower c. owner d. donor (المنيا - ملوي ٢٠٢٠)
8. Sir Magdi Jacob's centre for heart in Aswan is famous for heart .....  
 a. transports b. transplants c. plants d. planets (المنيا - ملوي ٢٠٢٠)
9. Good education, money and power ..... give people .....  
 a. prestige b. hometown c. conservation d. monitor (المنيا - ملوي ٢٠٢٠)
10. First, you need to be checked carefully before blood ..... to make sure you are healthy.  
 a. donate b. donor c. donation d. donated
11. He gets much ..... from his brother.  
 a. support b. supports c. supporter d. supported
12. We heard a lion ....., so we returned quickly to the car.  
 a. transplanting b. tracking c. printing d. roaring
13. The driver paid a fine because he was driving at a very high .....  
 a. support b. speed c. transplant d. prestige
14. Iron ..... is the amount of iron stored in the body.  
 a. track b. clothes c. tool d. level
15. To succeed and reach your goal, you need to be very .....  
 a. intelligent b. intelligence c. stupid d. stupidity
16. What is the suffix which can be added to form the noun from the verb "agree"?  
 a. -tion b. -ness c. -ion d. -ment (إدارة الخليفة والمقطر ٢٠٢٢)

## 2 Important Vocabulary

17. Mohammed Salah's ..... is "the Happiness Maker".  
 a. surname b. first name c. nickname d. pen name (فتح الله كيرة الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
18. I ..... Aswan in winter as its weather is fantastic then.  
 a. hate b. dislike c. admire d. leave (إدارة اسوان - أحمد طه حسين المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
19. Eight teams play the quarter ..... of a championship.  
 a. rule b. final c. beginning d. role (ادفو الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
20. I have a friend who works in a big company ..... in Kuwait.  
 a. laid b. lied c. based d. basis (اسوهاج - طما ٢٠٢٠)
21. My parents always ..... me when I do well at school.  
 a. praise b. apologise c. bully d. defend (البحيرة - كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٠)

22. It's my father's success at basketball that ..... me to play the game.  
 a. inspired b. aspired c. conspired d. respire (المنيرة - كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٠)
23. Salah is known as the happiness .....  
 a. founders b. volunteers c. conservationists d. maker
24. Unfortunately, the old man died after a short .....  
 a. fun b. happiness c. condition d. illness (المنيا - ملوي ٢٠٢٠)
25. It was only later in her life that she found ..... and peace of mind.  
 a. happy b. happiness c. sad d. sadness (المنيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٠)
26. My father spares no efforts ..... me that having a job would give me a prestige.  
 a. purchase b. insulate c. persuade d. propose (المنيرة - غرب المنصورة ٢٠٢٠)
27. Wildlife ..... is necessary to stop species ..... from dying out.  
 a. pressure b. livestock c. intelligence d. conservation
28. .... are not paid for the work they do.  
 a. Founders b. Volunteers c. Conservationists d. Teenagers
29. He ..... all other runners and won the race.  
 a. ran past b. researched c. grew up d. reduced
30. His ..... is so low that he has to look for a second job.  
 a. compassion b. documentary c. income d. task
31. I look forward to returning to my ..... of Assuit where I was born and educated.  
 a. workplace b. hometown c. track d. support
32. As a striker, you are supposed to ..... goals, not to lose the ball.  
 a. miss b. realise c. reach d. score
33. Tourism ..... national income .....  
 a. aim b. aims c. benefit d. benefits
34. As a ....., he has great interest in looking after the environment.  
 a. founder b. volunteer c. conservationist d. teenager
35. I feel ..... for the old and the sick.  
 a. compassion b. documentary c. income d. task
36. I think I won't ..... Rokaya. She was a little child when I last saw her 20 years ago.  
 a. reduce b. aim c. recognize d. transplant



UNIT 2

37. She pays ..... visits to her old grandma in Suez.  
a. safe b. charitable c. regular d. missing
38. I will lend you the money even if I know you don't have the ..... to pay it back.  
a. able b. ability c. inability d. disability
39. Mr Mohammed gave each student a/an ..... to do.  
a. compassion b. documentary c. income d. task
40. My uncle is one of the ..... of this charity. They started it in 1998.  
a. founders b. volunteers c. conservationists d. teenagers
41. When I ....., I hope I will be able to help myself and my community.  
a. run past b. research c. grow up d. respect

3 Definitions

42. A/An ..... is a strong hope or wish.  
a. desire b. track c. will d. ability
43. To ..... is to allow some blood or a body organ to be removed from your body so that it can be used in a hospital to help someone who is ill or injured.  
a. reduce b. protect c. score d. donate
44. .... means willing to give money, spend time etc., in order to help people or give them pleasure.  
a. Intelligent b. Responsible c. Generous d. Safe
45. .... means continuing for a long period of time, or relating to what will happen in the distant future.  
a. Short-term b. Long-term c. Forever d. For good
46. A ..... is someone whose behaviour, attitudes, etc. people try to copy because they admire them.  
a. donor b. biologist c. roleplay d. role model
47. .... is the respect and admiration that someone or something gets because of their success or important position in society.  
a. Prestige b. Generosity c. Support d. Ability
48. A/An ..... is an official document that people sign to show that they have agreed to something.  
a. admiration b. agreement c. pressure d. donation
49. A ..... means a deep, loud noise made by an animal such as a lion, or by someone's voice  
a. success b. killing c. roar d. livestock

Part II Vocabulary Study

توليه ساعد فاعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء فسيماً بأشكال جيد ودل لتدريباته

Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

check	blood pressure	بقيس ضغط الدم	have	a desire to	لديه رغبة أن
	iron level	بقيس نسبة الحديد في الدم		health benefits	ذو فوائد صحية
donate	blood	يتبرع بالدم	have	health problems	يعاني من مشكلات صحية
	money	يتبرع بالمال		long-term illness	يعاني من مرض مزمن
get	a job	يحصل على عمل	make	nothing to do	ليس لديه ما يقوم به
	angry with	يغضب من		a game	لديه مباراة
give	... a chance	يمنح ... فرصة	make	the ability to	لديه القدرة على
	a title	يُلقَّب - يُسَمَّى		friends	يُكوِّن صداقات
	blood	يتبرع بالدم		movements	يقوم بحركات
	work / jobs	يُشغَل	take	part in	يشارك في

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
admire	يُفجَّب به
benefit	فائدة - ميزة
blood donation	التبرع بالدم
conservation	حماية البيئة
desire	رغبة - يرغب
donate	يتبرع
generous	كريم - سخي - جواد
happiness	السعادة
long-term	طويل الأمد
long-term illness	مرض مزمن
praise	يُثنى على - يمتدح
prestige	نفوذ / هيبة / وجاهة
reduce	يُقلَّل / يُخفِّض
take part in	يشارك في
praise / approve of / appreciate / respect	
use, advantage, merit	
giving blood	
preservation	
wish / preference	
give, supply	
open-handed, big-hearted	
joy, pleasure	
durable, lasting	
serious illness	
appreciate, flatter	
influence, esteem	
cut down, decrease	
participate - join - share	



UNIT 2

3 Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
admire	يُعجب به	disapprove of / scorn	يستفح - يستنكر
benefit	نافعة - ميزة	harm, disadvantage, demerit	ضرر - سلبية
donate	يسرع	keep / receive	يحفظ به / يتسلم
generous	كريم - سخى - حواد	mean, selfish, miser, stingy	بخيل / أناني
happiness	السعادة	sadness, displeasure, depression	حزن - ضيق - اكتئاب
intelligence	الذكاء	stupidity / dullness	الغباء
long-term	طويل المدي	short-term, temporary	قصير المدي - مؤقت
praise	يشي على - يمدح	criticise, disapprove of	ينتقد - يستهجن
reduce	يقلل / يخفض	increase, expand	يزيد
regular	معتاد / مأثور - منتظم	irregular / uneven	غير مأثور - شاذ

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary

admire		
admire(d) (v)	يُعجب به / يوقه	- I <b>admire</b> Salah as a footballer.
admiration (n)	الإعجاب	- I have a lot of <b>admiration</b> for Salah as a footballer.
admirer (n)	مُعجب	- I am an <b>admirer</b> of Salah as a footballer.
admirable (adj)	مثير للإعجاب	- Salah is an <b>admirable</b> footballer.
donate		
donate(d) (v)	يسرع	- It is good to <b>donate</b> money to charities.
donation (n)	التبرع	- The <b>donation</b> of money to charities is something good.
donor (n)	مُتبرع	- It is good to be a <b>donor</b> for charities.
intelligence		
intelligence (n)	الذكاء	- He is famous for his <b>intelligence</b> .
intelligent (adj)	ذكي	- He is <b>intelligent</b> .
intelligently (adv)	بذكاء	- He behaves <b>intelligently</b> .

generous		
generosity (n)	الكرم / السخاء	- <b>Generosity</b> is good behaviour.
generous (adj)	كريم / سخى - وفير	- It is good to be <b>generous</b> .
generously (adv)	يسخاء	- It is good to behave <b>generously</b> .

5 Expressions & Idioms

around the world	حول العالم	happiness maker	صانع السعادة
away on holiday	مُسافر في إجازة	in a friendly way	بشكل وودود
be a role model to	يكون قدوة لـ	long-term illness	مرض مُرمن
be badly injured	يُصاب بشدة	love-hate relationship	علاقة حب أو كراهية
blood donors	المتبرعين بالدم	regular blood transplants	نقل دم بشكل منتظم
community centre	مركز اجتماعي	send Egypt to the World Cup finals	يُبعث مصر لنهائيات كأس العالم
earn regular money	يحصل على دخل منتظم	the World Blood Donor Day	اليوم العالمي للتبرع بالدم
giving blood	التبرع بالدم		
working together	العمل معاً		

6 Verb + Preposition

admire ... for	يُعجب به ... بسبب	praise ... for	يمدح ... بسبب
donate ... for / to	يتبرع به ... لـ	run past	يسبق في الجري
find out (about)	يكشف - يعرف (عن)	send (...) to	يُرسل (...) إلى / يوجه (...) لـ
hear (...) about	يسمع (...) عن	turn from ... to	يتحول من ... إلى ...
hear of	يسمع به / يعرف عن	work with	يعمل مع / علي
move to	ينتقل إلى		

7 Clear the confusion

biography - autobiography

- **biography** السيرة الشخصية (يكتبها شخص عن حياة شخص آخر)
  - I read the **biography** of President Sadat written by Anees Mansour.
- **autobiography** السيرة الشخصية (يكتبها الشخص نفسه عن حياته)
  - Al-Ayyam is Taha Hussein's **autobiography**.



blood transplant - blood transfusion

- blood transplant (n)  
عملية زرع الخلايا الجذعية (التي تنتج الدم)  
- It is not easy for a surgeon to do a blood transplant.  
نقل الدم (من شخص سليم لشخص مريض أو مصاب)
- blood transfusion (n)  
- This patient needs blood transfusion.

charity

- charity (n)  
جمعية خيرية (اسم يُعد)  
- There are some charities that help poor people.  
العمل الخيري - التبرعات (اسم لا يُعد)
- charity (n)  
- Salah donates money to charity in Egypt.

forename - surname - pen name - nickname

- forename = first name (n)  
الاسم الأول (اسم الشخص نفسه)  
- My Name is Rodayna Mohammed Dueshy. My first name is Rodayna.
- surname = last name = family name (n)  
اللقب (اسم العائلة)  
- My Name is Rodayna Mohammed Dueshy. My surname is Dueshy.
- pen name (n)  
اسم مُستعار (يستخدمه بعض الكتاب بدلاً من الاسم الحقيقي)  
- She wrote under the pen name of Bint El-Shatei.
- nickname (n)  
اسم الشهرة  
- 'King of Egypt' is one of Salah's nicknames.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

- MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- Sometimes, doctors ask us to check .....  
a. blood pressure      b. research      c. an impact  
d. iron level      e. a nickname
- When there's an accident, it is important that some people ..... blood.  
a. go      b. give      c. do  
d. leave      e. donate

- The verb '.....' collocates with the noun 'work'.  
a. give      b. make      c. do  
d. go      e. talk
- He has ..... to succeed in the next exam.  
a. a title      b. sure      c. a desire  
d. a nickname      e. the ability
- My sister's success ..... us to do our best. (الفيوم - المشواي ٢٠٢٢)  
a. decreased      b. encouraged      c. inspired  
d. discouraged      e. informed
- He donated money to build a school. The synonyms of the word "donated" are ..... (الفيوم - يوسف كرك ٢٠٢٢)  
a. grew      b. gave      c. received  
d. supplied      e. kept
- He has a desire to help other people. The synonyms of the word "desire" are ..... (الفيوم - المشواشة ٢٠٢٢)  
a. link      b. wish      c. debt  
d. preference      e. donation
- "I admire your idea." In this sentence, "admire" is a synonym of ..... (الغامرية الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)  
a. praise      b. belong to      c. disapprove  
d. appreciate      e. prove
- To be generous is a good quality. The antonyms of the word 'generous' are ..... (إدارة القصر ٢٠٢٢)  
a. stingy      b. kind      c. cheerful  
d. selfish      e. disappointed
- "I am ..... for my lost keys. I don't know where they are." Which of the following verbs can be used in the space to make sense? تعطي معنى منفي  
a. donating      b. looking      c. giving  
d. preserving      e. searching
- It is kind of you to donate money ..... the poor.  
a. with      b. in      c. to  
d. from      e. for
- My mother taught me ..... depend on myself.  
a. to      b. how      c. how to  
d. what      e. what to



• MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It is not always easy to ..... new friends.  
a. do      b. look      c. spend      d. make
2. Some students try to ..... a job during the summer holiday.  
a. go      b. do      c. get      d. leave
3. Vegetables ..... a lot of health benefits if eaten fresh.  
a. donate      b. have      c. check      d. pay
4. I admire your idea. In this sentence, 'admire' is an antonym of .....  
a. praise      b. approve of      c. disapprove of      d. appreciate
5. "She's a long-term illness." "Long-term" here means .....  
a. serious      b. temporary      c. short      d. simple
6. "He donated some blood." The word 'donated' can be replaced by .....  
a. received      b. gave      c. kept      d. a & c
7. "I know you are generous." 'Generous' here is antonymous with .....  
a. helpful      b. selfish      c. mean      d. b & c
8. "Donate" is to 'receive' as ..... is to stupidity.  
a. intelligence      b. intelligent      c. domestic      d. tame
9. I can't help my ..... for your mentality *طريقة التفكير*.  
a. admire      b. admirer      c. admiration      d. admired
10. I really ..... your mentality.  
a. admire      b. admirer      c. admiration      d. admired
11. First, a blood ..... has to be checked carefully to make sure they are healthy.  
a. donate      b. donor      c. donation      d. donated
12. First, you need to be checked carefully before you ..... blood to make sure you are healthy.  
a. donate      b. donor      c. donation      d. donated
13. .... blood is synonymous with giving it.  
a. Transplanting      b. Transfusing      c. Pressuring      d. Donating
14. He ..... to live in a large villa in a coastal *ساحلية* town.  
a. desire      b. desires      c. desiring      d. is desiring
15. His ..... is to live in a large villa in a coastal *ساحلية* town.  
a. desire      b. desires      c. desiring      d. is desiring
16. What makes people admire him more is his .....  
a. genre      b. generous      c. generosity      d. generously

17. What makes people admire him more is the fact that he is .....  
a. genre      b. generous      c. generosity      d. generously
18. He won't take ..... the race as he is injured.  
a. place      b. care of      c. part in      d. turns
19. My father praised me ..... helping the poor old man.  
a. for      b. of      c. with      d. to
20. When I was talking with her for the first time, I found ..... that she is intelligent.  
a. in      b. out about      c. out      d. b & c
21. In his ....., Taha Hussein wrote about all that happened to him in his life.  
a. graphy      b. autobiography      c. biography      d. geography

## Part III Reading & Listening

### 1 Reading Texts

#### People who help

(SB page 16)

##### 1. Mohamed Salah

Mohamed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous footballers<sup>(1)</sup>. He is admired<sup>(2)</sup> for his speed<sup>(3)</sup> and ability<sup>(4)</sup> to score<sup>(5)</sup> goals. In 2017, he scored the goal to send Egypt to their first World Cup finals<sup>(6)</sup> since 1990.



Salah has been praised<sup>(7)</sup> for his kind and generous<sup>(8)</sup> donations<sup>(9)</sup> to charity<sup>(10)</sup> in Egypt. He donated<sup>(11)</sup> money to his hometown<sup>(12)</sup> of Nagrig to build a school, and he has helped a children's cancer<sup>(13)</sup> hospital in Cairo.

Salah's desire<sup>(14)</sup> to help others is because he wants to give young people a chance<sup>(15)</sup> to succeed<sup>(16)</sup>. He is a role model<sup>(17)</sup> to millions of Egyptians who gave him the nickname<sup>(18)</sup>, The Happiness Maker<sup>(19)</sup>.

#### Check Vocabulary

- (1) لاعب كرة قدم
- (2) يعجب به
- (3) سرعة
- (4) القدرة
- (5) يحرز
- (6) نهائيات
- (7) يمتدح
- (8) سخي / كريم
- (9) تبرعات
- (10) العمل الخيري
- (11) تبرع به
- (12) مسقط رأس
- (13) السرطان
- (14) رغبة
- (15) فرصة
- (16) ينجح
- (17) قدوة
- (18) لقب
- (19) صانع السعادة



2. Blood <sup>(1)</sup> donors <sup>(2)</sup>

Every year on 14<sup>th</sup> June, countries around the world **take part in** <sup>(3)</sup> World Blood Donor Day to **share** <sup>(4)</sup> information about the importance of giving blood.

Why should people donate blood? Donating blood can help people if they have been badly **injured** <sup>(5)</sup> or need **regular** <sup>(6)</sup> blood **transplants** <sup>(7)</sup> because they have a **long-term** <sup>(8)</sup> illness <sup>(9)</sup>.

Giving blood can also have health **benefits** <sup>(10)</sup>. All donors have their **blood pressure** <sup>(11)</sup> and **iron levels** <sup>(12)</sup> **checked** <sup>(13)</sup> before **donation** <sup>(14)</sup>, so people who donate blood can **find out** <sup>(15)</sup> quickly if they have any health problems. Giving blood can **save** <sup>(16)</sup> **lives** <sup>(17)</sup> and it is easy to do!



(SB page 17)

## Check Vocabulary

- (1) الدم
- (2) المتبرعون
- (3) يشارك في
- (4) يشارك
- (5) مُصاب
- (6) منتظم
- (7) نقل
- (8) مزمن - طويل المدى
- (9) مرض
- (10) فوائد
- (11) ضغط الدم
- (12) مستويات الحديد (في الدم)
- (13) يفحص
- (14) التبرع
- (15) يكتشف
- (16) ينقذ
- (17) الحياة

## 2 Listening Texts

**Interviewer** : In today's programme, we're talking to Martin Drake about Dr Leelah Hazzah, an Egyptian conservation **biologist** <sup>(1)</sup> and **founder** <sup>(2)</sup> of Lion Guardians, a conservation project in Kenya. Martin, when did Leelah become interested in lions?

**Martin** : Well, as a child, her father told her stories about how he listened to lions **roaring** <sup>(3)</sup> at night when he was sleeping on the **roof** <sup>(4)</sup> of their house during the summer. But when he explained that there weren't any lions left in Egypt, she decided that when she grew up, she would find out how to save them in other countries.

**Interviewer** : What happened next?



(SB page 18)

## Check Vocabulary

- (1) عالم أحياء
- (2) مؤسس
- (3) يزار
- (4) سطح

**Martin** : She went to America to study conservation biology and then moved to Kenya to research lions **amongst** <sup>(5)</sup> the Maasai people. It was there that she saw how quickly lions were disappearing. Did you know that sixty or so years ago there were about 200,000 lions in Africa, but that number is under 20,000 now?

**Interviewer** : So why are lions disappearing so quickly?

**Martin** : There are several **reasons** <sup>(6)</sup>. People have built houses in the areas that lions **traditionally** <sup>(7)</sup> hunt, so they can't find enough food to eat and, so they attack the villager's **livestock** <sup>(8)</sup>, you know, their cows and goats. The **villagers** <sup>(9)</sup> get angry with the lions and kill them in order to protect their animals. Another reason is **prestige** <sup>(10)</sup> - in Maasai **culture** <sup>(11)</sup>, young men get a lot of **respect** <sup>(12)</sup> from killing a lion. They are even given a lion name which shows that they are no longer a boy, but a man.

**Interviewer** : What did Leelah do?

**Martin** : She lived with the Maasai for a year and listened to their **views** <sup>(13)</sup> about lions. She learnt that they have a **love-hate relationship** <sup>(14)</sup> with lions, they **admire** <sup>(15)</sup> their **beauty** <sup>(16)</sup>, but hate them for eating their **cattle** <sup>(17)</sup>. She also understood the prestige that came from being a **lion killer** <sup>(18)</sup> and realised that she needed to **persuade** <sup>(19)</sup> the young men that keeping livestock and having a job gave them more prestige than killing a lion, so she started to teach them about the **advantages** <sup>(20)</sup> of protecting lions instead.

**Interviewer** : Is that when she started Lion Guardians?

**Martin** : Yes. Lion Guardians is an **organization** <sup>(21)</sup> that **employs** <sup>(22)</sup> local people to look for lions in order to protect them. Remember, these young men already have the skills needed to **track** <sup>(23)</sup> lions in the **wild** <sup>(24)</sup>, so they are taught to become lion guardians **rather than** <sup>(25)</sup> lion killers. The organisation gives them a job and teaches them to read and write, so they can help conservations with their research.

- (5) بين
- (6) أسباب
- (7) تقليدياً
- (8) حيوانات المزرعة
- (9) الفلاحين
- (10) هيبة / واجهة
- (11) ثقافة
- (12) احترام
- (13) وجهات النظر
- (14) علاقة حب وكره متبادل
- (15) يعجب به
- (16) جمال
- (17) الماشية
- (18) قاتل أسود
- (19) يثنى
- (20) مزايا
- (21) منظمة
- (22) توظف
- (23) يرصد / يتابع
- (24) الحياة البرية
- (25) بدلاً من



**Interviewer** : How **successful**<sup>(26)</sup> is the programme ?

**Martin** : Very successful. Maasai men now have jobs, a regular **income**<sup>(27)</sup> and a sense of **purpose**<sup>(28)</sup>. They get to know the lions they are protecting and even give them names and talk about them with **fondness**<sup>(29)</sup>.

**Interviewer** : And finally, what can other conservationists learn from Lion Guardians ?

**Martin** : The importance of listening to people in the **community**<sup>(30)</sup> and to **recognise**<sup>(31)</sup> how much **knowledge**<sup>(32)</sup> local people have. By working together, both **the locals**<sup>(33)</sup> and **conservations** can **benefit**<sup>(34)</sup>.

**Interviewer** : Thank you, Martin. And at 8 o'clock tonight you can see a ....

- (26) نجاح  
(27) دخل  
(28) هدف / غرض  
(29) شغف / واثق  
(30) جماعة / مجتمع  
(31) يتعرف على  
(32) معرفة  
(33) السكان المحليين  
(34) يستفيد

### 3 Video script section

Young people and older people don't always spend a lot of time together. But, they can do a lot to help each other.

In some communities<sup>(1)</sup>, children and **teenagers**<sup>(2)</sup> **volunteer**<sup>(3)</sup> to support<sup>(4)</sup> older people. They sit and watch television with them. They help them with their shopping or other **tasks**<sup>(5)</sup> around the house.

They listen to their stories about life a long time ago. The older people don't feel so alone, they get the help they need and they can share interesting information about life in the past with the next **generation**<sup>(6)</sup>.

But, what about the young people ? Well, they can learn a lot about the history of their community. They also see that older people were just like them when they were younger.

اطلب من الطلاب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإلقاء الأسئلة التالية عليهم

1. How do volunteers help older people ?
2. How does listening to older people help them feel less alone ?
3. What can young people learn from older people ?

#### Check Vocabulary

- (1) مجتمعات  
(2) مراهقين  
(3) يتطوع  
(4) يساعد  
(5) أعمال / واجبات  
(6) جيل

## Part IV

## Language



مملكة  
البحرين

Supporting the community

### 1 The Present Simple Tense :

رأس المضارع البسيط :

1 في الجمل الخبرية البسيطة :

Subject فاعل (I, We, They, You) + التصريف الأول للفعل

ex. - I get up at six o'clock every morning.

- They sometimes go for a walk on Fridays.

- يضاف للفعل (s) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It).

- Ahmed likes football very much.

- ويضاف للفعل (es) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان المصدر متتهياً بـ (ch - sh - ss - o - x).

- Aya watches action films every day.

- ويضاف للفعل (ies) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان المصدر متتهياً بـ (y) مسبقاً بحرف ساكن ويحذف حرف (y).

- Mariam studies philosophy at Cambridge University.

2 في النفي :

Subject فاعل + don't / doesn't + inf. المصدر

- لاحظ تستخدم (doesn't) مع المفرد الغائب :

ex. - I don't get up at six o'clock on Friday.

- Ahmed doesn't like football very much.

- ونستخدم (never) أيضاً للنفي القاطع وفي هذه الحالة تبقى (s/es/ies) في نهاية الفعل مع (he/she/it) :

- He doesn't help the poor at all. = He never helps the poor.

- They don't get up late at all. = They never get up late.

3 في السؤال بـ «هل» :

Do / Does + Subject فاعل + inf. المصدر ؟

ex. - Do you get up at six o'clock every morning ?

- Yes, I do. OR - Yes, I get up at six o'clock every morning.

- No, I don't. OR - No, I don't get up at six o'clock every morning.

- Does Aya watch action films ?

- Yes, she does. OR - Yes, she watches action films.

- No, she doesn't. OR - No, she doesn't watch action films.



## السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word أداة استفهام + do / does + Subject فاعل + Inf. المصدر + P

ex. - What do you eat for lunch ?

- How often does Mr Ashraf go to the club ?

## في المبني للمجهول :

- عند تحويل زمن المضارع البسيط إلى صيغة المبني للمجهول نستخدم :

Object المفعول + am / is / are + P.P التصريف الثالث

ex. Farmers grow plants. (معلوم)

- Plants are grown by farmers. (مجهول)

- Some people don't eat meat at all. (معلوم)

- Meat isn't eaten at all by some people. (مجهول)

- لا نستخدم (have / has) كفاعل أساسي في المبني للمجهول ويستبدل بفعل آخر حسب المعنى :

Have = own - possess - belong to - suffer - eat - buy - spend - take ....

ex. - I have a car. - A car is (possessed - owned) by me.

- She has lunch at two o'clock. - Lunch is eaten at two o'clock by her.

## Mini Test 1

## Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- My son ..... football and tennis in the club.  
a. play b. plays c. is played d. are played
- My sons ..... football and tennis in the club.  
a. play b. plays c. is played d. are played
- Football and tennis ..... in the club.  
a. play b. plays c. is played d. are played
- Football ..... in the club.  
a. play b. plays c. is played d. are played
- These trees ..... their leaves in autumn.  
a. isn't lost b. don't lose c. doesn't lose d. aren't lost
- This tree ..... its leaves in autumn.  
a. isn't lost b. don't lose c. doesn't lose d. aren't lost

- The leaves of this tree ..... in autumn.  
a. isn't lost b. don't lose c. doesn't lose d. aren't lost
- This tree ..... its leaves in autumn.  
a. never loses b. don't lose c. never lose d. aren't lost
- Does Amir ..... your birthday parties?  
a. attend b. attends c. is attended d. attending
- ..... you with your homework?  
a. Anyone helps b. Is anyone helped  
c. Does anyone help d. Anyone is helped
- ..... with your homework?  
a. You help b. Do you help c. You are helped d. Are you helped
- We ..... a nice time by the sea.  
a. are had b. have c. are spent d. is spent
- A nice time ..... by the sea.  
a. are had b. have c. are spent d. is spent

## Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

بالنسبة للفعل (be) كفاعل أساسي في المضارع البسيط ، نستخدم (am / is / are) بمعنى (يكون / يوجد) ولا نستخدم (do / does) في النفي أو السؤال.

- Ali is at school. (إثبات)
- Ali isn't at school. (نفي)
- Is Ali at school? (سؤال به «هل»)
- Where is Ali? (سؤال به «أداة استفهام»)

بالنسبة للفعل (have) كفاعل أساسي في المضارع البسيط ، نستخدم (have / has) بمعنى (يملك) / يتناول / يشتري ..... ونستخدم (do / does) غالباً معها كأفعال مساعدة في النفي أو السؤال.

- They have lunch at three o'clock. (إثبات)
- They don't have lunch at three o'clock. (نفي)
- Do they have lunch at three o'clock? (سؤال به «هل»)
- When do they have lunch? (سؤال به «أداة استفهام»)

## Mini Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Ali ..... at home right now. He's at school.  
a. is b. doesn't be c. isn't d. has



2. A: ..... at home right now? B: No, he's at school.  
 a. Is Ali b. Does Ali be c. Ali is d. Does Ali have  
 3. We ..... lunch before my father returns home.  
 a. haven't b. don't have c. aren't d. don't be  
 4. .... lunch before your father returns home?  
 a. You have b. Have you c. Are you d. Do you have

### Uses الاستخدامات

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط (Present simple) في:  
 ١ التعبير عن حقائق ثابتة:

ex. - The sun gives us light and heat. - People don't live under water.

٢ التعبير عن شيء حقيقي في المضارع (حقيقة تدوم لفترة) / مواقف دائمة:

ex. - Yousif lives in Assuit. - My wife is an engineer.

٣ يدل المضارع البسيط على المستقبل بعد الروابط الزمنية التالية:

- قبل - بينما as / just as - بينما while - عندما when  
 - بمجرد أن once - بعد after - في اللحظة التي the moment  
 .... حتى until / till / as soon as بمجرد أن

جملة مستقبل + مضارع بسيط تام + رابط زمني Time connector

ex. - When I arrive (have arrived) home, I will take a shower.  
 - Before she goes (has gone) to bed, she will kiss her mother.  
 - I won't call you until I know (have known) the latest news.

٤ بعد (if) في الحالة الشرطية الأولى و الحالة الصفرية:

ex. - If I get information about this subject, I'll tell you.

٥ التعبير عن جداول المواعيد الثابتة:

ex. - My train leaves at nine tomorrow morning.

٦ يستخدم المضارع البسيط بدلاً من المضارع المستمر للتعبير عما يحدث الآن مع الأفعال التفرعية (مثل أعمال الحواس و المشاعر و الإدراك...):

ex. - I am seeing some beautiful flowers. (x)  
 - I see some beautiful flowers. (✓)

### Mini Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Lions ..... meat.  
 a. eats b. eat c. don't eat d. are eaten
- Lions ..... grass.  
 a. eats b. eat c. don't eat d. are eaten
- This soup ..... very good.  
 a. tastes b. taste c. is tasting d. to taste
- My father ..... in a big company. He is an accountant there.  
 a. works b. work c. is working d. is worked
- After I ..... my lunch, I will take a short rest.  
 a. will have b. have c. had d. had had
- I will take a taxi if I ..... up late.  
 a. will get b. had got c. got d. get
- She'll help you as soon as she ..... her work.  
 a. will finish b. finish c. finishes d. have finished
- According to the timetable, the train ..... the station at seven.  
 a. will reach b. had reached c. reach d. reaches

### Present Habits عادات المضارع

فعل في زمن المضارع البسيط + always / usually / sometimes + فاعل Subj.

- Nada usually goes to the shops on Sunday.

It + is + someone's habit to + Inf.

- It is Nada's (her) habit to go to the shops on Sunday.

Subj. فاعل + am / is / are + In the habit of + (Inf. + Ing)

- Nada is in the habit of going to the shops on Sunday.

Subj. فاعل + am / is / are + used to + (Inf. + Ing) / n.

- Nada is used to going to the shops on Sunday.

فعل في زمن المضارع البسيط + no longer + Inf. / (Inf + s, es, les) Subj. فاعل

- He no longer eats rice.

Subj. فاعل + don't / doesn't + Inf... + any longer / anymore

- He doesn't eat rice anymore.



## Adverbs of frequency with the present simple

تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع المضارع البسيط (am / is / are) قبل الفعل الأصلي أو بعد

غالبًا - often بانتظام regularly - عادة usually / normally - دائمًا always  
 little - بين حين وآخر occasionally - أحيانًا sometimes - غالبًا frequently  
 مطلقًا never - بالكاد hardly ever - نادرًا seldom - rarely - قلما

ex. - I always go to school on time. - I am always at school on time.  
 كما يمكن أن تُستخدم بعض ظروف التكرار هذه في بداية أو نهاية الجملة للتركيز على معنى الطرف.

ex. - Sometimes, I play football. - I play football sometimes.

تُستخدم تعبيرات التكرار التالية أيضًا في بداية أو نهاية الجملة

- once مرة / twice مرتين / three times ... / several times / many times .....  
 + a / an / every + period of time  
 - every (morning - day - Monday - week - month - summer - year.....) / on Fridays / in summer ....

ex. - I go for a walk twice a week.  
 - Once a month, I visit my parents.  
 - I take Arabic lessons on Wednesdays.  
 - Every morning, my mother wakes me up.

### Mini Test 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My father works as a doctor. He ..... very busy examining patients.  
 a. often is b. is often c. often has d. has often
2. Leen ..... something to do. She is very busy.  
 a. always have b. have always c. always has d. has always
3. I visit my grandparents ..... month, in the beginning and in the middle.  
 a. twice b. once c. once a d. twice a
4. Sama is used ..... in Aswan.  
 a. to living b. alive c. to live d. living

5. It is Omar's habit ..... for walks on Fridays.  
 a. going b. to going c. to go d. goes
6. Hussein ..... working on the farm.  
 a. is used b. is used to c. used to d. used

## The Past Simple Tense : زمن الماضي البسيط :

تم شرح الماضي البسيط في الوحدة الأولى.

### General Exercise On Language Apply

تتويج • التدريبات التالية مرتبة بشكل متدرج تصاعديًا حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My car always ..... down on the motorway. (عرب طنطا ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. is broken b. has broken c. breaks d. was broken
2. I think the next train to Aswan ..... at 10 a.m. (الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. will leave b. leaves c. is leaving d. left
3. One of the Egyptian scientists ..... awarded the Nobel Prize in 2010.  
 (القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. was b. has been c. were d. had been
4. When I was in Sharm El-Sheik, I ..... to the beach a lot.  
 (الخيوم - يوسف كحك ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. have gone b. was going c. would go d. went
5. Yesterday, we ..... some beautiful fish in the Red Sea.  
 (أكوم امبو - أحمد محمد موسى بنات ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. saw b. were seeing c. see d. have seen
6. Nesma ..... late when she was young. She no longer does now.  
 (إدارة القصر ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. usually sleeps b. is used to sleeping  
 c. used to sleep d. was usually slept.
7. My sister usually ..... to school when she was young. (الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. walks b. was walking c. walked d. has walked
8. Money ..... into our country by tourists who come to enjoy our civilization.  
 (إدارة القصر ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. is brought b. has brought c. are brought d. is bringing



9. Every day, my room ..... while I'm at school. (الطوبى - التدوير الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)

- a. was tidied  
b. is tidied  
c. tidied  
d. was being tidied

10. When he went on holiday, he always ..... a lot of photos. (الطوبى - التدوير الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)

- a. takes  
b. have taken  
c. took  
d. has taken

11. He committed the crime and ..... away. (القبوم - الشواشي ٢٠٢٢)

- a. runs  
b. ran  
c. run  
d. running

12. Tamer ..... meals outdoors. (الطوبى - التدوير الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)

- a. hasn't  
b. never has  
c. has ever  
d. isn't had

13. Now, Salah ..... as a role model for all young Egyptians. (الدفو الثانوية بين ٢٠٢٢)

- a. is being known  
b. is known  
c. knows  
d. known

14. How much time ..... on social media? (القبوم - يوسف كك ٢٠٢٢)

- a. are spending  
b. you spend  
c. is spent  
d. spent

15. He ..... hard work on the farm. (القبوم - يوسف كك ٢٠٢٢)

- a. used to  
b. were used to  
c. got used to  
d. didn't use to

16. My friend used to get high marks but now he ..... (العامرية الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)

- a. don't  
b. doesn't  
c. didn't  
d. isn't

17. He ..... at the club yesterday. (ادارة الزينية ٢٠٢٢)

- a. isn't seen  
b. wasn't seen  
c. didn't see  
d. doesn't see

18. Do as you ..... and don't ask questions. (القبوم - الشواشي ٢٠٢٢)

- a. tell  
b. are told  
c. are telling  
d. being told

19. Never ..... to school late. He is so punctual. (ابورسعيد - الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)

- a. he comes  
b. comes he  
c. does he come  
d. is he come

تلميح: ذاكر القاعدة جيداً واستعد للتدريبات الشاملة ضمن الدرسين الثالث والرابع.



Part I

Vocabulary

تلميح: لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيداً ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

biologist(n)	عالم أحياء	party(n)	فرق - حصة - حزب
cattle(n)	الماشية	livestock(n)	حيوانات المزارع
community(n)	المجتمع	monitor(ed) (v - n)	مراقب / يرصد - جهاز عرض
famous(adj)	مشهور	organisation(n)	مؤسسة - منظمة
guardian(n)	حارس	track(ed) (v - n)	يرصد - يتابع - مسر
hunting parties	فرق الصيد		

تلميح: من المفهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

achievement (n)	إنجاز - نجاح	local(adj)	محلي
aim(ed) (n - v)	هدف - يهدف	locate(d) (v)	يضع في مكان - يحدد موقع
amazing(adj)	رائع - مذهل	missing(adj)	مفقود - ناقص
angle (n)	زاوية	nearby(adj-adv)	قريب - مجاور
appearance (n)	ظهور - مظهر	path(n)	مسار - طريق
attack(ed) (n - v)	هجوم - بهاجم	paw print	أثار أقدام الحيوان
disappear(ed) (v)	يختفي - يتلاشى	paws(n)	برائن - مخالب الحيوانات
empathy(n)	تفاهت - تقدير ظروف الآخرين	protect(ed) (v)	يحمي
employ(ed) (v)	يوظف - يُشغل	recent(adj)	حديث
estimate(d) (v)	يُقدّر - يفترض	responsibility(n)	مسئولية
expert(n)	خبير	safe(adj)	آمن
field (n)	مجال - حقل	sense(n)	حاسة
headquarters(n)	مركز القيادة	sign(n)	علامة / إشارة - لافتة
hunting (n)	الصيد	tribe(n)	قبيلة
killings (n)	حالات القتل	villagers(n)	القرى

موقع التفوق AltFwok.com



UNIT 2

3 Definitions تعريفات

تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلم المستخدمة - مهام دأ

لتوبة

Memorise	Understand
admire (v) - يعجب به	to respect and like someone because they have done something that you think is good, or to respect their qualities or skills
guardian (n) - حارس - يحمي	someone who is legally responsible for looking after someone or something
livestock (n) - حيوانات المزارع	animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm
monitor (v) - يرصد - يراقب	to carefully watch and check a situation in order to see how it changes or progresses over a period of time

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- The child's parents or ..... must give their agreement before she has the operation. (امامية الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)  
a. designers b. guardians c. donors d. monitors
- Families should ..... their children's internet activity. (ادارة الشرقية - لغات ٢٠٢٢)  
a. meet b. dick c. monitor d. scam
- The police managed to ..... down the criminal. (ادارة الشرقية - لغات ٢٠٢٢)  
a. track b. tick c. trek d. truck
- The international ..... is really very worried about the problem of climate change. (المنيا - ديمواس ٢٠٢٠)  
a. security b. communication c. technology d. community
- "Farmers keep livestock on their farms." The synonym of "livestock" is ..... (الشرقية - كفر صبر ٢٠٢٠)  
a. kittle b. castle c. cattle d. kettle

6. The farmers build fences to protect their ..... from wild animals and thieves.

- a. wildlife b. livestock c. parties d. tracks

7. He joined the tourist ..... who visited the Valley of Kings.

- a. herd b. party c. flock d. community

8. He works for an international ..... that help poor people in Africa.

- a. organisation b. cancer c. maker d. presentation

9. He is an experienced ..... ذو خبرة

- a. biology b. biological c. biologically d. biologist

2 Important Vocabulary

10. I don't have to do your homework; it's your .....

(ادارة اسوان - احمد طه حسين المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)

- a. biography b. responsibility c. disease d. illness

11. A good citizen has a ..... of duty. (المنيرة - ادبي ٢٠٢٠)

- a. skill b. sense c. responsibility d. charity

12. If there is a ..... supermarket, we can shop easily. (المنيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٠)

- a. really b. nearby c. nearly d. rarely

13. "Not all that glitters is gold", this means you shouldn't be deceived by..... (اسوان - ادو ٢٠٢٠)

- a. appearance b. personality c. politeness d. character

14. He is really kind. He showed much ..... with my difficult situation.

- a. empathy b. donation c. admiration d. charitable

15. She is a doctor. She works in the medical ..... طبي

- a. transplant b. party c. field d. interview

16. Most patients are taken to the ..... hospital in our area.

- a. local b. missing c. wild d. repeated

17. Winning the gold medal in the Olympics is a great .....

- a. loss b. movement c. achievement d. organisation

3 Definitions

18. A/An ..... is someone who is legally responsible for looking after someone or something.

- a. biologist b. guardian c. hunter d. admirer

19. .... are animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm.

- a. Livestock b. Parties c. Viewers d. Guardians

20. To ..... is to carefully watch and check a situation in order to see how it changes or progresses over a period of time.

- a. desire b. employ c. monitor d. transplant



UNIT 2

Part II Vocabulary Study

تدرب على استخدام الكلمات الجديدة في جملك الخاصة. استخدم الكلمات الجديدة في جملك الخاصة.

1 Verbal Collocations

do	research	تجري أبحاث	have	a negative impact on	له أثر سلبي على
	work with	يقوم بأعمال مع			
give	a sense of responsibility	يعطي إحساس بالمسئولية	leave	school	يقطع أو يُنهى دراسته
go	missing	يتوه / يضل الطريق	make	sure	يتأكد / يتيقن / يتحقق
				movements	يقوم بحركات

2 Synonyms

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
amazing	رائع - مذهل
disappear	يختفي - يختفي
empathy	تعاطف - تقدير ظروف الآخرين
employ	يوظف - يُشغل
famous	مشهور
monitor	يراقب / يرصد
nearby	قريب - مجاور
search for	يبحث عن

3 Antonyms

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
amazing	ordinary, usual, everyday
disappear	appear, come out
employ	fire, dismiss, discharge
nearby	remote, faraway, distant
wild	domestic / tame

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary

biologist	
biology(n)	علم الأحياء
biologist(n)	عالم أحياء
biological(adj)	حيوي - خاص بالكائنات الحية
guard	
guard(ed)(v)	يحرس
guard(n)	حارس
guardian(n)	حارس - وصي
kill	
kill(ed)(v)	يقتل
killing(n)	القتل
killings(n)	حالات القتل / الضحايا
killer(n)	قاتل

5 Expressions & Idioms

a sense of responsibility	الإحساس بالمسئولية
all over	في كل أنحاء
as much as	بنفس الكمية
be based in	مقره في (+ مكان)
be based on	قائم على (+ الفكرة)
be interested in	يهتم بـ
early life	مرحلة مبكرة من العمر
expert at/in/on	خبير في
from different angles	من زوايا مختلفة
in groups	في مجموعات
kill animals for sport	يقتل الحيوانات كرياضة
local communities	المجتمعات المحلية
thanks to	بفضل

6 Verb + Preposition

bring ... into	يُخبر ... إلى
compare ... with	يقارن ... بـ
complete with	يُكمل بـ
deals with	يتعامل مع / يواجه
encourage ... to	يُشجع ... لكي
know about	يعرف عن
look after	يرعى / يعتني بـ
look for	يبحث عن
play for	يلعب لـ (نادي مثلاً)
search for	يبحث عن
teach ... (how) to	يُعلم ... كيف
worry about	يقلق على



7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

be based in / be based on

مقره في / مكانه في

- be based in  
- Our company is based in Cairo.
- be based on  
- This film has been based on a novel by Naguib Mahfouz.

مؤسس على - قائم فكرياً على

every day - everyday

- every day (adv) = daily  
- I play football every day. = - Every day, I play football.
- everyday (adj)  
- He feels bored because of his everyday routine.

كل يوم (ظرف زمان يأتي غالباً في بداية أو نهاية الجملة)

يومي (صفة تأتي قبل الموصوف)

hear of / about - hear from

- hear of / about  
- I haven't heard of / about this writer before.
- hear from  
- I haven't heard from Mr Ashraf lately. I hope he is well.

يعرف / يسمع بـ

angle / angel

- angle  
- A square has four angles.
- angel  
- Children are little angels.

زاوية - جانب

ملاك - شخص حسن الخلق

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- We can say someone makes .....  
a. blood b. movements c. missing  
d. friends e. nothing to do
- You can do .....  
a. work b. mistakes c. research  
d. movements e. decisions

3. Suddenly, Ahmed disappeared in the forest. The synonyms of the word "disappear" are .....

(إدارة المفرد ٢٠٢٢)

- a. refrain b. remain c. vanish
- d. operate e. hide

4. "We have an outdoor camera to monitor the street outside." The verb 'monitor' in this sentence means .....

- a. watch b. give c. observe
- d. look e. wish

5. She is expert ..... cooking recipes.

- a. of b. in c. for
- d. on e. to

6. "We don't allow hunting parties to kill animals." The word 'parties' here can be replaced by .....

- a. teams b. festivals c. occasions
- d. groups e. animals

7. 'Wild' is antonymous with .....

- a. well-known b. serious c. violent
- d. tame e. domestic

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The loss of his job ..... a negative impact on him. (الجزء - قدقي ٢٠٢٠)

- a. had b. took c. provide d. did

2. We need to ..... more research into coronavirus.

- a. go b. do c. get d. leave

3. Young men join the army after ..... school or university.

- a. going b. doing c. getting d. leaving

4. When I was young, I ..... missing when I was shopping with my mum.

- a. went b. did c. got d. left

5. To ..... wild animals is a crime.

- a. kill b. kills c. killing d. killings

6. .... wild animals is a crime.

- a. Kill b. Kills c. Killing d. Killings

7. The new wildlife law ..... among rare animals.

- a. kill b. kills c. killing d. killings

8. The lion Guardians is an organization based ..... Kenya.

(البيسكوبية - التوجيه العام ٢٠٢٠)

- a. on b. in c. at d. to



9. This film is based ..... a true story.  
a. in b. on c. of d. with
10. He succeeded in his life thanks ..... hard work.  
a. for b. to c. from d. about
11. People don't drink as ..... as camels do.  
a. long b. well c. much d. soon
12. Doing sport is part of my ..... activities.  
a. angel b. angle c. everyday d. every day
13. I do sport .....  
a. angel b. angle c. everyday d. every day
14. Finally, I heard ..... my brother in the USA. He sent me an email.  
a. from b. of c. about d. b & c
15. I have just heard ..... your health problems.  
a. from b. of c. about d. b & c

### Part III Reading

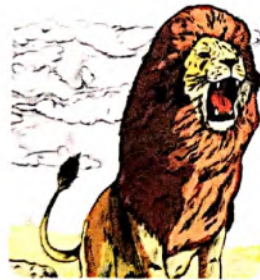
#### Reading Texts

##### 1. Working together

(SB page 20)

Lions are **disappearing**<sup>(1)</sup> all over Africa but there is some hope now after the **amazing**<sup>(2)</sup> work of an **organization**<sup>(3)</sup> called **Lion Guardians**<sup>(4)</sup>, which is **based in**<sup>(5)</sup> Kenya, but Guardians help in **nearby**<sup>(6)</sup> Tanzania. The **aim**<sup>(7)</sup> of Lion Guardians is to help **local**<sup>(8)</sup> people to **protect**<sup>(9)</sup> their own **livestock**<sup>(10)</sup> and **reduce**<sup>(11)</sup> the number of lion **killings**<sup>(12)</sup> in the **area**<sup>(13)</sup>.

**Cattle**<sup>(14)</sup> are important to the **villagers**<sup>(15)</sup> but they often **go missing**<sup>(16)</sup> or are **attacked**<sup>(17)</sup> by lions. Then the lions are killed **as**<sup>(18)</sup> villagers **worry**<sup>(19)</sup> about losing more livestock.



#### Check Vocabulary

- (1) تختفى
- (2) مذهل
- (3) منظمة
- (4) خراس
- (5) مقرها في
- (6) قريب
- (7) هدف
- (8) محلي
- (9) يحمي
- (10) حيوانات المزرعة
- (11) يقتل
- (12) حالات القتل
- (13) المنطقة
- (14) الماشية
- (15) القرودين
- (16) تضل الطريق
- (17) تهاجم
- (18) لأن
- (19) يقلق

Lion Guardians is changing this. The organization works with the **community**<sup>(20)</sup> to help **both**<sup>(21)</sup> the lions and the livestock and this is done by **employing**<sup>(22)</sup> local people.

**Maasai**<sup>(23)</sup> men are **chosen**<sup>(24)</sup> to become guardians as they understand lions and have the **skills**<sup>(25)</sup> needed to **monitor**<sup>(26)</sup> their movements<sup>(27)</sup>, find **missing**<sup>(28)</sup> livestock and stop **hunting parties**<sup>(29)</sup> who kill the lions for sport. They are taught to be **field**<sup>(30)</sup> **biologists**<sup>(31)</sup> and are given a **sense**<sup>(32)</sup> of responsibility<sup>(33)</sup>.

Lions are **monitored**<sup>(34)</sup> every day and the information is sent to the cattle farmers who can then **make sure**<sup>(35)</sup> their cows are safe. Lion Guardians are very **successful**<sup>(36)</sup>. They help the future of lions **as well as**<sup>(37)</sup> the local communities.

#### Check Vocabulary

- (20) المجتمع
- (21) كل من
- (22) يوظف
- (23) شعب الماساي
- (24) يُختار
- (25) مهارات
- (26) يراقب
- (27) تحركات
- (28) مفقود
- (29) فرق الصيد
- (30) ميداني
- (31) علماء الأحياء
- (32) إحساس
- (33) المسؤولية
- (34) وتتبع / يراقب
- (35) يتأكد
- (36) ناجح
- (37) بالإضافة إلى

##### 2. Maasai Tracking

The Maasai are **experts**<sup>(1)</sup> at **tracking**<sup>(2)</sup> animals and lions are the most **well-known**<sup>(3)</sup> animal that they **follow**<sup>(4)</sup>. But how do they do it? The lions are tracked by the Maasai, who use all their **senses**<sup>(5)</sup> to follow them.

When a **paw print**<sup>(6)</sup> is **discovered**<sup>(7)</sup>, it is checked to see if it is an old paw print or a **recent**<sup>(8)</sup> one. Then the path is followed by the Maasai until the lions are found.

While they are tracking the lions, the Maasai are listening and looking for **signs**<sup>(9)</sup> to help them discover where they are. In the past, the Maasai might kill a lion when they found one. Today, lions are protected by the Maasai from hunting parties and at the same time the local people's cows are safe. **Thanks to**<sup>(10)</sup> the Lion Guardians, everyone is happy!

#### Check Vocabulary

- (1) خبراء
- (2) التتبع
- (3) معروف
- (4) يتتبع
- (5) حواس
- (6) آثار أقدام الحيوان
- (7) يكتشف
- (8) حديث
- (9) علامات
- (10) بفضل



## Part IV Language



مساعد وتعلم

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني

تلويح

## General Exercise On Language

Apply

التدريبات التالية مرتبة بشكل متدرج تصاعديا حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم.

تلويح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

## 1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

- Leen usually ..... the 8 o'clock train to work.  
a. has caught b. is catching c. catch d. catches
- Aya ..... late for work.  
a. never is b. is never c. never has d. has never
- When ..... you usually finish studying your lessons?  
a. are b. have c. do d. does
- Omar ..... come to work late at all.  
a. never b. doesn't c. don't d. isn't
- Omar ..... comes to work late.  
a. never b. doesn't c. don't d. isn't
- I always ..... the piano after I come home from work.  
a. plays b. play c. played d. playing
- I always ..... the piano after I came home from work.  
a. plays b. play c. played d. playing
- He usually ..... very quickly, so we didn't understand him.  
a. speaks b. spoke c. was spoken d. speaking
- He usually ..... very quickly, so we don't understand him.  
a. speaks b. spoke c. was spoken d. speaking
- My friends often came to my birthday party and ..... me nice presents.  
a. have given b. were giving c. give d. gave
- My friends often come to my birthday party and ..... me nice presents.  
a. have given b. were giving c. give d. gave
- When I was on holiday, I ..... tennis every day.  
a. had played b. have played c. play d. played

- When I am on holiday, I ..... tennis every day.  
a. had played b. have played c. play d. played
- Sama ..... an email to her friend but she has received no reply so far.  
a. sends b. is sent c. sent d. was sent
- Rubbish ..... and burnt.  
a. are collected b. collected c. collects d. is collected
- He often ..... with me in English to become better at speaking.  
a. is speaking b. has spoken c. spoke d. speaks
- We ..... an interesting film last night.  
a. watched b. had watched c. watch d. have watched
- Policemen ..... criminals and arrest them.  
a. hunt b. hunts c. are hunting d. hunted
- They ..... attend the conference last month.  
a. wasn't b. weren't c. didn't d. don't
- According to the timetable, the train ..... at 11 o'clock.  
a. is arriving b. arrives c. is going to arrive d. had arrived
- She ..... the newspaper every morning. It is a habit of hers.  
a. is reading b. has read c. read d. reads
- She ..... the newspaper every morning. It was a habit of hers.  
a. is reading b. has read c. read d. reads
- What time ..... you usually arrive at school when you were a student?  
a. do b. would c. did d. does
- What time ..... you usually arrive at school when you take a taxi?  
a. do b. would c. did d. does
- My son ..... ambitious and he wants to study medicine.  
a. is always b. always is c. doesn't always d. isn't always
- When I finished my work, I closed my office and ..... home.  
a. return b. returning c. had returned d. returned
- His mother ..... his room door while he was studying his lessons.  
a. opened b. opening c. was opening d. opens
- The moon ..... around the earth.  
a. has moved b. will move c. moves d. moved

Altfwok.com موقع التفوق



29. He phoned me once he ..... the message.  
a. had read b. will read c. reads d. read
30. He will phone me once he ..... the message.  
a. had read b. will read c. has read d. read
31. .... I was twelve, my family moved into this flat.  
a. While b. When c. During d. As
32. He ..... early.  
a. rarely is b. is rare c. is rarely d. rare is
33. He ..... up early.  
a. rarely gets b. gets rarely c. get rarely d. rarely get
34. It hardly ..... in Egypt.  
a. is raining b. rains c. have rained d. raining
35. As a schoolboy, my uncle always ..... to school on foot.  
a. gone b. went c. goes d. will go
36. Mum ..... by all family members.  
a. is loving b. is being loved c. is loved d. loves
37. I'll phone you as soon as I ..... my work.  
a. finishes b. finish c. will finish d. had finished
38. We all ..... in Allah.  
a. believe b. believes c. is believing d. are believing
39. It is time we ..... home.  
a. went b. are going c. go d. have gone
40. .... the email sent before the office was closed?  
a. Are b. Was c. Had d. Does
41. During his last holiday, Tamer ..... football every day.  
a. is playing b. played c. plays d. has played
42. He ..... playing tennis.  
a. use to b. is used to c. used to d. was used
43. A: Have you seen her lately?  
B: Yes, I ..... her when I was on my way to work the other day.  
a. saw b. had seen c. have seen d. was seeing
44. All the information I read in this book ..... very valuable and useful.  
a. is being b. has c. is d. are

45. Ten people ..... to have been injured in the crash.  
a. had reported b. have reported c. were reported d. were reporting
46. Don't open the door until I ..... you.  
a. told b. had told c. tell d. was told
47. I am sure he ..... a Samsung laptop. He just doesn't want to lend it to you.  
a. is having b. is going to have c. will have d. has
48. When Salma read a story, she ..... interested in its moral.  
a. is usually b. was usually c. usually is d. usually was

2 Check your understanding

49. "He used to work as a firefighter." This means .....  
a. he is a firefighter b. he works as a firefighter  
c. he is no longer a firefighter d. he never worked as a firefighter
50. "I wish I were tall." What does this mean?  
a. I am tall. b. I am not short.  
c. I used to be tall. d. I am not tall.
51. "It is time Omar paid me back my money." This means .....  
a. Omar had returned my money b. Omar hasn't returned my money  
c. Omar returned my money d. Omar has just returned my money
52. "I'd rather Sama hadn't used my cream yesterday." This means .....  
a. Sama used my cream yesterday  
b. Sama didn't use my cream yesterday  
c. Sama asked to use my cream yesterday  
d. Sama agreed to use my cream yesterday
53. "Plants get their food from the sun". This is a .....  
a. present habit b. past habit c. future fact d. fact
54. "We take mid-year exams in January". This is a .....  
a. timetable b. future fact c. habit d. hope
55. "I don't smoke heavily any longer." I mean that I .....  
a. smoke heavily b. used to be a heavy smoker  
c. haven't stopped smoking d. didn't use to smoke



Part I

Vocabulary

Read the text and choose the correct word from the box to complete the sentences. Write the letter (a, b, c or d) in the space provided.

Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

Read the text and choose the correct word from the box to complete the sentences. Write the letter (a, b, c or d) in the space provided.

map(n)	خريطة
rich(adj)	غني
robbery(n)	سرقة
secret(n/adj)	سري / سر
work with sth	يعمل مع شيء
the rest(n)	بقية
treasure(n)	كنز

Exercise On Vocabulary

- The ship helped each other to control the situation well.  
a. gang b. crew c. staff d. team
- The police found a that helped them solve the crime.  
a. gear b. trace c. clue d. flu
- Unfortunately, the burglar the house.  
a. stole b. took c. robbed d. guarded
- A is the most important person in an organization.  
a. head b. crew c. clerk d. cleaner
- A/An is someone whose job is to live in another person's house and do jobs for them, such as cleaning.  
a. magistrate b. officer c. servant d. interviewer

- To it to succeed in leaving a place when someone or something is trying to stop you.  
a. rob b. escape c. guard d. dare
- A is someone who decides if a person is guilty of less serious crimes in a court.  
a. doctor b. sailor c. clerk d. magistrate
- is a group of valuable things such as gold, silver, jewels etc.  
a. Treasure b. Scar c. Adventure d. Head
- A/An is a piece of land completely surrounded by water.  
a. beach b. island c. desert d. inn
- A/An is the mark (x or +) used on paper, to represent where something is, or where something should be.  
a. equal b. plus c. cross d. minus

Part II Grammatical Hints

Since

القرينة التي تستخدم في الجملة الفرنسية مع **depuis** هي

- I have lived in Aswan since 2002. (الصحاح العام)
- I have been living in Aswan since 2002. (الصحاح العام المستمر)
- I had lived in Aswan since 2002 before I left it last year. (الماضي العام)
- I had been living in Aswan since 2002 before I left it last year. (الماضي العام المستمر)

القرينة التي يستخدم في الجملة مع **since** هي

- I haven't slept since my mother stayed in hospital. (الماضي البسيط)
- I haven't slept since my mother has stayed in hospital. (الصحاح العام)



UNIT 2

يمكن أن يُستخدم (inf + ing) بعد (since) إذا كان الفاعل مشترك في الحدثين.

ex. - He has worked for the same company since he left school.  
= He has worked for the same company since leaving school.

يمكن استخدام الصيغة التالية قبل (since):

It + is / was / has been / had been + ..... + since .....

ex. - It is two days since I last saw Sama.  
- It was the first time that I met the manager since last Monday.

تُستخدم (since) مع الماضي لتشير للمدى الزمني بين وقتين:

ex. - In 2017, he scored the goal to send Egypt to their first World Cup finals since 1990.

يمكن استخدام (since / since then) دون تعبير زمني بعدهما يعني أنه ذلك الحين إذا كان الوقت المشار إليه مفهوماً من السياق:

ex. - I returned home at 3 p.m. I haven't gone out since / (since then).

تُستخدم (since) بمعنى (الآن) وفي هذه الحالة تُستخدم مثل (because / as):

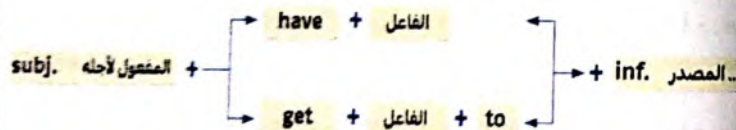
ex. - He didn't answer the phone since he was angry.  
= He didn't answer the phone because he was angry.  
= He didn't answer the phone as he was angry.

The Causative صيغة المفعول لأجله

- تُستخدم صيغة المفعول لأجله (causative) لتعني أن الفاعل أفع أو دفع مالاً أو جعل شخصاً آخر يقوم بالفعل.

- نستخدم في هذه الصيغة الفعلين (have / get) حسب الزمن.

- وتتكون هذه الصيغة في المبني للمعلوم كالتالي:

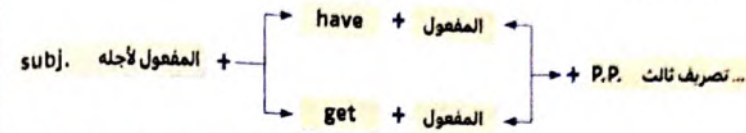


ex. - I had a doctor check my blood pressure.

(جعلت الطبيب يفحص ضغط الدم الخاص بي)

= I got a doctor to check my blood pressure.

- أما في المبني للمجهول فتتكون هذه الصيغة من:



- I had / got my blood pressure checked (by a doctor).

(لقد تم قياس ضغط الدم لدى عن طريق الطبيب)

Superlative adjectives صفات التفضيل

1. تُميّز صفة التفضيل بين فرد ومجموعة (أي تقارن بين أكثر من طرفين):

ex. - English is the easiest subject.  
- The lion is the most dangerous animal.  
- The rabbit is the least dangerous animal.

2. تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي:

the + adj. صفة + est / st / iest

ex. - fast → the fastest - old → the oldest  
- large → the largest - close → the closest  
- big → the biggest - thin → the thinnest  
- lazy → the laziest - healthy → the healthiest

3. تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي:

the most / the least + adj. صفة

ex. - beautiful the most / the least beautiful

4. لا تُستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل بعد الأعداد الترتيبية مثل:

first / second / third / fourth ...etc.

ex. - Cairo is the first largest city in Egypt.

5. لا تُستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل عندما يسبقها صفة ملكية أو (s) الملكية:

my - his - her - your - our - their - its - .....s

ex. - Cairo is Egypt's largest city.

- Is Sama your youngest sister?



## noun phrase العبارة الاسمية

العبارة الاسمية تتكون من مجموعة كلمات وتعمل عمل الاسم، ويمكن استخدامها كفاعل أو مفعول أو مجرور:

- ex. - Salah's desire to help others is because he wants to give young people a chance to succeed. (فاعل)  
 - We all respect Salah's desire to help others. (مفعول)  
 - I want to know more about Salah's desire to help others. (مجرور)

## p.p. التصريف الثالث

أحياناً يُستخدم (p.p.) كبديل لعبارة وصل - لاحظ الصيغة التالية:

التصريف الثالث p.p. + جملة مبنية للمجهول + who / whom / which / that

- ex. - I have a cousin who is called Karim.  
 = I have a cousin called Karim.  
 - They have the skills which are needed to monitor wild animals.  
 = They have the skills needed to monitor wild animals.

## as

1. نستخدم (as) بمعنى (ك...) ويأتي بعدها اسم يدل على الوظيفة - المرحلة العمرية - الدور - المظهر:

- ex. - As a student, Sama is very clever.  
 - Captain Bassem works as a police officer.

2. يأتي التصريف الثالث بعد (as) ويكون اختصاراً لجملة مبنية للمجهول:

- He works hard as planned.  
 = He works hard as it has been planned.

3. نستخدم (as) وبعدها جملة كرابطة بين الجمل بمعنى مختلفة:

- He fell asleep as he was watching a film. (as = when / while)  
 - As she was ill, she didn't go to school. (As = Because)

## Own

1. نستخدم (own) قبل اسم شيء، للتأكيد على أن شخص ما يملك هذا الشيء، أو أنه هو من قام بعمله، وتأتي (own) بعد صفات الملكية التالية:

my - his - her - your - our - their - its - .....s

- I relax well in my own room.  
 - He can't help you because he is busy doing his own homework.

1. يمكن أن نستخدم (own) كضمير وفي هذه الحالة لا يأتي بعدها اسم:

- This is my wife's car. My own is being checked in the garage.

## Plural Titles العناوين الجمع

للحظ أن عناوين الكتب والمؤسسات التي في صيغة الجمع تأخذ فعل مفرد:

- Lion Guardians is a success story.  
 - One Thousand and One Nights has been translated into several languages.

## but / but still لكن

نستخدم (but) للتعبير عن تناقض في الفكرة الرئيسية بين الجملتين:

- I asked for another glass of orange juice, but there was no more.

نستخدم (but still) للتعبير عن تناقض في التوقع أو الرأي بين الجملتين:

- There was no more orange juice, but still she asked for another glass.

## Thanks to بفضل / بسبب

نستخدم (thanks to) في سياق إيجابي للتعبير عن السبب مثل (because of):

- thanks to / because of / due to / owing to + اسم noun (inf. + ing)  
 = جملة + لأن as / since / because ...

- We could solve our problems thanks to your help.  
 = We could solve our problems because you helped us.

## Exercise On Language Hints

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- That man had his kidney ..... in his brother.  
 a. transplants b. transplanted c. transplant d. transplanting
- I went to the mechanic to have .....  
 a. repaired my car b. my car repaired  
 c. my car repair d. my car repairs
- Gulliver's Travels ..... a children's novel.  
 a. is b. are c. has d. have
- We have studied English ..... 2010.  
 a. at b. on c. since d. for
- I sleep well in ..... room.  
 a. own b. an own c. owning d. my own



6. .... a teacher, I have the qualities and qualifications that make my students understand well.  
a. As b. Like c. Since d. When
7. Rodayna has a cousin ..... Zamzam.  
a. was called b. called c. is called d. calling
8. It was two years ..... he moved into that flat.  
a. as b. while c. when d. since
9. What Mr Ashraf does ..... because he has been very ill recently.  
a. is b. are c. has d. have
10. Mr Nasser is my ..... friend of them all.  
a. the best b. the better c. better d. best
11. .... she was busy, she refused to help me.  
a. Because of b. On c. As d. During
12. Last August, I went to Alexandria for the second time ..... 2015.  
a. in b. since c. for d. by
13. I did the job well ..... agreed.  
a. like b. for c. since d. as
14. We have the equipment ..... for our work.  
a. needed b. needing c. need d. needs
15. I have my blood pressure ..... every week.  
a. check b. checks c. checked d. to check
16. Ahmed hasn't gone out since he ..... home last night.  
a. went b. has gone c. had gone d. going
17. .... own car is a KIA.  
a. Him b. His c. He d. Himself
18. The last match was Salah's ..... game ever.  
a. great b. greater c. greatest d. the greatest
19. I got a plumber ..... the water pump.  
a. to fix b. fixes c. fixed d. to fixing
20. She left an hour ago. She hasn't returned .....  
a. then b. since then c. already d. just
21. I arrived home ..... mum was preparing lunch.  
a. before b. as c. since d. on
22. I have my son ..... after the trees in our house's garden.  
a. to look b. look c. looks d. to looking
23. As ....., ice is lighter than water.  
a. know b. knows c. knew d. known

24. .... I was very tired, I didn't finish studying unit 2.  
a. When b. While c. Since d. Because of
25. That isn't my tablet. My ..... is a SAMSUNG.  
a. own b. it c. this d. ones

## Part III Language Skills

### 1 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

تأليف للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات.

#### (A) Tips on writing a biography :

\* إرشادات خاصة بكتابة السيرة الذاتية :

##### Early life: المرحلة الأولى من العمر

- Where was he / she born?
- Where did he / she live as a child?
- What did his / her parents do?
- What did he / she study?
- Did anything important happen to him / her as a child?

##### Description: الوصف

- Describe his / her appearance and her personality.
- How did he / she help the community?
- What did he / she do in the past to help the community?
- Where does he / she currently live and how is he / she helping the community now?

##### Conclusion: الخلاصة - الخاتمة

- What is your opinion of him / her?
- Why is his / her work so important?
- What is he / she admired for?
- Why is he / she a good role model?

#### (B) Tips on writing about a person :

\* إرشادات للكتابة عن شخص :

عند الكتابة عن شخص ما ، ينبغي أن نتحدث ببساطة ووضوح عن النقاط التالية:

- 1 Who this person is من هو هذا الشخص
- 2 What his / her job is ما الوظيفة
- 3 How old he / she is كم العمر
- 4 When he / she lived متى عاش
- 5 Where he / she comes from من أين
- 6 What he / she did ماذا فعل
- 7 When he / she did that متى فعل ذلك
- 8 Why that is important ما أهمية ذلك



## Model Essay

\* Write an essay of about 150 words about the person you admire :

## The person I admire

Perhaps you think I am going to write about a football star or a famous actor. These are important people, of course. However, I admire professor Magdi Yacoub. For me, he is the best role model. **قدوة** He is a great man for everything he has done for mankind. **البشرية**

Professor Yacoub was the son of a doctor who had to move to a new town every few years. This helped young Yacoub to adapt to **يتكيف مع** different situations. When his aunt died of a heart problem, he decided that he wanted to be a heart surgeon.

He succeeded in achieving his goal. He became a surgeon. He travelled abroad and worked with great heart surgeons in Britain and the USA. That gave him a lot of experience. He was part of the team that did the first heart transplant. **زرعة القلب** Queen Elizabeth II awarded him the title "Sir" for his great achievements. **إنجازات**

When he retired, he returned to Egypt and set up **أسس** Magdi Yacoub Heart Foundation in Aswan. This foundation helps people with heart problems for free.

In my opinion, Professor Magdi Yacoub is the best example of greatness among people. He doesn't think of himself. Instead, he thinks how to help the people of his own country. He doesn't care for money. He only cares for saving people's lives. He gives heart patient the hope to live. I hope we all do our best to follow his footsteps.

## 2 Translation الترجمة

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات. **تنويه**

## ① Translate into Arabic :

- The Egyptian woman has always been an important partner of man. Women in Egypt are strong, wise, helpful, intelligent and ambitious.
- No one can deny the role Dr Zewail played in science. With his help to his research team, they discovered the femtosecond.
- The use of computer tablets will help students in a positive way. It will enable them to reach the sources of knowledge easily.

## ② Translate into English :

- من الممكن أن تكون عظيماً ومشهوراً في أحد المجالات، كل ما عليك هو أن تثق بنفسك وتخطط جيداً للوصول لهدفك.
- لا بد من مساعدة الحكومة في تطوير العملية التعليمية في مصر، فالتعليم الجيد سيوفر لنا العلماء والمفكرين الذين سيجعلون حياتنا أفضل.
- يمكن استخدام المياه الجوفية تحت الصحراء الغربية لزراعة بعض المحاصيل، مما سيوفر الكثير من الغذاء للسكان كما سيوفر الكثير من فرص العمل.

## Vocabulary related to translation texts مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختبار على الوحدة

achieve	يُحقق	knowledge	المعرفة
ambitious	طُمُوح	population	السكان
chances	الفرص	positive	إيجابي
deny	ينكر	provide	يوفر
development	تطوير	research	بحث
enable	يُمكن	sources	مصادر
fields	المجالات	thinkers	المفكرين
goal	هدف	trust	يثق به
job opportunities	فرص العمل	wise	حكيم

## Part IV Just for Advanced level

للفائقين فقط

**تنويه** هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب الفائقين فقط.

## 1 المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين Key Vocabulary for Advanced level

## admire

- admire (d) (v)** يُعجب به (بدون حرف جر)
  - I admire the way you teach your students.
  - لاحظ أن :
    - عادة لا يُستخدم الفعل (admire) بهذا المعنى في الأزمنة المستمرة:
      - We are **admiring** Mohammed Salah. (X)
      - We **admire** Mohammed Salah. (✓)
- admire .... for ....** يُعجب به ... بسبب ...
  - Students **admire** Mr Hossam for working hard.
- admire (d) (v)** ينظر بإعجاب إلى / يستمتع بجمال الشيء أو جودته
  - She was **admiring** herself in the mirror.



- admirer = fan (n)  
- Football stars have millions of admirers.

إعجاب (ب)

- admiration (for) (n)  
- I want to express my admiration for your wisdom. الحكمة

### field

حقل / مزرعة

- field (n)  
- Farmers work in fields.

مجال / نشاط

- field (n)  
- Mr Yaseen works in the field of teaching.

لُوح المَلْعَب

- field (n)  
- The players are warming up on the field.

- ولاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- on the field داخل الملعب
- off the field خارج الملعب
- take the field = go into the field يدخل الملعب

الواقع العقلي

- field (n)  
- I think this opinion won't work in the field.

- ولاحظ المصطلحات التالية :

- field research بحث ميداني
- fieldwork عمل ميداني

### blood

الدم

- blood (n)  
- The heart pumps blood all over the body.

- لاحظ المتلازمات التالية :

- blood transplant / transfusion نقل الدم
- blood donation = giving blood التبرع بالدم
- blood pressure ضغط الدم
- blood donor مُتبرع بالدم

### community

مُجْتَمَع

- community (n)  
- The governor holds a meeting every month to discuss community problems.

### community (n)

حالية / جماعة / طائفة

- The Egyptian community in France welcomed our team.

- لاحظ أن :

صفة عامة يُستخدم فعل مفرد بعد كلمة (community) لكن في الإنجليزية البريطانية يمكن استخدام فعل جمع :

- The community is / are interested in the new educational system.

- ولاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- the local community المجتمع المحلي
- a community centre مركز اجتماعي
- a community leader قائد مُجْتَمَعِي
- community services خدمات اجتماعية
- community care رعاية اجتماعية
- a religious community طائفة دينية
- minority communities الأقليات
- international community المجتمع الدولي

- ولاحظ أن :

العلاقة بين (community) و (society) هي علاقة بين الجزء والكُل، فكلمة (community) تدل على مجتمع أصغر داخل المجتمع الأكبر (society)

### desire

يرغب في

- desire (d) (v) = want ... very much  
- He desires to live in a villa, not a flat.

- لاحظ أن :

لا يُستخدم الفعل (desire) في الأزمنة المستمرة :

- The Egyptians are desiring peace. السلام (X)
- The Egyptians desire peace. (✓).

- desire (to + inf.) / (for + n) = strong wish or hope رغبة / أمنية شديدة  
- Sama has a strong desire to succeed.  
= Sama has a strong desire for success.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- a strong / great / burning desire رغبة قوية
- have a desire لديه رغبة
- show a desire يُظهر رغبة
- express a desire يُعبر عن رغبة
- satisfy/ fulfill a desire يُلبّي أو يُشبع رغبة

### donate

يتبرع بـ

- donate (d) (v) = give  
- It is kind of you to donate blood.  
- donate + شيء + to + شخص / شيء لـ ...  
- Salah donates a lot of money to poor people.



- **donation (n)**  
- Most charities get money from **donations**.

- **donation to** + الشخص الذي حصل على التبرع  
- Salah made a **donation to** a children's hospital.

- **donation from** + الشخص الذي يُعْطى التبرع  
- A children's hospital got a **donation from** Salah.

- **donation of** + الشيء الذي يتم التبرع به  
- The **donation of** blood is something very important.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- make / give a donation تبرع
- a generous donation تبرع كريم / هائل
- anonymous donation تبرع من فاعل خبير (المتبرع مجهول)
- receive a donation يتلقى تبرع
- charitable donation تبرع خيري

- **donor (n)**  
- Blood **donors** must be healthy people.

### empathy

- **empathy (with) (n)**  
- His **empathy with** poor people is clear. القدرة على إظهار التعاطف مع - الرعاية أو تقدير ظروف الآخرين واضح
- **empathetic = empathic (adj)**  
- Mr Helmi is **empathetic** with my opinion. متعاطف مع - مراعى أو مُقدّر لظروف الآخرين

### generous

- **generous (adj)**  
- People who donate money and other things are **generous**. جواد - كريم - سخى
- **generous + to** + شخص  
- He is **generous to** the poor. الفراء كريم مع
- **generous + with** + الشيء (adj)  
- Rodayna is **generous with** her effort. الجهد كريم بـ
- **generosity (n)**  
- The people of Aswan are famous for their **generosity**. الكرم - الجود - السخاء
- Giving money to charities is an **act of generosity**. تصرف بنم عن الكرم

### hunt

- **hunt (ed) (v)**  
- It is known that lions **hunt** in packs. بصطاد (حيوانات وطيور) في قطعان
- **hunt (ed) = search (v)**  
- She **hunted** for an hour but she couldn't find the lost ring. يبحث عن - يفتش عن خاتم

- **hunt (ed) ... down (v)**  
- The police **hunted** the gang **down** and arrested them. يطارد - يَنْقُص - يُلَاحِظ

- **hunt (n)**  
- Some people helped in the **hunt** for the missing boy. البحث - التفتيش عن

- **hunter (n)**  
- It is not allowed for **hunters** to kill lions. صياد - قناص

### intelligence

- **intelligent (n)**  
- To be good at maths and physics, you need to be very **intelligent**. ذكي
- **intelligence (n)**  
- To be good at maths and physics, you need much **intelligence**. الذكاء - الفطنة

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- show intelligence يظهر ذكاء
- high / low intelligence ذكاء عالي / محدود
- artificial intelligence الذكاء الاصطناعي (الحاسوبي)

- **intelligence (n)**  
- Our **intelligence** has found out a lot of secret plans. المخابرات الخطط السرية

### livestock

- **livestock (n)**  
- The **livestock** needs more care. (تأخذ فعل مفرد أو جمع) حيوانات المزارع - الماشية رعاية
- The **livestock** need more care.

### cattle

- **cattle (n)**  
- Cattle are kept for meat and milk. أنعام / ماشية (تأخذ فعل جمع)

### long-term

- **long-term (adj)**  
- This plan is **long-term**. (X) بعيد المدى / على المدى البعيد (تستخدم قبل الاسم فقط)
- This is a **long-term** plan. (✓)

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- a long-term plan خطة طويلة المدى
- a long-term strategy استراتيجية طويلة المدى
- in the long term على المدى البعيد
- a long-term illness مرض مزمن



## monitor

- monitor (ed) (v)
  - The situation is **monitored** carefully.
  - It is not legal to **monitor** people's phone calls.
- monitor (n)
  - Don't look at the computer **monitor** for a long time.
- monitor (n)
  - There are peace **monitors** between the two countries.

## party

- party (n)
  - I invite you to my birthday **party**.
  - have a party / hold / give a party
  - attend a party
- party (n)
  - I have never joined any political **party**.
- party (n)
  - I saw a tour guide and a **party** of tourists.

## track

- track (ed) (v)
  - The police are **tracking** the terrorists.
  - The enemy **tracked** and attacked.
- track (ed) (v)
  - Teachers must **track** the progress of their students.
- track (n)
  - I followed the **track** down the mountain.
- track (n)
  - The first runner to reach the end of the **track** wins the gold medal.

## transplant

- transplant (n)
  - My uncle had a heart **transplant** surgery.
- transplant (ed) (v)
  - His kidney was **transplanted** in his brother.
- transplant (ed) (v)
  - I **transplanted** an apple tree next to the old palm tree.

## support

- support (ed) (v)
  - You must **support** people when they need you.
  - I **support** your opinion.
- support (n)
  - Your **support** helped me a lot.

## 2 Prefixes

Prefix	Function	Examples
bio-	خاص بعلم الأحياء أو الحياة	biology biography
dis-	تُكوّن العكس	disappear
inter-	بين	interview
trans-	غَير	transplant

## 3 suffixes

Suffix	Function	Examples
-ation	تُكوّن اسم	admiration
-ce	تُكوّن اسم	intelligence
-er / -r	تُكوّن اسم الفاعل	villager
-ion	تُكوّن اسم	donation
-ist	تُكوّن اسم الفاعل	biologist artist scientist
-or	تُكوّن اسم الفاعل	donor
-ure	تُكوّن اسم	pressure
-ment	تُكوّن اسم	agreement



### Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

• Choose the correct Answer from a, b, c or d:

- All Egyptians ..... Salah for his skill and generosity. الكرم  
a. inquire b. admire c. derive d. role play
- The Egyptian ..... in London welcomed and supported the Egyptian handball team.  
a. Frequency b. stadium c. Maasai d. community
- Which of the following is correct?  
a. A society is a part of a community.  
b. A community is bigger than a society.  
c. A society is a part. A community is a whole.  
d. A society is a whole. A community is a part.
- We all know that water ..... has become a must.  
a. wasting b. donating c. conservation d. support
- Although he is rich, he works hard to ..... his desire for success.  
a. satisfy b. donate c. conserve d. monitor
- When we do not know who paid the money, we say it is a ..... donation.  
a. antonym b. synonym c. synonymous d. anonymous
- All fans cheered when the players ..... the field.  
a. ploughed b. took c. lost d. missed
- The livestock on this farm ..... looked after by three workers.  
a. is b. are c. is or are d. has
- The cattle on this farm ..... looked after by three workers.  
a. is b. are c. is or are d. has
- In the ....., eating too much food causes overweight.  
a. long term b. field c. hometown d. desire

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	- الاختيار الأدق والأصح لمعنى الجملة هو (admire)
2.	d	- الاختيار الوحيد الذي يعطي معنى في هذا السياق هو (community) بمعنى (جالية)
3.	d	- الاختيار (d) هو الصحيح لأن كلمة (society) أشمل ويندرج تحتها (community)
4.	c	- كلمة (conservation) بمعنى (الحفاظ على) هي الوحيدة التي تعطي معنى منطقي للجملة
5.	a	- التعبير (satisfy his desire) يعني (يُشبع رغبته)
6.	d	- التعبير (anonymous donation) يعني (تبرع من فاعل خير)
7.	b	- التعبير (took the field) يعني (نزلوا أرض الملعب)
8.	c	- الاسم (livestock) يمكن أن يتبعه فعل مفرد أو جمع
9.	b	- الاسم (cattle) يتبعها فعل جمع وليس مفرد
10.	a	- التعبير (In the long term) يعني (على المدى الطويل)

### Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- He no longer ..... as he used to do.  
a. smoke b. smokes c. smoked d. doesn't smoke
- He used to smoke but now he .....  
a. isn't anymore b. doesn't no longer  
c. doesn't any longer d. any longer doesn't
- He was used to smoking, but now he .....  
a. is no longer b. no longer is c. does no longer d. no longer does
- A: Does he smoke? B: No, but he .....  
a. is used to b. is used to doing c. used to do d. used to be
- A: Is he used to smoking? B: No, but he .....  
a. is used to b. is used to doing  
c. used to do d. used to be



6. A: \_\_\_\_\_ ? B: Yes, but he never smokes now.  
 a. Is he used to smoking b. Does he get used to smoking  
 c. Did he use to smoke d. Was he used to smoke
7. I wish you \_\_\_\_\_ your time last year.  
 a. wasted b. didn't waste c. had wasted d. hadn't wasted
8. \_\_\_\_\_ to bed before 1 a.m.  
 a. Rarely do I go b. Rarely I go  
 c. I go rarely d. Rarely am I go
9. He never \_\_\_\_\_ used to eating in class.  
 a. is b. was c. got d. get
10. It's a habit of \_\_\_\_\_ to drink a big glass of water when I get up every morning.  
 a. I b. me c. my d. mine

No.	Answer & Explanation
1.	b - الجملة تدل على عادة كانت موجودة في الماضي (used to smoke) لم تعد موجودة في الحاضر، لذلك استخدمنا الفعل (smokes) لأن الفاعل (He)
2.	c - لا يمكن استخدام (isn't anymore) لأن الفعل الأساسي في الجملة الأولى هو (smoke) وليس الفعل (be) - نفي الفعل الأساسي (smoke) في المضارع يكون بـ (doesn't) وتأتي بعدها (any longer) وليس قبلها - لا يمكن استخدام (doesn't no longer) لأنها خاطئة لغوياً
3.	b - لا يمكن استخدام (does) لأن الفعل الأساسي في الجملة الأولى هو (was) وليس الفعل (smoking) - نفي الفعل الأساسي (was) في صيغة المضارع يكون بـ (is) وتأتي قبلها (no longer) في هذه الصيغة المختصرة - لا يمكن استخدام (is no longer) لأنها خاطئة لغوياً في الصيغة المختصرة فقط
4.	c - الفعل الأساسي في السؤال هو (smoke) وليس (be) فبحل محله (do) وليس (be) - لا يمكن استخدام (a / b) لأنهما في المضارع في حين أن السياق بعد (but) يتطلب الماضي

5.	d	- الفعل الأساسي في السؤال هو (is) وليس (smoking) فبحل محله (be) وليس (do) - لا يمكن استخدام (a / b) لأنهما في المضارع في حين أن السياق بعد (but) يتطلب الماضي
6.	c	- لابد أن يكون السؤال عن العادة في الماضي لأن الرد (Yes) يدل على أنه كان يدخن في الماضي لكنه لا يفعل الآن.
7.	d	- بعد (I wish) يُستخدم الماضي التام في حال وجود ظرف زمان ماضي (last year)
8.	a	- عندما تبدأ الجملة بظرف دال على النفي مثل (rarely) فلا بد أن يأتي الفعل المساعد قبل الفاعل - الاختيار (d) خاطئ أنه لا يمكن استخدام (am) قبل (go) في المصدر
9.	c	- لا يأتي الظرف (never) في السياق العادي قبل (is / was) - الاختيار (d) خاطئ أنه لا يمكن استخدام (get) في المصدر بعد (he)
10.	d	- بعد التعبير (it is a habit of) نستخدم ضمير ملكية (mine)





# Test on Unit 2

Understand

Apply

Create

## Part One

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. "He donated some blood". The word "donated" is antonymous with .....

- a. kept      b. received      c. gave  
d. admired      e. sold

2. I ..... this man for his bravery and strong will.

- a. press      b. admire      c. donate  
d. collect      e. praise

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. My sister's really ..... She's always buying things for her friends.

- a. furious      b. brave      c. generous      d. frustrated

4. The Egyptian ..... in Cameron welcomed our team in the African cup.

- a. peoples      b. president      c. community      d. society

5. Mohamed Salah is a role ..... to millions of young people around the world.

- a. example      b. module      c. model      d. figure

6. To ..... your progress, record each day's results.

- a. move      b. monitor      c. wish      d. rationalize

7. Magdy ..... to the library twice a week.

- a. usually goes      b. goes usually      c. usually go      d. go usually

8. My uncle ..... in 1970.

- a. born      b. was born      c. bear      d. bears

9. Leen has a cousin ..... Kenzy.

- a. called      b. was called      c. calling      d. is called

10. My grandfather always ..... to work when he was young.

- a. walked      b. walks      c. is walking      d. was walking

11. Smart cards ..... everywhere nowadays.

- a. use      b. uses      c. are using      d. are used

12. I'll collect you as soon as my car .....

- a. was repaired      b. had been repaired  
c. is repaired      d. repaired

13. Who .....

- a. was the door opened by      b. did you open the door  
c. was opened the door      d. were you opened the door

14. Egyptian cotton clothes ..... all over the world.

- a. is sold      b. sells      c. are sold      d. has sold

15. A: Have you visited Ali? - B: Yes, I ..... him last night.

- a. have visited      b. visit      c. will visit      d. visited

16. He ..... a smart BMW. He has paid too much money for it.

- a. had      b. was had      c. is had      d. has

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Who would win in a fight, a lion or a tiger ? Well, if size has anything to do with the matter, the tiger would win. That's because tigers are the largest of all cat species. The tiger is the third largest land meat-eating animal. Tigers are not only large; they are also fast.

You might not think that such large, fast, and wild creatures need help to live, but they do. The tiger is an endangered species. Despite all of the tiger's strengths, the future of the species is uncertain.

Tigers face a very high risk of extinction. Interestingly, the most serious threats that tigers face come from a much smaller species. Humans threaten tigers in primarily two ways: hunting and destroying habitat. Tigers are hunted for many reasons. People have long valued the famous striped skins. Though trading tiger skins is now illegal in most parts of the world, tiger hair is worth around \$ 10,000 on the black-market. Though the fur would be a motivation for most thieves, other parts of the tiger can also bring wealth. Some people in China and other Asian cultures believe that various tiger parts have health benefits. Traditional Chinese medicine calls for the use of tiger bones, amongst other parts to treat some serious diseases. Tigers have also been hunted as game. In other words, people hunted tigers only for the excitement and



achievement of killing them. Such killing took place in large scale during the 19<sup>th</sup> and early 20<sup>th</sup> centuries, when a single maharaja or English hunter might claim to kill over a hundred tigers in their hunting career. Though this practice is much less popular today than it was in the past, it has not stopped entirely.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. It is strange that a lion can easily ..... a tiger despite its size.  
a. respect      b. win      c. beat      d. gain
18. The underlined word "risk" means .....  
a. danger      b. safety      c. peace      d. war
19. Tiger's ..... have health benefits.  
a. legs      b. teeth      c. bones      d. hands
20. According to the passage, killing tigers can be ..... for some people.  
a. excitement      b. boring      c. dull      d. miserable
21. The writer isn't ..... about the future of tigers.  
a. uncertainly      b. surely      c. uncertain      d. sure
22. The tiger is an endangered species means that it's about to .....  
a. retire      b. stay      c. die out      d. remain
23. People hunt tigers for their .....  
a. horn      b. nails      c. skin      d. nose

### Part Two

#### 1. Translate into Arabic :

Egyptian scientists have achieved great successes all over the world. They will achieve more if they are given the due chance.

(الطود - التدريب الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)

#### 2. Translate into English :

تعتبر مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي من أهم إنجازات التكنولوجيا الحديثة، لكن هذه المواقع لها بعض السلبيات الخطيرة التي يجب تجنبها.

#### 3. Write an essay of about 150 words on :

The role of youth in society

موقع  
التفوق  
AltFwok.com

تلويح • للتدريب على أشكال مختلفة من قطع الفهم بنظام اسئلة MRQ. بنك الاسئلة



# UNIT 3

## Improving lives

SB pages 26 : 35 WB pages 14 : 19

### Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- Reading :  
An extract from David Copperfield
- Writing :  
A paragraph on a book character;  
A summary of a story
- Listening :  
A talk about the effect of Charles Dickens' books

- Speaking :  
Discussing a topic
- Language :  
Past simple and present perfect
- Life skills :  
Empathy



موقع  
التفوق  
AltFwok.com

• تلك الأسس للثقافة اليومية والشعرية  
• ملحق الهجرات اللغوية  
• تدريبات الألفاظ الشريفة وفي تلك الأسس  
• في ملحق تلك الأسس Dictation

الإنسان  
الوحدة

# PART ONE

LESSONS

# 1 & 2

SB pages 26 : 29 WB pages 100 & 101

## Part I

## Vocabulary

• لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

تلويح

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

amazing(adj)	مذهل - رائع جدًا	owe(d) (v)	يدين - يكون مدين
debt(n)	دين (مديونية)	plump(adj)	مكتنز - ممتلئ قليلًا
earn(ed) (v)	يكسب - يجني مال	prison(n)	السجن
merchant(n)	تاجر	rat(n)	فأر
miserable(adj)	تعييس - بائس	terrible(adj)	فظيع - سيء جدًا
miserably(adv)	بتعاسة - بشقا		

• من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

تلويح

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

action(n)	خُذْتُ - فعل	hide - hid - hidden (v)	يُخْفِي/يُخْفَى - يختفي
arrange(d) (v)	يُرتَّب - يُوَفِّر	high school(n)	مدرسة ثانوية
beliefs (n)	معتقدات	honest(adj)	أمين
borrow(ed) (v)	يستعير - يستلف	hurt - hurt (v)	يؤذي - يُصِيب
break - broke - broken (v)	ينعطل - يكسر - ينكسر	lucky(adj)	محظوظ
brilliant(adj)	رائع - لامع - ممتاز	modern(adj)	حديث
character(n)	شخصية	opportunity (n)	فرصة
childhood(n)	مرحلة الطفولة	penny(n)	بنس (١/٤ من الجنيه الإسترليني)
criminal(n - adj)	مجرم - إجرامي	realise(d) (v)	يُدْرِك - يستوعب
deserve (d) (v)	يستحق - يساوي	remove (d) (v)	يزيل - يمحو
die(d) (v)	يموت	review(ed) (v)	يُراجِع
dirty(adj)	قذر	reward (ed) (v/n)	يكافئ - مكافأة
discover(ed) (v)	يكشف	section(n)	قسم - جزء
empty(ied) (adj - v)	فارغ - يُفْرَغ	similar(adj)	مشابه - متشابه
entertain (ed) (v)	يُسلِّي - يُزِقُّه عن	skill(n)	مهارة
entertainment(n)	التسلية - الترفيه	society (n)	المجتمع
exactly(adv)	تمامًا - بالتحديد	spend - spent (v)	يقضي وقت - ينفق مال
extract(ed) (n - v)	مُتَنَطِف/اقتباس - يفتبس/يقتطف	storyteller(n)	روائي - قُصاص



factory(n)  
floor(n)  
goods(n)  
hate(d) (v)  
healthy

مصنع  
أرضية - دونه  
خضائع (أشياء جمع)  
كره - بقت  
صحة جيدة  
support (ed) (v/n)  
theatre(n)  
tired-looking(adj)  
twins(n)

دفع  
المرح  
يبدو عليه التعب  
توائم

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلم المستهدفة - جام حذا

Memorise	Understand
community(n) مجتمع	people who live in a place or an area and have common مشترك interests
debt(n) دين	money you must give to someone
earn(v) يكسب/يتقاضى أجر	to receive for doing work
merchant(n) تاجر كبير	a person who buys and sells a lot of goods
miserable(adj) تعيس/شقي	very sad
owe(v) يتعين - يكون متدين	money or things you have to pay back يُسدد / يُرد
plump(adj) مكتر - مستنق قليلاً	slightly قليلاً fat in a nice way
prison(n) السجن	a place to keep criminals for a period فترة of time as punishment عقاب
rat(n) فأر - حرد	an animal like a big mouse

### Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### 1 Key vocabulary

1. He's been looking for an extra job to get out of .....

a. debit      b. debt      c. dirt

2. Most football players ..... a lot of money.

a. win      b. beat      c. earn

(إدارة الخليفة والمظفر ٢٠٢٢)

d. doubt

(الفيوم - الشواشنة ٢٠٢٢)

d. fill

3. A lot of people in Africa live ..... due to poverty and lack of education.

a. truly      b. amazingly      c. sincerely      d. miserably

4. They broke the law and were sent to ..... for a year.

a. prisoner      b. prison      c. imprisonment      d. park

5. My daughter never stops eating, so she is .....

a. thin      b. thick      c. plump      d. angry

6. All I am or can be, I ..... to my great mother.

a. owe      b. admire      c. dare      d. fill

7. The journey home was ..... Everyone was sad about losing the game.

a. miserable      b. happy      c. cheerful      d. enjoyable

8. Some ..... say that their sales مبيعات were affected by the price of the dollar.

a. interests      b. opportunities      c. merchants      d. merchandise

9. The cruise was really ..... We all enjoyed it.

a. amazing      b. terrible      c. miserable      d. b & c

10. The cruise was really ..... We all regretted joining it.

a. amazing      b. terrible      c. miserable      d. b & c

### 2 Important Vocabulary

11. I read a/an ..... from David Copperfield in Unit 3.

a. exact      b. extract      c. trick      d. work

12. To be ....., Sama did not break the vase. I did it.

a. honest      b. brilliant      c. dirty      d. criminal

13. Shouting at children ..... their feelings.

a. realises      b. hurts      c. empties      d. reviews

14. Children depend on their parents' .....

a. society      b. childhood      c. entertainment      d. support

15. He was ..... for his hard work.

a. rewarded      b. hidden      c. entertained      d. deserved

16. There is a job ..... in this factory. You can apply for it.

a. mistake      b. view      c. opportunity      d. experience

17. Although I helped her with the housework, I felt sorry for my .....

a. look-tired      b. tired-look      c. tired-looking      d. looked-tiring



Unit 3

18. Don't let the baby crawl on this ..... grass.  
a. honest b. brilliant c. dirty d. criminal
19. From the sad look on her face, I ..... that there is something wrong.  
a. realised b. reviewed c. emptied d. hurt
20. Let the kids have fun and enjoy their .....  
a. society b. childhood c. penny d. support
21. This bad car doesn't ..... the price you have paid for it.  
a. entertain b. hide c. reward d. deserve
22. In Egypt, students have to finish ..... school before joining university.  
a. high b. low c. prep d. primary
23. The ..... sold in this shop are all made in Egypt.  
a. work b. works c. goods d. good
24. Salah is a/an ..... footballer. He is a world-famous star.  
a. honest b. brilliant c. dirty d. criminal
25. The child ..... the bottle of water on the floor.  
a. realised b. reviewed c. emptied d. hurt
26. Try to be a good member of your .....  
a. society b. childhood c. entertainment d. support
27. The thief ran away and ..... in the fields.  
a. entertained b. hid c. rewarded d. deserved
28. Sama and Abdulrahman are ..... but they are completely different.  
a. unlike b. difference c. twin d. twins
29. There are nice shows to ..... the children.  
a. entertain b. hide c. realise d. deserve
30. For ....., you can go to the cinema or the theatre.  
a. society b. childhood c. entertainment d. support
31. He ..... the trains timetable before buying a ticket.  
a. realised b. reviewed c. emptied d. hurt
32. He was arrested because of his ..... behaviour.  
a. honest b. brilliant c. dirty d. criminal

3 Definitions

33. A ..... is money you must give to someone.  
a. donation b. prize c. reward d. debt
34. To ..... means to receive money for doing work.  
a. earn b. win c. make d. get
35. A ..... is a person who buys and sells a lot of goods.  
a. worker b. writer c. merchant d. volunteer

36. To ..... money or things means you have to pay them back.  
a. own b. owe c. lend d. donate
37. .... means very sad or unhappy.  
a. Misery b. Miserable c. Cheer d. Cheerful
38. A woman or a child who is ..... is slightly fat in a nice way.  
a. plump b. fat c. obese d. overweight
39. .... is a place to keep criminals for a period of time as punishment.  
a. Imprison b. Prisoner c. Imprisonment d. Prison
40. A ..... is an animal like a big mouse.  
a. goat b. rabbit c. cat d. rat

Part II Vocabulary Study

توبه ساعد فعلكم على الارتقاء بمستواكم عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

become	ill	يَمرض	no parents	ليس
break	the law/rules	يخالف القانون	debts	عليه ديون
change	your opinion	تُغير رأيك	a problem with	لديه مشكلة في
do	the homework	يعمل الواجب المنزلي	bad news	لديه أخبار سيئة
	exciting things	يقوم بأشياء مثيرة	time	لديه الوقت
earn	money	يكسب مال	no opportunity	ليس لديه فرصة
get	a better job	يحصل على وظيفة أفضل	a role	له دور يقوم به
owe	money to	يدين بالمال لـ	take	يُسجن - يَحبس
pass	exams	ينجح في الامتحانات	to prison	

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
earn money	يكسب - يَجني مال
honest	أمين
miserable	تَميس - يائس
terrible	فظيع - سيء جداً
	make money
	sincere, trustful
	sad, depressed, unhappy
	awful, horrifying, horrible



UNIT 3

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	المعكس
earn money	كسب - جنى مال	lose, waste money	يفسر / يبدد المال
miserable	تعبس - بائس	happy, contented	سعيد - راضى
plump	مكتنز - ممتلئ قليلاً	thin, slender, skinny	نحيف
empty	فارغ	full	مملوء
borrow	يستعير - يستلف	lend	يقترض - يُتلف
honest	أمن	dishonest, deceitful	مخادع - خائن
terrible	قطع - سيء جداً	nice, delightful, lovely, pleasant	لطيف - جميل - سار

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

earn	
earn(v)	يكسب - You can <b>earn</b> more money by working hard.
earning(n)	الكسب - There's no problem in <b>earning</b> more money by working hard.
earnings(n)	دخل / مكسبات - Be wise. Don't waste your <b>earnings</b> .
earner(n)	كاسب / عائل - This woman is the only <b>earner</b> for her children.

miser	
miser(n)	بغيل / تعبس - He is a <b>miser</b> .
misery(n)	التعاسة / البؤس - Poor people live in <b>misery</b> .
miserable(adj)	تعبس - بائس - Poor people have <b>miserable</b> lives.
miserably(adv)	بتعاسة - بشقاء - Our team failed <b>miserably</b> in their attempts to score a goal.

prison	
imprison(v)	يحبس - He has been <b>imprisoned</b> because he is a criminal.
prison(n)	السجن - He has been sent to <b>prison</b> because he is a criminal.
prisoner(n)	سجين - He is a <b>prisoner</b> because he is a criminal.
imprisonment(n)	الحكم عليه / السجن / الحبس - He has been sentenced to life <b>imprisonment</b> because he is a criminal.
imprisoned(adj)	محبوس - He is now <b>imprisoned</b> because he is a criminal.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a boy of four	ولد عمره 4 سنوات	none of them	لا أحد منهم
at this age	في هذا السن	not ... any more	لن ... مرة أخرى
difference in	فرق في	similar to	مشابه لـ
for the first time	لأول مرة	stay abroad	بقي خارج البلاد
it was not unusual	كان من المألوف	the poor law	قانون الفقراء - القانون السيء
make ... better	يجعل ... أفضل	what kind of person	أى نوع من الأشخاص
make ... worse for	يجعل ... أسوأ لـ		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

continue (up) to	يستمر حتى	learn from	يتعلم من
entertain ... with	يُسلِّي ... عن طريق	look after	يرعى / يعتنى بـ
find out	يكشف	owe ... to	يدين بـ ... لـ
help ... with	يساعد ... في	pay back	يرد الدين - يُسدّد
know ... for	يعرف ... بـ	take ... away	يأخذ ... بعيداً

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

earn money / get money / make money

- earn money** يكسب مال مقابل عمل  
- This doctor **earns** twenty thousand pounds a day.
- get money** حصل علي مبلغ معين من المال في مدة معينة  
- I **get** 4000 pounds a month.
- make money** يكسب (كثير من) المال بطريقة غير تقليدية  
- Footballers **make** a lot of money.

own / owe / borrow / lend

- own(ed)** يمتلك  
- He **owns** a farm in the countryside.
- owe(d)** يدين بـ  
- I **owe** Ahmed a thousand pounds.
- borrow(ed)** يقترض / يستلف / يستعير  
- I **borrowed** a thousand pounds from Ahmed.
- lend - lent - lent** يُقرض / يُتلف  
- Ahmed **lent** me a thousand pounds.



plump / fat / overweight / obese

كيف نقول أن شخصاً سميناً / زائداً الوزن :

مكثرت - ممتلئ / بشكل جذاب (بالنسبة للنساء والأطفال)

• plump

- She is a **plump** cheerful little girl.

• fat

- A **fat** person finds it difficult to do a sport.

• overweight

- She wants to follow a diet because she is **overweight**.

• obese

- He was an **obese** teenager.

prison - jail - cell

• prison

- Thieves are sent to **prison**.

• jail

- He was taken to **jail**.

• cell

- The dangerous criminal was kept alone in a **cell**.

## General Exercise On Vocabulary study

• MCQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. I did ..... before watching TV.

a. a decision b. a mistake c. my homework

d. exciting things e. some debts

2. I have ..... to play.

a. a role b. no opportunity c. a problem

d. debts e. no parents

3. My baby sister never stops eating! That's why she looks .....

a. slight b. slim c. plump

d. thin e. fat

4. She looked miserable." 'Miserable' here is antonymous with .....

(عرب طلبة ٢٠٢٢)

a. depressed

b. happy

c. contented

d. poor

e. helpless

5. A girl ..... can't look after herself.

a. in four

b. of four

c. from four

d. four

e. who is four

• MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He was sent to prison as he ..... a lot of money to the bank.

(الفيوم - ايشواي ٢٠٢٢)

a. won

b. gained

c. owed

d. earned

2. The judge assured that the director had ..... the law and sent him to prison.

(الامامية الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)

a. supported

b. kept

c. broken

d. issued

3. I was over the moon after the last exam I had .....

a. passed

b. solved

c. made

d. earned

4. It is not a bad thing if you ..... your opinion if it is wrong.

a. change

b. do

c. break

d. make

5. You can't say she is fat. She is ..... no more . (الديرة - الدقي ٢٠٢٠)

a. clumsy

b. obese

c. plump

d. crescent

6. Earn and lose are .....

a. antonyms

b. synonyms

c. adverbs

d. nouns

7. My job here is ..... customers.

a. help

b. to help

c. to helping

d. being helped

8. If something ..... wrong with the machine, call me.

a. has

b. does

c. makes

d. goes

9. I study hard ..... pass the next exam.

a. so

b. because

c. in order to

d. for



10. Can you take your toys ..... please, Sama ?

- The room is in a mess فوضى.  
a. after      b. up      c. off      d. away

11. I owe some money ..... a friend of mine.

- a. with      b. from      c. to      d. at

12. I will help you ..... this difficult maths lesson.

- a. by      b. to      c. for      d. with

13. My father's ..... are what we live on.

- a. earns      b. earner      c. earning      d. earnings

14. .... are people who are not generous.

- a. Misers      b. Miserly      c. Miserable      d. Misery

15. Those who break the law must be .....

- a. prison      b. prisoner      c. imprisoned      d. imprisonment

16. Those who break the law are kept as .....

- a. prison      b. prisoners      c. imprisoned      d. imprisonment

17. I ..... this flat. It's mine.

- a. owe      b. own      c. borrow      d. lend

18. She ..... her success to her parents.

- a. owes      b. owns      c. borrows      d. lends

19. Will you ..... me the money I need?

- a. owe      b. own      c. borrow      d. lend

20. .... much money will leave you heavily in debt.

- a. Owning      b. Owning      c. Borrowing      d. Lending

21. The High dam was built ..... the age of President Nasser.

- a. of      b. for      c. at      d. in

22. In prison, that criminal was kept in a small ..... on his own.

- a. jail      b. cell      c. prison      d. a & c

1 Reading Texts

1. David Copperfield

(58 page 27)

Check Vocabulary

"This is Mr Quinion, David," Mr Murdstone said. "You're going to work for<sup>(1)</sup> him at Murdstone and Grinby, the bottle merchants<sup>(2)</sup>, in London. You'll earn<sup>(3)</sup> enough money to pay<sup>(4)</sup> for your food, and I've arranged<sup>(5)</sup> a place for you to live."

I was ten years old and I was going to go to work. And it was hard work<sup>(6)</sup>. I went to a dirty<sup>(7)</sup> old house near<sup>(8)</sup> the river where rats<sup>(9)</sup> lived under the floors.<sup>(10)</sup> There my job was to wash empty<sup>(11)</sup> bottles with three other boys, and I hated<sup>(12)</sup> it.

One morning, a plump<sup>(13)</sup> man came to see me with Mr Quinion. "Ah, Master<sup>(14)</sup> Copperfield!" the man said. "This is Mr Micawber," Mr Quinion told me. "You will be living at his house."

And that evening, Mr Micawber took me home. His wife – a thin<sup>(15)</sup>, tired-looking<sup>(16)</sup> lady<sup>(17)</sup> – was sitting with a baby. The baby was one of twins<sup>(18)</sup>, and they had a boy of four and a girl of three.

I soon discovered<sup>(19)</sup> that the Micawbers were poor<sup>(20)</sup> and that Mr Micawber owed<sup>(21)</sup> money to several<sup>(22)</sup> people. One morning the police came and took Mr Micawber away to prison<sup>(23)</sup> because of his debts<sup>(24)</sup>. I went to see him there the next Sunday.

"If a man earns twenty pounds<sup>(25)</sup> a year and spends<sup>(26)</sup> nineteen pounds, he'll be happy," he said. "But if he spends twenty pounds and a penny<sup>(27)</sup>, he'll be miserable."

- (1) يعمل لدي  
(2) تجار  
(3) تنقضي  
(4) تدفع  
(5) يرتب / يوفر  
(6) عمل شاق  
(7) قذر  
(8) بالقرب من  
(9) فئران  
(10) أرضيات  
(11) فارغ  
(12) بكرة  
(13) ممتلئ / مكتنز  
(14) سيد  
(15) نحيف  
(16) يبدو عليها التعب  
(17) سيدة  
(18) توأم  
(19) يكتشف  
(20) فقير  
(21) يدين بـ  
(22) العديد من  
(23) السجن  
(24) ديون  
(25) جنيهات  
(26) يُنفق  
(27) بنس ٠.١ من الجنيه



## 2. Learning new skills

The book character<sup>(1)</sup> David Copperfield went to work when he was ten years old. In the 1800s, it was not unusual<sup>(2)</sup> for children to work at this age in England. Poor parents did not have the money to send their children to school. They often needed their children to earn money or they could not pay their debts. Factories<sup>(3)</sup> liked to have children working for them because they did not need to pay them as much as<sup>(4)</sup> they paid adults<sup>(5)</sup>. The children could also do some things the adults could not do. For example<sup>(6)</sup>, they were small<sup>(7)</sup> so they could go under machines<sup>(8)</sup> when they broke down<sup>(9)</sup>. The children were often miserable<sup>(10)</sup>. They worked very long hours and most of them had no opportunity<sup>(11)</sup> to improve<sup>(12)</sup> their lives. However, some children learned<sup>(13)</sup> a skill<sup>(14)</sup> when they worked. They were the lucky<sup>(15)</sup> ones, as these new skills helped them to get better jobs<sup>(16)</sup> when they were older.

(WB page 100)



## Check Vocabulary

- (1) شخصية
- (2) غير مألوف
- (3) مصانع
- (4) بنفس القدر - كثيراً
- (5) مثل
- (6) الكبار
- (7) على سبيل المثال
- (8) صغير الحجم
- (9) آلات
- (10) يتعطل
- (11) تقيس / باليس
- (12) فُرصة
- (13) يُكتسب
- (14) يتعلم
- (15) مهارة
- (16) محظوظ
- (17) يحصلون على وظائف أفضل

## 2. Listening Texts

A. Today millions of people know Charles Dickens for the brilliant<sup>(1)</sup> books that he wrote. He was a great storyteller<sup>(2)</sup>. But, Dickens didn't only want to entertain<sup>(3)</sup> people with his books, he also wanted to change their opinions<sup>(4)</sup> about the world they lived in. He hoped his readers would then do something to make the world a better place<sup>(5)</sup>.



(SB page 29)

## Check Vocabulary

- (1) رائع / متأنق
- (2) سارد القصة
- (3) يسلي
- (4) يغير آرائهم
- (5) يجعل من العالم مكان أفضل

Dickens was most interested in helping poor children because of his own difficult childhood<sup>(6)</sup>. When he was 12 years old, Charles' father was sent to prison. Like David Copperfield, he had to leave school and work to support<sup>(7)</sup> his family instead. The Poor Law<sup>(8)</sup> of 1834 removed support for most poor people so their lives were hard.

When he wrote David Copperfield between 1849 and 1850, Dickens wanted to show us that not all poor people were bad. Like his father, Mr Micawber went to prison because he had no money but after he left prison, he wanted to help David because he was a good man. In Dickens' books, people who worked hard were also often rewarded<sup>(9)</sup>. For example, at the end of the book, David Copperfield becomes a successful writer.

Dickens also wanted to say that rich people needed to do something to help the poor. In David Copperfield, a man called Mr Wickfield helps David by giving him a room. Dickens thought that people like Mr Wickfield were honest and good and deserved<sup>(10)</sup> to be rewarded. Other people in the book, on the other hand, were bad and had an unhappy end.

- (6) طفولة
- (7) يساند
- (8) القانون
- (9) يكافئ
- (10) يستحق

## 3. Video script

People have always told stories.

Thousands of years ago they told stories about dangerous places to hunt so the people in their community wouldn't go there. Older people told stories about the people who came before them.

They couldn't write the stories down and they didn't want to lose them, so, they painted pictures to tell stories.

If you put your message into a story, people will remember it because they'll feel an emotional<sup>(1)</sup> connection<sup>(2)</sup> to the people and places in the story. They may even decide to do something to help the people in the story or the people like them.

They say a picture can tell a thousand words, but the words in a story can touch a thousand lives.

## Check Vocabulary

- (1) عاطفي
- (2) ارتباط

اطلب من الطلاب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإلقاء الأسئلة التالية عليهم :

1. Why did people often tell stories in the past ?
2. How did they tell the stories in the past ?
3. Why do stories often have a message ?



## Part IV Language



تعليم وتعلم  
Ma3ak App

ثم شرح الماضي البسيط في الوحدة الأولى.

تلويح

## The present perfect simple

### 1 The present perfect simple tense:

زمن المضارع التام البسيط :  
في الجملة الخبرية المثبتة :

Subject + have / has + P.P. ....

تستخدم (has) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) وتستخدم (have) مع الفاعل الجمع (We / They / You) والضمير (I).

ex. - I have tidied my bedroom. - Ahmed has played tennis for an hour.

في الجملة الخبرية المنفية :

Subject + hasn't / haven't + P.P. ....

ex. - They haven't watched the match yet.  
- Rodayna hasn't done her homework yet.

السؤال بـ «هل» :

Have / Has + Subject + P.P. .... ?

ex. - Have you tidied your room?  
Yes, I have (tidied my room).  
- Has Rodayna done her homework?  
No, she hasn't (done her homework yet).

السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام :

Question word + have / has + subject + P.P. .... ?

- Where have you played the match?  
- How long have you stayed here?

في صيغة المبني للمجهول :  
Object + have / has + been + P.P. ....

ex. - I have tidied my bedroom. (active)  
My bedroom has been tidied (by me). (passive)  
- Ahmed has played tennis for an hour. (active)  
Tennis has been played for an hour (by Ahmed). (passive)

## Mini Test 1

• Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- It is Sama who ..... my pen.  
a. take b. taking c. has taken d. have taken
- The children ..... the window. The pieces of glass are everywhere.  
a. broke b. were breaking c. has broken d. have broken
- ..... your teeth, Omar ?  
a. You have brushed b. Have you brushed  
c. Are you brushed d. Were you brushed
- They ..... doing the census الإحصاء السكاني. They're still doing it.  
a. have finished b. haven't finished  
c. had finished d. hadn't finished
- He ..... carefully.  
a. examines b. was examining  
c. has examined d. has been examined
- Where ..... before you have come here ?  
a. do you live b. you were living  
c. have you lived d. have you been lived

## Uses الاستخدامات

يستخدم زمن المضارع التام البسيط في الحالات التالية :

1 التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف غير منتهية (بدأت في الماضي و لم تنتهي بعد :

ex. - I have studied English since 2013. I'm in secondary one.

2 التعبير عن مواقف مرت في الماضي دون ذكر وقت حدوثها ولكن يكون المقصود ضمناً حتى هذه اللحظة/الآن :

ex. - I have visited the Pyramids three times.  
- Scientists have discovered medicines for a lot of diseases.

3 التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف منتهية في الماضي و لها اثر على الحاضر :

ex. - I've lost my mobile, so I can't phone my parents.



UNIT 3

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

Ⓛ لاحظ الفرق بين:

1. have / has been to + مكان مذهب إلى مكان وعاد  
- She **has been** to the market. Now **she is in the kitchen** putting the vegetables in the fridge.
  2. have / has gone (to) + مكان مذهب إلى مكان ولم يرجع بعد  
- Bassem **has gone** to the club. He **will come back** after the match.
  3. have been in + مكان + for / since .... متواجد في (لا يزال هناك)  
- I **have been in** London for three years. (This means I am in London now.)
- Ⓛ لا يتم ذكر توقيت وقوع الحدث في المضارع التام ، وعند ذكر التوقيت نستخدم الماضي البسيط:
- Ahmed **has drunk** two coffees.
  - Ahmed **drank** two coffees **yesterday**.
- Ⓛ عند التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف قابلة للتكرار يمكن استخدام تعبيرات زمنية مستمرة حتى الآن مثل:
- this morning / this week / this month / today / in the last year ... etc.**
- I **have sent** three emails **today**.
- Ⓛ يُستخدم المضارع التام مع (ever / never / since) للتعبير عن الخبرات والتجارب السابقة:
- I **have never gone** camping. (لم يسبق أن عشت هذه التجربة.)
  - Sama is the most intelligent girl I **have ever seen**. (الأول مرة أرى طالبة بهذا الذكاء.)
  - I **have worked** here **since** 2002. (لقد عملت هنا منذ ٢٠٠٢.)

Mini Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I ..... English since I was in Primary one. I still study it.  
a. studied      b. had studied      c. have studied      d. was studying
2. She ..... the High Dam three times. She'll visit it again next week.  
a. has visited      b. had visited      c. was visiting      d. has been visited
3. Hussein ..... his leg. He can't walk without a stick.  
a. was breaking      b. had broken      c. has been broken      d. has broken
4. Rodayna ..... to the club. I'll join her there.  
a. was gone      b. has gone      c. has been      d. had been

5. Your mother ..... to the market. Take the shopping bag to the kitchen.  
a. was gone      b. has gone      c. has been      d. had been
6. Mrs Noha ..... this school two years ago.  
a. has left      b. has been left      c. had left      d. left
7. Today, I ..... three emails so far. I'm waiting for two more.  
a. have received      b. was received      c. had received      d. was receiving

2 Time adverbs:

ظروف الزمان:

تُستخدم ظروف الزمان مع المضارع التام البسيط كالتالي:

Ⓛ ظروف الزمان تأتي بعد الفعل المساعد وقبل التصريف الثالث

من قبل ever - أبداً never - بالفعل already - نوا just

- ex. - My uncle **has just arrived** at the airport.  
- I **have never** seen a real fox.  
- This is the tallest tree I **have ever** seen.  
- **Have you ever** travelled abroad?  
- I **have already** passed the driving test.  
= I **have passed** the driving test **already**.

Ⓛ لاحظ ما يلي :

has / have + never + p.p. ....

= hasn't / haven't + ever + p.p. ....

- ex. - Nada **has never been** to Paris.  
- Nada **hasn't ever been** to Paris.

Ⓛ ظروف زمنية تأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة وأحياناً قبل التصريف الثالث :

حديثاً / مؤخراً lately = recently - حتى الآن up till now - حتى الآن so far  
in the last - على مر السنين over the years - لمدة for - منذ since  
- على مر السنين throughout the years - في الشهور الأخيرة months  
هذا الأسبوع this week

- ex. - I **have written** two essays **so far**.  
- **So far**, I **have written** two essays.



١ نستخدم (yet) في نهاية الجملة المفسية والاستفهامية ونبدل على أنه من المتوقع حدوث الفعل.

- ex. - Have you watered the trees yet?  
- Marwa hasn't seen the new manager yet.

٢ يأتي بعد (since) تعبير زمني يدل على وقت بداية الحدث مثل:

five o'clock / the morning / Monday / 26th September /  
منذ ذلك الحين / March / summer / 2013 / yesterday / last month / then  
..... / arrival / وصول / departure / رحيل / birth / ميلاد / death / موت / .....

- ex. - He's been here since April.  
- She has lived in Aswan since her birth.

٣ في حالة وجود جملتين مع (since) تكون الجملة بعد (since) ماضى بسيط والجملة الأولى مضارع تام:

- ex. - I have lived in this flat since I got married.  
= Since I got married, I have lived in this flat.

في حالة وجود جملة واحدة تكون مضارع تام

- ex. - I haven't seen him since 2015.  
- Since then, we haven't met.

٤ يأتي بعد (for) تعبير زمني يدل على المدة الزمنية التي استغرقها الحدث:

a moment / a while / فترة / two seconds / three minutes / half an  
hour / four hours / five days / six months / two seasons / ten years  
/ a decade / عقد / two centuries / قرنين / ages / مدة طويلة / a long time /  
على قدر ما أتذكر / a short time / the last / as long as I can remember

- ex. - I've had this mobile for more than 10 years.  
- He's been here for 6 months.

### Mini Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Marwa ..... to Aswan before.  
a. never has been b. has been never  
c. has never been d. was never going
- Hossam ..... to Hurghada. He plans to make his first visit next January.  
a. hasn't never been b. hasn't ever been  
c. has ever been d. has been never
- My parents ..... home yet.  
a. don't return b. weren't returning  
c. have returned d. haven't returned

4. Wonderful! Have you completed the report ..... ? So, you can give it to the manager.

- a. already b. yet c. ago d. yesterday

5. I haven't travelled outside Egypt ..... my birth.

- a. for b. since c. before d. last

6. I have felt great pain in my stomach since I ..... a piece of biscuits.

- a. eat b. has eaten c. ate d. had eaten

7. I haven't seen my sister ..... ages.

- a. for b. since c. before d. after

### 3 Notes for more understanding :

١ لاحظ استخدم (ago) بدلا من (just) والعكس :

فاعل + have / has + just + P.P. =

ماضى بسيط + just now a moment ago a short time ago

ex. - He has just left the office. = He left the office a moment ago.

- Nada has just gone out. = Nada went out just now / a moment ago.

٢ لاحظ استخدم (never) في بداية الجملة :

فاعل + have / has + never + P.P. = Never + have / has + فاعل + P.P.

ex. - I have never played squash. = Never have I played squash.

٣ لاحظ استخدم (ever / never) :

= This is the first time + subj + have / has + (ever) + P.P. ....

= This is the first time + for + subj + ضمير مفعول / فاعل + to + inf. ....

ex. - This is the first time I have ever seen such a tall girl.

= This is the first time for me to see such a tall girl.

جملة تفضيل ..... + subject + have / has + (ever) + P.P. ....

Subject + have / has + never + P.P. + such (a/an) + adj. صفة

+ n. اسم

ex. - She is the tallest girl I have ever seen.

- I have never seen such a tall girl.



١ لاحظ استخدام (yet) بدلا من (still) والعكس:

Subject + am / is / are + still + (inf. + ing)  
 Subject + haven't / hasn't + finished / stopped + (inf. + ing) .... yet.  
 ex. - He is still doing homework. = He hasn't finished doing homework yet.  
 - It is still raining. = It hasn't stopped raining yet.

٢ لاحظ الاختلاف بين (for) و (since) عند الاستخدام مع عدم تغيير المعنى:  
 أ. عند التحويل من (for) إلى (since) اطرح المدة من الوقت الحاضر:  
 ex. - He has lived in Aswan for 19 years.  
 = He has lived in Aswan since 2003.

ب. عندما لا يمكن حساب المدة تستخدم الصيغة التالية:  
 It is + جملة ماضى بسيط + since + مدة زمنية + past simple  
 ex. - She has stayed with her aunt for a long time.  
 = It is a long time since she stayed with her aunt.

ج. عند التحويل من (since) إلى (for) احسب المدة منذ بداية الحدث وحتى الوقت الحاضر:  
 ex. - He has waited here since seven o'clock. It is nine now.  
 = He has waited here for two hours.

د. لاحظ التحويل من (since) إلى (for) في الصيغة التالية:  
 It is + جملة ماضى بسيط + since + مدة زمنية + past simple  
 = Subject + haven't / hasn't + P.P. .... + for + مدة زمنية  
 ex. - It is five years since I (last) saw Ali.  
 = I haven't seen Ali for five years.

هـ. لاحظ استخدام (ago) بدلا من (for / since) والعكس:  
 Subject + have / has + P.P. .... + since / for ....  
 Subject + started / began + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing) + ago + مدة زمنية  
 ex. - The boys have played football for two hours.  
 = The boys started playing (to play) football two hours ago.  
 - He has worked in this hospital since 2010.  
 = He began working (to work) in this hospital twelve years ago.

١ لاحظ الصيغة التالية:

Subject + haven't / hasn't + P.P. + since + past simple  
 جملة ماضى بسيط  
 = Subject + last + S.C. + in / on / at + نصير زمنى ماضى  
 = The last time + Subject + S.C. + was + in / on / at + نصير زمنى ماضى  
 ex. - She hasn't gone shopping since Monday.  
 = She last went shopping on Monday.  
 = The last time she went shopping was on Monday.

#### 4 Present Perfect Simple Vs. Past Simple:

الفرق في الاستخدام بين المضارع التام والماضى البسيط

المضارع التام Present Perfect	الماضى البسيط Past Simple
١. حدث تم في وقت غير معروف في الماضي: - Someone <b>has broken</b> the window.	١. حدث تم في وقت محدد في الماضي: - Someone <b>broke</b> the window yesterday.
٢. حدث تم في وقت لم ينتهي بعد: - I <b>have received</b> three emails today.	٢. حدث تم في وقت انتهى: - I <b>received</b> three emails last Monday.
٣. حدث تم في الماضي وله أثر على الحاضر: - I <b>have learnt</b> to drive. Now, I <b>can</b> drive my father's car.	٣. حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي: - I <b>learnt</b> to drive. Mr Khalid <b>was</b> my driving teacher.
٤. حدث قابل للتكرار أو التعديل: - Salah <b>has scored</b> more than 100 goals in the Premier League. (صلاح لا يزال حياً ويمارس كرة القدم وقد يحرز المزيد من الأهداف)	٤. حدث غير قابل للتكرار أو التعديل: - Naguib Mahfouz <b>wrote</b> a lot of successful novels. (نجيب محفوظ توفي ولا يمكنه أن يكتب المزيد)
٥. حدث أو حالة لازالت موجودة: - I <b>have lived</b> in Aswan since 2002. (وما أزال أعيش هنا)	٥. حدث أو حالة لم تعد موجودة: - I <b>lived</b> in Aswan in 2002. (لم أعد أعيش هناك)

#### Mini Test 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father is angry because I ..... the door open.  
 a. leaves      b. left      c. have left      d. was left



2. My father is angry. I ..... the door open last night.  
a. leaves      b. left      c. have left      d. was left
3. He ..... three coffees so far today.  
a. drank      b. drinks      c. had drunk      d. has drunk
4. He ..... three coffees yesterday.  
a. drank      b. drinks      c. had drunk      d. has drunk
5. I ..... to swim. Now, I swim as well as a swimming champion.  
a. learn      b. learnt      c. have learnt      d. was learnt
6. I ..... to swim. That was during the summer holiday.  
a. learn      b. learnt      c. have learnt      d. was learnt
7. I ..... a running champion as a child. Now, I can hardly walk.  
a. was      b. had been      c. am being      d. have been
8. I ..... a running champion. I will represent Egypt in the following Olympics.  
a. was      b. had been      c. am being      d. have been

General Exercise

On Language

Apply

• التدرّيبات التالية مُرتّبة بشكل متدرّج تصاعدياً حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم.

تتويمة

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I haven't met him ..... he moved to a new house. (العامرية الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)  
a. for      b. yet      c. ago      d. since
2. Merna has been on holiday ..... the last two weeks. (أورسعيد - الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)  
a. just      b. since      c. yet      d. for
3. I have lived in Alexandria ..... 2005. (فتح الله كبر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)  
a. in      b. for      c. since      d. ago
4. They have ..... seen such a wonderful show. (إدارة أسوان - أحمد طه حسين المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)  
a. ever      b. never      c. since      d. yet
5. Aya ..... her homework recently. (الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢)  
a. didn't finish      b. have finished      c. has finished      d. will finish

6. I haven't seen my cousin ..... the last time we met in Cairo. (الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢)

a. when      b. ago      c. for      d. since

7. The little boy is crying because he ..... his leg. (المنيا - الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)

a. is broken      b. had broken      c. was breaking      d. has broken

8. We haven't seen her since she ..... to Paris. (أورسعيد - الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)

a. went      b. goes      c. has gone      d. had gone

9. During the last ten years, giant projects ..... out all over Egypt. (أدفو الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)

a. were being carried      b. are carried  
c. carried      d. have been carried

10. Salim ..... two coffees so far. (أدفو الثانوية والمطعم ٢٠٢٢)

a. drank      b. has drunk      c. drinks      d. was drinking

11. Have you ever ..... to London? - Yes, I went there last year. (أبج حمادي ٢٠٢٢)

a. went      b. been      c. gone      d. arrived

12. Have you sent all the invitations ..... ? You have done a great job! (أدفو - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)

a. yet      b. already      c. just      d. ever

13. He couldn't answer the phone ..... he was sleeping. (عرب طنطا ٢٠٢٢)

a. so      b. though      c. before      d. since

14. At the age of five, I ..... to swim. (أدفو الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)

a. learned      b. learn      c. have learnt      d. was learnt

15. Sara hasn't visited Aswan ..... 2 years ago. (إدارة أسوان - أحمد طه حسين المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)

a. so far      b. since      c. for      d. over the ages

16. .... I was very tired , I didn't finish studying. (المنيا الجديدة ٢٠٢٢)

a. During      b. While      c. Since      d. Because of

تتويمة تذكر القاعدة جيداً واستعد للتدرّيبات الشاملة ضمن الدرسين الثالث والرابع.

تتويمة

ALTfWOK.com موقع التفوق





## Part I

## Vocabulary

• لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية جيداً ومراجعتها بانتظام (الاجوبة قصوى في الامتحان).

## 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

association (n)	جمعية - اتحاد	plan(ned) (n/v)	خطة - يخطط
community(n)	مجتمع - جماعة	voluntary work	عمل تطوعي
culture(n)	الثقافة	youth (n)	الشباب
food bank	بنك الطعام	youth association	جمعية شبابية

• من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر ومراجعتها بانتظام.

## 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

admit (ted) (v)	يقر - يعترف	later (adv)	فيما بعد
adult (n - adj)	شخص بالغ - راشد	nowhere (adv)	لا مكان
brainstorm(ed) (v)	يستشر الفكر	opportunity(n)	فرصة
collect (ed) (v)	يجمع - يجمع	pay - paid (v)	يدفع مال
common (adj)	عام - مشترك - شائع	solution(n)	حل
crescent (n)	هلال	solve (d) (v)	يحل
disabled (adj)	مُعاق	stepfather (n)	زوج الأم
dreamer (n)	حالم	steps (n)	خطوات
ending (v)	نهاية - خاتمة	structure(n)	تركيب - بناء
experience (d) (n - v)	تجربة - يمر بتجربة	surprise(d) (n - v)	مفاجأة / دهشة - يفاجئ
experiences (n)	خبرات / تجارب حياتية	tip (n)	نصيحة
grow - grew - grown (v)	يكبر - يتوسع	trick(ed) (n - v)	خدعة - يخدع
improve(d) (v)	يحسن - يتحسن	trust (ed) (n - v)	ثقة - يثق بـ
include (d) (v)	يشمل / يتضمن - يُضمّن		

## 3 Definitions تعريفات

• تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج الأعمال المستهدفة - هام جداً

تأويه

Memorise	Understand
culture	ثقافة
food bank	بنك الطعام
voluntary work	عمل تطوعي
youth association	جمعية شبابية
	the beliefs and traditions of a group of people
	a place where people collect food to give to others
	a job that people do for no money
	a group of young people who do things together

## Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

## 1 Key vocabulary

- ..... work is what people do for no money.  
a. Culture      b. Hard      c. Voluntary      d. Bank
- ..... is the age of activity and livelihood.  
a. Old age      b. Youth      c. Babyhood      d. Womanhood
- The teachers' ..... play a great role in society.  
a. city      b. town      c. community      d. village
- People in Upper Egypt مصر صعيد have a different ..... from that of Lower Egypt. الوجه البحري  
a. culture      b. cultural      c. cultured      d. culturally
- A youth ..... is a group of young people who do things together.  
a. hostel      b. hotel      c. camp      d. association
- The Egyptian ..... plays an important role in feeding poor families.  
a. Restaurant      b. Kitchen      c. Food Bank      d. Shop
- We've ..... to spend the weekend in the countryside.  
a. indebted      b. planned      c. earned      d. owed

## 2 Important Vocabulary

- Your shoes will be repaired and ready for you to ..... in five minutes.

(المنيا - ديرموتاس ٢٠٢٠)

- a. collect      b. walk      c. buy      d. mend



9. A: Can you tell me about the ..... of the essay?  
B: Introduction, body and conclusion.  
a. situation b. twins c. structure d. ending
10. The thief ..... stealing my car and selling it for only ten thousand pounds.  
a. admitted b. arranged c. included d. stopped
11. He succeeded in ..... back all his debts.  
a. repairing b. respecting c. turning d. paying
12. I don't like films that have a sad .....  
a. ending b. ends c. an end d. ended
13. Volunteers help the needy المحتاجين ..... their problems.  
a. cause b. do c. make d. solve
14. My teacher gave me some useful ..... on how to improve my English.  
a. sorts b. kinds c. tips d. types
15. It was not funny playing a ..... on the poor old man. It was impolite.  
a. role b. rule c. goal d. trick
16. I was born and ..... up in a small village.  
a. grew b. got c. went d. looked
17. Modern technology has ..... our lives.  
a. suggested b. improved c. trusted d. worked
18. Follow these ..... and you will learn how to do the experiment.  
a. masters b. mistakes c. repairs d. steps
19. Child labour عمالة الأطفال is a/an ..... against childhood.  
a. crime b. opinion c. planning d. master
20. Ayman and I have some interests in ..... . We both like reading and fishing.  
a. common b. difference c. success d. expert
21. .... are fully grown-people.  
a. Children b. Old people c. Teenagers d. Adults (الدهليزية - طلبة ٢٠٢٠)
22. .... people need more interest and care.  
a. Able b. Disabled c. Criminal d. Plump
23. I asked you to do this difficult job because I ..... you.  
a. trust b. change c. hurt d. revise
24. The Egyptian Red ..... helps people in difficult situations.  
a. Tape b. Association c. Present d. Crescent

## 3 Definitions

25. .... is the beliefs and traditions of a group of people.  
a. Religion b. Culture c. Law d. Habits
26. A ..... is a place where people collect food to give to others.  
a. restaurant b. kitchen c. food bank d. shop
27. .... work means a job that people do for no money.  
a. Voluntary b. Team c. Group d. Paid

## Part II Vocabulary Study

تتويبه ساعد فعملك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

## 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	a job يقوم بعمل	make	a difference يُحدث فرقاً / يصنع الفارق
	voluntary work يقوم بعمل تطوعي		money يكسب مال - يجمع ثروة
	something to help يفعل شيء للمساعدة		brief notes يُنَوِّن ملاحظات قصيرة
follow	the steps يتبع الخطوات	play	a suggestion يقدم اقتراح
get	the main idea يفهم الفكرة الرئيسية		a trick on يخدع
write	a summary يكتب تلخيصاً		a role يلعب دوراً
have	a happy ending ذو نهاية سعيدة	solve	a problem يحل مشكلة
	a suggestion لديه اقتراح	go	travelling يذهب في رحلة
	common interests لديهم اهتمامات مشتركة		wrong يتعطل
	nowhere to live ليس لديه مكان يعيش فيه		



2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
admit	يعترف / يقرب
adult	شخص بالغ - راشد
common	عام - مشترك - شائع
miserable	تعبس - بائس
voluntary	عمل تطوعي
confess	mature, grown up
	widespread, usual, ordinary, customary
	unhappy, depressed
	unpaid

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
admit	deny, conceal, renounce
common	unusual, rare
trust	doubt, disbelieve
voluntary	compulsory, obligatory, paid

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

association	
associate (v) (d)	- Students and teachers associate El-Moasser with high quality.
association (n)	- I joined a youth association last summer.
association (n)	- There is a clear association between El-Moasser and high quality.
associated (adj)	- El-Moasser is associated with high quality.
culture	
culture (n)	- It is important to respect other peoples' cultures.
culture (n)	- Culture is the main producer of food.
cultural (adj)	- It is important to respect cultural differences.
cultured (adj)	- Mr Ali is a cultured man.
culturally (adv)	- The Egyptian history is culturally important.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

an idea for	فكرة لـ	in my opinion	من وجهة نظري
at the end of	في نهاية	It's a good idea to	إنها لفكرة جيدة أن
for no money	مجاناً	It's important to	من المهم أن
free/spare time	وقت فراغ	key information	المعلومات الرئيسية
health problem	مشكلة صحية	why don't you	لم لا
how about	ما رأيك في	young people	الشباب

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

give ... back to	يُرد ... لـ	stop ... from	يمنع ... من
grow up	يكبر - يتعمر	talk about	يتحدث عن
happen to	يحدث لـ	think of	يفكر في
put ... into	يضع ... بداخل	work for	يعمل لدى
return to	يعود إلى	work in	يعمل في
run away	يهرب	work with	يعمل مع / في
send ... away	يطرد	write down	يسجل - يُدون

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

at the age of / in the age of

- at the age of في سن / في عمر
  - I could swim at the age of nine.
- in the age of في عصر
  - In the age of Mohammed Ali, Egypt was a very large empire.

work - job

- work عمل / مكان العمل (كلمة لا تُعد)
  - He did much work in the office yesterday.
  - I go to work in my car.
- a work - works عمل أدبي أو فني أو هندسي (كلمة تُعد)
  - El-Karnak is a work by Naguib Mahfouz.
- a job - jobs وظيفة - مهمة (كلمة تُعد)
  - My first job was as a teacher. (Not: My first work)
  - I have finished all today's jobs.



## General Exercise On Vocabulary study

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- He did ..... during holiday.
  - voluntary work
  - his opinion
  - a happy ending
  - exciting things
  - a suggestion
- She made ..... during the lecture. *المحاضرة*
  - a job
  - a suggestion
  - a role
  - the law
  - brief notes
- If you work harder, you will ..... more money.
  - earn
  - do
  - make
  - go
  - owe
- You can say that somebody played a .....
  - suggestion
  - trick
  - law
  - rule
  - role
- We listened carefully to Rodayna who ..... a good suggestion.
  - did
  - had
  - became
  - made
  - played
- When something is common, this means it is .....
  - usual
  - unusual
  - uncommon
  - rare
  - widespread
- "He admitted making a mistake." Which of the following give opposite meanings to the verb 'admit' in this sentence?
  - Denied
  - Confessed
  - Concealed
  - Agreed
  - Told
- You can do your hobbies at your ..... time.
  - busy
  - spare
  - congested
  - crowded
  - free
- Homeless children ..... to live.
  - don't have anywhere
  - have everywhere
  - have somewhere
  - have nowhere
  - have a flat
- The ..... traffic law didn't solve the problem.
  - good
  - bad
  - poor
  - rich
  - wealthy
- I asked him to ..... back the money I had lent to him.
  - own
  - owe
  - give
  - take
  - pay
- In a charity, the poor are helped for .....
  - free
  - much money
  - some money
  - no money
  - good

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Generous people are always ready to ..... voluntary work.
  - do
  - make
  - give
  - take
- Our relation began to ..... wrong when we met a bad situation.
  - do
  - go
  - make
  - take
- It is not always easy to ..... new friends nowadays.
  - do
  - take
  - make
  - give
- My sister and I ..... common interests.
  - play
  - solve
  - make
  - have
- My wife's ..... a big difference in my life.
  - played
  - solved
  - made
  - had
- Everything will be OK if you ..... the steps.
  - owe
  - do
  - break
  - follow
- This problem must be ..... as soon as possible.
  - lied
  - solved
  - made
  - had
- "He admitted the mistake he'd made." The word 'admit' in this sentence can be replaced by .....
  - deny
  - conceal
  - confess
  - a & b
- Voluntary is to ..... as miserable is to happy.
  - paid
  - unpaid
  - expensive
  - selfish
- He looks ..... his old parents who really need help.
  - as
  - after
  - alike
  - unlike
- She looks very weak and pale. She must have a ..... problem.
  - wealth
  - wealthy
  - health
  - healthy
- After the deliberate foul الخطأ المتعمد he had made, the referee sent him .....
  - away
  - in
  - on
  - back
- Flu is usually ..... with cold weather.
  - associate
  - associates
  - associated
  - association
- She was a highly ..... woman.
  - culture
  - cultural
  - cultured
  - culturally
- Which of the following words can mean cultivation?
  - Community
  - Section
  - Merchant
  - Culture
- I have several ..... to do in the office today.
  - work
  - works
  - job
  - jobs



## Part III Reading &amp; Listening

## 1 Reading Texts

## 1. A summary of David Copperfield (WB page 102)

David Copperfield grew up<sup>(1)</sup> with his mother and his stepfather,<sup>(2)</sup> Mr Murdstone.

Then David's mother died<sup>(3)</sup> and Mr Murdstone took him to live with Mr and Mrs Micawber. David had to leave<sup>(4)</sup> school and work in a factory. Then Mr Micawber went to prison and David had nowhere<sup>(5)</sup> to live.

Without<sup>(6)</sup> a home to live in, David visited Aunt Betsey and she took him to live with her friend, Mr Wickfield. A man called Uriah Heep also lived with Mr Wickfield and his daughter,<sup>(7)</sup> Agnes, but David didn't trust<sup>(8)</sup> him.

Some time later<sup>(9)</sup>, Uriah Heep played a trick<sup>(10)</sup> on Aunt Betsey and took her money and David worked hard to help her.

When David found Uriah Heep, he admitted<sup>(11)</sup> that he took Aunt Betsey's money and David made him give it back<sup>(12)</sup> to her. Then David went travelling around Europe<sup>(13)</sup>.

When David returned<sup>(14)</sup> to England, he married<sup>(15)</sup> Agnes and he became a successful<sup>(16)</sup> writer<sup>(17)</sup>.

## Check Vocabulary

- (1) يكبر
- (2) زوج الأم
- (3) يتوفى
- (4) يترك
- (5) لا مكان
- (6) بدون
- (7) ابنة
- (8) يثق بـ
- (9) فيما بعد
- (10) يخدع
- (11) يعترف بـ / يعترف
- (12) يرد
- (13) أوروبا
- (14) يعود
- (15) يتزوج
- (16) ناجح
- (17) كاتب

## 2. Three Egyptian teenagers (WB page 103)

**Tarek :** In my opinion the Egyptian Food Bank<sup>(1)</sup> (EFB) is making the world a better place because it helps people who haven't got enough<sup>(2)</sup> money for food, and it teaches all of us to think more.

## Check Vocabulary

- (1) بنك الطعام
- (2) كافي

**Samira :** I have experienced<sup>(1)</sup> the work of Tomorrow's Dreamer<sup>(2)</sup> Youth<sup>(3)</sup> Association<sup>(4)</sup>.



## Check Vocabulary

- (1) يجرب
- (2) عالم
- (3) شباب
- (4) جمعية

In my opinion, it shows<sup>(5)</sup> young people that they can make a difference<sup>(6)</sup>, and it teaches them about other cultures<sup>(7)</sup> and communities<sup>(8)</sup>. They are doing a great job<sup>(9)</sup> by helping to educate<sup>(10)</sup> a lot of young people.

- (5) توضح / تبين
- (6) تحدث فرقا
- (7) ثقافات
- (8) مجتمعات
- (9) يقوم بعمل رائع
- (10) يعلم

**Maher :** The Egyptian Red Crescent<sup>(1)</sup> helps a lot of people every day. When there is a big health problem, we always see the doctors from the Red Crescent on TV. But they also work with communities to stop health problems<sup>(2)</sup> from happening. One day, I want to do some voluntary work<sup>(3)</sup> for them.

## Check Vocabulary

- (1) الهلال الأحمر
- (2) مشاكل صحية
- (3) عمل تطوعي

## 2 Listening Texts

## B. Let's talk about how to write (SB page 30)

a great short story<sup>(1)</sup>. It's important to plan<sup>(2)</sup> your story. It should have four parts. At the start, we find out when and where the story is happening and we meet the main characters<sup>(3)</sup>.



## Check Vocabulary

- (1) قصة قصيرة
- (2) يخطط
- (3) الشخصيات الرئيسية
- (4) يفسد / يتعطل
- (5) مفاجأة

Don't spend too much time describing places and people - your characters need to do something from the start.

In the second part of the story, the main character has a problem or something goes wrong<sup>(4)</sup>. It's a good idea to have two or more problems. After that, the problem or problems are solved and everything is OK again. In this third part of the story, there should be a surprise for<sup>(5)</sup> the reader. Finally, we find out what the characters do next, so, what happens to them when things are OK again.



## Part IV Language



مناهج وتعليم

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

تدوينه

## General Exercise On Language Apply

التدريبات التالية موزعة بشكل متدرج تصاعدياً حسب تصنيف هيرم بلوم

تدوينه

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

## 1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. Manager : Hello! I can't find you in your office! Where are you?  
Clerk : Sorry, sir. I ..... to restaurant for lunch.  
a. will go b. was going c. have been d. have gone
2. Amir lives in Canada, so I haven't seen him ..... the age of ten.  
a. for b. since c. already d. ever
3. Soha has never ..... to go to hospital.  
a. needed b. needs c. need d. needing
4. Nasser has lived in this house since he ..... a child.  
a. had been b. was c. will d. is
5. I only bought my new camera last week, but I ..... 300 photos with it so far.  
a. already take b. already took  
c. have already taken d. already taking
6. Karim can't play football because he ..... his leg.  
a. broke b. has broken c. breaking d. had broken
7. Mona is in Cairo now. She ..... to Alex.  
a. has gone b. go c. has been d. goes
8. I ..... for five hours every day last week.  
a. has worked b. had worked c. worked d. have worked
9. .... you enjoyed your time at the museum ?  
a. Have b. Did c. Do d. Are
10. She has lived in London ..... three years.  
a. since b. ago c. for d. during
11. He ..... to Cairo. I'll wait for him until he comes back.  
a. goes b. has gone c. has been d. was going

12. Noha has ..... cleaned her room. It looks nice now.  
a. already b. yet c. never d. ever
13. We have lived in that house ..... twenty years.  
a. in b. ago c. for d. since
14. I haven't met him ..... he moved to a new house.  
a. yet b. since c. ago d. when
15. We ..... in Cairo since 1993.  
a. had living b. have lived c. lived d. are living
16. He ..... come back home.  
a. never b. has just c. already has d. just has
17. A: How long ..... worked in Cairo ? B: Since 2008.  
a. has he b. he has c. had he d. he had
18. He ..... there for ten years. He intends to retire next year.  
a. 'd worked b. worked c. 's working d. 's worked
19. A : ..... yourself today? B : Yes, I've had a great time.  
a. Have you enjoyed b. Are you enjoying  
c. Do you enjoy d. Had you enjoyed
20. I ..... my exam. I am celebrating my success with my family.  
a. 've passed b. 'd passed c. 'll pass d. am passing
21. I ..... Brazil twice up till now.  
a. was visited b. visited c. 've visited d. am visiting
22. .... a long time since I last played football.  
a. For b. It's c. It has d. It'll be
23. Nothing interesting ..... since I last saw him.  
a. has happened b. happen c. have happened d. had happened
24. The writer ..... his book yet.  
a. didn't finish b. has finished c. hasn't finished d. isn't finished
25. Wahid and Mohammed ..... friends all their lives. They are often together.  
a. will be b. has been c. have been d. were
26. We ..... each other since we were at school.  
a. have been knowing b. have known  
c. known d. had known
27. They ..... in the garden for five hours.  
a. have worked b. have been worked  
c. work d. are working
28. It is ..... since we met.  
a. three weeks b. 1980 c. yesterday d. schooldays



29. What has happened to him ..... this morning ?  
 a. for b. ago c. since d. when
30. Mustafa has ..... the club. He is on his way there.  
 a. been to b. been in c. gone to d. gone in
31. Mustafa has ..... the club. He looks as if he has had a great time there.  
 a. been to b. been in c. gone to d. gone in
32. Mustafa has ..... the club for three hours. I wonder when he will return home.  
 a. been to b. been in c. gone to d. gone in
33. I ..... Brazil in 2014.  
 a. had been to b. have been in c. have been to d. went to
34. I last met him ..... he moved to a new house.  
 a. yet b. for c. since d. when
35. My secretary ..... three emails today. She will send the rest in a few minutes.  
 a. was sent b. has sent c. has been sent d. had sent
36. My grandfather ..... ill over the last year. I hope he will get better soon.  
 a. has been b. had been c. was d. was being
37. Have you finished your homework ..... ? ! You are very quick!  
 a. yet b. ever c. already d. just
38. I haven't been to Aswan since 2010. This means that .....  
 a. I have been in Aswan since 2010 b. I have never been to Aswan  
 c. I was in Aswan in 2010 d. I wasn't in Aswan in 2010
39. Ali and his family have never travelled since .....  
 a. he gets married b. he marries c. his marriage d. married
40. He's been on holiday ..... the last two weeks.  
 a. while b. for c. when d. since
41. Now, Huda lives in extreme poverty فقر شديد because all the money she earned ..... lost.  
 a. had been b. had c. has been d. had has been
42. Have you finished reading that novel ..... ? That's amazing!  
 a. ever b. just c. already d. yet
43. Since you ..... your homework, you won't be allowed to go out.  
 a. didn't do b. hadn't done c. haven't done d. had done

44. It has ..... been the main concern إهتمام of parents to maintain a good future for their children.  
 a. never b. ago c. just d. always
45. I didn't feel that a thief entered the flat since I ..... the match on TV.  
 a. watched b. had watched c. was watching d. have watched

## 2 Check your understanding

46. I'm in secondary one. I ..... English for ten years.  
 a. am studying b. have studied c. studied d. had studied
47. This is my house. I ..... here for three years.  
 a. have lived b. have been lived  
 c. had lived d. had been lived
48. That was my house. I ..... there for three years.  
 a. have lived b. have been lived c. lived d. had been lived
49. He has just taken an aspirin. This means that .....  
 a. he has taken an aspirin a moment ago  
 b. he has never taken an aspirin  
 c. he has taken an aspirin for ages  
 d. he took an aspirin a moment ago
50. Yara has never eaten shrimps. This means .....  
 a. she doesn't eat shrimps  
 b. she had never eaten shrimps  
 c. she hasn't ever eaten shrimps  
 d. she wasn't ever eaten shrimps
51. I have lived here in this city for ten years. What does this sentence mean ?  
 a. I no longer live in this city.  
 b. I didn't live in this city.  
 c. I have always lived in this city.  
 d. I still live in this city.



Part I

Vocabulary

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات الرئيسية في قصة (Treasure Island). بالإضافة للمهارات اللغوية الموجودة في الوحدة وقواعد ما بين السطور والجزء المخصص للطلاب المتقدمين.

تنويه

Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

اهم المفردات اللغوية في قصة (Treasure Island) كما يمكنكم التطلع على نص القصة والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب

تنويه

attack(ed) (n-v)	بهاجم - هجوم	make me laugh	يجعلني أضحك
barrel(n)	برميل	mutiny(n)	تمرد / عصيان
crutch(n)	عُكَّاز - زكيزة	note(n)	ملاحظة - رسالة قصيرة
destination(n)	مُتَّحَد - وجهة السفر	of different sizes	ذو أحجام مُخْتَلِفَة
empty(ied) (adj-v)	فارغ - مُفْرَغ	parrot(n)	ببغاء
finger(n)	إصبع اليد	patient (adj-n)	صبور - مريض
frightened(adj)	خائف	pay - paid(for)(v)	يدفع ثمن
gang(n)	عصابة	pirate(n)	قراصنة
harbour(n)	مَرْتَبَى - مرفأ	save(d)(v)	يُنْقِذ - يَدَّخِر
helper(n)	مُسَاعِد	secret (n-adj)	سر - سَرِي

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. In the film, there is a ..... on a ship and the captain has to hide.

(القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٢)

- a. mutiny      b. stormy      c. tiny      d. barrel

2. A ..... is a large container made of wood or metal.

(غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٢)

- a. tin      b. jug      c. jar      d. barrel

3. A/An ..... is a brightly coloured bird which can learn to speak.

- a. crew      b. owl      c. eagle      d. parrot

4. A ..... is a special stick which you put under your arm to help you walk when you have hurt your leg.

- a. gun      b. sail      c. crutch      d. wheel

5. A ..... is a sailor who attacks ships and steals from them.

- a. captain      b. pirate      c. crew      d. lifeguard

6. A/An ..... is an area of water next to the land where ships can stay safely.

- a. pool      b. harbour      c. airport      d. river

7. A ..... is a group of people that causes trouble.

- a. gang      b. team      c. community      d. nursery

8. A/An ..... is an act of violence that intended to hurt a person or damage a place.

- a. element      b. lack      c. attack      d. mutiny

9. A ..... is known about by only a few people and kept from others.

- a. journey      b. secret      c. harbour      d. barrel

10. .... means able to wait calmly for a long time.

- a. Patient      b. Impatient      c. Descent      d. Elegant





## Grammatical Hints

## Part II

## Extreme adjectives

الصفات القوية

١ هي صفات ذات معني قوي مثل :

ex. - amazing	رائع / مُذهِل	terrible	رهيِب	فظيَح / ساخط
- gigantic	ضخم	furios		ممتاز
- ancient	قديم جداً	excellent	عتيق / قديم جداً	
- miserable	بائس			

٢ لا تستخدم (very / fairly) قبل الصفات القوية :

- fairly miserable (X)

ex. - very amazing (X)

٣ لاحظ ان :

صفة عادية = very +

ex. - ancient = very old

- miserable = very unhappy

- amazing = very good

٤ تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات القوية :

تماماً completely - كلياً utterly / entirely - بشكل مطلق absolutely

ex. - This engine is absolutely excellent. - The temple is utterly ancient.

كل / لكل a / an

١ تُستخدم (a / an) بمعنى (كل) قبل الكلمات الزمنية :

ex. - We go to school five days a week. - This car goes at 130 km an hour.

٢ تُستخدم (a / an) بمعنى (لكل) قبل أسماء المقاييس والأوزان :

ex. - The apples are 25 pounds a kilo.

صفة the + adj.

عند استخدام (the) قبل الصفة التي ليس بعدها موصوف فإنها تتحول لإسم جمع وتأخذ فعل جمع :

صفة the + adj. = اسم جمع + صفة adj.

- Poor people are not able to buy everything they need.

= The poor are not able to buy everything they need. (Not: The poor is)

اسم انسان the +

عند استخدام (the) قبل اسم انسان مضافاً له (s) فإن ذلك يدل على الأسرة كلها وتأخذ فعل جمع :

- The Hassans were busy last week. (Not: The Hassans is)

## the police

كلمة (police) جمع دائماً وتأخذ فعل جمع :

ex. - The police have arrested some criminals.

## one - ones

تُستخدم كلمة (one - ones) كضمائر فاعل او مفعول :

ex. - One should work hard to succeed. (One = A person / A student ...)

- I don't need this tablet. I want the black one. (one = tablet)

- Some children learned a skill when they worked. They were the lucky ones. (ones = children who learned a skill)

- These are not my books. Mine are the ones on the table. (ones = books)

## have + agent + inf. / (inf. + ing)

للحظ استخدام صيغة المفعول للجهل (causative) عند قيام الفاعل بتكليف غيره بالقيام بالفعل :

have + obj. + inf.

get + obj. + to + inf.

have / get + obj. + (inf. + ing)

ex. - Factories liked to have children work for them.

- Factories liked to get children to work for them.

- Factories liked to have / get children working for them.

## make + obj. + inf. / adj

للحظ استخدام الفعل (make) في الصيغ التالية بمعنى (يجعل) :

Subj. + make + obj. + adj. + صفة

= obj. + be + made + adj. + صفة

ex. - Sama's birth made them happy. = They were made happy by Sama's birth.

Subj. + make + obj. + inf. + مفعول

= obj. + be + made + to + inf.

ex. - I make Ahmed water the flowers. = Ahmed is made to water the flowers.

make + job + صفة + وظيفة

ex. - A sportsman makes a good police officer.



### Nouns ending in (f / fe)

تدول النهاية (f / fe) في المفرد إلى (ves) في الجمع لتعطي الكلمات - لاحظ المثلثة التالية

half	نصف	halves
knife	سكين	knives
leaf	ورقة نبات	leaves
life	حياة	lives
thief	لص	thieves
wife	زوجة	wives
wolf	ذئب	wolves
dwarf	قزم	dwarves / dwarfs
scarf	إيشارب (طريقة)	scarves / scarfs
calf	مغفر البقر (عجل)	calves

وهناك استثناءات لهذه القاعدة مثل :

- ex. - belief اعتقاد - beliefs  
 - safe حزانة - safes  
 - roof سقف - roofs  
 - gulf خليج - gulfs  
 - chief رئيس - chiefs  
 - brief اختصار - briefs

### Making suggestions

- Let's + inf. .... هيا بنا .....  
 ex. - Let's go to the cinema.  
 We / You could + inf. .... يمكننا / يمكنك أن .....  
 ex. - We / You could go to the cinema.  
 I suggest + (inf. + ing) .... أقترح .....  
 ex. - I suggest going to the cinema.  
 I suggest + (that) + subj. + inf. / (should + inf.) .... أقترح أن .....  
 ex. - I suggest (that) we / you go to the cinema.  
 What / How about + (inf. + ing) .....? ما رأيك في .....?  
 ex. - What / How about going to the cinema?  
 Why don't we / you + inf. ....? لماذا لا .....?  
 ex. - Why don't we / you go to the cinema?

### Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- ..... are a small family.  
 a. Ragab b. Ragab's c. Ragabs d. The Ragabs
- The poor man is ..... miserable.  
 a. fairly b. absolutely c. absolute d. fair
- I suggest ..... the Plants' Island in Aswan.  
 a. visit b. visiting c. to visit d. visited
- Your success has ..... us happy.  
 a. made b. caused c. let d. allowed
- The police ..... looking for some escaping criminals.  
 a. is b. has c. are d. have
- This man is ..... He is really unhappy.  
 a. miserably b. not miserable c. miserable d. miser
- Why don't you ..... a dentist?  
 a. to see b. seeing c. saw d. see
- Rodayna has two aunts. .... is a teacher and the other is a doctor.  
 a. Another b. One c. Ones d. Other
- I suggest Sama ..... to the park with us.  
 a. go b. went c. has gone d. was going
- This baby girl is easily made .....  
 a. laugh b. to laugh c. laughing d. laughs
- The disabled ..... more care and interest.  
 a. needs b. has needed c. need d. were needed
- How about ..... the match in the stadium?  
 a. to watch b. watch c. watching d. to watching
- We have a gardener ..... after the trees in our garden.  
 a. looks b. to look c. looked d. look
- I go to the park once ..... week.  
 a. in b. a c. at d. on



UNIT 3

15. A: What do you suggest for the weekend?  
B: We ..... do some voluntary work.

a. didn't b. don't c. had to d. could

16. The old man made me ..... his bag.

a. carrying b. to carry c. carry d. carried

17. The poor never ..... enough money.

a. have b. has c. are d. is

18. An accountant ..... a good manager.

a. makes b. does c. scores d. gives

19. They had a mechanic ..... their car engine.

a. to check b. to checking c. checks d. check

20. My mobile rings at least three times ..... hour.

a. a b. an c. at d. all

Part III

Language Skills

1 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات.

تنويه

عندما يُطلب منك الكتابة عن قصة ، يمكنك التركيز على النقاط التالية :

- 1 Which story have you chosen? ما القصة التي قمت باختيارها ؟
- 2 Who is the main character in the story? What is he/she like? من هي الشخصية الرئيسية في القصة ؟ كيف يبدو / تبدو ؟
- 3 Where does he / she live? What is his /her life like? أين تقيم تلك الشخصية ؟ وكيف هي حياته / حياتها ؟
- 4 Who are the other characters? How did they know the main character? من هي الشخصيات الأخرى ؟ كيف عرفوا الشخصية الأساسية ؟
- 5 How does the story start? What happens first? What happens next? And then? كيف تبدأ القصة ؟ ماذا يحدث أولاً ؟ ماذا يحدث بعد ذلك ؟
- 6 What is the moral of the story? ما هو الدرس الأخلاقي في القصة ؟

\* Write an essay of about 150 words about a story you have read :

The Old Man and the Sea

Reading is one of my favourite hobbies. In fact, I find reading both interesting and useful. I like reading novels. In this essay I'm going to write about a great novel called "The Old Man and the Sea".

The novel was written by Ernest Hemingway. It is about an old fisherman called Santiago. This fisherman was very poor. He wanted to catch a big fish to sell it for a lot of money.

Santiago had to sail far away into the sea. He was alone in his boat. The rod الصنارة caught a very big marlin. The marlin was bigger than the boat itself. It was impossible for Santiago to pull the fish into the boat.

Santiago waited until the fish was tired and pulled it behind the boat. Unfortunately, some sharks attacked the marlin and ate it. When Santiago reached the beach, the marlin was just a skeleton. Santiago was very tired. He went home and slept.

I like this story because it has a moral. One الرءء should be patient. We should have determination إصرار. Despite being old and weak, Santiago tried and didn't give up يستسلم. We also learn that people need cooperation التعاون. To succeed in life, you need to work with others.

2 Translation الترجمة

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات.

تنويه

1 Translate into Arabic :

1. After Shakespeare, Charles Dickens is probably the most famous writer in the English literature. The former wrote great poems and the latter was the author of fabulous novels.
2. Reading works of art like novels, plays and poems is very beneficial. It widens our horizons and gives us useful experience.
3. Success is not something that occurs out of the blue. To be successful, you must work hard to a plan.



2 Translate into English:

- 1- عليك أن تعمل بكل جد لكي تنجح في الوصول لهدفك في الحياة، فالنجاح الحقيقي يأتي بعد سنوات من المثابرة والعمل الطموح.
- 2- من الأفضل أن تقول الصدق في كل المواقف وإن أغضب الآخرين، فالصدق من السمات السبعة غير المقبولة دينياً أو اجتماعياً.
- 3- إن أطفال الشوارع قبله موقوتة قد تنفجر في أي وقت، وعلى كل فرد أن يفعل ما يستطيع من أجل حل هذه المشكلة الخطيرة.

Vocabulary related to translation texts

author	مؤلف	perseverance	المثابرة
beneficial	مفيد	position	موقع
experience	خبرة	religiously	دينياً
explode	تفجر	socially	اجتماعياً
fabulous	رائع	success	النجاح
homeless	شردة	the former	الأول
horizon	الأفق	the latter	الأخر
individual	فرد	timed bomb	قنبلة موقوتة
literature	الأدب	unacceptable	غير مقبول
may	قد	widen	يوسع
out of the blue	لحاة		

Part IV Just for Advanced level

للمتقدمين فقط

1 Key Vocabulary for Advanced level

هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب المتقدمين فقط.

تأنيدي

life

• life - lives (n)

حياة - حيوات

- My goal in life is to be a successful doctor.
- Prices have an effect on people's lives.

• live (d) (v)

يعيش / يعيش - يسكن

- I think people who lived in the past were happier.
- Mohammed lives in Aswan.

• alive (adj)

حي / على قيد الحياة (لا تأتي قبل الموصوف)

- This fish is alive. (Not: This is an alive fish)

• live = living (adj)

ميت dead / حي / على قيد الحياة (قبل الموصوف فقط)

- People don't eat live animals. (Not: ... animals that are live)

• live (adj)

مُسجل prerecorded / مباشر / على الهواء مباشرة

- We all prefer watching live matches on TV.

• lively (adj)

على بالحيرة والنشاط

- Sama is a lively child.

• livelihood (adj)

مصدر دخل - مصدر رزق

- Farming is the source of livelihood in villages.

association

• association (n)

إتحاد / منظمة / نقابة

- This youth association helps poor people.

• associate (n) = colleague

زميل عمل / شريك

- You need to work with your associates to finish the report.

- لاحظ التعبير التالي:

• in association with

بمشاركة / بالتزامن مع

- The green colour of trees usually comes in association with spring.

• associate (d) (v)

يُلازم / يُصاحب / يأتي مع

- Bad cough associates smoking.

• associate(d) ... with (v)

يربط بين ... و ...

- People usually associate high price with quality.

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

be + associated with + شخص / شيء

يكون مُصاحب أو مُلازم لـ

- Overweight is associated with health problems.

associate with + شخص

يُلازم / يُرافق / يُصاحب

- Don't associate with bad friends.

culture

• culture (n)

ثقافة

- The culture of Arab people is different from European culture.

• culture (n)

حضارة

- We are all proud of ancient Egyptian culture.

• culture = cultivation (n)

الزراعة

- Rice culture needs a lot of water.



- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- western culture الثقافة الغربية
- local culture الثقافة المحلية
- national culture الثقافة القومية
- common / dominant culture الثقافة السائدة
- culture shock صدمة ثقافية

ثقافي

### cultural (adj)

- There are cultural differences between countries.

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- cultural heritage الموروث الثقافي
- multicultural society مجتمع متعدد الثقافات

ثقافت

### cultured = cultivated (adj)

- Mr Nasser is a cultured person.

### debt

دين

### debt (n)

- He found a second job to pay back his debts.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

مدين لـ

be in debt to

- The old man can't retire because he is in debt.

- He was in debt to the bank.

عليه ديون كثيرة

be + heavily / deeply + in debt

- The old man can't retire because he is heavily in debt.

يصبح مديناً

get / fall / run into debt

- The old man can't retire because he got / fell / ran into debt.

owe debt of gratitude / thanks

مدين بالشكر أو الامتنان

- I owe a debt of gratitude to my parents.

- لاحظ المتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- have a debt عليه دين
- pay off debts يسدد الديون
- clear the debts يسدد كل الديون
- service a debt يسدد فوائد الديون
- write off / cancel a debt يتنازل عن الديون
- a heavy debt دين كبير

### indebted (to) (adj)

مدين / غارم

- He is indebted to a car company.

### earn

### earn (ed) (v)

- Not many farmers earn a lot of money.

يكسب مال مقابل عمل

### earn (ed) (v)

- This book earned two million dollars.

يربح / يحقق أرباح

earn (respect / a reputation ...)

- He has earned the respect of all his friends.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:  
بنال (الاحترام / سعة طيبة ...)

earn a living

- He earns a living by selling fruit and vegetables.

يكسب رزقه من / مصدر رزقه هو

- earn good money يكسب الكثير من المال

- لاحظ أيضاً:  
يكسب ثروة - earn a fortune

### earner (n)

- My father is the only earner in our family.

كاسب / ذو أجر / مصدر دخل

- This shop is our chief earner.

### earnings (n)

- His earnings are not enough for his family.

دخل / ربح (دائماً جمع)

### experience

### experience (of / with) (n)

تجربة حياتية / موقف (كلمة تُعد)

- I learned a lot from my childhood experiences.

### experience (of / in / with) (n)

الخبرة (كلمة لا تُعد)

- Mr Ashraf has a lot of experience in teaching.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- have experience لديه خبرة

- get / gain experience يكتسب خبرة

- lack experience تنقصه الخبرة

- past / previous experience خبرة سابقة

### experience (d) (v)

- People should experience things to learn from them.

يعر بتجربة - يتأثر بموقف / مشكلة - يُجرب

### experienced (in) (adj)

- Ashraf is an experienced teacher.

عديم الخبرة / غير مُجرب inexperienced ≠ مُحْتَلِك / ذو خبرة

### merchant

### merchant (n)

تاجر (شخص / شركة)

- He makes a lot of money as a merchant.

### merchandise (n)

- His stores are full of high-quality merchandise.

بضائع - سلع

### miserable

### miserable = very unhappy (adj)

- She has lost her job and family. She looks miserable.

بائس / تَعِيس / شَقِيق

### miserable = very little / very bad (adj)

- His miserable income isn't enough for his family.

ضئيل / سيء جداً (قبل الاسم فقط)

- I was angry because of my team's miserable performance.

أداء سيئ



UNIT 3

- نعاسة / شقاء / يؤس / معاناة  
الفقر. misery of war and poverty.  
- You don't know the **misery** of war and poverty.  
**miser** (n)  
- I'm sure he won't donate any money. He is a **miser**.

- owe  
يدين لـ ... بـ ...  
- Omar **owes** Ali ten pounds. = Omar needs to pay ten pounds to Ali.  
يدين بـ ... لـ ...  
- Omar **owes** ten pounds to Ali.  
يدين لـ ... مقابل ...  
- You **owe** me for the drinks.

- owe + شخص + a debt  
- We **owe** our parents a debt.  
يدين بكل شيء لـ  
owe everything (it all) to + شخص  
- I **owe** everything to my family.  
يدين لـ ... بالكثير من الفضل  
owe + شخص + a lot / a great deal  
- She **owes** her mother a great deal.

- prison**  
**prison** (n)  
- **Prison** is the right place for criminals. (Not: The prison ...)  
- لاحظ عدم استخدام (the) قبل كلمة (prison) عند الحديث عنه كمكان لعقاب المجرمين كما في المثال السابق، لكن يمكن استخدام (the) في أي سياق آخر:  
- Visitors to the **prison** wait here.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:  
- go to prison يتم حبه  
- put ... in prison يضع ... في السجن  
- be released from prison يُطلق سراحه من السجن  
- let ... out of prison يخرج ... من السجن  
- get out of prison يخرج من السجن  
- a prison sentence (term) حكم بالسجن

- prisoner** (n)  
- In this prison, there is a library for **prisoners** who like reading.  
**imprisonment** (n)  
- No one has seen him since his **imprisonment**.

- imprison(ed)** (v)  
- He was **imprisoned** for selling drugs.  
يحبس / يسجن - يقيد حرية المخدرات

- youth**  
**youth** (n)  
- I was very fit in my **youth**.  
مرحلة الشباب (لا تُعدّ)

- youth** (n)  
- The **youth** of Egypt are ready to help their country.  
الشباب بوجه عام (اسم الجمع)

- youth - youths** (n)  
- A group of **youths** were arrested for troublemaking last week.  
شاب - شباب (تُعدّ) إثارة الشغب

2 Prefixes بادئة مقاطع

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
dis-	تُكوّن العكس	disabled مُعاق
mis-	تعطى معنى بطريقة خاطئة	mistake خطأ - يخطئ misunderstand يُسي فهم misspell يتهجى بطريقة خاطئة
re-	يُعيد	review يُراجع rewrite يُعيد كتابة
step-	أحد الأقارب (نتيجة الزواج من أحد الوالدين)	stepfather زوج الأم stepmother زوجة الأب stepfamily أسرة زوج الأم أو زوجة الأب

3 suffixes ناهية مقاطع

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
-able	تُكوّن صفة	miserable تعبس - بانس
-er	تُكوّن اسم فاعل	dreamer حالم
-ful	تُكوّن صفة	successful ناجح
-ing	تُكوّن صفة / اسم	ending (n) نهاية amazing (adj) متعل
-ly	تُكوّن ظرف	exactly تماماً - بالتحديد
-al	تُكوّن صفة / اسم	criminal مجرم - إجرامي factual (adj) واقعي - متعلق بالحقائق arrival (n) وصول refusal (n) رفض



## Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The police ..... his sudden fortune with the bank robbery.  
a. paid b. mistook c. planned d. associated
- Fishing is the only source of ..... for people living here.  
a. community b. experience c. misery d. livelihood
- ..... animals are kept on farms.  
a. Alive b. Live c. Life d. Lives
- Egypt was famous for cotton .....  
a. culture b. association c. capture d. section
- There was a/an ..... between Egypt and high-quality cotton.  
a. culture b. association c. opportunity d. section
- I ..... a feeling of nausea when I am on a boat.  
a. pay b. brainstorm c. feel d. experience
- Being very old and not able to walk, he feels ..... in his house.  
a. joked b. imprisoned c. lived d. reviewed
- This cream will renew the ..... of your skin.  
a. youth b. culture c. crescent d. beliefs
- He applied for ..... as a tour guide in a tourist company.  
a. work b. a work c. job d. a job
- Don't buy goods that ..... a trademark.  
a. haven't b. hasn't c. don't have d. a & c

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	- فى إطار معنى الجملة فإن كلمة (associated) بمعنى (رابط) هى الوحيدة التى تتفق مع السياق خاصة فى وجود حرف الجر (with)
2.	d	- كلمة (livelihood) تعنى (مصدر دخل) هى التى تعطى معنى مقيد فى سياق الجملة، فصيد السمك ليس المصدر الوحيد للبؤس (misery) ولا الخبرة (experience) ولا المجتمع (community)
3.	b	- لا يمكن استخدام الصفة (alive) قبل الإسم الموصوف - لا يمكن استخدام (life) كصفة قبل كلمة (animals) فهى ستعطى معنى (حيوانات الحياة) وهو ما لا يتفق مع سياق الجملة - لا يمكن استخدام (lives) كصفة قبل كلمة (animals) لأنها اسم جمع كما أنها ستعطى معنى (حيوانات الحياة) وهو ما لا يتفق مع سياق الجملة

4.	a	- كلمة (culture) بمعنى (زراعة) هى الوحيدة التى تعطى معنى منطقي فى سياق الجملة
5.	b	- كلمة (association) بمعنى (الرباط) هى الوحيدة التى تعطى معنى منطقي فى سياق الجملة
6.	d	- الفعل (experience) بمعنى (يشعر به / يعايش) هو الوحيد الذى يعطى معنى منطقي فى سياق الجملة
7.	b	- الصفة (imprisoned) بمعنى (محبوس) هى الوحيدة التى تصف إحساس رجل عجز لا يستطيع السير
8.	a	- لا يمكن استخدام الاسم (culture) لأنه لا يعطى معنى فى هذا السياق - لا يمكن استخدام (crescent) التى تعنى (هلال) ولا كلمة (beliefs) التى تعنى (معتقدات) فى سياق هذه الجملة
9.	d	- لا يمكن استخدام (work / a work) لتوصيف (a tour guide) لأنها وظيفة محددة - لا يمكن استخدام (job) بدون (a) لأنها اسم مفرد معدود
10.	d	- لا يمكن استخدام (hasn't) مع الإسم الجمع (goods)

## Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I injured my knee and I haven't played football .....  
a. already b. never c. for d. since
- We have lived here ..... fall.  
a. yet b. already c. since d. for
- They ..... for ten years when I met them. It was in Paris in 2016.  
a. married b. had been married  
c. have married d. have been married
- This is the first time I have ever travelled alone. I mean to say that .....  
a. I'm travelling alone for the first time.  
b. I have ever travelled alone.  
c. I haven't never travelled alone.  
d. I travelled alone only once.
- Omar is the cleverest student I have ever seen. This means that .....  
a. I have seen many clever students like Omar  
b. I have seen many students as clever as Omar  
c. It is the first time for me to see a student who has this degree of cleverness  
d. Omar is not as clever as the students I have ever seen



6. Nouran hasn't finished doing her homework yet. That means .....  
 a. Nouran didn't start doing her homework  
 b. Nouran is going to start doing her homework  
 c. Nouran is still doing her homework  
 d. Nouran finished doing her homework
7. It is still raining. I mean to say that .....  
 a. it has rained  
 b. it was raining  
 c. it has stopped raining  
 d. it hasn't stopped raining yet
8. It's a month since I last went for a walk. This means .....  
 a. I have gone for a walk for a month  
 b. I haven't gone for a walk a month ago  
 c. I haven't gone for a walk for a month  
 d. I have gone for a walk since a month
9. I have lived in Edfu since 2002. I mean to say that .....  
 a. I started to live in Edfu about 20 years ago  
 b. I stopped living in Edfu about 20 years ago  
 c. I have lived in Edfu for ten years  
 d. I have lived in Edfu before 2002
10. I last ate fish on Friday. This sentence means that .....  
 a. I didn't eat fish since Friday.  
 b. I haven't eaten fish since Friday.  
 c. I had eaten fish on Friday.  
 d. I didn't eat fish on Friday.

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	- لا يمكن استخدام (already) لأنها لا تتفق مع معنى الجملة - لا يمكن استخدام (never) في نهاية الجملة - لا يمكن استخدام (for) لعدم وجود مدة زمنية بعدها - الطرف (since) هنا يعني (منذ ذلك الحين) وهو يساوي (since then) - تُستخدم (since) قبل أسماء الفصول ومنها (fall) بمعنى (أصل الخريف)
2.	c	- الفعل الماضي البسيط (married) غير مناسب للمعنى خاصة في ظل وجود (for) وبعدها مدة زمنية
3.	b	- لا يمكن استخدام (c / d) لأنهما مضارع تام والسياق في الجملة ماضي - الجملة تعني أنني مسافر بالفعل للمرة الأولى
4.	a	- الجملة تعني أنها المرة الأولى التي أرى فيها طالباً بهذه السرعة من الذكاء
5.	c	- الجملة تعني أن نوران بدأت بالفعل في عمل الواجب لكنها لم تنتهي بعد
6.	d	- الجملة تعني أن المطر لم يتوقف بعد
7.	c	- الجملة تعني أنني ذهبت للتنزه سراً منذ شهر ولم أفعل ذلك مجدداً منذ ذلك الحين
8.	a	- الجملة تعني أنني بدأت أسكن في ادفو عام ٢٠٠٢
9.	b	- الجملة تعني أنني لم أتناول السمك منذ يوم الجمعة

Part One

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. My sister and I ..... some problems.  
 a. played  
 b. owed  
 c. solved  
 d. had  
 e. did
2. Voluntary work is of great importance. The antonyms of "voluntary" are .....  
 a. optional  
 b. exceptional  
 c. compulsory  
 d. obligatory  
 e. obligation

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. He was arrested because of his debts. He ..... money to several people.  
 a. lent  
 b. borrowed  
 c. owned  
 d. owed  
 (الاستعارة ٢٠٢٢)
4. I don't ..... much money as a carpenter.  
 a. win  
 b. hate  
 c. earn  
 d. pay  
 (إيريسينج - المعرفة التكوينية ٢٠٢٢)
5. It is kind of you to do ..... work.  
 a. abroad  
 b. miserable  
 c. paid  
 d. voluntary  
 (السؤال - ادفو ٢٠٢٠)
6. He died heavily in .....  
 a. promise  
 b. debt  
 c. ditch  
 d. pit  
 (الغدير - التذوق التكوينية ٢٠٢٢)
7. Have you finished your homework .....? Wonderful!  
 a. yet  
 b. ever  
 c. just  
 d. already  
 (عرب طلبة ٢٠٢٢)
8. It's two months since we ..... our uncle in the village.  
 a. had visited  
 b. visited  
 c. have visited  
 d. visit  
 (معرفة التكوينية - ادفو ٢٠٢٢)
9. Sadly, he has been ill ..... he was a young man.  
 a. for  
 b. when  
 c. ago  
 d. since
10. Mona isn't here, she ..... to the shops.  
 a. had gone  
 b. go  
 c. has been  
 d. has gone
11. Finally, my mother ..... how to use the internet. Now, she can send emails.  
 a. learns  
 b. has learnt  
 c. had learnt  
 d. was learning
12. Bassant ..... gets up early while on holiday.  
 a. don't  
 b. isn't  
 c. doesn't  
 d. never



13. I have passed this test .....  
 a. already b. yet c. just d. so far
14. He lives in Paris, he has ..... there since 2001.  
 a. gone b. been c. come d. done
15. My car is similar ..... Ali's. Both are red.  
 a. from b. to c. as d. like
16. Who's the ..... of this big house? - He must be a wealthy man.  
 a. owner b. guide c. tourist d. parrot

• Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

(المشيد سيد زكريا الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)

Statistics show that the rapid growth in population creates problems for developing countries. So, why don't people have fewer children? It has also been found that only when people's education and living standards begin to rise, birth rates begin to fall. Now poor countries can't afford social services and old age pensions, and people's incomes are so low that they have nothing to spare for savings. So, people need their children to provide them with security in their old age. Having a large family can be a form of insurance. Even when they are still young, children can help on a small farm. Improvements in public health services and medical care have assured that many more babies survive infancy and grow up. It has also helped the parents to live longer. No wonder populations are being added to both ends. These people have to be convinced that with smaller families, there will be more food, better schools, more employment and thus a better standard of living. This means changes in attitudes.

17. .... decreased the number deaths among babies.  
 a. Education b. the standard of living  
 c. Birth control d. Medical care
18. We have to convince people to .....  
 a. build houses b. go to school  
 c. have smaller families d. work on farms
19. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to .....  
 a. people b. people's incomes  
 c. social services d. children

20. The best title for this text is .....  
 a. Family planning b. Family food  
 c. Developing countries d. Statistics
21. The underlined word "survive" means .....  
 a. stay alive b. fight c. try d. go e. exist
22. Pension means money you get after you .....  
 a. become older b. retire from work  
 c. work hard d. have free time  
 e. go abroad
23. Why did people like to have many children in the past ?  
 a. To help the parents to live longer  
 b. To provide them with security  
 c. To convince them to plan the family  
 d. To afford social services  
 e. Children can help on a small farm when they are still young

### Part Two

#### 1. Translate into Arabic :

The city has advanced systems to manage transportation, housing and communication. However, the countryside has fresh air and water as it is less polluted.

#### 2. Translate into English :

لكي تحقق أهدافك عليك أن تعمل بجد وأن تتحلى بالصبر، فالنجاح الحقيقي في الحياة لا يأتي عن طريق الحظ أو بأحلام اليقظة.  
 (الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢)

#### 3. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on :

How to improve our lives

• للتدريب على أشكال مختلفة من قطع الفهم بنظام أسئلة MRQ. بنك الأسئلة. **تلويح**



Part I

Vocabulary

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المشتقات والمشتقات

admire (d) (v)	يُعجب بـ	lie - lay - lain (v)	يتمدّد / يكذب
adult (n - adj)	راشد / بالغ	lie - lied (v)	يكذب
beat - beat - beaten (v)	يختم	lying (adj)	ممدّد - راقد
beginning (n)	بداية	marine life (n)	الحياة البحرية
bite - bit - bitten (v)	يغض - يعض	marry (ied) (v)	يتزوج
blood pressure (n)	ضغط الدم	monitor (ed) (v) (n)	يراقب - جهاز عرض
boyhood (n)	صبا	move (d) (v)	ينتقل
champion (n)	بطل	national team (n)	المنتخب الوطني
character (n)	شخصية	pay - paid (v)	يدفع مال
compare (d) (v)	يقارن	pharaoh (n)	فراعون
competition (n)	مسابقة	pocket (n)	جيب
completely (adv)	بالكامل	puzzle (n)	لغز
desire (d) (n - v)	رغبة - يرغب	reach (ed) (v)	يصل إلي
donate (d) (v)	يتبرع	recording (n)	التسجيل
dream - dreamed / dreamt	حلم - يحلم	run - ran - run (v)	يدير - يجري
end (n)	نهاية / خاتمة	score (d) (v)	يُحرز
final (n)	نهائي	squash (n)	رياضة الاسكواش
follow (ed) (v)	يتبع / يلي	strange (adj)	غريب
footballer (n)	لاعب كرة قدم	success (n)	النجاح
generous (adj)	كرم - سخّي	tiring (adj)	مُتعب
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل	top (n)	أفضل - قمة
include (d) (v)	يتضمن / يشمل	twice (adv)	مرتين
inspire (d) (v)	يلهم	volunteer (n)	متطوع
isolated (adj)	منعزل - وحيد	vote (d) (v - n)	يُصوّت / يقترع -
join (ed) (v)	ينضم	wild (adj)	تصويت / اقتراع بري
junior (n) (adj)	الأشبه		
lay - laid - laid (v)	بضع - تبيض		

2 Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

Arsenal (n)	نادي أرسنال الإنجليزي	readers (n)	القراء
Basel (n)	نادي بازل السويسري	still (adv)	لا يزال
describe (d) (v)	يُصف	Switzerland (n)	سويسرا
discuss (ed) (v)	يُناقش	team (n)	فريق
interesting (adj)	شيق	times (n)	مُرات
low (adj)	مُنخفض	turtle (n)	سلحفاة بحرية
main (adj)	رئيسي	wife (n)	زوجة

Part II

Language Study

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	puzzles	يحل ألغاز	make	notes	يُدون ملاحظات
go	wrong	يتعطل - يخل	reach	the final	يصل للمباراة النهائية
become	friends	يصبحون أصدقاء	run	the country	يدير البلد
have	a strong desire	لديه رغبة قوية	tell	a story	يُحكى قصة
	a vote	يُجري اقتراع/ تصويت	win	a competition	يفوز بمسابقة
include	information	يتضمن معلومات			

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

at the same time as	في نفس الوقت	play for	يلعب لـ
be good friends with	يكون على صداقة قوية بـ	since the beginning	منذ البداية
be married to	متزوج من	squash World Open Championship	بطولة العالم المفتوحة للاسكواش
be well paid for	يحصل على مقابل جيد علي	student volunteers	متطوعين من الطلاب
find out	يكتشف	that's why	لهذا السبب
follow ... to	يتبع ... إلي	the first person	مسير المتكلم
in fact	في الحقيقة	too low	منخفض جداً
in groups	في مجموعات	top player	أفضل لاعب
in pairs	في ثنائيات	work as volunteers	يعملون كمُتطوعين
main characters	الشخصيات الرئيسية	world champion	بطل العالم
move to	ينتقل إلي	World Junior Champion	بطل العالم للناشئين
plan a short story	يضع تصور للقصة القصيرة		



## Reading & Listening Texts

### 1 Reading Texts

#### 1. Raneem El Weleily

Raneem El Weleily is one of Egypt's most famous faces.<sup>(1)</sup> She was world champion<sup>(2)</sup> of the squash<sup>(3)</sup> World Open in 2017, when she beat<sup>(4)</sup> another Egyptian, Nour El Sherbini. She also twice<sup>(5)</sup> reached<sup>(6)</sup> the final<sup>(7)</sup> in 2014 and 2016 and was the world's top<sup>(8)</sup> women squash player in 2019. Raneem was born in Alexandria in 1989. She first played for Egypt's squash team<sup>(9)</sup> when she was only ten. She became World Junior Champion in both 2005 and 2007 before winning her first competition<sup>(11)</sup> as an adult<sup>(12)</sup> in 2009. She is now married<sup>(13)</sup> to another top squash player, Tarek Momen. When she is not playing squash, she likes to listen to music and do puzzles,<sup>(14)</sup> but it is her success<sup>(15)</sup> at squash that has inspired<sup>(16)</sup> many young Egyptians to play the game.

#### Check Vocabulary

- (1) شخصيات
- (2) بطال
- (3) رياضة الاسكواش
- (4) هزم
- (5) مرتين
- (6) وصل الي
- (7) نهائي
- (8) افضل
- (9) فريق
- (10) الناشئين
- (11) مسابقة
- (12) راشد / بالغ
- (13) متزوجة
- (14) يحل اطفال
- (15) النجاح
- (16) يلهم

#### 2. Mohamed Elneny

Mohamed Elneny is a famous Egyptian footballer<sup>(1)</sup>. He is a strong<sup>(2)</sup> player, and he has played for the Egyptian national team<sup>(3)</sup> more than 60 times.<sup>(4)</sup> He has scored<sup>(5)</sup> more than six times for Egypt, and he is often on television. Elneny was born in 1992 and moved<sup>(6)</sup> from his boyhood<sup>(7)</sup> club<sup>(8)</sup> Al Ahly, in Cairo, to Al-Mokawlon in Nasr City in 2010.

He played for Al-Mokawlon at the same<sup>(9)</sup> time as Mohamed Salah, and the two footballers became good friends. In 2013, Elneny went to Switzerland<sup>(10)</sup> and joined<sup>(11)</sup> Basel,<sup>(12)</sup> one year after Salah went to the same club. Then Elneny went to London, England to join Arsenal.<sup>(13)</sup>

He is still<sup>(14)</sup> good friends with Salah. "I'm happy to have been with him since the beginning<sup>(15)</sup> and he has not changed,<sup>(16)</sup>" he says.

#### Check Vocabulary

- (1) لاعب كرة قدم
- (2) قوي
- (3) المنتخب الوطني
- (4) مَرَّات
- (5) وحجز
- (6) ينتقل
- (7) صبياً
- (8) نادي
- (9) نفس
- (10) سويسرا
- (11) ينضم الي
- (12) نادي بازل
- (13) نادي ارسنال
- (14) لا يزال
- (15) بداية
- (16) يتغير

### 3. How to write a short story

Why you write a long book when you can write a short story?<sup>(1)</sup> A short story can have 200 words or less.<sup>(2)</sup> The writer can't describe<sup>(3)</sup> many people or places and so there aren't so many adjectives<sup>(4)</sup> in a short story. However, we still need a beginning, a middle<sup>(5)</sup> and an end<sup>(6)</sup> to the story. And the story needs to be interesting,<sup>(7)</sup> so we include<sup>(8)</sup> important information and an interesting main<sup>(9)</sup> character, but perhaps<sup>(10)</sup> only one. In fact,<sup>(11)</sup> it can be interesting to write in the first person<sup>(12)</sup> (I did this ...) and then the person telling the story is the main character.<sup>(13)</sup>

Readers<sup>(14)</sup> can't learn much about this character, perhaps not even their name, but something has to happen to them. This might be a surprise,<sup>(15)</sup> a problem or something that goes wrong.<sup>(16)</sup> Readers don't always find out<sup>(17)</sup> what the character does in the end, but they need to be able to imagine<sup>(18)</sup> the end of the story.

#### Check Vocabulary

- (1) قصة قصيرة
- (2) أقل
- (3) يصف
- (4) صفات
- (5) وسط
- (6) نهاية / خاتمة
- (7) شيق
- (8) يضمن
- (9) رئيسي
- (10) ربما
- (11) في الحقيقة
- (12) صميم المتكلم
- (13) شخصية
- (14) القراء
- (15) مفاجأة
- (16) يتعطل - يختل
- (17) يكتشف
- (18) يتخيل

### 2 Listening Texts

**Presenter :** Many people want to work with animals or to help the environment. A good way to get experience of this kind of work is as a volunteer. This means working without money, sometimes in another country, and it can be very hard work, but most young people love the experience. We spoke to three young student volunteers to find out what they did during their summer holidays last year.

**Adam :** Hi, my name's Adam. I spent the summer working with an organisation based on the Red Sea coast in Egypt. It's a beautiful place and many people go there for a holiday. Most tourists like to go diving to see the colourful fish. However, there are so many tourists now that some of the fish are finding life difficult. My job was to help monitor the impact tourists are causing. So, while the tourists were at the beach, or swimming in the sea, I was on a boat counting and monitoring marine life in different areas. It's important to know where the fish are and how many there are of them. Then, at the end of



the day, while the tourists were eating in restaurants, I was with a team helping to clean the beaches. It was hard work, but I really enjoyed it. I'm sure my work has helped people to understand the impact tourists have on the Red Sea.

**Lara** : My name's Lara and I've recently returned from Greece. I spent most of my time on a quiet beach watching big turtles! These beautiful animals visit the same beach every year to lay their eggs. They lay a lot of eggs, but many of the eggs are taken by birds, or flooded by the rain and the sea. These turtles are endangered, so each one of their eggs is important. It was my job to help protect the eggs and to stop tourists visiting the areas where the eggs lie in the sand. It can be a bit of a disaster when tourists visit and put sun umbrellas in the same place as the turtle eggs! The work was very tiring because we often worked at night. So, when my friends were sleeping, I was there on the beach! But it was a great place and I loved observing the big, slow turtles when they left the beach and slowly swam off into the sea. In my opinion, it's a great project and I've learned a lot more about conservation, too.

**Munir** : I'm Munir and I've just spent an amazing few weeks in the north of Thailand. It's a very isolated area and I had to take an internal flight to get there. Thailand is known for its elephants, and many farmers use them on their farms. The elephants are also used to carry tourists. Not all the elephants have an easy life, so I worked with conservationists who were trying to help elephants return to a more natural life in the wild. The elephants are very intelligent and it was amazing helping to feed them. It was not easy work, though. The rainforest was very hot, and there were a lot of dangerous snakes and insects. On one day, a spider bit me on the hand when I was putting something in my pocket. My hand swelled up and I thought, Oh, no! I have a big problem! But local people told me that the spider wasn't a dangerous one, and after a day or two my hand was fine. I don't think everyone would find life in Thailand easy, but I loved it. I've even learnt some Thai. Now, I can communicate with Thai people as well as the elephants!

UNIT  
**4****Making new friends**

SB pages 42 : 51 WB pages 110 : 115

**Objectives** : الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

- **Reading** :  
A magazine article about moving to a new town
- **Writing** :  
An email to a magazine's problem page
- **Listening** :  
A radio phone-in about bullying at school

- **Speaking** :  
Having a debate
- **Language** :  
Articles, Countable/ uncountable nouns
- **Life skills** :  
Respect for diversity; Communication



• بنك الأسئلة للثانية المتوسطة والثانوية.  
• ملحق القواميس اللغوية.  
• تدريبات للزهر الشريف وفي بنك الأسئلة.  
• Dictation وفي ملحق بنك الأسئلة.

الكتاب  
الوحدة



## Part I

## Vocabulary

**تلميح** • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

## 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

advice (n)	نصيحة	noticeboard (n)	لوحة الإعلانات
advise (d) (v)	نصح	populate (d) (v)	يُستلم مكان/يقطن
communicate (d) (v)	يتواصل - يتصل	population (n)	(عدد) السكان
communication (n)	اتصال - تواصل	produce (d) (v)	يُنتج
connect (ed) (v)	يربط - يوصل	production (n)	إنتاج
connected (adj)	مرتبط - متصل	pronounce (d) (v)	ينطق
connection (n)	ارتباط - اتصال	pronunciation (n)	الطريقة
inform (ed) (v)	يُعلم - يُخبر	salutation (n)	تحيةة
information (n)	معلومة/معلومات	take ... for granted	... يتقبل / ... يُستلم كأمر مُستلم به

**تلميح** • من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

## 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

allow (ed) (v)	يسمح بـ	grade (n)	تقدير - مرتبة
allowed (adj)	مسموح به	greeting (n)	تحية
article (n)	مقال	header (n)	رأس الصفحة
avoid (ed) (v)	يتجنب - يتحاشى	join (ed) (v)	ينضم إلى
body (n)	مُتَن (صُلْب الموضوع)	optional (adj)	اختياري
closing (n)	إنهاء - ختام	personal (adj)	شخصي
conversation (n)	محادثة	practice (n)	ممارسة - تدريب
cool (adj)	علي الموضة - جميل / جذاب	recipient (n)	مُتلقي
diversity (n)	التنوع	relax (ed) (v)	يسترخي
enjoy (ed) (v)	يستمتع	serious (adj)	خطير - جاد
extra (adj / adv)	إضافي - آخر	stressed (adj)	مضغوط (نفسياً)
face (d) (n - v)	وجه - يواجه	teammates (n)	زملاء الفريق
favourite (adj)	مُفضل	teenager (n)	مراهق
feel - felt (v)	تبدو / تُعطي إحساس	wear - wore -	يرتدي
friendship (n)	صداقة	worn (v)	

## 3 Definitions تعريفات

**تلميح** • تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلّم المُستهدفة - هام جدًا.

Memorise	Understand
advice	نصيحة
connection	رابط - علاقة
noticeboard	لوحة الإعلانات
take ... for granted	يُستلم ... بـ / يتقبل ... كأمر مُستلم به
	an opinion someone gives to help you
	something that brings people together
	a board on a wall that people put information on
	to think something is true or will stay the same

## Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

## 1 Key vocabulary

- The ..... between smoking and cancer is very clear. (الدراسة الثانية ٢٠٢٢).  
a. transplant      b. donation      c. connection      d. conservation
- It is taken for ..... that bullying is a bad behaviour which we all must change. (الفيديو - الشواشنة ٢٠٢٢)  
a. denial      b. refusal      c. granted      d. decided
- They all have smartphones, so they are all ..... to the internet. (الفيديو - الشواشنة ٢٠٢٢)  
a. decorated      b. donated      c. disconnected      d. connected
- Our teacher always ..... us to study hard to get high marks. (التصاميم ٢٠٢٢)  
a. advises      b. devise      c. device      d. advice
- Our teacher always gives us ..... to study hard to get high marks.  
a. advises      b. devise      c. device      d. advice
- Lack of ..... in a marriage causes serious problems. (الفاخرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٢)  
a. communication      b. bullying      c. conservation      d. experiments
- The lecture table of this term has been put on the ..... (الدورة الزمنية ٢٠٢٢)  
a. noticeboard      b. noticeable      c. noticeably      d. notable
- This ..... problem needs urgent solutions. حلول عاجلة.  
a. serious      b. useful      c. cool      d. concerned



9. The ancient Egyptians ..... the banks of the Nile thousands of years ago.  
a. communicated b. populated c. pronounced d. produced
10. Use electronic dictionaries to know how to ..... new words.  
a. communicate b. populate c. pronounce d. produce
11. Use electronic dictionaries to know the ..... of new words.  
a. production b. pronunciation c. population d. salutation
12. Most of the world's ..... live in cities.  
a. production b. pronunciation c. population d. salutation
13. This factory ..... high quality TV sets.  
a. communicates b. populates c. pronounces d. produces
14. Learn foreign languages to ..... with tourists from different countries.  
a. communicate b. populate c. pronounce d. produce
15. I was ..... that I got the best marks in the exam.  
a. advised b. informed c. connected d. populated
16. The ..... of solar energy depends on light from the sun.  
a. production b. pronunciation c. population d. salutation
17. You start an email with the opening .....  
a. production b. pronunciation c. population d. salutation

## 2 Important Vocabulary

18. I hate using social media. They make me ..... (إدارة الخليفة والمقطم ٢٠٢٢)  
a. pleased b. stressed c. dressed d. praised
19. If you want to ..... good health, avoid smoking. (إدارة اسوان - أحمد طه حسين المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)  
a. follow b. be c. enjoy d. having
20. After the match, he preferred to ..... with a glass of orange juice. (ادفو - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)  
a. stress b. sleep c. worry d. relax
21. If you can leave a question in an exam, this question is ..... (المنيا - ملوي ٢٠٢٠)  
a. social b. advisory c. optional d. compulsory
22. It is important to respect the ..... of opinions and ideas, even if they are different from yours. (كفر الشيخ - دسوق ٢٠٢٠)  
a. leader b. friendship c. diversity d. punctuation

23. Did you form any close ..... while you were at school?  
a. friendly b. a friend c. friendships d. friends' (المنيا - ملوي ٢٠٢٠)

24. Some parents have bad memories of their own ..... years. (قنا - قوص ٢٠٢٠)  
a. teenage b. teenager c. marvellous d. splendid
25. You won't succeed if you don't have support from other .....  
a. contractions b. diversity c. salutations d. teammates
26. He becomes nervous when he ..... a difficult situation.  
a. stresses b. faces c. welcomes d. drops
27. .... a club and doing a team sport help you make new friends.  
a. Joining b. Pointing c. Closing d. Calling
28. His ..... clothes make a lot of people admire him.  
a. fashioned b. fashionable c. cold d. old-fashioned
29. People who are sociable اجتماعي find it easy to start ..... with others.  
a. contractions b. problems c. conversations d. diversity
30. My school bag is full. There's no room مكان for ..... books.  
a. this b. no c. less d. extra

## 3 Definitions

31. A/An ..... is something that brings people together.  
a. cheating b. phone-in c. address d. connection
32. A/An ..... is a board on a wall that people put information on.  
a. list b. noticeboard c. circle d. contraction
33. When you think something is true or will stay the same, then you .....  
a. find it difficult b. find it easy c. take it easy d. take it for granted
34. .... is an opinion someone gives to help you.  
a. Advice b. A belief c. Practice d. A debate



## Part II Vocabulary Study

تلاوة ساعد فمعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكر هذا الجد فستد بشكل جيد وتدرية

## 1 Verbal Collocations

do/take	extra practice	يقوم بتدريبات إضافية	get	easier	يسهل / يجعل ... أسهل
do	team sports	بمارس رياضات جماعية	give	advice on	ينصح بخصوص
face	a sport	بمارس رياضة	go	online	يدخل على الإنترنت
	a problem	بواجه مشكلة	join	clubs	ينضم لأندية
	better	يشعر بتحسن	make	friends	يكون صداقات
	at home	يشعر بالراحة		a connection	يربط / يترك العلاقة
feel	connected to	لديه ارتباط بـ	pass	an exam	يجتاز امتحان
	like	يرغب في / يريد - يشعر كأنه	start	a conversation	يبدأ حوار
	so hard	تبدو صعبة/ صلبة جدًا		a new school	ينتقل للمدرسة الجديدة
	stressed	يشعر بضغوط			

## 2 Synonyms

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
closing (n)	إنهاء - ختام
connection (n)	ارتباط - اتصال
cool (adj)	علي الموضة / جميل / جذاب
conclusion, end, ending	
link, relationship, relation	
fashionable	

## 3 Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
agree (v)	يرافق	disagree, refuse, turn down	يرفض
angry (adj)	غاضب	contented, satisfied, pleased	راضٍ - سعيد
borrow (v)	يستعير / يستلف	lend - lent	يُؤتي
busy (adj)	مشغول	free	حر - غير مشغول
forget - forgot	ينسى	remember (ed)	يتذكر
- forgotten (v)			
kind (adj)	طيب - عطف	unkind	سيء / قاسي
optional (adj)	اختياري	compulsory, obligatory	إجباري
personal (adj)	شخصي / خاص	public	عام

## 4 Expressions &amp; Idioms

a serious problem	مشكلة خطيرة	part of a team	عضو في فريق
address ... by name/title	يخاطب ... بالاسم / باللقب	pieces of advice	نصائح
ask ... to your house	تدعو ... لمزلك	read aloud	يقرأ بصوت عال
at breaktime	في الفسحة	respect for diversity	احترام التنوع
Here's some advice	ها هي بعض النصائح	revise for exams	يراجع للامتحانات
instead of	بدلاً من	show the reason for	يوضح السبب
make it easier	يجعل من الأسهل	spend time with	يقضي وقت مع
nursing people	تريض / رعاية الناس	stressed about	مضطرب بشأن
on my own	بمفردي	who else	من أيضاً

## 5 Verb + Preposition

address ... by	يخاطب ... بـ	go out (with)	يخرج (مع)
ask for	يطلب	move to	ينتقل إلى
check ... for	يفحص ... من أجل	revise for	يراجع من أجل
come out	يخرج - تُصدر	talk about	يتحدث عن
connect with	يرتبط بـ - يربط بـ	talk to	يتحدث إلى
focus on	يركز على		

## 7 Clear the confusion

## practice / practise

- practice (n) ممارسة - تدريب  
- You need more practice to achieve more progress. تحقق المزيد من التقدم.
- practise (v) يمارس - يتدرب  
- لاحظ أنه في الإنجليزية الأمريكية تُستخدم (practice) كاسم وفعل:  
- I practised / practiced speaking English by talking to my online English friends.  
يؤدي تمرين
- do / take practice  
- He did the guitar practice.



advise / advice / a tip

- advise (on / about / to) (v)
- I advised her to work hard.
- advice (on / about) (n)
- I gave him advice about his future.

نصح ... بخصوص / أن

نصيحة بخصوص

لا حظ أن كلمة (advice) لا تعد وتعامل معاملة المفعول

- I gave him an / one advice. (x)
- I gave him some many / a few / several advices. (x)
- I gave him two / three advices. (x)
- I gave him some advice. (✓)
- I gave him a piece of advice. (✓)
- I gave him pieces of advice. (✓)

tip - tips (n)

نصيحة - نصائح

- I gave him a tip about his future.

noticeboard (n)

- noticeboard (n) لوحة الإعلانات (في الإنجليزية البريطانية)
- You can find the company's email on the noticeboard.
- bulletin board (n) لوحة الإعلانات (في الإنجليزية الأمريكية)
- You can find the company's email on the bulletin board.

nursing (n)

- nursing (n) التمريض / رعاية المرضى
- It is known that nursing is very important for patients.
- nursery (n) حضانة (مكان تعليمي)
- My wife had to find a nursery for our little daughter.
- nursery (n) حضانة
- After Ahmed was born, he was put in a nursery because he had difficulty in breathing. كان لديه مشكلة في التنفس.
- nursery (n) نشتل (مكان لزراعة النباتات والأشجار ليبيها)
- I went to a nursery to buy some plants for my garden.

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- I thanked my sister when she ..... me to use her mobile.  
a. allowed b. let c. borrowed  
d. permitted e. warned  
(المشيد سيد زكريا الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
  - "You should avoid what hurts you." The antonyms of "avoid" in this context are .....  
a. improve b. confront c. ignore  
d. face e. follow  
(الدمو - الرئيسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
  - One can say that one ..... practice.  
a. sells b. makes c. admits  
d. does e. takes
  - You can say that someone has started a .....  
a. police b. new school c. point of view  
d. conversation e. good marks
  - After some time, I started to feel ..... and I calmed down.  
a. at home b. better c. stressed  
d. so hard e. like
  - "My father is angry with my brother." The adjective 'angry' here is antonymous with .....  
a. contented b. discontented c. satisfied  
d. dissatisfied e. hungry
  - You can address someone by their .....  
a. dress b. money c. title  
d. skill e. name
  - I asked my father to give me .....  
a. an advice b. advice c. advise  
d. a piece of advice e. a few advice
- MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- He can't ..... a connection between them.  
a. do b. make c. have d. take
  - I don't ..... online until I have finished all my jobs.  
a. do b. go c. have d. make
  - I can't sleep. I ..... so stressed  
a. fight b. feel c. give d. take



4. \_\_\_\_\_ team sports helps you mix <sup>تختلط</sup> with others and be sociable <sup>اجتماعي</sup>.  
 a. Doing b. Going c. Calling d. Making
5. You need to check your essay \_\_\_\_\_ mistakes.  
 a. with b. by c. for d. at
6. Here's \_\_\_\_\_ advice on how to speak English well.  
 a. an b. some c. any d. many
7. I spend a nice time \_\_\_\_\_ my cousins in the countryside.  
 a. on b. in c. with d. as
8. Civilized <sup>متحضر</sup> people show respect \_\_\_\_\_ diversity.  
 a. for b. from c. at d. without
9. We went to a \_\_\_\_\_ to buy flowers.  
 a. nursery b. nursing c. planets d. plants
10. You need some more \_\_\_\_\_ to be better at goalkeeping.  
 a. practice b. practise c. practises d. practised
11. \_\_\_\_\_ patients in hospitals is an important job.  
 a. Nursery b. Nurses c. Nursing d. Nursed

Part III

Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

A. New in town

(SB page 43)

It's day one at a new school in a new town. You've got all the paper<sup>(1)</sup> and pens you need. You're wearing<sup>(2)</sup> cool<sup>(3)</sup> new clothes. But, you don't know anyone and you're not sure where to go. Starting at a new school feels<sup>(4)</sup> so hard because you don't have any friends there to help you. It's very easy to feel stressed<sup>(5)</sup>, but life will get easier. Here's some advice to help you.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) ورق  
 (2) يرتدى  
 (3) جميل / جذاب  
 (4) تبدو / تعطي إحساس  
 (5) مضغوط (أنفسيًا)

Don't take it for granted<sup>(6)</sup> that other students will start a conversation.<sup>(7)</sup> Ask other people questions about themselves. Everyone likes talking about themselves. Try<sup>(8)</sup> asking them about their favourite<sup>(9)</sup> subjects<sup>(10)</sup> or which sports they like and don't ask too many personal<sup>(11)</sup> questions.

You can only make friends<sup>(12)</sup> if you spend<sup>(13)</sup> time with them! The best way to do this is to join<sup>(14)</sup> clubs or do team sports<sup>(15)</sup> you like. Go online<sup>(16)</sup> or look at the noticeboard<sup>(17)</sup> at your school and find out what's happening. If you're part of a team, your teammates<sup>(18)</sup> will feel connected<sup>(19)</sup> to you and that connection<sup>(20)</sup> could become a friendship.<sup>(21)</sup>

While you're busy<sup>(22)</sup> talking to other students, don't forget<sup>(23)</sup> to study. Remember<sup>(24)</sup> to do your homework, so you don't have any problems with your teachers. Those teachers can also give you some advice on how to make friends and enjoy life in your new town. Talk to them too.

- يكون على يقين / يظن  
 أنه من المفهوم به  
 محادثة  
 يجرب - يحاول  
 مفضل  
 موضوعات  
 شخصي  
 يكون صداقات  
 يقضي  
 ينضم إلى  
 رياضات جماعية  
 يدخل على الإنترنت  
 لوحة الإعلانات  
 زملاء الفريق  
 مرتبط  
 الارتباط  
 صداقة  
 مشغول  
 ينسى  
 يتذكر

B. To : problems@teen-magazine.com (SB page 44)

Subject : Help! I don't have any friends at my new school!  
 Dear Aunt<sup>(1)</sup> Carol,

I think it is difficult to make friends. I don't have any friends at my school. I am always on my own<sup>(2)</sup> at break-time<sup>(3)</sup>. Yesterday, I talked to a girl in my class. I asked her if she wanted to do some homework with me, but she said no.

I need some advice about how to make friends. Do you have any advice for me?

Check Vocabulary

- (1) عمّة / خالة  
 (2) وحيد  
 (3) وقت الفسحة

C. To : problems@teen-magazine.com (SB page 44)

Subject : Help! I'm really stressed!

Dear Aunt Carol,

I always work very hard at school, but I'm really stressed<sup>(1)</sup> about some exams<sup>(2)</sup> I have next week.

The first two exams are 3 hours long and will be very challenging. The last exam is in a subject<sup>(3)</sup> I'm not very good at. I've spent a lot of time studying in the library this week, but that hasn't helped me feel better.

I need some advice about how to relax<sup>(4)</sup>, please.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مضغوط  
 (2) امتحانات  
 (3) موضوع / مادة  
 (4) يسترخي



## 2 Workbook Texts

A. If you want to pass <sup>(1)</sup> your exams, (WB page 111)  
my advice is to always do your homework. Remember  
the information that your teacher gives you about the  
exam because it will help you. For a week or two before  
any exams, don't go out with your friends. Save <sup>(2)</sup> your  
money and do some extra <sup>(3)</sup> practice instead. It'll be really useful!

## Check Vocabulary

- (1) تختار  
(2) يوفر - يشرح  
(3) زائد - إضافي

B. It is not easy to be a teenager <sup>(1)</sup> and students (WB page 111)  
often need some help when they are at school. So, what  
problems do they have? Some students feel like <sup>(2)</sup> they  
don't have time to revise <sup>(3)</sup> for exams. They can also  
feel stressed about the work they get for homework.

## Check Vocabulary

- (1) مرافق  
(2) يشعر كأنه  
(3) يراجع

So, who can they ask for some advice? They can always ask a teacher  
or their family. If they have a good friend, he or she can help too.

## Part IV

## Language



شاهد وتعلم

تحتوي الوحدة على قاعدتين رئيسيتين. لذلك تم تقسيم الشرح إلى جزئين مستقلين كل منهما  
له تدريباته الخاصة

## تنويه هام

## Countable and Uncountable Nouns

الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

## 1 Countable Nouns:

الأسماء المعدودة:

- 1 الأسماء التي تعد يكون لها مفرد وجمع وهي تجمع بإضافة (s/es/ies) مثل:
- |        |   |       |           |   |           |
|--------|---|-------|-----------|---|-----------|
| a girl | → | girls | an egg    | → | eggs      |
| a bus  | → | buses | a library | → | libraries |

## 1 هناك جمع غير منتظم مثل:

Singular مفرد	Plural جمع
child	children أطفال
crisis	crises أزمات
datum	data معلومات
foot	feet أقدام
goose	geese أوز
man	men رجال
medium	media وسائل الإعلام
mouse	mice فئران
oasis	oases واحات
ox	oxen ثيران
phenomenon	phenomena ظواهر
tooth	teeth أسنان
woman	women نساء

## 2 قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد يمكن أن نستخدم التي:

a / an	- My father bought a car. - I've just seen an accident.
one	- One student got the full mark.
every / each	- Every player in the team should train hard. - Each tourist has a camera.
this / that	- This girl is my daughter. - That motorbike belongs to me.

## 3 قبل الأسماء الجمع يمكن أن نستخدم التي:

- قبل a few - كثير many - أي any - بعض some - أولئك those - هؤلاء these  
- a lot of كثير من lots of - several عددهم two - three .....

- ex. - I met several friends in the party.  
- I have a few books in my bag.  
- These boys are my cousins.  
- Five nurses are helping the surgeon.



## 2. Uncountable Nouns:

1. الأسماء غير المعدودة لا يوجد لها صيغة جمع وتعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد. وتشمل ما يلي:

## 1. Liquids السوائل

water - juice - tea - coffee - oil - milk - soup - blood ... etc.

## 2. Gases الغازات

oxygen - hydrogen - nitrogen - carbon dioxide ثاني أكسيد الكربون ... etc.

## 3. Meals الوجبات

breakfast - lunch - dinner - supper

## 4. School subjects

history - mathematics - physics الفيزياء - biology - الأحياء ... etc.

## 5. Languages اللغات

English - Arabic - French - German ... etc.

## 6. Different activities الأنشطة المختلفة

reading - smoking - writing - studying - shopping - eating ... etc.

## 7. Sports الرياضات

football - volleyball - basketball - swimming... etc.

## 8. Materials أسماء المواد عندما تستخدم بوجه عام

coffee - glass - gold - iron الحديد - lime stone الحجر الجيري - sand - soil - sugar - tea - wood ... etc.

## 9. Natural phenomena الظواهر الطبيعية

lightning البرق - heat - snow - thunder الرعد - light - rain ... etc.

## 10. Abstract nouns الأسماء المجردة

honesty امانة - hope - beauty - help - love - hatred كراهية - confidence ثقة - courage شجاعة - experience خبرة - progress تقدم - evidence دليل - patience الصبر - peace السلام - poverty الفقر .... etc.

## 11. Other nouns

jewellery مجوهرات - money - laughter ضحك - rubbish - equipment المعدات - furniture اثاث - cash نقدية - work - clothing الملابس - electricity الكهرباء - traffic مرور - baggage حقائب - luggage امتعة - machinery ماكينات - news - information - oil - advice - water - music - bread - cloth.... etc.

1. نستخدم هذه الكلمات مع الاسم الذي لا يعد :

a lot of - lots of - much - a little / little - some - any - all - most - none - no - this - that....

ex. - I'd like to have a little juice. (Not : a few juice)  
- How much money do you need? (Not : How many)

2. لا يمكن استخدام (these - those - one - a - an) قبل الاسم غير المعدود :

ex. - This equipment is very necessary. (Not : These equipment)  
- I bought bread at the baker's. (Not : a bread)

3. يمكن استخدام (a - an) مع بعض الأسماء التي لا تعد إذا سبقها صفة مثل :

ex. - I spent an enjoyable time in the countryside.  
- He had a good education at Oxford.

4. الأسماء غير المعدودة يأتي معها فعل مفرد :

ex. - Meat is cooked better at home.  
- Has milk got a lot of proteins ?  
- Does exercise make you healthy ?



Quantifiers:

1. a lot of - lots of. كثير من + plural جمع - uncountable لا يعد  
- نستخدم (a lot of - lots of) في الإجابات مع الاسماء التي تعد و الاسماء التي لا تعد.

ex. - I have a lot / lots of books.  
- She bought a lot / lots of sugar.

2. many + plural جمع - عدد كثير من - many  
- تأتي قبل اسم يعد في صيغة الجمع وتفضل في النفي والاستفهام.

ex. - Have you got many books?  
- Yes, I have got a lot of books.  
- No, I haven't got many books.

3. much + uncountable لا يعد - كثير من - much  
- تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد وتفضل في النفي والاستفهام.

ex. - Did you drink much coffee?  
- Yes, I drank a lot of coffee.  
- No, I didn't drink much coffee.

4. a few - few + plural جمع - قليل  
a few = some / a small number  
few = not many / almost none  
- تأتي قبل اسم يعد وتشير إلى عدد قليل.

ex. - There are a few people sitting at the back of the hall.  
- He has few interests outside his work.

5. a little - little + uncountable لا يعد - قليل  
a little = some / a small amount  
little = not much / almost nothing  
- تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة.

ex. - There is a little cheese in the fridge. I'll make you a sandwich.  
- I have little money in my pocket. I need to borrow some.

6. some بعض  
- نستخدم (some) قبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد في الحالات التالية:

1. Affirmative إيجابيات  
ex. - There are some apples in the kitchen.  
- The doctor gave me some medicine.

2. Offering في حالة تقديم عروض  
ex. - Would you like some sandwiches and some juice?  
3. Request في حالة الطلب  
ex. - Can you give me some paper and some pens?

7. any أي  
- نستخدم (any) قبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد في الحالات التالية:

1. Negative النفي  
ex. - He didn't have any sandwiches or any juice.

2. Interrogative الاستفهام  
ex. - Is there any cheese in the fridge?

3. hardly .... any = almost no  
ex. - There is hardly any milk left.

4. any .... at all  
ex. - I don't have any money at all.

- لاحظ ما يلي:  
فعل منفي + any = فعل مثبت + no

ex. - He hasn't got any friends. = He has got no friends.

اسم + no + verb to be = منفي + verb to be

ex. - I am not a teacher. = I am no teacher.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

- عندما تربط كلمة (and) اسمين أو ضميرين فإن الفعل بعدهما يكون جمعاً في كل الأحوال:  
- Meat and chicken are sources of protein.  
- You and I have to leave early.
- الأفعال التي تستخدم مع فاعل أو مفعول مفرد أو لا تعد هي (is / was / has / (inf. + s / es / ies):  
- This man is kind.  
- The car was repaired.  
- Milk makes us healthy.
- الأفعال التي تستخدم مع فاعل أو مفعول جمع هي (are / were / have / infinitive):  
- These men are kind.  
- The cars were repaired.



### ملحوظات للمتفوقين

#### Notes for advanced level

- 1 يمكن أن تُستخدم (many - much) في الجملة المثبتة في الحالات التالية :  
أ. تُستخدم (many - much) في الجمل المثبتة إذا جاء قبلها ما يلي :

so / very / as / too + much

- I have **so much** work to do.
- She has put **too much** salt in the soup.

so / as / too / a good / a great + many

- I saw **too many** people in the street.
- He has **so many** friends on Facebook.

ب. إذا كانت many / much فاعل الجملة أو تصف فاعل الجملة :

- **Many** students find maths difficult.
- = **Many** find maths difficult.

2 بعض الأسماء لها نفس الشكل في المفرد والجمع ويصرف معها الفعل حسب المعنى المقصود :

طائرة - طائرات aircraft / سمكة - سمك fish / غزال - غزالان deer / خوف - غنم sheep / مركبة فضاء - مركبات فضاء spacecraft

- A **deer** is running away from a tiger.
- **Some deer** are standing in the shade of a tree.

3 عند استخدام the قبل صفة دون وجود موصوف تتحول الصفة إلى اسم جمع وتأخذ دائماً فعل جمع :

... المصابين بالصمم the deaf / المعاقين the disabled / الأغنياء the rich / الفقراء the poor

- **The poor** are in need of our help.
- = **Poor people** are in need of our help.

4 هناك أسماء دائماً في صيغة الجمع وليس لها صيغة مفرد مثل :

cattle	ماشية	pliers	زردية
clothes	ملابس	police	الشرطة
congratulations	مباروك	scissors	مقص
glasses	نظارة	shorts	بنطلون قصير
jeans	بنطلون جينز	trousers	بنطلون
people	الناس		

- Your **clothes** are dirty.
- **Many congratulations**, Rody.

5 الأسماء المكونة من جزئين مكملين لبعضهما البعض دائماً تأخذ فعل جمع (الأمثلة في الجدول السابق) :

- My **glasses** were broken yesterday.
- Your **trousers** are very fashionable.

ويمكن استخدام (a pair of) قبل الأسماء المكونة من جزئين وفي هذه الحالة يكون الفعل مفرد أو جمع حسب كلمة (pair) :

- A **pair** of sunglasses **was** on the table.
- **Five pairs** of socks **were** bought for me.

6 بعض الأسماء يمكن أن تعد أو لا تعد حسب المعنى مثل :

Uncountable (لا تُعد)	Countable (تُعد)
business	عمل
chicken	لحم الدجاج
coffee	قهوة
cold	البرد عموماً
experience	خبرة
glass	الزجاج
hair	الشعر
iron	الحديد
light	الضوء
orange	اللون البرتقالي
paper	ورق الكتابة
time	الوقت
a business - businesses	شركة / مشروع
a chicken - chickens	دجاجة
a coffee - coffees	فنجان قهوة
a cold - colds	نزلة برد
an experience - experiences	تجربة حياتية
a glass - glasses	كوب زجاجي
a hair - hairs	شعرة
an iron - irons	مكواة
a light - lights	مصباح كهربائي
an orange - oranges	برتقال
a paper - papers	جريدة / وثيقة
a time - times	مرة

- I don't like **orange**. I like green.
- I ate **an orange**.
- **Iron** conducts heat and electricity.
- I need **an iron** to press my shirt.

7 يمكن تحويل الأسماء التي لا تعد إلى أسماء تعد كالاتي :

- أ. استخدام (a bit - a piece of) كألفاظ تجزئة عامة في المفرد وفي الجمع (bits - pieces) :
- She gave me a **piece** (a **bit**) of advice.
- She gave me **pieces** (bits) of advice.



ب. استخدام ألفاظ تجزئة تشير إلى كميات محددة مثل :

A tube of toothpaste	أنبوبة معجون أسنان	A slice of meat	شريحة لحم
A box of matches	علبة كبريت	A loaf of bread	رغيف خبز
A sheet of paper	ورقة ورق	A grain of sand	حبة رمل
A drop of water	قطرة ماء	A bottle of milk	زجاجة حليب
A glass of lemonade	كوب عصير ليمون	A bar of soap / chocolate	قطعة صابون / شوكولاتة
A jar of jam	برطمان مربى		
A lump of sugar	مكعب سكر		

ج. وعند الجمع نجمع لفظ التجزئة ولا نجمع اسم المادة :

- four sheets of paper
- six jars of jam
- two slices of meat
- five cups of coffee
- five pairs of shoes
- two loaves of bread
- six bars of chocolate

### General Exercise On Language

Apply

• التدرجات التالية مرتبة بشكل متدرج تصاعدياً حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم.

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

#### 1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

- Ahmed bought a lot of ..... for his new flat.  
a. new furnitures b. new furniture c. a new furniture d. furnitures
- Yara asked me for ..... advice about how to study well.  
a. a b. an c. a few d. some
- Can you give me ..... sandwiches?  
a. little b. a c. some d. any
- Hassan earns ..... money. He is in need of your help.  
a. little b. many c. a few d. much
- How ..... meat do you need, Madam?  
a. long b. many c. much d. often
- How ..... kilos of meat do you need, Madam?  
a. long b. many c. much d. often

- Hossam doesn't like city life as there's always too much .....  
a. voices b. noise c. cars d. shops
- Will you buy a ..... of toothpaste for me, honey?  
a. piece b. glass c. tube d. plate
- ..... people live in the country today than in the past.  
a. Little b. Less c. Few d. Fewer
- I can hear too many ..... in the living room. Do you have guests?  
a. noise b. sounds c. voice d. voices
- I've had so many jobs to do and so ..... time.  
a. a few b. few c. a little d. little
- There ..... three pairs of scissors in the drawer.  
a. is b. are c. was d. has
- How ..... do you have?  
a. much money b. few money c. money d. many money
- He bought ..... blue shorts.  
a. a b. an c. some d. any
- There ..... plenty of sugar but we need some more coffee.  
a. is b. are c. was d. were
- He gave the police a lot of ..... about the criminal.  
a. few information b. an information c. informations d. information
- I don't have ..... time to speak to you. I have to leave right now.  
a. few b. much c. no d. many
- My trousers ..... some holes in them.  
a. has b. have c. is d. are
- Can you help me with my ..... ?  
a. luggages b. baggages c. a baggage d. luggage
- Could I have only ..... orange to eat?  
a. some b. no word c. many d. an
- There ..... a lot of people who are interested in what you are doing.  
a. is b. was c. have d. are
- I gave Rodayna ..... advice about doing better at English.  
a. an b. some c. any d. a few
- ..... there many hotels in Aswan?  
a. Has b. Was c. Are d. Had
- I haven't got my camera, so I can't take ..... photographs.  
a. a b. some c. any d. many



25. Her clothes ..... to be ironed.  
a. has needed b. needs c. need d. is needing
26. There ..... only a little accommodation ..... available in this hotel.  
a. are b. were c. do d. is
27. We met ..... interesting people at the party.  
a. some b. any c. much d. a little
28. Ashraf has a lot of good .....  
a. an idea b. idea c. ideas d. some ideas
29. I haven't got ..... money left. I need to borrow some.  
a. a few b. many c. little d. much
30. I must buy some bread. I hardly have ..... left in the kitchen.  
a. much b. any c. many d. some
31. Two hundred pounds ..... enough for today's spending.  
a. are b. have c. is d. were
32. Try to reduce the ..... of cups of tea you drink a day.  
a. amount b. quantity c. number d. some
33. There is ..... juice for everyone to drink a little.  
a. too much b. too many c. little d. enough
34. There aren't ..... in this town. Only two.  
a. some hotels b. any hotels c. many hotels d. much hotels
35. The money of the books ..... on the table.  
a. are b. were c. has d. is
36. There aren't ..... seats for everybody. Some people will have to sit on the floor or stand!  
a. all b. much c. any d. enough
37. How ..... are coming to the party?  
a. many peoples b. many people c. much people d. any people
38. The police ..... questioning some people.  
a. is b. was c. are d. have
39. He failed to carry out his duties ..... *يقوم بواجباته* as a manager as he didn't have .....  
a. many experience b. few experiences  
c. some experiences d. much experience
40. .... congratulations! I'm very happy to hear your good news.  
a. A b. Any c. Much d. Many

41. There wasn't ..... traffic on the road. Only a few private cars.  
a. many b. much c. little d. a few
42. My ..... are in my bag.  
a. a glass b. pair of glasses c. glass d. glasses
43. A : How ..... sugar do you want in your coffee? - B : Two spoons.  
a. much b. many c. little d. few
44. Those sheep ..... fat.  
a. is b. are c. was d. has been
45. There ..... a lot of rubbish in the kitchen.  
a. is b. are c. has d. were
46. My reading glasses ..... missing.  
a. had b. was c. is d. are
47. This poor woman has .....  
a. child b. a few child c. little children d. much children
48. We hardly heard ..... news of him since he left the company.  
a. any b. some c. many d. much
49. Mathematics ..... not very easy to understand.  
a. are b. were c. is d. has
50. Knowledge of foreign languages ..... necessary.  
a. is b. are c. have d. were

2 Check your understanding

51. "Little children travel on the train for free." This means .....  
a. not many children travel on the train for free  
b. a few children travel on the train for free  
c. little number of children travel on the train for free  
d. young children travel on the train for free
52. "I have got no money left." I mean that .....  
a. I have little money left b. I have very little money left  
c. I don't have any money left d. I have some money left
53. "Ali is not a doctor." Which of the following gives the same meaning?  
a. Ali is no doctor. b. Ali has no job.  
c. Ali doesn't like doctors. d. Ali is a professor.
54. Some people like watching basketball, but ..... prefer football.  
a. any b. many c. people d. everyone





## Part I

## Vocabulary

• بعد من ذلك انظر الى اربعة اقسام من هذه النظم (نظم اقسام من النظم)

**1** المفردات الرئيسية Key Vocabulary

bully (ed) (v)	تطغى - يَطْغَى	nurse (n)	ممرضة
bully (n)	عظمى - عَظْمَى	nursing (n)	تطعيم
bullying (n)	الطغى - التَّطْغَى	phone-in (n)	برنامج يُشارِك فيه الجمهور هاتفياً
cheat (ed) (v - n)	غش - غَشَى	police (d) (v)	يفرض الأمن والاضطاد
cheating (n)	غش	police (n)	الشرطة
nurse (d) (v)	تطعيم - تطعيم العظمى	policing (n)	فرض الأمن والاضطاد

• من أهم طرق التعرف الكلية - كلمة التعرف **بالقصر** - يتم التعرف بالقبول

## 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

behave(d) (v)	تصرف / استأد	laugh(ed) (v/n)	ضحك - ضحكة
concerned(adj)	مهتم - له اهتمام	list(ed) (n - v)	قائمة - يضع في قائمة
copy(ed) (n - v)	نسخة - يبيع	lonely(adj)	وحيد - منعزل
debate(d) (n - v)	مناقشة - يناقش	nasty(adj)	فج - ذميم
effort(n)	أثر	negative(adj)	سلي
fight - fought (v)	مُقاتل / يندرج مع	positive(adj)	إيجابي
hane(d) (v)	يكره	rucksack(n)	حقية الظهر
hide - hid - hidden (v)	يُخفي - يُخبر	scared(adj)	مترقب
highlight(ed) (n - v)	الجزء الأهم - يبرز	social media(n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
hous(ed) (n - v)	مضيف - يستضيف	welcome(d) (v)	رُفد

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

**تكملة** • تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلم المستهدفة - حاتم دة

Memorise	Understand
bully (v) (عد) يتنمر - يبتز	to threaten يهدد to hurt someone or frighten someone especially someone smaller or weaker
bully (n) بطاحي - متنمر	someone who uses their strength قوة or power to frighten يهين or hurt يؤذي someone who is weaker أضعف
bullying (n) البطاحة - التنمر	the use of strength or power to frighten or hurt someone who is weaker
cheat (v) (عد) يغش	to act in a dishonest way غير أمينة way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
cheat (n) غشاش	someone who acts in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
cheating (n) الغش	acting in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
nurse (v) (د) تُعْرِض - تَرْعِي العَرَضِي	to look after someone who is ill or injured
nurse (n) ممرضة	someone whose job is to look after people who are ill or injured, usually in a hospital
nursing (n) التمريض	the job or skill of looking after people who are ill, injured, or old
phone-in (n) برنامج يُعْطَى فيه الجمهور آرائه	a radio or television programme in which you hear ordinary people expressing آرائهم عن opinions or asking questions over the telephone
police (v) (د) يفرض الأمن والاضباط	to keep control يسيطر على over an area to make sure that laws are obeyed and that people and property are protected محمي, using a police force قوة
police (n) الشرطة	the people who work for an official organisation هيئة التي عملها هو القبض على المجرمين whose job is to catch criminals and make sure that people obey القانون the law
suffix	a group of letters added to the end of a word to form a new word



# Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

## 1. Important Vocabulary

- His addiction <sup>إدمان</sup> has turned him into <sup>أصبح</sup> a liar. <sup>كاذب</sup>  
a. cheat b. cheating c. a cheat d. cheated
- Unfortunately, a lot of teenagers are <sup>يتمتعون</sup> at school <sup>مدرسة</sup>  
a. powered b. respected c. greeted d. bullied
- He isn't allowed at this school as using muscles or power to hurt others is prohibited.  
a. Pulling b. Bullying c. Pulling d. Bull
- Students who <sup>فشلوا</sup> in this exam will be excluded <sup>يُستبعد</sup> and will face <sup>يواجهون</sup> severe punishment.  
a. achieve b. sheet c. cheat d. succeed
- The use of guns and other weapons must be <sup>ممنوعة</sup>  
a. listed b. closed c. connected d. policed
- Those <sup>الذين</sup> frighten the poor workers to work for them.  
a. bully b. bullies c. bullying d. bully's
- Don't look at the dictionary during the exam. That's <sup>ممنوع</sup>  
a. cheats b. cheat c. cheating d. cheated
- A good woman <sup>رعت</sup> my uncle when he was ill in hospital.  
a. nursery b. nursing c. nurse d. nursed
- A good <sup>رعت</sup> looked after my uncle when he was ill in hospital.  
a. nursery b. nursing c. nurse d. nursed
- She chose <sup>اختارت</sup> as a profession because she wanted to help patients.  
a. nursery b. nursing c. nurse d. nursed
- The <sup>الرجل</sup> managed to arrest the murderer.  
a. policy b. policing c. policed d. police
- <sup>السياسة</sup> is one of the most important things in societies.  
a. Policy b. Policing c. Policed d. Police

## 2. Important Vocabulary

- Staying up late may have an <sup>التأثير</sup> on your performance the next day.  
a. affect b. effect c. impacted d. effective

- It's not wise to <sup>تدعو</sup> bullies because they have nothing to lose.  
a. call b. populate c. fight d. avoid
- Although I live in a big city where there are lots of people, I often find myself feeling <sup>الوحدة</sup>  
a. only b. unique c. single d. lonely
- Sama <sup>أخفت</sup> her father's car keys in her bag.  
a. wore b. hid c. saluted d. fought
- Tell this unkind person that he is not <sup>مقبول</sup> in our organisation.  
a. personal b. concerned c. physical d. welcome
- In this programme, we have two scientists to <sup>التي</sup> the issue.  
a. debate b. believe c. think d. agree
- I can't give you my opinion about this player as I am not <sup>مفضل</sup>  
a. concerned b. useful c. fortunate d. favourite
- <sup>لقد</sup> have made communication easier.  
a. Facebook b. Twitter c. WhatsApp d. Social media
- Our company offered to <sup>الترتيب</sup> the conference in a five-star hotel.  
a. stress b. highlight c. host d. express

## 3. Definitions

- A/An <sup>الشخص - الذي يهين أو يخيف</sup> is someone who hurts or frightens someone who is smaller or less powerful.  
a. expert b. bully c. archaeologist d. role model
- To <sup>التهديد</sup> is to threaten to hurt someone or frighten them, especially someone smaller or weaker.  
a. bully b. promise c. pull d. dare
- A/An <sup>اللاحقة</sup> is a group of letters added to the end of a word to form a new word.  
a. noun b. adverb c. suffix d. prefix
- <sup>القوة</sup> is the use of strength or power to frighten or hurt someone who is weaker.  
a. Bullying b. To bully c. A bully d. Bully
- <sup>الاحتيال</sup> is someone who acts in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.  
a. A cheat b. To cheat c. Cheat d. Cheating
- <sup>الاحتيال</sup> means to act in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.  
a. A cheat b. To cheat c. Cheat d. Cheating



28. .... means acting in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.  
 a. A cheat b. To cheat c. Cheat d. Cheating
29. .... is someone whose job is to look after people who are ill or injured, usually in a hospital.  
 a. Nursing b. Nurse c. To nurse d. A nurse
30. .... is the job or skill of looking after people who are ill, injured, or old.  
 a. Nursing b. Nurse c. To nurse d. A nurse
31. A .... is a radio or television programme in which you hear ordinary people expressing opinions or asking questions over the telephone.  
 a. talk show b. phone-in c. programme d. film
32. To .... is to keep control over an area to make sure that laws are obeyed and that people and property are protected, using a police force.  
 a. police b. policed c. the police d. policing

## Part II Vocabulary Study

تتويبه ساعد فعلكم على الارتقاء بمستواكم عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء فسيتم بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلزمات لفظية

be	different to / from	have	an effect on	له أثر على
	not welcome here		exams	لديه امتحانات
	right to		a class debate	يُنظَّم مناظرة بين الطُّلاب
feel	safe		a class vote	يجري اقتراع بين الطُّلاب
fight	the bullies	make	... clear	يُوضَّح
get	good marks	take	a photo	يلتقط صورة
	along with		turns to	يتبادلون الدوار لكي
give	an opinion			يعطي رأي

### 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
cheat(ed) (v)	deceive, trick
concerned (adj)	interested, involved, affected, connected
nurse(d) (v)	care for, take care of, look after
police(d) (v)	control, keep in order, keep under control, regulate

### 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	المعكس
effect(n)	أثر	cause, reason	سبب
exciting(adj)	مثير	boring	ممل
positive(adj)	إيجابي	negative	سلبي
right(adj)	صواب - صحيح	wrong	خطأ
save(d) (v)	يُنقذ	endanger	يُعْرض للخطر
save(d) (v)	يُدَّخِر / يوفر	waste	يُهْدِر - يبدد
with (prep. - adv)	ب - ذو	without	بدون

### 4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a radio phone-in	make us all laugh	يجعلنا جميعاً نضحك
angry with	on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
any more	on the line	على الخط (الهاتف)
as far as I'm concerned	physical abilities	قدرات بدنية
cheating in exams	save money	يوفر مال
debate the good things and the bad	sure about	متأكد من
things about	the main idea	الفكرة الرئيسية
find advice for	where to go	أين يذهب
good at		
good for		

ALTfWok.com موقع التفوق



## 5 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

get along (with)	يتعامل جيداً (مع)	point at / to / towards	يشير إلى
get to	يصل إلى	reply to	يرد على
list ... in	يذكر ... في	say ... about	يقول ... عن

## General Exercise On Vocabulary study

• MCQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- The antonyms of the word 'advantages' are .....  
a. merits      b. pros      c. disadvantages  
d. benefits      e. demerits
- The class ..... we had was interesting.  
a. debate      b. device      c. vote  
d. bully      e. effect
- I was asked to give .....  
a. the bullies      b. a problem      c. advice  
d. a sport      e. an opinion
- Positive is to negative as ..... is to endangered.  
a. safe      b. save      c. danger  
d. endanger      e. secure
- "Smoking has bad effects on health." The noun 'effects' here is the antonym of .....  
a. cause      b. result      c. outcome  
d. reason      e. product
- "Parents are always concerned with their children's future." The adjective 'concerned' in this context is a synonym for .....  
a. contented      b. connected      c. fashionable  
d. cool      e. interested
- "It is a crime to cheat others." The verb 'cheat' here is synonymous with .....  
a. trek      b. track      c. trick  
d. deceive      e. chat

8. The little boy pointed ..... the picture of the bully who frightened him.

- a. at      b. of      c. off  
d. to      e. from

9. It took me about half an hour to ..... my home.

- a. arrive at      b. go out      c. get to  
d. come out      e. talk to

• MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tourism plays a ..... role in our national income.

- a. positive      b. passive      c. negative      d. destructive

2. My sister and I usually ..... turns to do the washing up. غيل الأثري

- a. are      b. feel      c. give      d. take

3. He left his job because the manager told him that he ..... not welcome there.

- a. was      b. felt      c. gave      d. took

4. "You must not waste your time." In this sentence, the words 'not waste' can be best replaced by .....

- a. rescue      b. spend      c. save      d. waist

5. "This area is policed by the army." الجيش The verb "policed" here means .....

- a. disagreed      b. controlled      c. nursed      d. freed

6. Optional and compulsory are .....

- a. opposites      b. antonyms      c. synonyms      d. a & b

7. "She nurses her old mother." "Nurses" here is a synonym of .....

- a. looks for      b. takes turns      c. looks after      d. takes off

8. Wait a moment and I will tell you where ..... good clothes.

- a. to buy      b. buy      c. do you buy      d. b & c



9. Don't believe everything people post ..... social media.  
a. of b. on c. out d. down
10. I sometimes call this radio phone- .....  
a. on b. in c. at d. off
11. As ..... as I'm concerned, money is not his only problem.  
a. soon b. well c. far d. a & c

## Part III Reading & Listening

### 1 Reading Texts

**C. Maged :** Hassan is a good friend. Last week, however<sup>(1)</sup> he borrowed<sup>(2)</sup> my phone without<sup>(3)</sup> asking. Then he dropped<sup>(4)</sup> the phone. Fortunately<sup>(5)</sup>, the phone did not break<sup>(6)</sup>, but I was very angry<sup>(7)</sup> with him. Now, he's not talking to me.

**Omar :** Fawzi always gets good marks<sup>(8)</sup> at school, but he is not always a good student. He often tries to make us all laugh.<sup>(9)</sup> Last week, he was talking in a lesson and the teacher was angry with him. He had to leave the classroom<sup>(10)</sup>. Now, he doesn't want to make us laugh any more<sup>(11)</sup>.

**Hoda :** There is a girl in my class and she always says unkind<sup>(12)</sup> things about me. My friend tells me that she is also saying things about me on social media.<sup>(13)</sup> Last week, she took a photo of me without asking. Today, she was pointing<sup>(14)</sup> at me and laughing with her friends. It makes me feel very unhappy.

(WB page 112)

#### Check Vocabulary

- (1) مع ذلك
- (2) يستعير / يستلف
- (3) بدون
- (4) يسقط
- (5) لحسن الحظ
- (6) يتكسر
- (7) غاضب
- (8) درجات
- (9) يضحك
- (10) حجرة الدراسة
- (11) بعد الآن / مرة أخرى
- (12) سيء / قاسي
- (13) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
- (14) يشير

**D. Salem :** Do you think it is a good or bad thing to move to a new school in another<sup>(1)</sup> town ?

(WB page 113)

**Sayed :** As far as I'm concerned<sup>(2)</sup> it can be a good thing. You can meet new people and learn different things.



#### Check Vocabulary

- (1) أخرى
- (2) بقدر اهتمامي
- (3) مختلف
- (4) من رأيي
- (5) هنا صحيح

**Salem :** I'm not so sure about that. I think I'd find it very difficult at a new school. Everything would be new and different<sup>(3)</sup>.

**Sayed :** I agree, but new things can be exciting, and you'll soon have new friends too.

**Salem :** In my opinion<sup>(4)</sup> your old friends are your best friends.

**Sayed :** Yes, but I think, you can never have too many friends. One day, your new friends will be your best old friends !

**Salem :** That's true<sup>(5)</sup>.

### 2 Listening Texts

**A. Radio phone - in about bullying** (SB page 46)



**Radio show host :** Good evening, everyone.

Welcome to the show.

Tonight, we're talking about bullying<sup>(1)</sup>. Unfortunately<sup>(2)</sup>, a lot of teenagers<sup>(3)</sup> are bullied at school, and this can have some very negative effects<sup>(4)</sup> on them.



We're going to talk to a 15-year-old boy called Ali, who is being bullied.

Ali... are you on the line<sup>(5)</sup>?

**Ali**

: Hi Seleem. How are you?

#### Check Vocabulary

- (1) بطلية / تهمر
- (2) لسوء الحظ
- (3) المراهقين
- (4) آثار سلبية
- (5) متصل / على الخط



Radio show host : I'm well, thank you. How are you this evening?

Ali : I'm OK, but last week was really hard. Two boys in my class are bullying me because I am not very good at football. I like to play chess more than football. Last week they hid my rucksack<sup>(6)</sup>. It had all my school books in it. I hate going to school now!

Radio show host : Oh no! That's terrible. Did you tell a teacher?

Ali : No, I didn't. I was too scared. I've just moved to this town, so I don't know the teachers very well.

Radio show host : Well, Ali, I really think you should talk to a teacher. Your teacher can talk to the bullies<sup>(7)</sup> and make it clear<sup>(8)</sup> that they shouldn't behave<sup>(9)</sup> like this. If you do nothing, the bullying will just continue.

Ali : Yes... you're right... There's one teacher that I get along well<sup>(10)</sup> with. I'll talk to him.

- (6) حقيبة الظهر  
(7) المتنمرين / المتنمرين  
(8) يوضح  
(9) يتصرف / يسلك  
(10) يتسامح مع / يتعاطف مع

### B. Ola and Lina giving their opinions (SB page 47)

Ola : So, do you think moving to<sup>(1)</sup> a new school in another town is a good thing or a bad thing for teenagers?

Lina : As far as I'm concerned<sup>(2)</sup>, it's not a good idea. If you move to a new school, you have to leave your old friends behind and it's really difficult to make new friends<sup>(3)</sup>.

Ola : I'm not so sure about<sup>(4)</sup> that. I think you can make new friends if you're nice to other people and start conversations with<sup>(5)</sup> them. For example, I'm sure you would make lots of new friends!

Lina : That's true. It is possible to make new friends, but it takes time<sup>(6)</sup>. You'll be really lonely<sup>(7)</sup> for the first few months.

Ola : In my opinion, it's a good experience<sup>(8)</sup> to have because it makes you stronger<sup>(9)</sup>.

Lina : I know that it can make people stronger, but I would prefer to just stay with the people I know.

### Check Vocabulary

- (1) الانتقال إلى  
(2) على حد علمي / في رأيي  
(3) يكون صداقات جديدة  
(4) متأكد من  
(5) يبدأ حديث مع  
(6) يستغرق وقت  
(7) منعزل  
(8) تجربة جيدة  
(9) تجعلك قويا

## Part IV

## Language



شاهد وتعلم

Making new friends

## Articles a /an and the with singular nouns :

a / an

تستخدم (a/an) في الحالات التالية :

- 1 قبل اسم مفرد معدود يتم ذكره لأول مرة:  
ex. - I saw a cat in front of the door.  
- There is an apple on the table.

- 2 قبل اسم وظيفة معدود مفرد عند التحدث عن وظيفة شخص ما :  
ex. - Mustafa is a doctor.  
- My uncle is an astronaut.

3 قبل الاسم المعدود المفرد الدال على عدد :  
a pair زوج - a couple زوج - a dozen دسنة - a hundred -  
a thousand - a million....etc.

- ex. - He paid a million dollars for this car.

- 4 مع تعبيرات السرعة والزمن والنسبة والمسافة والأمن :  
ex. - 80 kilometres an hour ٨٠ كم في الساعة  
- two days a week ١٠ جنيهات للكيلو 10 pounds a kilo - يومان في الأسبوع

- 5 قبل الصفة إذا سبقت اسم مفرد معدود :  
ex. - We have got a new car.

- 6 للحظ أن (a - an) لا تستخدم قبل الأسماء الجمع و الأسماء غير المعدودة :  
ex. - Cats eat fish and drink milk. (Not: A cats....)  
- The bottle is full of oil. (Not: an oil....)

كيفية الاختيار بين (a/an) :

- 1 تستخدم (a) قبل اسم مفرد معدود يبدأ بصوت ساكن :  
a table - a house - a boy - a girl - a doctor - a plant - a window .... etc.

- 2 تستخدم (an) قبل اسم مفرد يبدأ بالحروف (u - eu - ew) عندما تنطق كحرف (y) :  
a university - a uniform - a union - a useful book -  
a European team - a ewe .....etc.



UNIT 4

- ٢ تستخدم (an) قبل اسم معدود مفرد يعد بيدا بصوت متحرك :  
ex. - an egg / an orange / an apple / an eagle / an elephant.....etc.
- ٣ تستخدم (an) قبل اسم مفرد يعد بيدا بحرف ساكن لا ينطق يليه صوت متحرك :  
ex. - an hour / an honest person.
- ٤ يمكن استخدام (a/an) قبل اسم معدود مفرد لإعطاء تعريف للكلمات :  
ex. - A doctor is someone who works in a hospital to help and treat patients.
- ٥ قبل الاختصارات التي تنطق كحروف منفصلة نستخدم (a/an) حسب بداية نطق الحرف :  
ex. - My friend sent an SMS to me.  
- There is an "m" letter in the word "man".
- ٦ قبل كلمة (one) كصفة نستخدم (a) لأن (one) تبدأ بصوت ساكن :  
ex. - I found a one-dollar banknote on the floor.  
- This is a one-way street.

The

- نستخدم (the) في الحالات التالية :
- ١ قبل اسم سبق ذكره في سياق الحديث :  
ex. - His father works in an office. The office is in the city centre.  
- She bought a book by Dickens yesterday. The book is called Oliver Twist.
- ٢ قبل اسم لا يوجد منه سوى واحد فقط :  
the sun - the moon - the sky - the country -  
the countryside - the ground - the world - the horizon ....etc.
- ex. - The moon goes around the Earth. (هناك قمر واحد وأرض واحدة)
- ٣ قبل اسم معروف للقاريء أو السامع :  
ex. - "Make the bed and open the window," said mum.  
(معروف بالنسبة لك أي فراش سترتب وأي نافذة ستفتح)
- ٤ قبل صفات التفضيل والأعداد الترتيبية :  
the tallest - the oldest - the most beautiful - the least expensive -  
the first - the second - the millionth - the only - the last.....etc.
- ex. - That's the best film I've ever seen.  
- The Nile is the longest river in the world.  
- The first letter of the alphabet is A.

- لكن في حالة وجود صفات الملكية (my / his / her / its / your / our / their / ...'s) قبل صفات التفضيل والأعداد الترتيبية فلا نستخدم (the) :  
- Nasser is my best friend. (Not: the best ...)  
- Omar is Sama's oldest uncle. (Not: the oldest ...)

- ٥ قبل أسماء المحيطات والبحار و معظم أسماء الأنهار والقنوات (لكن ليس قبل أسماء البحيرات):  
the Pacific - البحر المتوسط - the Mediterranean  
the Amazon - نهر النيل - the Nile  
the Suez Canal - قناة السويس  
Lake Nasser - بحيرة ناصر  
Lake Victoria - بحيرة فيكتوريا  
..... etc.

- ٦ لا نستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الدول :  
Egypt - Britain - France - Spain - Germany - Iraq ..... etc.

- أما إذا احتوى اسم الدولة أو الهيئة على إحدى الكلمات التالية فهي تأخذ (the) :  
(State - مملكة - Kingdom - اتحاد - Union / Federation - جمهورية - Republic)  
the Arab Republic of Egypt (the ARE) جمهورية مصر العربية  
the United Arab Emirates (the UAE) الإمارات العربية المتحدة  
the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia (the KSA) المملكة العربية السعودية  
the United States of America (the USA) الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية  
the United Kingdom (the UK) المملكة المتحدة  
the United Nations (the UN) الأمم المتحدة  
- Egypt is a great country.  
- The Arab Republic of Egypt is a great country.

- و أيضا إذا كان اسم الدولة جمع فهو يأخذ (the) :  
the Netherlands - هولندا  
the Philippines - الفلبين  
- لاحظ أنه كان في السابق يوضع (the) قبل أسماء هذه الدول ولكن حسب قائمة أسماء الدول في الأمم المتحدة لم يعد يسبق الاسم بـ (the) :

Lebanon - Ukraine - Yemen - Sudan

- ٧ نستخدم (the) قبل أسماء السلاسل الجبلية :  
the Himalayas - جبال الهيمالايا  
the Rocky Mountains - جبال روكي  
the Alps - جبال الألب  
.....etc.
- أما أسماء القمم الجبلية المنفردة فعادة لا تأخذ (the) :  
Mount Everest - قمة إفرست  
Kilimanjaro - جبل كليمنجارو  
..... etc.



Extra Notes ملاحظات إضافية

تستخدم (the) في الحالات التالية أيضًا :

- 1 تستخدم (the) قبل اسم مفرد بعد للدلالة على النوع بوجه عام خاصة مع فصائل الحيوانات والطيور :  
- The giraffe is my favourite animal.  
- يستخدم الاسم الجمع بدون (the) للدلالة على النوع بوجه عام :  
- Giraffes are my favourite animals.
- 2 تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الاختراعات المفردة للدلالة على النوع بوجه عام :  
- The computer is the most important invention.  
- لكن عند الحديث عن الأجهزة في أى سياق آخر نطبق القواعد العامة :  
- I have bought a tablet and a laptop. The tablet is white, but the laptop is black.
- 3 تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الآلات الموسيقية المفردة مع أفعال مثل :  
(play / practise / learn / study / appreciate / listen to ....)  
- Can you play the guitar ?  
- The piano is my favourite instrument.  
- أما عند الحديث عنها في أى سياق آخر نطبق القواعد العامة :  
- My brother has a guitar and a piano. The guitar is old and doesn't work well.
- 4 تستخدم (the) قبل الكلمات (theatre/cinema/radio/post office / internet/ shops) ولا نقصد مكان أو شيء محدد :  
- Do you go to the theatre ?  
- We listen to the news on the radio.
- 5 تستخدم (the) قبل بعض الصفات التي لا يتبعها أسم لتدل على اسم جمع دائماً و تأخذ فعل جمع :  
the rich / الأغنياء / the poor / الفقراء / the blind / المكفوفين / the disabled / المعاقين ..... etc.  
- The disabled are in need to our help.  
- He is collecting money for the blind.
- 6 تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الأقاليم والمناطق :  
the Middle East / the Far East / the north of Egypt ....etc.
- 7 تستخدم (the) قبل بعض الأماكن الجغرافية مثل :  
الصحراء الكبرى / the Sahara / الصحراء / the Gobi

1 تستخدم (the) غالباً قبل الاسم الذي تتبعه عبارة وصل أو الاسم المُعرّف بحرف الجر (of) :

- The man who lost his son was very sad.
- He opened the door of the room.

- لكن لاحظ أنه توجد استثناءات :

- Do you have a dictionary that I can borrow ?  
(هنا يقصد بها أى قاموس (أحد القواميس))
- Ashraf told me about a man who can eat glass. (هنا يقصد بها أحد الرجال)

2 تستخدم (the) قبل العدد الذي يدل على فترة عشر سنوات :

التسعينيات / the nineties / الخمسينيات / the fifties

3 تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات والألقاب والمناخ وبعض الأسماء الأخرى :

الطقس / the weather / المناخ / the climate / الحكومة / the government /  
الشرطة / the police / الصحافة / the press / البيئة / the environment /  
...etc. الجيش / the army

4 تستخدم (the) مع العبارات الدالة على المقارنة (صيغة كلما ..... كلما) :

- The more you practise, the better you get. كلما تدربت كلما تحسنت.

5 لا تستخدم (the) في الحالات التالية :

- 1 لا تستخدم (the) قبل الاسم الجمع إذا كنا نقصد المعنى العام :  
- Rabbits are nice animals. (not : the rabbits)  
(هنا يقصد الأرانب بشكل عام)
- The rabbits in the garden have eaten the carrots.  
(هنا الحديث عن مجموعة محددة من الأرانب)

2 لا تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الأماكن التالية إذا كانت تستخدم للفرض الأساسي منها :

prison / school / university / college / church / hospital / market /  
court / mosque...etc.

- He went to university. He studies medicine there.

- أما إذا استخدم المكان لفرض آخر فيأخذ (the) :

- Marwa went to the hospital to visit her uncle.  
(She didn't go there as a patient)

3 غالباً لا تستخدم (the) قبل الكلمات (bed/work/home) :

- He went to bed. - She left work. - I arrived home.



لا تستخدم (a - an - the) في الحالات التالية :

١ قبل أسماء المواد (الخامات) :

wood / wool / metal / milk / iron / plastic / meat ..... etc.

٢ قبل أسماء القارات :

Asia / Africa / Europe / North America ..... etc.

٣ قبل أسماء المدن :

Cairo / New York / London / Madrid ..... etc.

٤ قبل أسماء الوجبات :

- We have lunch at three o'clock. (Not: the lunch)

- لكن عند وصف الوجبة نستخدم (a/an/the) :

- The breakfast I ate yesterday was horrible.

٥ قبل أسماء اللغات

Arabic / English / Chinese / Turkish ..... etc.

- لاحظ أنه إذا جاءت بعد اسم اللغة كلمة (language) نستخدم (the) :

the English language / the French language

٦ قبل أسماء المواد الدراسية :

mathematics / biology / political science

٧ قبل الألقاب المتبوعة باسم شخص :

- King Ramses built a lot of temples. (Not: the king Ramses ...)

- President Sadat was a great politician. (Not: the President Sadat ...)

٨ قبل كلمة (space) عندما تعني الفضاء :

- NASA sends spaceships into space.

- عندما نستخدم (the) قبل كلمة (space) فهي تعني مكان فارغ :

- The space in the class isn't enough for ten more students.

٩ لا نستخدم (a/an/the) قبل الاسم المتبوع برقم تمييزي له :

- I booked seat 25 in carriage 2.

### General Exercise On Language

Apply

• التدرجات التالية فُرِّدَتْ بشكل متدرج تصاعدياً حسب تعقيد هزم بلوم.

تلويح

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. .... sun has been shining all day.  
a. A b. An c. The d. No article
2. In today's lesson, we have known about a brave man. .... brave man's name is Hossam El-Rasheedy.  
a. A b. An c. The d. No article

3. My grandma cannot walk easily, so she has to use ..... stick.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
4. Salah is one of ..... best footballers in the world.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
5. I've bought ..... new computer.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
6. We're staying in ..... room on the first floor of our large villa.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
7. The injured man was taken to a hospital. Doctors at ..... hospital told him that he would be OK.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
8. My uncle was staying in a new hotel which overlooks ..... Red Sea.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
9. This building is going to be ..... tallest one in the area.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
10. His cousin is ..... journalist. He works for a newspaper in Cairo.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
11. She wants to have ..... holiday next to the sea.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
12. I had ..... dream last night. In the dream, I was a bride عروسة in a white dress!  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
13. Adel is a space scientist. At the moment, he is studying ..... moon.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
14. The best way for a person to get fit is to do exercises two or three times ..... day.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
15. My friend is ..... sportsman. He plays squash.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
16. He has ..... meat and soup for lunch.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
17. Could you close ..... front door, please?  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
18. There were no ..... chairs, so we had to sit on the floor.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
19. There are two cars parked outside, ..... expensive one and a cheap one.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article



20. In my opinion, ..... most important invention has been the mobile.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
21. The plane has made ..... world a smaller place.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
22. Where is ..... pen that I bought yesterday.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
23. Omar, ..... man you and I met yesterday, is an honest man.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
24. Rokaya is ..... very nice girl.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
25. ..... mobile phone was invented in 1973.  
a. A b. An c. The d. No article
26. The moon is ..... round object that moves around a planet.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
27. We have a house with ..... garden.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
28. When I leave school, I want to be ..... tourist guide.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
29. It wasn't your fault. It was ..... bad luck.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
30. She has ..... Italian name.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
31. Rodayna gave me ..... encouraging reply.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
32. When I was at school, I loved ..... history.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
33. On our trip to America, we crossed ..... Atlantic Ocean.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

2 Special cases

34. If the Earth had a blue moon and a white moon, I'd prefer ..... white one.  
a. a b. an c. the d. some
35. Egypt has ..... unique location in the world.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

36. There is going to be ..... 300-seat dining room on the second floor of the hotel.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
37. .... water is essential for all people.  
a. A b. No article c. The d. An
38. There were two fashionable shirts in the shop. I chose ..... one that was up to the latest fashion.  
a. an b. some c. a d. the
39. Yesterday, my father bought ..... useful story. It had useful pieces of advice to follow.  
a. an b. a c. the d. no article
40. For lunch, I made an order for half ..... chicken and some salad.  
a. some b. a c. the d. no article
41. I think ..... exams we have next week will be difficult.  
a. the b. a c. an d. no article
42. My uncle will arrive on ..... Sunday which is after my birthday.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
43. He gave me a pen and a ruler, but ..... pen didn't work.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
44. When dealing with difficult situations, one should be ..... patient.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
45. Come on, Rodayna. It is ..... time to go to bed.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
46. We always go on ..... holiday in July.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
47. They all went to ..... lunch organized by their aunt.  
a. any b. an c. the d. no article
48. I remember ..... day when we went to the seaside.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
49. I want you to choose ..... day we can meet.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
50. A new spaceship will be sent into ..... space next month.  
a. a b. an c. the d. no article



51. \_\_\_\_\_ space in my room is not enough for another bed.  
a. a                      b. an                      c. The                      d. no article
52. The Sun went down \_\_\_\_\_ horizon.  
a. a                      b. an                      c. the                      d. no article
53. Britain is \_\_\_\_\_ European country.  
a. a                      b. an                      c. the                      d. no article
54. You will find the information you need at the top of \_\_\_\_\_ page 41.  
a. a                      b. an                      c. the                      d. no article
55. Fear is \_\_\_\_\_ universal weakness.  
a. a                      b. an                      c. the                      d. no article
56. I dislike \_\_\_\_\_ towns, but I love the countryside.  
a. a                      b. an                      c. the                      d. no article
57. \_\_\_\_\_ pomegranates الرمان are good for health.  
a. A                      b. An                      c. The                      d. no article
58. Look at \_\_\_\_\_ oranges on that tree.  
a. a                      b. an                      c. the                      d. no article
59. My son has started \_\_\_\_\_ school this year.  
a. a                      b. an                      c. the                      d. no article
60. My father went to \_\_\_\_\_ school to meet my teachers.  
a. a                      b. an                      c. the                      d. no article
61. \_\_\_\_\_ youth play important roles in the progress تقدم of all nations الأمم.  
a. A                      b. An                      c. The                      d. No article
62. \_\_\_\_\_ teachers in my school work hard.  
a. A                      b. An                      c. The                      d. No article
63. For this job, you need \_\_\_\_\_ experience with the computer.  
a. a                      b. an                      c. the                      d. no article
64. I asked \_\_\_\_\_ professor Mohammed about his early life.  
a. a                      b. an                      c. the                      d. no article

## 3 Check your understanding

65. "Doctors help people who feel sick." This means .....  
a. the doctors help people who are sick  
b. doctors help the sick  
c. a doctor helped the sick  
d. the sick need help

66. "People should help those who are homeless." This means .....  
a. people should help homeless  
b. people should help a homeless  
c. people should help the homeless  
d. people should have a home
67. "This film is exciting." I mean that .....  
a. this is an exciting film                      b. this is an excited film  
c. this film makes me exciting                      d. this film is excited
68. "All lions are meat-eating animals." This is the same meaning as .....  
a. the lions are meat-eaters                      b. the lions are meat-eating animals  
c. the lions eat meat                      d. the lion is a meat-eating animal
69. "He is hard working." What does this mean?  
a. He does work that is hard.                      b. He is hard-working person.  
c. He is a hard-working person.                      d. He hardly does any work.
70. "I can speak English well." This means .....  
a. I can speak an English well  
b. I can speak English language well  
c. I can speak an English language well  
d. I can speak the English language well
71. "China is the largest country in Asia." This sentence tells us that .....  
a. China is one of the largest countries in Asia  
b. China is a largest country in Asia  
c. China is Asia's largest country  
d. China is one of Asia's largest countries
72. "Hard work makes you more successful." What does this mean?  
a. If you work hardly, you will be more successful.  
b. Unless you work hardly, you won't be more successful.  
c. Hard work makes you less successful.  
d. The harder you work, the more successful you are.



# PART THREE

## Story Vocabulary, Skills and Advanced exercises

Lessons 5 & 6

### Part I

### Vocabulary

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات الرئيسية في قصة Treasure Island / بالصفات الصفات الوصفية المودودة في الوحدة والواجب ما بين السطور والتي المخصص للطلاب المتقدمين

تدوين

### Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

• أهم المفردات النحوية في قصة (Treasure Island) كما يمكنكم التطلع على نص القصة والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب

تدوين

blow a whistle	نفث صرارة	hold - held (v) (onto)	بشبه
branch(n)	فرع - نخس	low(adj)	منخفض
climb(ed) (v)	يسلق	mark(ed) (v)	يحدد - يميز
climb out of	يسلق خارجاً من	marked(adj)	محدد
close(to)	قريب - تصق (ص)	organise(d)(v)	ينظم
coast(n)	ساحل	relax(ed)(v)	يستريح
count(ed) (v)	يعد - يحصى	rocky(adj)	صخري
disease(n)	مرض	shore(n)	شاطئ
expression(n)	تعابير الوجه	thought(n)	فكرة
fight-fought(v)	يقاتل - يتشاجر	trust(ed)(n - v)	يثق - الثقة
forever(adv)	لأبد	whistle(d) (n - v)	صفارة - يصفّر

### Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He fell off the horse and ..... his arm.  
a. shouted      b. whistled      c. blew      d. hurt
2. The fox has the ability to ..... high walls.  
a. build      b. climb      c. destroy      d. guard
3. You need to ..... You look dead tired.  
a. work      b. hurry      c. relax      d. excite
4. Don't leave petrol ..... to a cooker or there will be a fire.  
a. away      b. close      c. far      d. distant
5. Two of the sailors from the sinking boat managed to reach the .....  
a. sure      b. ocean      c. sea      d. shore

6. Her facial ..... changed once she heard of her success.  
a. expression      b. experiment      c. disease      d. coast
7. The referee pointed to his ....., which means that the players can't play unless he blows it.  
a. whistle      b. red card      c. yellow card      d. ear peas
8. It is necessary to talk in a ..... voice when you are in a library.  
a. screaming      b. shouting      c. high      d. low
9. I ..... the students on the bus and found that we missed two of them.  
a. taught      b. counted      c. learnt      d. shouted
10. You'll do better. We all ..... you.  
a. doubt      b. kill      c. trust      d. mark

### Part II

### Grammatical Hints

#### Giving instructions

1 لإعطاء الأمر المُنْهَي (الفعل) نستخدم الصيغة التالية :

inf. المصدر + .....

ex. - Stop.

- Remember to do your homework.
- Put your lunchbox in the bag.

لإعطاء قوة للمعنى أو لإعطاء نصيحة قوية لشخص مُقَرَّب نستخدم (Always) قبل الصيغة السابقة :

ex. - Always follow your parents' advice.

2 لإعطاء الأمر المنهَي (لا تفعل) نستخدم الصيغة التالية :

Don't - Never + inf. المصدر + .....

ex. - Don't Stop.

- Don't forget to do your homework.
- Never break the law.

3 يمكن وضع الفندقي (المخاطب) في بداية أو نهاية الجملة كالتالي :

ex. - Don't waste your time, Ahmed.

- Ahmed, don't waste your time.

#### Indefinite pronouns

1 يتم استخدام فعل مفرد مع الكلمات اللينة ولكن عند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير جمع :

(Someone / somebody - anyone / anybody - everyone / everybody - no one / nobody).

ex. - Someone is knocking on the door. I'll see who they are.

- Everybody has prepared themselves to the meeting.



UNIT 4

ينطبق نفس الشيء على الأسماء غير محددة الجنس التي تحمل التذكير والتأنيث مثل  
a child - a person - a teacher - a traveller ... etc.

ex. - A traveller has parked his car in front of my house. They must have entered the opposite restaurant.

يمكن استخدام ضمير مفرد مذكر مضافاً إليه ضمير مفرد مؤنث ليحل محل ضمير الجمع :

ex. - Someone is knocking on the door. I'll see who he or she is.

يمكن استخدام ضمير مفرد مذكر فقط أو ضمير مفرد مؤنث فقط في حالة معرفة جنس الشخص الذي نتحدث عنه :

ex. - This child will do better if he joins a school for boys only.

another

another + اسم مفرد

آخر / أخرى

ex. - We found another shop in a small street.

- I want another bag of macaroni, please.

another + (few - number: two, three,....)

ex. - Give me another two days to finish the report.

- She has another few jobs to do.

other

other + اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد

آخرين / أخريين

ex. - Ahmed likes helping other people.

- Any other knowledge will be available online.

- ونستخدم (other) أيضا بعد الكلمات التالية :

the - some - every - each - many - any - no - two, three,.....etc.

ex. - Five chairs will be in the office. The other chairs will be moved to the teachers' room.

- Like any other child, Rodayna wants to play.

others (ضمير [تحل محل فاعل أو مفعول])

الآخرين

ex. - Some children like fish. Others prefer chicken.

compound adjectives with numbers

يمكن استخدام رقم وبعده تمييز مفرد ثم صفة وبينهم (-) كصفة :

ex. - Omar is a forty-year-old man.

يمكن استخدام رقم وبعده تمييز مفرد وبينهما (-) كصفة مركبة لاسم يأتي بعدها :

ex. - We're going on a two-day trip.

مع الأسماء الدالة على مسافة يمكن استخدام رقم وبعده تمييز جمع ينتهي بـ (s / 's) كصفة :

ex. - My work is an hour's drive from here.

- We have three hours' walk every weekend.

في حالة وجود كلمة time بعد الكلمات السابقة نستخدم (s) في حالة المفرد و (s) في حالة الجمع :

ex. - In two weeks' time, I will travel to Aswan.

own

on + (my - his - her - its - your - our - their) + own = alone

= بمفرده - دون مساعدة

ex. - I did the housework on my own.

= I did the housework alone / without help.

of + (my - his - her - its - your - our - their) + own ملئه - خاص به

ex. - I have a car of my own.

right

be right to = have the right to محق في

ex. - She is right to ask for a break.

- She has the right to ask for a break.

Asking for and Giving Advice

Asking for Advice طلب النصيحة

Can you give me some advice about ...? ؟ يمكنك أن تنصحتني بخصوص .....

Can I ask your advice about ...? ؟ أيمكنني أن أسألك النصيحة بخصوص .....

What should I do about ...? ؟ ما الذي يمكنني فعله فيما يتعلق بـ .....

Giving Advice إعطاء النصيحة

You should / shouldn't + inf. ... ألا ينبغي أن / ينبغي أن

You ought to / ought not to + inf. ... ألا ينبغي أن / ينبغي أن

If I were you, I would / wouldn't + inf. ... لو كنت مكانك ، (ما) كنت ...

You'd ( had ) better + inf. ... من الأفضل لك أن

I advise you (not) to ... أنصحك أن / أنصحك أن

The best thing to do is (not) to ... أنفضل شيء تفعله هو أن / ألا



## Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The two girls stopped talking to one .....  
a. other      b. another      c. others      d. the others
2. The police could arrest two of the robbers and shot ..... one of them.  
a. the other      b. others      c. another      d. else
3. I'd like to know about Seif's desire to help .....  
a. others      b. other      c. another      d. the other
4. You can take this pen. I have ..... one.  
a. other      b. others      c. the other      d. another
5. You can take this pen. I will use ..... one.  
a. other      b. others      c. the other      d. an other
6. You can take this pen. I have two ..... ones.  
a. other      b. others      c. the other      d. another
7. You can take this pen. I have ..... two ones.  
a. other      b. others      c. the other      d. another
8. Some people like meat. .... like chicken or fish.  
a. Other      b. Others      c. The other      d. Another
9. Amir made this cupboard ..... his own. I didn't help him.  
a. from      b. off      c. of      d. on
10. Amir has a cupboard ..... his own. No one else uses it.  
a. from      b. off      c. of      d. on
11. You both should do this activity on ..... own.  
a. you      b. your      c. yours      d. yourselves
12. A: Who ..... joined the trip? B: I did.  
a. two      b. else      c. too      d. either
13. You ..... right to slow down when you drive on these ups and downs.  
a. are      b. is      c. has      d. have

14. You ..... the right to ask for help.  
a. are      b. is      c. has      d. have
15. .... sure your tablet is updated  
a. To make      b. Making      c. Make      d. Made
16. Never ..... your secrets to anybody.  
a. telling      b. tell      c. told      d. to tell
17. Rokaya is a nine- ..... - old girl.  
a. year      b. years      c. years'      d. year's
18. Someone rang the doorbell. When I opened the door, ..... there.  
a. he was      b. she wasn't      c. they weren't      d. I wasn't
19. Somebody ..... taken my glasses.  
a. have      b. has      c. is      d. are

## Part III

## Language Skills

## 1 Email Writing كتابة البريد الإلكتروني

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات.

تنويه

\* Write an email of about 150 words to your friend Reda about "Something that makes you stressed."

To : reda2020@elemoasser

From: aliselim@gmail.com

Subject: Something that makes me stressed!

Dear Reda,

How are you? I hope you are well. I'm writing to tell you about something stressful I have to face. I've started my secondary school recently and things aren't so easy or smooth as they used to be. I am supposed to work hard not only at school but at home as well.

It's completely new routine. The school subjects are not that easy. I meet new teachers and new classmates that I must get along with. I find it difficult to keep up with this new community yet not impossible. I made few friends anyway. However, I've got some problems with quite a few



students who are difficult somehow and the new subjects I have to study and understand. The lessons are so many that I can't get back home until late in the afternoon. What a nuisance!

In addition, the school has no room for activities which makes matters worse and as a result, most students get bored and even frustrated.

At home, life is not that easy one as it was when I was at prep school.

Parents argue with me to study all the time, there is no space for play or entertainment. They believe that entertainment or practising activities should be during summer holiday only.

Isn't it a problem? Send me your advice. I'm badly in need of your help. I'm waiting for your replay.

Yours,  
Ali

## 2 Translation الترجمة

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات. تنويه

### 1 Translate into Arabic :

1. When you have too many jobs to do without having some rest and entertainment, you feel stressed. That feeling kills the joy of life and the willingness to work.
2. Once you start to get used to your new life in a different place, your stress gradually disappears. At that time, you will start to find out the advantages of your new life.
3. There must be respect to the diversity of opinions and ideas. Different people have a variety of ideas and opinions that enrich life in a community.

### 2 Translate into English :

1. إن التعليم الجيد هو حجر الأساس لبناء مجتمع عصري يتمتع بالرخاء، فالأهم تتقدم بالعلم والثقافة والتخطيط السليم والعمل الجاد من كل المواطنين.
2. حياة أي إنسان لابد أن يكون لها جانبان هما العمل الجاد والترفيه، فنحن لن نكون سعداء إلا بالترفيه ولن نكون ناجحين إلا بالعمل.
3. يخشى الكثير من الناس من البدايات في كل شيء يفعلونه، فالبدايات دائما تكون صعبة وتحتاج إلى الكثير من المغامرة والثقة بالنفس.

## Vocabulary related to translation texts مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختيار على الوحدة

adapt to	يتأقلم مع	joy	بهجة
bedrock	حجر الأساس	modern	عصري
by nature	بطبيعته	once	بمجرد أن
citizen	مواطن	prosperity	الرخاء
creature	كائن	self-confidence	الثقة بالنفس
enrich	يُثري	sociable	اجتماعي
entertainment	الترفيه	stress	الضغط
especially	خاصة	variety	عديد
fear	يخشى	willingness	الاستعداد - الرغبة
gradually	بالتدريج		

## Part IV Just for Advanced level

للفائقين فقط

تنويه هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب الفائقين فقط.

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

#### bully

- **bully (n)** بلطجي  
- We called the police to arrest the bullies.
- **bully (ied) (v)** يُبلطج - ينتشر  
- Older children usually bully younger or weaker ones.
- **bully (... into) (v)** يبتز - يسام  
- The manager bullied me into leaving my job.
- **bullying (n)** البلطجة  
- Bullying is a big problem in slums. المناطق العشوائية.

#### cheat

- **cheat (at / in) (v)** يغش  
- He used a mobile to cheat in the test.
- **cheat (v)** يخدع - يحتال على - يخون  
- He was arrested because he cheated an old woman out of her money.
- **cheat (n)** غشاش - نصاب  
- Don't trust this cheat.
- **cheating (n)** غش - نصب  
- Cheating is a crime.



connect

- connect (to / with) (v) ربط - يربط  
- Connect the charger to the mobile, please. يربط - يكون على علاقة به
- connect (with) (v) يربط - يربط  
- This parliament member connects with his voters الناخبين.
- connected (to / with / by) (adj) متصل به / مرتبط - على علاقة به  
- The computer is connected to the internet.
- connection (to / with / between) = link (n) اتصال - ارتباط - علاقة  
- The connection between the computer and the printer has failed. لاحظ المتلازمات التالية:  
- have a connection to / with على علاقة به - متصل به  
- see a connection between ... and ... يربط بين ... و ...  
- make a connection يربط بين  
- stop a connection ينهي العلاقة - يفصل

address

- address (n) عنوان السكن أو العمل  
- He changed his address.
- address (n) خطبة رسمية - كلمة رسمية واضح ومباشر  
- The Prime Minister's address was clear and direct. رئيس الوزراء
- address (v) يُعَدِّن - يضع عنوان  
- He addressed the letter and sent it by post.
- address (to) (v) يخاطب - بوجه الحديث أو الطلب رسميًا إلى  
- Don't address these tourists in French. They're English.  
- You must address the application to the manager. طلب الالتحاق
- address (by) (v) يخاطب ... به (الاسم / اللقب)  
- It is impolite to address an older person by their name.
- address ... as (v) يخاطب ... كـ / يُلقَّب ... به  
- Why do you address him as Mr not Dr?
- address (v) يُلقى خطبة أو كلمة البرلمان  
- The President addressed the parliament.
- address (v) يناقش - يلقى الضوء على  
- This essay does not address the real causes of the problem.
- address yourself to (v) يتفكر في كيفية التعامل مع موقف أو مشكلة  
- We need to address ourselves to the water pollution problem.
- addressee (n) المُخاطَب - المُتلقِّي  
- Make sure that the addressees have received the letters.

debate

- debate (over / about / between) (n) مناقشة / مناقشة  
- The new law is still under debate in the parliament.  
- There's a debate over the solutions of the traffic problem.
- debate (with) (v) يتباحث / يناقش - يفكر بحرص  
- The new law is still debated in the parliament.  
- He debates with his friends on how to spend the weekend.

nurse

- nurse (n) مُمرضة - مُمرض  
- She is still a student nurse in the local health care centre.
- nurse (d) (v) يرعى مريض - يُمرض  
- He was nursed by a good woman called Hana.
- nurse (d) (v) تعمل بالتمريض  
- She nurses in a big hospital in Cairo.
- nurse (d) (v) تُرضع - تقوم بإرضاع  
- Mothers nurse their babies until they are two.
- nurse (d) (v) يرضع  
- Babies nurse until they are two.
- nursing (n) التمريض  
- She studies nursing at Assuit University.

police

- police (n) الشرطة  
- The police have arrested some criminals.  
- لاحظ أن الاسم (police) دائمًا جمع وبأخذ فعل جمع:  
- The police are responsible for law enforcement. قُرض القانون مسئول  
- لاحظ المتلازمات التالية:  
- call the police يتصل بالشرطة / يستدعي الشرطة  
- tell / inform the police يُبلغ الشرطة  
- report ... to the police ... يُبلغ الشرطة عن ...  
- police (d) (v) يفرض الأمن والانضباط - يتحقق من تطبيق الضوابط والمعايير  
- The officer asked for more soldiers to police the city centre.  
- قُرض الأمن والانضباط - التحقق من تطبيق الضوابط والمعايير  
- policing (n)  
- Policing is the responsibility of the government.



UNIT 4

2 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix بادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples امثلة	
dis-	لا - غير	disagree(d)	يرفض
extra-	إضافي - زائد	extraordinary	استثنائي / خارق
pre-	قبل	prefix	بادئة
semi-	نصف	semi-final	نصف نهائي

3 Suffixes مقاطع ناهية

Suffix ناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples امثلة	
-hood	تكون اسم	boyhood	الصبا
-tion	تكون اسم	pronunciation information production	النطق معلومة / معلومات إنتاج
-ess	تكون اسم مؤنث	hostess waitress	مضيفة نادلة
-ion	تكون اسم	connection communication population	ارتباط / اتصال تواصل - اتصال (عدد) السكان
-ship	تكون اسم	friendship	الصداقة

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary تلوين: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

\* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Getting the Nobel Prize was the ..... of Naguib Mahfouz's life.  
a. addressee b. project  
c. highlight d. punctuation
- He is still ..... what to do. It isn't easy for him to decide.  
a. debating b. preferring  
c. expressing d. believing
- The flowers and plants on my balcony have been bought from a nearby .....  
a. contraction b. concern  
c. nursing d. nursery

- It is the right of a baby to .....  
a. contain b. nurse c. fight d. host
- The use of guns and other weapons must be .....  
a. connected b. closed c. policed d. listed
- It is known to all of us that ..... are usually cowards. They only look strong against the weak.  
a. bullying b. bullies c. teammates d. friendships
- One can say that one ..... or takes practice.  
a. sells b. makes c. gives d. does
- A secretary is supposed to have the ability to ..... with all staff members.  
a. police b. pronounce c. connect d. salute
- We have to ..... ourselves to the problem of water shortage.  
a. address b. allow c. list d. practise
- I used the cursor to ..... the title of the essay.  
a. experience b. decide c. inform d. highlight

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c	- الاسم (highlight) بمعنى (الجزء الأبرز) هو الاختيار الذي يتوافق مع مضمون الجملة
2.	a	- الفعل (debating) بمعنى (يتناقش / يفكر في) هو الذي يتناغم مع معنى الجملة
3.	d	- الاسم (nursery) بمعنى (مشتل) هو الاختيار الصحيح
4.	b	- الفعل (nurse) بمعنى (يرضع) هو الاختيار الذي يناسب الجملة
5.	c	- الفعل (policed) بمعنى (يضبط / يسيطر على / يقنن) هو الاختيار الذي يناسب الجملة
6.	b	- الاسم (bullies) بمعنى (بلطجية) هو الاختيار الصحيح حسب سياق الجملة
7.	d	- كل من الفعلين (does / takes) يكونان متلازمة لفظة مع الاسم (practice) ليكون المعنى (يقوم بالتدريب)
8.	c	- الفعل (connect) بمعنى (يتواصل / يجيد التعامل) هو الاختيار الذي يناسب الجملة
9.	a	- التعبير (address ourselves to) بمعنى (نفكر في كيفية التعامل مع) مما يجعل الفعل (address) هو الاختيار الصحيح
10.	d	- الفعل (highlight) بمعنى (يظلل / يحدد) هو الاختيار الذي يناسب الجملة



## Advanced Exercise on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The dead man's ..... include no will.  
a paper b a paper c papers d newspaper
- Everyone should depend on .....  
a itself b himself c herself d themselves
- Be patient, please. We will talk about the matter in just ..... bit.  
a no article b the c an d a
- The poor ..... from high prices.  
a suffers b suffer c has suffered d was suffering
- A: How ..... television do you watch a week? B: About ten hours.  
a much b many items of c many d few items of
- He was sent to prison for a year for stealing only two .....  
a slices of clothing b pieces of clothing c clothes d clothings
- I think you can't sit in this row as there isn't ..... room for you.  
a no article b the c an d a
- Mandela was in prison for ..... before he became president.  
a some time b any time c duration d years' of time
- The new digital camera is a very complex .....  
a item of technology b technology c technology pieces d bar of technology
- I can't go out with you today. I've got too ..... and it all has to be finished by nine o'clock.  
a many tasks b much work c many jobs d many pieces of work

## Answer &amp; Explanation

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c (papers) صحيفة في صيغة الجمع لأنها تعني (وثائق / مستندات) وليس (ورق)	- كلمة (papers) صحيفة في صيغة الجمع لأنها تعني (وثائق / مستندات) وليس (ورق)
2.	d لأن الفاعل (everyone) من الممكن أن يكون مذكر أو مؤنث فإن الضمير الذي يعود عليه هو (themselves)	- لأن الفاعل (everyone) من الممكن أن يكون مذكر أو مؤنث فإن الضمير الذي يعود عليه هو (themselves)
3.	d كلمة (bit) بمعنى (وقت قصير) هي اسم مفرد معدود يبدأ بحرف ساكن فتسبقه أداة التنكير (a)	- كلمة (bit) بمعنى (وقت قصير) هي اسم مفرد معدود يبدأ بحرف ساكن فتسبقه أداة التنكير (a)
4.	b الصفة (poor) التي يسبقها (the) ولا يتبعها اسم موصوف تعتبر اسم جمع وتأخذ فعل يتفق مع الجمع	- الصفة (poor) التي يسبقها (the) ولا يتبعها اسم موصوف تعتبر اسم جمع وتأخذ فعل يتفق مع الجمع
5.	a السؤال هنا عن كم المشاهدة وليس عدد الأجهزة بدليل أن كلمة (television) لم يضاف لها (s) الجمع	- السؤال هنا عن كم المشاهدة وليس عدد الأجهزة بدليل أن كلمة (television) لم يضاف لها (s) الجمع
6.	b الاختيار الوحيد الصحيح لغوياً هو (pieces of clothing) لأن كلمة (clothing) غير معدودة فنستخدم قبلها لفظ التجزئة (pieces) ولا يمكن استخدام (slices) التي تعني (شرائح). كما أن كلمة (clothes) لا تُستخدم بعد رقم	- الاختيار الوحيد الصحيح لغوياً هو (pieces of clothing) لأن كلمة (clothing) غير معدودة فنستخدم قبلها لفظ التجزئة (pieces) ولا يمكن استخدام (slices) التي تعني (شرائح). كما أن كلمة (clothes) لا تُستخدم بعد رقم
7.	a كلمة (room) بمعنى (مكان / فراغ / مجال) هي اسم غير معدود ولا يُستخدم قبله أداة في هذا السياق	- كلمة (room) بمعنى (مكان / فراغ / مجال) هي اسم غير معدود ولا يُستخدم قبله أداة في هذا السياق
8.	a كلمة (time) هنا تعني (مدة) وهي اسم غير معدود بهذا المعنى ولا يُستخدم قبلها أداة في هذا السياق	- كلمة (time) هنا تعني (مدة) وهي اسم غير معدود بهذا المعنى ولا يُستخدم قبلها أداة في هذا السياق
9.	a بعد الظرف والصفة (very complex) المصوقين بأداة التنكير (a) لابد من استخدام لفظ تجزئة مناسب قبل كلمة (technology) وهي اسم غير معدود	- بعد الظرف والصفة (very complex) المصوقين بأداة التنكير (a) لابد من استخدام لفظ تجزئة مناسب قبل كلمة (technology) وهي اسم غير معدود
10.	b الضمير (it) بعد (and) يجعل من الضروري استخدام اسم مفرد أو غير معدود	- الضمير (it) بعد (and) يجعل من الضروري استخدام اسم مفرد أو غير معدود





# Test on Unit 4

Understand

Apply

Create

## Part One

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. He was asked to give ..... on the issue of pollution. (القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٢)  
a. information b. advice c. problem d. internet e. debate
2. I can't send an email because the laptop is not ..... to the internet. (أحمد محمد موسى بنات ٢٠٢٢)  
a. hacked b. connected c. detached d. honked e. linked

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. It is taken for ..... that bullying is a bad behaviour which we all must change. (الفيوم - يوسف كحك ٢٠٢٢)  
a. denial b. granted c. refusal d. decided
4. No doubt that there is a ..... between smoking and cancer.  
a. communication b. contact c. collection d. connection
5. The use of guns and other weapons must be ..... (القصر - الشهيد سيد زكريا الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)  
a. listed b. closed c. policed d. connected
6. The names of the top ten students are announced on the .....  
a. noticeboard b. chat board c. guard room d. changing room
7. .... one way road is needed to be established on the west bank of Aswan. (ادارة اسوان - أحمد طه حسين المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)  
a. A b. An c. The d. No article
8. Students often need ..... help when they are at school. (الفيوم - يوسف كحك ٢٠٢٢)  
a. a b. an c. the d. some
9. .... people live in the country today than in the past. (أكرم إمامو - أحمد محمد موسى بنات ٢٠٢٢)  
a. Much b. Fewer c. Little d. A little
10. .... women play a very important role in developing their countries. (الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢)  
a. A b. An c. The d. No article
11. .... River Nile is the longest river in the world. (الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢)  
a. A b. An c. The d. No article

12. France and England are ..... European countries. (الطوبى - التحرير الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)

- a. a b. an c. the d. No article

13. He doesn't have ..... money. (ادارة الشرقية - نجات ٢٠٢٢)

- a. many b. few c. a lot d. much

14. Two injured persons were taken to ..... hospital. (الفيوم - اشواي ٢٠٢٢)

- a. a b. an c. the d. no article

15. He played well. ...., he lost the match.

- a. Luckily b. Luck c. Fortunately d. Unfortunately

16. They sent ..... "SOS" when the ship began to sink.

- a. no article b. a c. an d. many

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Dolphins have become a popular attraction at zoos in recent years. They are more and more interesting than lions and tigers because they are livelier and perform tricks like circus animals. But, although they are more willing to cooperate with the trainer than other mammals in captivity, they get bored if they are asked to do the same trick twice. This is one reason for believing they are very intelligent.

Dolphins are regarded as the friendliest creatures in the sea and stories of them about helping drowning sailors have been common since the Romans. We now have more reliable evidences of their usefulness than sailors' tales. In South Africa, two dolphins have been trained to help swimmers in difficulties and drive sharks away from the beach. The more we learn about dolphins, the more we realize that they are better organized and their society is more complex than people have previously imagined. They look after other dolphins when they are ill, care for pregnant mothers and protect the weak as we do.

Some scientists have suggested that dolphins have a language system which is similar to bats one and man cannot hear. It is much more probable that they have an echo-location. Could any of these mammals be more intelligent than man? The question cannot be answered.

17. Dolphins are .....

- a. as intelligent as man b. more intelligent than man  
c. more intelligent than sea animals d. the most intelligent of all



18. The synonym of the word "popular" is .....  
 a. strange      b. unknown      c. common      d. different
19. The underlined word "they" refers to .....  
 a. sharks      b. dolphins      c. bats      d. elephants
20. The antonym of the word "intelligent" is .....  
 a. stupid      b. smart      c. creative      d. wise
21. Dolphins get bored when they are asked to do same trick .....  
 a. once      b. only      c. just once      d. twice
22. Dolphins look after other dolphins when they aren't .....  
 a. well      b. sick      c. ill      d. bad
23. Dolphins are more interesting than lions and tigers because .....  
 a. they are livelier  
 b. they don't cooperate with their trainer  
 c. they perform tricks like circus animals  
 d. they drown sailors  
 e. they organise tricks

## Part Two

## 1. Translate into Arabic :

It is high time people enjoyed peace. We have had enough of wars, so we look forward to solving problems through talks as civilized peoples do.  
 (الطود - التحرير الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)

## 2. Translate into English :

بساعدنا السفر في التعرف علي ثقافات ولغات وعادات المجتمعات الأخرى، كما أن السفر يعطينا الفرصة للاستمتاع بأشياء غير موجودة في بيئتنا المحلية.  
 (الطود - التحرير الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)

3. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on :  
Friendship

• لتدريب علي أشكال مختلفة من قطع الشهم بنظام أسئلة (MCQ). بنك الأسئلة

## Communication

58 pages 52 : 61 WB pages 116 : 121

## Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

## o Reading :

A science article on how we may communicate in the future

## o Writing :

An essay on IOT; a blog on how to stay safe online

## o Listening :

A radio discussion about the dangers of the internet

## o Speaking :

Giving a presentation

## o Language :

Future forms will, be going to and present continuous

## o Life skills :

Self-management; Decision making



• بنك الأسئلة للتمارين اليومية والشهوية.  
 • ملحق الجهارات المشوية.  
 • تدريبات للأمر المشوية وفي بنك الأسئلة.  
 • Dictation وفي ملحق بنك الأسئلة.

الأسئلة  
الوحدة



## Part I

## Vocabulary

- لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى هي الامتحان).

**1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية**

app = application (n)	تطبيق (ارقمي)	Internet of Things (IOT)	الانترنت الأشياء
break into (phr. v)	يقترق	link(ed) (n - v)	يربط - رابط
communication (n)	اتصال - تواصل	security (n)	الأمن
connect(ed) (v)	يربط	smartphone (n)	الهاتف الذكي
hack(ed) (n - v)	يقترق - يخترق	technology (n)	التكنولوجيا
hacking (n)	اختراق - القرصنة	the internet (n)	الانترنت

• من المفهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

## 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

accident(n)	حادث	introduce(d) (v)	يُقدِّم / يطرح (موضوع/ فكرة)
book(ed) (v)	يُحجز	lighting(n)	الإضاءة
businesses(n)	شركات	major(adj)	كبير
camping(n)	الإقامة في معسكر	management(n)	إدارة
cause(d) (n - v)	سبب - يُسبب	medicine(n)	الطب - دواء
control(led) (v)	يتحكم في	network(ed) (n - v)	شبكة - يتصل عن طريق الشبكة
create(d) (v)	يخلق - يبتكر	online (adj / adv)	مُصل بالإنترنت - على الإنترنت
creative(adj)	مُبدع - خلاق	organisation(n)	المؤسسات
criminal (n - adj)	مجرم - إجرامي	particular (adj)	مُحدد - مُعين
develop(ed) (v)	يتطور	petrol(n)	البنزين
device(n)	جهاز	possibility(n)	إمكانية
driverless(adj)	بدون سائق	power station(n)	محطات توليد الطاقة
electric(adj)	كهربائي	recent(adj)	حديث
electronic(adj)	إلكتروني	rubbish(n)	القمامة
empty(ied) (v - adj)	يُفْرغ - فارغ	safe(adj)	آمن
evidence(n)	دليل	self-management(n)	إدارة الذات
expert (n - adj)	خبير		
flexible(adj)	مرن		

heating(n)	التدفئة	survey(n)	بحث استقصائي
illegally(adv)	بشكل غير قانوني	system(n)	نظام
imagine(d) (v)	يتخيل	tablet (n)	كمبيوتر لوحي
intention(n)	نية	use(d) (n - v)	استخدام - يستخدم
steal - stole - stolen (v)	يسرق	worldwide (adj)	عالمي / دولي

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلم المستهدفة - هام جداً.

## Memorise

## Understand

app(n)	تطبيق	a computer programme designed to perform / do a specific function
communication(n)	اتصال - تواصل	systems to send and receive information
connected(adj)	مُتَّصِل - مُرْتَبِط	when more than one thing is joined or linked
hack(ed) (n - v)	يُقرصِن	to break into a computer system illegally
the internet(n)	الإنترنت	a worldwide computer network
link(n)	رابط	a place in an electronic document that takes you to another page or website
security(n)	الأمن	protecting a place or person
smartphone(n)	الهاتف الذكي	a device that can connect to the internet
technology(n)	التكنولوجيا	the use of science to create devices for everyday use

### Exercise On Vocabulary

- Understand

• ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

### 1 Key vocabulary

1. If someone ..... into a computer system, they break into it to get secret information.

(كوه اتمو - احمد محمد موسی بنات ۲۰۲۲)

- a. contacts                      b. communicates  
c. hacks                         d. scams



2. Karim's new smart phone has a lot of .....  
 a. clouds      b. liquids      c. medicines      d. apps  
 (أربع دماي ٢٠٢٢)
3. A thief broke ..... the old man's house yesterday.  
 a. in      b. into      c. onto      d. on  
 (الدخول - الدخول الناجم عن السرقة ٢٠٢٢)
4. The IOT is ..... internet of things.  
 a. refer to      b. abbreviate to      c. short for      d. abbreviation  
 (الإنترنت - التوجيه العام ٢٠٢٠)
5. The ..... has made information exchange very easy.  
 a. satnav      b. app      c. advert      d. internet
6. The ..... of the manager's ideas to the staff is important.  
 a. communicate      b. communication      c. communications      d. communicative
7. The ..... of citizens is the responsibility of the police.  
 a. secure      b. insecure      c. security      d. insecurity
8. Your computer has very important information. Protect it against .....  
 a. hack      b. hacking      c. hacker      d. hacked
9. If you have a/an ....., you can surf the internet on it.  
 a. smartphone      b. technology      c. advert      d. online
10. Modern ..... has affected all fields positively.  
 a. password      b. link      c. internet      d. technology
11. My laptop is ..... to the internet through Wi-Fi.  
 a. commented      b. communicated      c. connected      d. contacted

## 2 Important Vocabulary

12. Sugar is a ..... cause of tooth decay.  
 a. major      b. minor      c. remote      d. distant  
 (الذرة - الدقي ٢٠٢٠)
13. Self - ..... is necessary to the success of any person.  
 a. manage      b. manager      c. managed      d. management
14. In the past, people burnt wood for ..... and cooking.  
 a. expert      b. power      c. heating      d. lighting
15. A team of researchers are doing a/an .....  
 a. network      b. organisation      c. evidence      d. survey
16. I think a ..... car is not safe to travel in.  
 a. modern      b. driverless      c. strong      d. big

17. Watching too many videos ..... the battery of the mobile.  
 a. imagines      b. steals      c. empties      d. charges
18. New laws have been ..... to stop cyberbullying.  
 a. taken      b. warned      c. done      d. introduced
19. Mr Ashraf is a/an ..... in teaching English.  
 a. expert      b. power      c. heating      d. lighting
20. Electricity is produced in ..... stations.  
 a. expert      b. power      c. heating      d. lighting
21. I have strong ..... that this thief has stolen my motorbike.  
 a. network      b. organisation      c. evidence      d. survey
22. I ..... two train tickets to Cairo.  
 a. tested      b. rang      c. embarrassed      d. booked
23. Small ..... help young people to have jobs and start their lives.  
 a. businesses      b. business      c. diaries      d. messages
24. In some situations, you should behave in a/an ..... way to avoid making matters worse.  
 a. flexible      b. electric      c. electronic      d. recet  
 (تجنب زيادة الأمر سوءاً)
25. El-Moasser is published by a great educational .....  
 a. network      b. organisation      c. evidence      d. survey
26. The smart mobile is a wonderful .....  
 a. website      b. device      c. blog      d. helmet
27. "The battery is empty." In this sentence, the word 'empty' is a/an .....  
 a. noun      b. verb      c. adjective      d. adverb
28. The internet is a/an ..... that connects millions of computers and other smart devices all over the world.  
 a. network      b. intention      c. evidence      d. survey
29. I like this writer because he has a/an ..... style.  
 a. recent      b. electric      c. electronic      d. creative  
 (أسلوب)
30. Reading in poor ..... affects your sight badly.  
 a. expert      b. power      c. heating      d. lighting



3 Definitions

31. .... are systems to send and receive information.  
 a Possibilities b Organizations  
 c Accounts d Communications
32. .... is the use of science to create devices for everyday use.  
 a Technology b Management c Evidence d Document
33. When more than one thing is joined or linked, they are .....  
 a created b developed c connected d performed
34. The ..... is a worldwide computer network.  
 a security b internet c presentation d environment
35. A ..... is device that can connect to the internet.  
 a web b smartphone c network d blog
36. A / An ..... is a computer programme designed to perform/do a specific function.  
 a satnav b advert c app d IOT
37. To ..... is to break into computer illegally.  
 a hack b download c upload d lock
38. .... is things that are done to protect a place or person.  
 a Danger b Hacking c Technology d Security
39. A/An ..... is a place in an electronic document that takes you to another page or website.  
 a blog b website c link d online

Part II Vocabulary Study

تتويبه ساعد فعملك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء فسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

check	my satnav	أنحقق من التوجيه بالقمر الصناعي	collect	someone	بصطحب/ يوصل بسيارة
make	life better	تجعل الحياة أفضل	lose	information	يجمع معلومات
be	a decision	يتخذ قرار	send	money	يخسر مال
	known as	يكون معروف كـ		messages to	يرسل ...

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
app	تطبيق application
book	يحجز reserve
recent	حديث new, modern, late

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
correct	صحيح	incorrect, wrong	غير صحيح
major	كبير - هام - رئيسي	minor, little, unimportant	صغير - غير هام
online	متصل بالإنترنت - على الإنترنت	offline, disconnected	غير متصل بالإنترنت - ليس على الإنترنت
send	يرسل	receive	يستقبل

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

app	
apply(ied) (v)	يُطبق - يتقدم - It is difficult to <b>apply</b> this design. - She <b>applied</b> for a job.
application (n)	طلب انضمام - I sent my <b>application</b> by mail.
application = app (n)	تطبيق - The <b>application</b> of this design is difficult
applied (adj)	تطبيقي - We study <b>applied</b> maths in secondary two.
communication	
communicate(d) (v)	يتصل - يتواصل - We <b>communicate</b> with foreign customers in English.
communication (n)	اتصال - تواصل - We use English as the language of <b>communication</b> with customers.



connect	
connect(ed) (v) يربط - يوصل - يتصل	- You need to <b>connect</b> to the internet to send the file.
connection (n) اتصال - صلة / علاقة	- <b>Connection</b> to the internet is necessary to send the file.
connected (adj) مُتصل	- You need to be <b>connected</b> to the internet to send the file.
hack	
hack(ed) (v) يُخترق - يُقرصن	- Protect your computer or it will be <b>hacked</b> into.
hacking (n) اختراق - القرصنة	- Protect your computer from <b>hacking</b> .
hacker (n) قرصان إلكتروني	- Protect your computer from <b>hackers</b> .
hack (n) عملية قرصنة	- Some important files have been stolen in a <b>hack</b> .
hacked (adj) مُخترق - مُقرصن	- Our computer system is <b>hacked</b> .

## 5 Expressions &amp; Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

as often as I can كثيرا لأقصى حد ممكن	on all our flights على جميع رحلاتنا الجوية
be able to يكون قادر علي	on the computer / smartphone على الكمبيوتر / الهاتف الذكي
be based on guesswork قائم على الظن	on the moon على القمر
be connected to يكون مُتصل أو مُرتبط به	particular tasks مهام مُعينة
be known as معروف كـ	possible problems مشاكل محتملة
daily life الحياة اليومية	posting photos إرسال الصور
decision making صناعة القرار - اتخاذ القرار	talking to one another يتحدثون إلى بعضهم البعض
flying taxi التاكسي الطائرة	the outside world العالم الخارجي
major security problems مشكلة أمنية كبيرة	true for you صحيحة بالنسبة لك
no longer لم يعد	with no evidence دون دليل
no more driving لا مزيد من القيادة	worldwide web الشبكة الدولية

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

break into يفتحم	hack into يخترق - يُقرصن
communicate with يتصل به / يتواصل مع	live on يعيش على - يتغذى على
connect ... to يربط ... به	steal ... from يسرق ... من
connect to يتصل به	(dis) advantage to/of ميزة/ عيب لـ

## 7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

## app = application

- app = application تطبيق (برنامج يقوم بعمل معين علي الكمبيوتر أو الهاتف)
- Google play is full of free apps / applications.
- application طلب التحاق (بنادي أو جامعة أو وظيفة ... إلخ)
- To join this club, fill in this application form.

## communicate - contact

- communicate يتصل / يتواصل (عن طريق الهاتف / التلفون / الرسائل ... إلخ)
- I usually **communicate** with my friends by phone.
- contact يتصل به / يتواصل مع (عن طريق التلفون / الرسائل ... إلخ لطلب أو إعطاء معلومة)
- When I saw the smoke, I **contacted** the fire brigade.

## security - safety

- security الأمن / التأمين (يتعلق بحماية الأشخاص والممتلكات)
- The match was postponed تأجل for security reasons.
- safety الأمان (عدم الخوف وعدم وجود خطر)
- The airline is taking steps to ensure **safety** on its aircraft.

## General Exercise On Vocabulary study

• MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. Something that is recent is .....  
a. late                      b. ancient                      c. modern  
d. old                      e. traditional
2. To have a Facebook account, you have to download and install Facebook ..... on your phone.  
a. ad                      b. app                      c. population  
d. application                      e. advert



• MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Decision ..... needs knowledge and experience.  
a. doing      b. having      c. making      d. saying
- I don't know where I am. I'll ..... my satnav.  
a. stay      b. check      c. go      d. take
- It is important for a manager to ..... his ideas to his staff. عاملين  
a. communicate      b. communications  
c. communicable      d. communicative
- ..... help some people work from home.  
a. Communicate      b. Communication  
c. Communications      d. Communicative
- I don't know how he ..... passwords.  
a. hack      b. hacking      c. hacker      d. hacks
- The police forces broke ..... the cave and arrested the criminals.  
a. in      b. out      c. into      d. onto
- I have the latest applications ..... my smartphone.  
a. at      b. from      c. to      d. on
- The thief stole a lot of money ..... a supermarket.  
a. of      b. from      c. with      d. for
- I connected his absence ..... his illness.  
a. at      b. on      c. by      d. to
- What is true ..... you may be wrong from my point of view.  
a. as      b. of      c. for      d. at
- Someone has hacked ..... my Facebook account and posted false news about me.  
a. into      b. from      c. of      d. about
- There're some disadvantages ..... modern technology.  
a. into      b. to      c. on      d. a & c
- I handed my ..... form to the secretary.  
a. app      b. application      c. apply      d. a & b
- She ..... me about the time of the meeting.  
a. communicated      b. attached      c. connected      d. contacted

## 1 Reading Texts

## A. The Internet of Things

(SB page 52)

1. Linking<sup>(1)</sup> the world

Communication<sup>(2)</sup> is no longer<sup>(3)</sup> about people talking to one another, but about machines<sup>(4)</sup> talking to machines. This is known as<sup>(5)</sup> the Internet of Things (IOT).<sup>(6)</sup> Technology<sup>(7)</sup> is developing<sup>(8)</sup> so fast that experts<sup>(9)</sup> believe everyone will be connected to<sup>(10)</sup> the IOT in a few years.



## 2. Connecting our homes

Many things in our own homes are going to be connected to the IOT. Already<sup>(11)</sup>, people can control<sup>(12)</sup> their heating<sup>(13)</sup> and lighting<sup>(14)</sup> from their phones, but in the future computers will make the decisions<sup>(15)</sup> for us. They'll even be able to say when the rubbish<sup>(16)</sup> bins need to be emptied<sup>(17)</sup> and control how much water we use!

## 3. No more driving

Cars can already connect to the internet using smartphones,<sup>(18)</sup> but imagine<sup>(19)</sup> if you can get a driverless<sup>(20)</sup> car to come and collect<sup>(21)</sup> you using an app<sup>(22)</sup> on your phone. All driverless cars will be electric<sup>(23)</sup> and much cleaner<sup>(24)</sup> than petrol<sup>(25)</sup> ones. Experts think our roads will be safer<sup>(26)</sup> as there will be fewer accidents<sup>(27)</sup> using driverless cars.

## 4. Possible problems

Many people don't think IOT is safe enough yet.<sup>(28)</sup> Computers collect information about people and businesses<sup>(29)</sup> which criminals<sup>(30)</sup> can steal<sup>(31)</sup>. They use this information to hack<sup>(32)</sup> into organisations<sup>(33)</sup> like hospitals, power stations<sup>(34)</sup> and airports, and cause<sup>(35)</sup> major<sup>(36)</sup> security problems<sup>(37)</sup>.

## Check Vocabulary

- (1) التواصل / الإتصال
- (2) الاتصال
- (3) لم يعد
- (4) الآلات
- (5) معروف كـ
- (6) إنترنت الأشياء
- (7) التكنولوجيا
- (8) تتطور
- (9) الخبراء
- (10) متصلة بـ
- (11) بالفعل
- (12) يتحكم في
- (13) التدفئة
- (14) الإضاءة
- (15) القرارات
- (16) النفايات
- (17) يفرغ
- (18) الهواتف الذكية
- (19) يتخيل
- (20) بدون سائق
- (21) يجمع - يجمع
- (22) تطبيق
- (23) كهربائي
- (24) أنظف
- (25) البنزين
- (26) أكثر أماناً
- (27) حوادث
- (28) حتى الآن
- (29) الشركات
- (30) مجرمين
- (31) يسرق
- (32) يخترق
- (33) المؤسسات
- (34) محطات الطاقة
- (35) يسبب
- (36) إلكتروني / رقمي
- (37) مشكلات أمنية



## 2 Listening texts

- A. Boy: I don't think we'll ever live on the moon. (SB page 54)  
 Girl: Lots of people are going to study online in the future.  
 Boy: Did you know that in 2039 the worldwide web will be 50 years old?  
 Girl: I can't find the restaurant. I'll check my satnav.  
 Boy: My mum is buying a new flexible smartphone next week.

## 3 Video script section

Sometimes teenagers experience<sup>(1)</sup> bullying<sup>(2)</sup> because they look different, have different abilities<sup>(3)</sup> or different opinions<sup>(4)</sup> and experiences.

If you think someone is being bullied<sup>(5)</sup>, what should you do?

Parents and teachers are there to give advice<sup>(6)</sup> when bullying happens. If you know someone is being bullied, you should tell the teacher. You can also offer<sup>(7)</sup> to help the person tell their parents.

You can keep a note<sup>(8)</sup> of any bullying you see so that you have plenty of information<sup>(9)</sup> to tell your teacher. The teacher can then talk to the bully<sup>(10)</sup> about everything they have done.

Be kind to the person who is being bullied. Make sure<sup>(11)</sup> that they know you support them and do not like the bully's behaviour<sup>(12)</sup>. Spend time talking and socialising<sup>(13)</sup> with them to help them build new friendships<sup>(14)</sup>. Invite them to join your friends.

Agree with your friends that you will make it clear to the bully that you do not like their behaviour.

اطلب من الطلاب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإلقاء الأسئلة التالية عليهم :

- What can you do to help yourself remember what the bully has done?
- How can you help a person who is being bullied?
- What can you do with your friends to help stop the bully?

## Check Vocabulary

- يجرب
- التنمر
- قدرات
- آراء
- يتم التنمر عليه
- يعطي نصيحة
- يعرض
- بدون ملاحظات
- معلومات كثيرة
- المتنمر
- تأكد من
- سلوك
- يتشارك اجتماعياً
- صداقات

## Part IV

## Language

## Future Forms



شاهد وتعلم  
Me 3rd App

## 1 The "will" Future

## Formation التكوين

يتكون المستقبل البسيط أو (will + inf.) في هذه الصيغة في المبني للمعلوم من :  
 Subject فاعل + will / shall + inf. ....  
 في الجمل الخبرية الملبئة

- لاحظ استخدام (will) مع كل الضمائر ويمكن استخدام (shall) مع (I / we) فقط.

- ex. - I will (shall) help you do your homework.  
 - Nada will be four next March.

## عند النفي :

Subject فاعل + will not (won't) / shall not (shan't) + inf. ....

- ex. - We won't be ready before he comes back.  
 - Ahmed won't attend the party.

## عند السؤال بـ «هل» :

Will / Shall + subject فاعل + inf. .... ?

- ex. - Will you wait for the bus ? - Yes, I will (wait for the bus).  
 - No, I won't (wait for the bus).

## عند السؤال بـ «كلمة استفهام» :

Question word أداة استفهام + will / shall + Subject فاعل + inf. .... ?

- ex. - When will you go to bed ? - What will they do next ?

## يتكون المستقبل البسيط المبني للمجهول من :

Object المفعول + will / shall + be + p.p. ....

- ex. - A camera will be bought (by Rodayna) tomorrow.

## Mini Test 1

## Apply

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- She will ..... 21 next Monday.  
 a. am b. is c. be d. being
- ..... show me your new tablet ?  
 a. You will b. What will you c. You won't d. Will you
- ..... show me on your tablet ?  
 a. You will b. What will you c. You won't d. Will you



# UNIT 5

4. I think he ..... for returning home late.  
 a. will punish b. will be punished  
 c. won't punish d. is punishing

## Uses الاستخدامات

- التعبير عن الحقائق المستقبلية (أحداث ليس للفاعل أو رغبته أو إرادته دخل فيها)  
 ex. - It's my birthday next Tuesday. I'll be 17.  
 - The school will be ten years old this year.
- التعبير عن قرار سريع (رد فعل لحظي وقت الكلام):  
 ex. - Oh, that's the doorbell. I'll open it.
- التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلا في حالة عدم وجود دليل، ويمكن في هذه الحالة أن تبدأ الجملة بعبارات تحتوي على أفعال مثل:  
 think يخشى / expect يتوقع / hope يأمل / be sure متأكد / be afraid يخشى  
 ..... يفترض / suppose يتساءل / wonder يفترض
- ex. - I expect Lucy and Jim will stay for dinner.  
 - I think it will rain.  
 - ومن الممكن أن يصاحب ذلك بعض الظروف مثل:
- ex. - Perhaps I'll go home early today.  
 - She will probably refuse to take any money.
- عند عرض عمل شيء أو تقديم خدمة أو الدعوة:  
 ex. - You look very thirsty. I'll get you a cold drink.
- عند طلب خدمة:  
 ex. - Will you let me use your mobile, please?
- التعبير عن الوعود:  
 ex. - My father has promised that we will spend a month in Sharm El-Sheikh.
- توجيه تهديدات:  
 ex. - Do your homework or I'll punish you.

## 2 The "Be + going to + Inf. form"

- 1 في الجمل المثبتة:  
 Subject فاعل + am / is / are + going to + Inf. ....  
 ex. - Mohammed is going to play tennis.  
 - I'm going to study medicine.
- 2 عند النفي:  
 Subject فاعل + am not / is not (isn't) / are not (aren't) + going to + Inf. ....  
 ex. - Walid isn't going to play squash.
- 3 عند السؤال بـ "هل":  
 Am / Is / Are + Subject فاعل + going to + Inf. .... ?  
 ex. - Is Rodayna going to attend the meeting?  
 - Yes, she is (going to attend the meeting).  
 - No, she isn't (going to attend the meeting).  
 - السؤال بـ "كلمة استفهام":  
 Question word أداة الاستفهام + am / is / are + Subject فاعل + going to + Inf. .... ?  
 ex. - Where are you going to spend the summer holiday?
- 3 في صيغة المبني للمجهول:  
 Object المفعول + am / is / are + going to + be + P.P. ....  
 ex. - Tennis is going to be played (by Ali).

## Mini Test 2

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- The Ashrafs ..... the next summer holiday in Alexandria.  
 a. will be spent b. going to spend  
 c. are going to be spent d. are going to spend
  - ..... the office?  
 a. When are you going to leave b. You are going to leave  
 c. Are you going to be left d. You are going to be left



- 3 This man ..... to prison for this crime.  
 a is going to send      b is going to be sent  
 c will send      d going to send

### الاستخدامات Uses

1 التعبير عن الخطط الشخصية المسبقة "plans":

- ex. - I am going to decorate my house.  
 = I have planned to decorate my house.  
 = I have made a plan to decorate my house.

2 التعبير عن النية (intend / intention) لعمل شيء في المستقبل:

- ex. - He is going to study medicine at university.  
 = He intends to study medicine at university.  
 = He has the intention to study medicine at university.

3 التنويه بما قد يحدث مستقبلاً في حالة وجود دليل (أي يودع بالمصارع ما يسمح بوقوع الشيء):

- ex. - His leg is broken. He is going to have an operation.  
 - وبهذا المعنى يمكن استخدام "going to" بعد أفعال مثل:

be sure / be afraid / believe / think

- ex. - Mum is very ill. I think she is going to see a doctor.  
 - لاحظ أن الصفات الشخصية لا تعد دليلاً وتستخدم معها (will):

- ex. - He will win the running race. He's very fast.

4 وتستخدم أيضاً للتعبير عما سيحدث في المستقبل إذا كان هناك قرار مسبق ويحل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

decided / have decided / made a decision / made up ... mind

- ex. - He is going to have lunch outdoors.  
 = He has decided to have lunch outdoors.  
 = He has made a decision to have lunch outdoors.  
 = He has made up his mind to have lunch outdoors.

5 وتستخدم أيضاً للتعبير عن أشياء على وشك الحدوث:

be going to + inf. = be about to + inf. + علي وشك

- ex. - I'm going to leave right now.  
 = I'm about to leave.

### 3 The Present Continuous for Future Arrangements

Affirmation الإثبات	Subj. + am / is / are + (inf. + ing) + المستقبلي تعبير زمني يدل على المستقبل - Hany is visiting our school tomorrow.
Negation النفي	Subj. + am not / isn't / aren't + (inf. + ing) ..... - Hany isn't visiting our school tomorrow.
Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)	Am / Is / Are + Subj. + (inf. + ing) .....? - Is Hany visiting your school tomorrow?
'Wh_ ' Q. السؤال بأداة استفهام	Q.W. + أداة الاستفهام + am / is / are + Subj. + (inf. + ing) .....? - When is Hany visiting your school?
Passive المبني للمجهول	Obj. + am / is / are + being + P.P. .... - Our school is being visited (by Hany) tomorrow.

### Mini Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Malak ..... some friends tomorrow evening.  
 a meets      b will meet      c going to meet      d is meeting
- ..... your birthday party tomorrow?  
 a What are you giving      b Are you giving  
 c You are giving      d Are you being given
- Our guests ..... at the airport by the manager himself.  
 a are welcoming      b are going to welcome  
 c are being welcomed      d will welcome

### الاستخدامات Uses

1 التعبير عن المستقبل القريب في حالة وجود ترتيبات نهائية مسبقة، و يدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

arranged / made arrangements / prepared / made preparations

- ex. - I'm taking Salma on a trip tomorrow. Everything is arranged



١ لاحظ أن المناسبات الاجتماعية من حفلات وأعياد ميلاد وغيرها تستلزم ترتيبات. لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر:

ex. - My brother is getting married next Thursday.

٢ لاحظ كذلك أن الأنشطة التي ستقوم بها المؤسسات مستقبلاً تستلزم ترتيبات. لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر:

ex. - My class are going on a school trip next week.

٣ إذا منعك شيء من القيام بشيء آخر في المستقبل القريب فإن ما يمنعك يكون مرتبطاً له وبالتالي نستخدم المضارع المستمر:

ex. - I can't go out with you tonight because I'm meeting my uncle at the airport.

٤ لاحظ أن المضارع المستمر لا يدل على المستقبل إلا في حالة وجود تعبير زمني أو سياق يدل على المستقبل:

ex. - I am having lunch with my uncle. (حدث مستمر الآن)  
- I am having lunch with my uncle tomorrow. (ترتيب مستقبلي)

#### ٤ The Present Simple for Timetables

يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن الأحداث أو المواقف المرتبطة بجداول مواعيد ثابتة مثل الطائرات والقطارات والمباريات والحصص والامتحانات ومواعيد العمل:

ex. - My train arrives at 7:15 tomorrow morning.  
- The match starts at 9 p.m. next Friday.

#### Important Notes on Future Forms

١ ملاحظات هامة على صيغ المستقبل: تأتي في نهاية الجملة، لكن عندما تأتي في بداية الجملة نستخدم الفاصلة السفلى (,) بعدها:

tomorrow / in the future / soon / one day / next (year / month / week / Friday.....) this time (في مثل هذا الوقت next week / tomorrow.....) in (a year, month, week.....) بعد / خلال (next week / tomorrow morning / 2030.....) قبل

- She will do the shopping tomorrow.  
- Next Monday, I am visiting my uncle.

١ يستخدم المضارع البسيط والمضارع التام للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد أدوات الربط الزمنية:

After / as soon as / When / the moment + حدث أول (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) + مستقبل / جملة أمر → حدث ثان (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام)

- After I arrive (have arrived) home, I'll take a rest.  
- Tell Ahmed to call me the moment you see (have seen) him.

٢ مستقبل / جملة أمر → حدث ثان (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) + Before

- Before we leave (have left) the office, I'll phone some clients.  
- Don't leave here before you finish (have finished) all your jobs.

٣ حدث أول مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام + until / till + حدث ثان مستقبل بسيط منفي (غالباً) / جملة أمر

- Mum won't set the table for lunch until my father arrives (has arrived) home.  
- Don't put the bread in the shopping bag until it completely cools (has cooled).

٤ أفعال الحراس والمشاريع والإدراك والتملك وكذلك (be) لا تستخدم في المضارع المستمر كأفعال أساسية، وفي هذه الحالة تستخدم (will + inf.) ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:

Feeling المشاعر	like, dislike, love, hate, prefer, enjoy, want, wish.
Senses الحواس	hear, see, smell, feel, taste, sound, يبدو appear, يبدو seem, look يبدو.
Communication التواصل	promise, satisfy, يبتكر surprise, deny, agree, disagree.
Perception الإدراك	realize, يُدرك understand, know, mean, think = believe, يعتقد imagine, يتخيل recognize, remember, forget.
Other verbs أفعال أخرى	be, belong, concern, depend, يشمل involve, يعتمد own = possess يملك matter بهم, need, owe, يدين

- I think she's agreeing with me. (X)  
- I think she will agree with me. (✓)

موقع التفوق AltFwok.com



## Notes for more understanding ملاحظات هامة

Ⓜ لاحظ استخدام (will)

Subject + promise / offer / threaten + to + inf. ....  
= Subject + will + inf. ....

- I promise to lend you the money you need.
- I will lend you the money you need.

Subject + have / has just decided + to + inf. ....  
= Subject + (have / has) made a quick decision + to + inf. ....  
= Subject + will + inf. ....

- I have just decided to watch a film on TV.
- I will watch a film on TV.

.... don't / doesn't want ..... + to + inf.  
= ..... hope / hopes ..... + won't + inf. ....

- Mum doesn't want my brother to get bad marks.
- Mum hopes my brother won't get bad marks.

.... predict / expect ..... + to + inf.  
= Subject + will + inf. ....

- We expect Bassem to win the gold medal.
- Bassem will win the gold medal.

Ⓜ لاحظ استخدام (going to)

Subject + intend / have intentions / plans / have plans + to + inf. ....  
= Subject + am / is / are + going to + inf. ....

- She has plans to study physics at university.
- = She is going to study physics at university.

Subject + (have / has) decided + to + inf. ....  
= Subject + (have / has) made a decision + to + inf. ....  
= Subject + am / is / are + going to + inf. ....

- We have decided to move to another flat.
- = We are going to move to another flat.

Subject + have / has made up ..... mind + to + inf. ....  
= Subject + am / is / are + going to + inf. ....

- He has made up his mind to find another job.
- = He is going to find another job.

Subject + am / is / are + about to + inf. ....  
= Subject + am / is / are + going to + inf. ....

- He is collecting his things. He is about to leave the office.
- = He is collecting his things. He is going to leave the office.

- يُستخدم المضارع البسيط أو التام وليس (will / be going to) بعد الروابط الزمنية مباشرة ولكن يمكن استخدامها في الجملة الرئيسية (الثانية)

- After I (will arrive - am going to arrive - arrive) home, I will take a shower.
- Before she (has left - is going to leave - will leave) the office, she is going to send the emails.

Ⓜ لاحظ استخدام المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الترتيبات المستقبلية

Subject + (have / has) arranged / prepared / made arrangements + to + inf. ....  
= Subject + am / is / are + (inf. + ing) ....

- I have arranged to take a course in English next month.
- = I am taking a course in English next month.

Ⓜ لاحظ استخدام المضارع البسيط أو المضارع التام بعد الروابط الزمنية:

(When) (After) (Before) (until)

- She will buy some fruit. Then, she will return home.
- = When she buys (has bought) some fruit, she will return home.
- = After she buys (has bought) some fruit, she will return home.
- = Before she returns (has returned) home, she will buy some fruit.
- = She won't return home until she buys (has bought) some fruit.

## General Exercise

## On Language

## Apply

• التدرجات التالية مرتبة بشكل متدرج تصاعدي حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم.

تدوين

Ⓜ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ali ..... 17 next month.

- a. is going to be    b. will be    c. going to be    d. is

(الاستيعابية ٢٠٢٢)



2. It is very hot in the house. I ..... on the air conditioner.  
a. will turn b. am turning  
c. turn d. am going to turn  
(المبرور - يوسف كرك ٢٠٢٢)
3. Watch out! The child .....  
a. will fall b. is going to fall  
c. is falling d. would fall  
(المبرور - الشواشنة ٢٠٢٢)
4. Those bags look heavy. I ..... you carry them.  
a. help b. am helping  
c. will help d. am going to help  
(يوم امبو - أحمد محمد موسى بنات ٢٠٢٢)
5. Look! It is very windy. I ..... the windows.  
a. will close b. am going to close  
c. close d. am closing  
(نقا - نجع حمادى ٢٠٢٢)
6. Malak ..... some friends tomorrow evening on her birthday.  
a. meets b. will meet  
c. going to meet d. is meeting  
(إدارة الخليفة والمقطم ٢٠٢٢)
7. I will see her after she ..... back.  
a. comes b. came  
c. will come d. had come  
(إدارة الخليفة والمقطم ٢٠٢٢)
8. A party ..... in celebration of the end of the school year tomorrow.  
a. is giving b. gives  
c. is being given d. is going to give  
(الفاخرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٢)
9. They ..... a party tomorrow. Everything is arranged.  
a. are having b. will have c. have d. can have  
(القيوم - إيشواي ٢٠٢٢)
10. This museum ..... at 9:00 am tomorrow.  
a. will open b. opens c. open d. is going to open  
(إدارة أسوان - أحمد طه حسين المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
11. I ..... be at school early tomorrow morning.  
a. 'll probably b. 'm probably going to  
c. probably go d. 'm probably  
(غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٢)
12. According to the timetable, the train ..... at 11 o'clock.  
a. have left b. leaving c. leave d. leaves  
(العامرية الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)

13. My friend is highly intelligent. He ..... the test easily.  
a. is going to pass b. will pass  
c. is passing d. would pass  
(المطور - التحرير الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
14. I ..... my cousins at the weekend. I've arranged it.  
a. will visit b. am visiting  
c. going to visit d. visit  
(إدارة الزينية ٢٠٢٢)
15. Hany ..... to France tomorrow. He's got the ticket.  
a. will be travelled b. will travel  
c. is travelling d. travels  
(الشهيد سيد زكريا الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
16. I ..... the faculty of education when I grow up; it's my intention.  
a. join b. am going to join  
c. will join d. am joining  
(بور سعيد - الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
17. After he ..... his homework, he will watch the match.  
a. had done b. did c. will d. does  
(إدارة الزينية ٢٠٢٢)

• **تنويه** : ذكر القاعدة جيداً واستعد للتدريبات الشاملة ضمن الدرسين الثالث والرابع.





Part I

Vocabulary

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

• لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية جيداً ومراجعتها بانتظام (الواجبة على كل المتدربين)

advert =	إعلان	malware(n)	البرمجيات الخبيثة
advertisement (n)		password(n)	كلمة المرور
anti-virus (adj)	مُكافح الفيروسات	personal details(n)	التفاصيل الشخصية
click(ed) (n - v)	نقرة - ينقر	phishing(n)	النصب الإلكتروني
cyberbullying(n)	التنمر الإلكتروني	post(ed) (v)	يرسل
download (n)	ملف مُنزّل	satnav(n)	التوجيه بالقرص الصناعي
download(ed) (v)	يُنزّل	scam(n)	احتيال - غش
downloading (n)	التنزيل	software(n)	برنامج - برمجيات
google (n)	مُحرك البحث جوجل	upload (n)	ملف مرفوع
google(d) (v)	يبحث على جوجل عن	upload(ed) (v)	يرفع ملف
lock(ed) (n - v)	يقفل - يفتح	uploading (n)	الرفع

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

• من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام

account(n)	حساب (مصرفي أو على الإنترنت)	impossible(adj)	مستحيل
almost(adv)	تقريباً	join(ed) (v)	يلتحق بـ - ينضم إلى
careful (adj)	حريص / حذر	media(n)	أجهزة الإعلام - وسائل الإعلام
change(d) (v)	يُغيّر - يتغير	mention(ed) (v)	يذكر
comment(ed) (n - v)	تعليق - يعلق	properly(adv)	بشكل صحيح
credit card(n)	بطاقة ائتمان	provide(d) (v)	يزود بـ - يُتيح
delete(d) (v)	يحذف - يُلغى	recognise(d) (v)	يتعرف على

details(n)	تفاصيل	remove(d) (v)	يزيل - يُبعد
dishonest(adj)	غير أمين - مُخادع	rude(adj)	وقح / غير مهذب
document(n)	وثيقة	scary(adj)	مُخيف / مُرعب
embarrassing(adj)	مُخزٍ	share(d) (v)	يشارك - يشارك
employment(n)	توظيف / تشغيل - استغلال	socialise(d) (v)	يختلط (بالآخرين)
excited(adj)	سعيد - متحمس	support(ed) (n - v)	دُعم - يدعم
fly - flew - flown(v)	يطير - يُطير - يُسرع	trick(ed) (n - v)	خدعة - يخدع
free (free of charge)(adj)	مجاني	trouble(n)	مأزق / مشكلة
frighten(ed) (v)	يخيف	ugly(adj)	قبيح المنظر
furios(adj)	ساخط / غاضب جداً	unwanted(adj)	غير مرغوب فيه
horrible(adj)	فظيع	website(n)	موقع على الإنترنت

3 Definitions تعريفات

• تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلم المُستهدفة - هام جداً

Memorise	Understand
anti-virus software (n) برنامج مُكافح الفيروسات	software that removes unwanted programs from a computer
click(v) ينقر	to press a button زر on a computer mouse in order to choose something from the screen شاشة that you want the computer to do
cyberbullying(n) التنمر الإلكتروني	sending messages online to frighten or worry someone
downloading malware تنزيل البرامج الخبيثة	putting software from the internet onto a computer that will damage it
lock(v) يقفل	to do something to stop other people using your phone or social media accounts
phishing(n) النصب الإلكتروني	- trying to trick a person into giving information over the internet to take money from them - a dishonest plan to get money
posting photos إرسال الصور	putting photographs online
scam(n) احتيال - غش	a dishonest plan to steal money
uploading personal details تحميل البيانات الشخصية	copying information such as your address and phone number to the internet



## Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## 1. Key vocabulary

- My friend keeps ..... photos all day.  
a. logging in b. posting c. lighting d. connecting  
(التصوير الفوتوغرافي - ليعت ٢٠٢٢)
- To protect your data, you need a strong ..... software.  
a. website b. anti-virus c. malware d. blog  
(البرمجيات الضارة - البرنامج المضاد للفيروسات - البرامج الضارة المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
- He didn't realise he had been ..... until after he had used his credit card.  
a. scammed b. managed c. advertised d. announced  
(الخداع - الترويج - الإعلان المشترك ٢٠٢٢)
- He asked me about details of my credit card. It's a .....  
a. scan b. scam c. scar d. skim  
(فتح الله كيرة التلويح بيبس ٢٠٢٢)
- He is a bad person who gets a lot of money through .....  
a. fishing b. fisherman c. phishing d. phisher
- Captains of ships and car drivers use ..... to know where they are and how to reach a place.  
a. adverts b. satnav c. IOT d. ID
- This webpage is full of job ..... I found my current job here.  
a. anti-virus b. malware c. adverts d. satnav
- There must be a law to criminalize .....  
a. technology b. satnav c. cyberbullying d. internet of things
- My tablet is ..... protected. No one else can use it.  
a. website b. internet c. password d. virus
- My tablet has powerful anti-virus .....  
a. hardware b. hardwares c. software d. softwares
- When I heard the ..... of the gun parts, I knew the man was about to shoot.  
a. direct b. object c. check d. click  
(الاشعة - طلاء ٢٠٢٠)
- ..... programs can cause your device not to work properly.  
a. Software b. Malware c. Security d. Hardware  
(البرمجيات ٢٠٢٠)

- You shouldn't ask strangers ..... questions.  
a. scientific b. legal c. public d. personal  
(الغريب - ملوك ٢٠٢٠)
- A scam is an online trick used to .....  
a. legally take someone's money b. win a match c. rob someone of their money d. destroy a building
- You can ..... someone you have recently met to see what information is available about them on the internet.  
a. google b. download c. upload d. hack  
(استرجاع - طلاء ٢٠٢٠)
- I want to ..... some apps to my new smart phone.  
a. load b. download c. upload d. unload  
(استرجاع - طلاء ٢٠٢٠)
- Don't worry, sir. The door of the room is .....  
a. lock b. locked c. locks d. a lock
- I have already ..... the file to the website.  
a. downloaded b. downloads c. uploaded d. uploads

## 2. Important Vocabulary

- Although he was in disguise, I was able to ..... him.  
a. concept b. release c. realise d. recognise  
(الخدعة - الترويج ٢٠٢٠)
- Most people find it ..... to ask others for money.  
a. embarrassing b. furious c. free d. unwanted
- Black cats ..... some babies.  
a. socialise b. frighten c. comment d. mention
- "I must ....." she said, "My train leaves in ten minutes."  
a. flow b. flee c. fly d. flea  
(الخدعة - الترويج ٢٠٢٠)
- One must always ..... their password to keep their accounts safe.  
a. change b. charge c. recharge d. exchange  
(التغيير - وشيد ٢٠٢٠)
- He was ..... because his new tablet had just been broken.  
a. embarrassing b. furious c. free d. unwanted
- It is important for a child to ..... with other people.  
a. socialise b. frighten c. comment d. mention
- He is a short-tempered ..... person, so be ..... about what you say to him.  
a. careless b. care c. cares d. careful  
(الخدعة - رشيد ٢٠٢٠)



## UNIT 5

27. He wants to ..... a malware from his tablet.  
 a remove b recognize c develop d design
28. Children under six have their meals ..... of charge in this restaurant.  
 a embarrassing b furious c free d unwanted
29. She ..... that she turned off the laptop before leaving the office.  
 a socialised b frightened c tricked d mentioned
30. You need to protect your Facebook .....  
 a network b account c evidence d intention
31. The officer asked me about the ..... of the accident.  
 a details b organisations c offers d networks
32. Millions of followers ..... on Salah's posts.  
 a socialise b frighten c comment d mention
33. This programme deletes ..... unwanted data to save memory.  
 a embarrassing b furious c free d unwanted

### 3 Definitions

34. .... is tricking someone into giving information or money over the internet or by e-mail.  
 a Malware b Phishing c Antivirus d Password
35. A/An ..... software removes unwanted programs from a computer.  
 a hacker b database c virus d anti-virus
36. To ..... is to press a button on a computer mouse in order to choose something from the screen that you want the computer to do.  
 a cause b link c click d network
37. To stop other people using your phone or social media accounts, you should ..... them.  
 a offer b lock c post d design
38. .... personal details means copying information such as your address and phone number to the internet.  
 a Downloading b Uploading c Protecting d Embarrassing
39. .... malware means putting software from the internet onto a computer that will damage it.  
 a Recognising b Solving c Protecting d Downloading

## Part II Vocabulary Study

تدرب على استخدام هذه الكلمات في جملتك الخاصة

### 1 Verbal Collocations

build	friendships	تُكوّن صداقات	like	يسمى كأنه / يشبه
do	wrong	يُخطئ	look	تبدو ثقيلة
get	money	يحصل على مال	stay	يمس على ما يُرام
give	personal details	يعطي تفاصيل شخصية	study	يسعى بأمان
go	a presentation	يقوم بعرض تقديمي	take	يلتقط الصور
keep	online	يدخل على الإنترنت	win	يلتقط الصور
	a note of	يحتفظ بملحوظة عن	write	يلتقط الصور
			a prize	يلتقط الصور
			a blog	يلتقط الصور

### 2 Synonyms

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
advert	إعلان
malware	برمجيات خبيثة
satnav	الملاحة بالقمر الصناعي
scam	احتيال - غش
advertisement, ad	
malicious software	
satellite navigation	
fraud, trick	

### 3 Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
download	تنزيل - يُحمّل (من الإنترنت)	upload	الرفع - رفع (على الإنترنت)
honest	أمين	dishonest	غير أمين - مُخادع
lock	يقفل	unlock - open	يفتح
security, safety	الأمن	danger / insecurity	الخطر / انعدام الأمن
similar	متشابه	different	مختلف

موقع التفوق AltFwok.com



4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

advert	
advertise(d) (v)	يُعلن عن
advert = ad = advertisement (n)	إعلان
advertiser (n)	مُعلن
advertised (adj)	مُعلن عنه

- We pay a lot of money to **advertise** our products.
- We pay a lot of money for **adverts** for our products.
- We pay a lot of money for **advertisers** to promote our products.
- This product is **advertised** on TV.

cyberbullying

cyberbully(ied) (v)	يُتنمر على الإنترنت
cyberbullying (n)	التنمر الإلكتروني
cyberbully (n)	متنمر إلكتروني

- It is a crime to **cyberbully** people.
- **Cyberbullying** is a crime.
- It is a crime to be a **cyberbully**.

download

download(ed) (v)	يُنزّل - يتم تحميله
download (n)	ملف مُنزّل
downloading (n)	التنزيل
downloadable (adj)	قابل للتنزيل

- The file **downloaded** slowly.
- I keep all **downloads** in this file.
- **Downloading** large files take some time.
- This file is not **downloadable**.

lock

lock (v)	يقفل
lock (n)	قفل
locked (adj)	مقفول

- I use a symbol to **lock** the screen.
- I use a symbol as a **lock** for the screen.
- The screen is **locked** with a symbol.

scam

scam(med) (v)	يحتال على / يغش
scam (n)	احتيال / غش
scammer (n)	محتال / غشاش

- She was **scammed** by an online friend.
- She was the victim of a **scam**.
- She was the victim of a **scammer**.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات

a comment about	تعليق على	on the internet	على الإنترنت
an advert for	إعلان عن	on the other hand,	من الناحية الأخرى
an example of	مثال على	plenty of	كثير من
careful about	حريص على	Social Media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
disadvantages to	مساوئ لـ	stop it working	يجعله يتوقف عن العمل
in trouble	في مأزق	the space provided	الفضاء المتاح
key points	النقاط الرئيسية	to conclude/ in conclusion	والخلاصة هي
nothing happened	لم يحدث شيء	write in clear simple words	يكتب مستخدماً كلمات بسيطة وواضحة

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

choose from	يختار من بين	delete ... from	يُحذف ... من
click on	ينقر على	remove ... from	يُزيل ... من
complete ... with	يُكمل ... بـ	socialise ... with	يُحفظ اجتماعياً بـ

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

scam - spam

- **scam** نصب / احتيال على الإنترنت (للاستيلاء على أموال الغير)  
- The police have warned people about internet and phone **scam**.
- **spam** رسائل البريد الإلكتروني التي تحتوي على إعلانات غير مرغوب فيها  
- I don't know how to delete all this **spam**.

advertisement

- **advertisement / advert / ad** إعلان عن سلعة / خدمة (كلمة عامة)  
- Don't believe **adverts**. Ask people who have already bought the products.
- **commercial** إعلان تجاري (في التلفزيون / الإذاعة)  
- This actress **started** her career in **commercials**.
- **trailer** إعلان عن فيلم  
- This web page is full of **trailers**.
- **promotion** حملة دعائية (للترويج لمنتج معين)  
- The company spent 2 million dollars on **promotions** for the new product.
- **announcement** إعلان / تنبيه (نشر تنبيهات - تعليقات - تحذيرات - قرارات)  
- We are waiting for the **announcement** of the decisions.



virus - anti-virus - malware - hacker

- virus (فيروس) (كائن دقيق يسبب المرض)  
He is infected with Coronavirus. (مصاب بـ فيروس كورونا)
- virus (فيروس إلكتروني) (سبب ضرر للأجهزة الحاسوبية)  
A virus has destroyed the data on my tablet.
- anti-virus software (برامج قيروسات) (برنامج لإزالة البرامج الضارة)  
Don't trust a free anti-virus software.
- malware (البرمجيات الخبيثة) (برنامج يقوم بتدمير وإتلاف أجهزة الحاسب والهواتف الذكية)  
Malware is a malicious software.
- hacker (قرصان إنترنت) (شخص يخترق خصوصية أجهزة الكمبيوتر والبرامج الخاصة بالآخرين)  
A hacker has deleted the data from the central computer.

software - hardware

- software (countable noun) (برنامج حاسوبي) (يزدي غرض معين على الكمبيوتر أو الهاتف الذكي)  
I bought this anti-virus software.
- hardware (uncountable noun) (مكونات / أجزاء / أدوات (الحاسب أو غيره))  
I need some kitchen hardware.

### General Exercise On Vocabulary study

\* MCQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. The verb 'make' collocates with  
a wrong b like c a decision  
d right e life better
2. I was asked to give  
a personal details b heavy c online  
d a presentation e sat-nav
3. You can online  
a give b go c do  
d take e study
4. " " is short for advertisement.  
a PP b Ad c DOB  
d AD e Advert
5. Scam is a synonym of  
a trek b trick c found  
d fraud e afraid
6. "I locked the front door." The verb 'lock' here is an antonym for  
a open b repair c fix  
d paint e unlock

\* MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Show me the photo you've just  
a stayed b done c gone d taken
2. Apologise when you ..... wrong.  
a do b look c make d write
3. Keep at home safe  
a Stay b Check c Go d Take
4. Her face is pale. She does not ..... right.  
a do b look c make d lock
5. I'm very busy, so I rarely ..... online.  
a stay b check c go d take
6. The blog I had ..... was shared by 200 people.  
a done b looked c made d written
7. Danger is antonymous with .....  
a safe b safety c secure d insecurity
8. Scam is to ..... as book is to reserve.  
a fried b trick c trust d a & b
9. "I have just uploaded a video." In this sentence, the word 'uploaded' is the antonym of  
a. unloaded b. overloaded c. downloaded d. a & c
10. "Be careful of malicious software." The speaker is warning us against .....  
a software b hardware c antivirus d malware
11. My children keep the ..... on desktop.  
a downloaded b downloads c uploaded d cyberbullying
12. Don't worry, sir. The door of the room is .....  
a lock b locked c locks d a lock
13. He is a bad person who gets a lot of money through .....  
a. fishing b. fisherman c. phishing d. phisher



14. He is a bad person who gets a lot of money as a .....  
 a. fishing b. fisherman c. phishing d. phisher
15. I had given him 5000 pounds before I realised that he was a .....  
 a. scam b. scams c. scammed d. scammer
16. I pressed the red button to stop the machine .....  
 a. working b. to working c. work d. to work
17. Sama asked me to remove the peel ..... the orange.  
 a. with b. for c. from d. at
18. .... conclude, hard work is necessary for success in life and work.  
 a. In b. By c. Of d. To
19. The processor of the computer is part of its .....  
 a. software b. hardware c. malware d. a & b
20. I got tired of the ..... that is sent to my email.  
 a. spam b. scam c. download d. upload

## Part III Reading & Listening

### 1 Reading Texts

#### B. Hassan's blog

(58 page 57)

Last week, I was playing online when I saw an advert<sup>(1)</sup> for a free<sup>(2)</sup> game. I clicked<sup>(3)</sup> on the link<sup>(4)</sup> and wrote my name, address and some bank details.<sup>(5)</sup> When I tried to download<sup>(6)</sup> the game, nothing happened. It was a scam!<sup>(7)</sup>

My dad was furious<sup>(8)</sup> because they stole<sup>(9)</sup> money from his bank account<sup>(10)</sup> and my computer stopped working properly.<sup>(11)</sup> Don't click on links you don't recognise<sup>(12)</sup> and never give your personal details on a strange<sup>(13)</sup> website. Oh, and remember to use anti-virus<sup>(14)</sup> software<sup>(15)</sup> to stop thieves!<sup>(16)</sup>

#### Check Vocabulary

- (1) إعلان  
 (2) مجاني  
 (3) ينقر  
 (4) رابط  
 (5) تفاصيل  
 (6) يُحمّل  
 (7) احتيال - غش  
 (8) سخط / غضب جداً  
 (9) يسرق  
 (10) حساب  
 (11) بشكل صحيح  
 (12) يتعرف على  
 (13) غريب  
 (14) مضاد فيروسات  
 (15) برنامج حاسوبي  
 (16) لصوص

### C. Stay safe online

(58 page 57)

Don't add your personal details to a website.

Do change your password<sup>(1)</sup> often.

Don't click on a link<sup>(2)</sup> you don't recognise<sup>(3)</sup>.

Do lock<sup>(4)</sup> your phone.

Do lock your social media accounts<sup>(5)</sup>.

Don't upload embarrassing<sup>(6)</sup> photos.

Don't save bank details on a website.

Do use anti-virus software.

Do use different passwords on different websites

Don't write unkind comments<sup>(7)</sup> about other people.

#### Check Vocabulary

- (1) كلمة سر  
 (2) ينقر على رابط  
 (3) يتعرف على  
 (4) يفتح  
 (5) حسابات مواقع  
 (6) التواضع الاجتماعي  
 (7) مخرج  
 (8) تعليقات سيئة

### Internet use in Egypt

(WB page 116)

Every year, more and more people are connected to the internet in Egypt. A recent<sup>(1)</sup> survey<sup>(2)</sup> found that around 50 million people use the internet on a computer or smartphone.

In the survey, many people said that they used the internet every day, usually for communication, so they could talk to friends or family. Many used apps on their phones, so they can listen to music or watch films.

Other people said they never used the internet. This was usually because they did not understand the technology. Many people also said they did want to use the internet when shopping. They were worried about security and the possibility<sup>(3)</sup> that their devices might be hacked.





## 2 Listening texts



B. Hassan : I last week, I was reading about (58 page 56) a new online game<sup>(1)</sup> and saw an advert<sup>(2)</sup> that said I could get this game for free. All I had to do was complete a form<sup>(3)</sup> with my name, email address<sup>(4)</sup> and credit<sup>(5)</sup> card details<sup>(6)</sup>. I don't have a credit card, but I sometimes use my dad's card to buy things. Of course, it was a scam<sup>(7)</sup>. They just wanted the credit card details so they could steal money, but it looked just like a real advert. I think lots of kids would be so excited to get a free game they wouldn't think carefully about it.

Laila : I'm leaving school this year and I want to get a job in a bank. My teacher told me that employers<sup>(8)</sup> often look online to see what we've posted<sup>(9)</sup>, so I decided to google<sup>(10)</sup> my name to see what they might find. It was scary. All the photos and the "funny" comments<sup>(11)</sup> I'd ever posted were there and I couldn't delete<sup>(12)</sup> them. I didn't realise<sup>(13)</sup> it's almost impossible to remove personal data<sup>(14)</sup> from the internet.

Saeed : I love reading my friend's social media posts<sup>(15)</sup>, but some people write really horrible<sup>(16)</sup> things about other teenagers. One of my friends posted a photo of himself on his new bike and he got lots of rude comments<sup>(17)</sup> about how he looked and how ugly<sup>(18)</sup> his bike is. I couldn't believe it ! These kids would never, never bully<sup>(19)</sup> my friend at school, so why they do online ? I'm really careful about what I say on the internet now !

## Check Vocabulary

- (1) لعبة على الإنترنت
- (2) إعلان
- (3) نموذج / بكملة
- (4) عنوان
- (5) حساب بنكي
- (6) تفاصيل
- (7) احتيال / غش
- (8) أصحاب العمل
- (9) يرسل منشور
- (10) يبحث على جوجل
- (11) تعليقات
- (12) ي حذف
- (13) يدرك
- (14) بيانات شخصية
- (15) منشورات مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي
- (16) قبيح / رهيب
- (17) تعليقات وقحة
- (18) قبيح
- (19) يتنمر / يبلطج

## Part IV

## Language



مملكة  
Saudi Arabia  
التعليم

راجع شرح القاعدة من التدريسين الأول والثاني

تدريبات

## General Exercise On Language

Apply

التدريبات التالية مرتبة بشكل متدرج تصاعدياً حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم.

تدريبات

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

## 1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. I am not doing anything until I ..... something to eat.  
a have b will have c had had d had
2. Oh, the water is boiling. I ..... off the gas.  
a will turn b am going to turn  
c am turning d turn
3. A: We haven't got any sugar B: I know. I ..... some this evening.  
a will buy b am going to buy  
c will be buying d will have bought
4. A party ..... in celebration of the end of the school year tomorrow.  
a is giving b is being given  
c gives d is going to give
5. It's the first time I've ever seen this hotel. I've decided that I ..... in it next month.  
a am going to stay b will stay c am staying d have stayed
6. The ceiling of this room doesn't look very safe. It looks as if it ..... down.  
a will fall b is falling c is going to fall d falls
7. We ..... tomorrow. We have booked our tickets.  
a are travelling b will travel  
c travel d going to travel
8. A: How old are you? B: I ..... 44 next February.  
a am b am going to be  
c will be d am being
9. I have made up my mind. I ..... a new house.  
a am going to buy b will buy  
c am buying d buy



UNIT 5

10. A: I don't know how to use this camera.  
B: It's quite easy. I ..... you.  
a. am showing      b. am going to show  
c. will show      d. show
11. Our school ..... part in the sports competition next week. That has been arranged.  
a. will take      b. takes  
c. is taking      d. is going to take
12. I expect that Reem ..... married next year.  
a. get      b. will get      c. has got      d. gets
13. Watch out! You ..... the flower vase.  
a. would drop      b. are going to drop  
c. drop      d. are dropping
14. I ..... work early today. I have arranged that with the manager.  
a. leave      b. am going to leave  
c. am leaving      d. will leave
15. The train ..... Aswan at 8:00 o'clock. It's on the timetable.  
a. is going to leave      b. will leave  
c. is leaving      d. leaves
16. I expect that my team ..... the match.  
a. is winning      b. is going to win  
c. will win      d. wins
17. A: Why are you taking down all the pictures? B: I ..... the room.  
a. paint      b. am going to paint  
c. will paint      d. am painting
18. My English lesson ..... at four o'clock this afternoon.  
a. start      b. has been starting  
c. starts      d. is stating
19. I've decided to buy a mobile. I ..... a smart one.  
a. will buy      b. buy  
c. am going to buy      d. am buying
20. They ..... a party next Monday. Everything is arranged.  
a. would have      b. has  
c. have      d. are having

21. The agent says my flight ..... at 7 o'clock tomorrow.  
a. is      b. shall be      c. will be      d. is being
22. She looks extremely pale شاحبة. I think she .....  
a. will faint      b. is fainting  
c. is going to faint      d. faint
23. I think my cousin ..... law. He is keen on defending people.  
a. would study      b. is going to study  
c. studying      d. will study
24. A: I've decided to set up a business.  
B: Oh, have you? When ..... start?  
a. shall you      b. do you  
c. are you going to      d. will you
25. I ..... dinner today, mum. You look tired.  
a. prepare      b. will prepare  
c. am preparing      d. am going to prepare
26. A: What arrangements have you made for next week?  
B: I ..... to Alexandria with my father.  
a. will travel      b. am travelling  
c. am going to travel      d. travel
27. A: What are your personal plans for the next two years?  
B: I ..... a new house.  
a. build      b. will build  
c. am building      d. am going to build
28. Twenty years from now, I think my country ..... a fantastic place.  
a. is      b. is going to be  
c. will be      d. shall be
29. He is going to catch the bus when it .....  
a. arrives      b. will arrive      c. arrived      d. arrive
30. When you arrive, ..... me at once.  
a. are going to call      b. are calling  
c. will call      d. call
31. Don't wash the dishes if you ..... in a hurry.  
a. were      b. are being      c. are      d. will be
32. I can't go out with you this afternoon. I ..... the doctor at 5 pm.  
a. see      b. going to see      c. will see      d. am seeing



33. A: When are you going to leave for Rome?  
B: I ..... tomorrow on the 6:00 o'clock plane. Here is the ticket.  
a leave b am leaving  
c am going to leave d will leave
34. It is raining heavily. Don't go out or you ..... wet.  
a get b will get  
c are going to get d are getting
35. A: Make a prediction about your life ten years from now.  
B: I ..... married  
a will be b am  
c am getting d am going to get
36. He is brave by nature. He ..... the problem.  
a face b facing  
c is going to face d will face
37. You won't leave the office until the manager ..... you.  
a called b had called c has called d call
38. After the manager has called you, you ..... the office at once.  
a will leave b won't leave c have left d left
39. In ten years' time, my father ..... even older.  
a will look b is looking c going to look d looks
40. As soon as my son ..... for school, I'll do the housework.  
a will leave b have left c leaves d had left

2 Check your understanding

41. "I won't go to bed until my father returns home." I mean that .....  
a I will go to bed before my father arrives home.  
b once I go to bed, my father will arrive home.  
c once my father arrives home, I will go to bed.  
d I won't go to bed after my father arrives home.
42. "Everything is arranged for my brother's wedding tomorrow." What does this mean?  
a My brother will get married tomorrow.  
b My brother gets married tomorrow.  
c My brother will be got married tomorrow.  
d My brother is getting married tomorrow.

43. "My father has made up his mind about selling the old car to the mechanic for 70,000 pounds." What does this mean?  
a My father is going to sell the old car to the mechanic.  
b My father won't sell the old car to the mechanic.  
c My father isn't selling the old car to the mechanic.  
d My father sells the car to the mechanic.
44. "I am about to leave soon." This means .....  
a I'm being left soon.  
b I am going to leave soon.  
c I will leave soon.  
d I leave soon.
45. "Omar has decided to redecorate his flat." This means .....  
a Omar will redecorate his flat.  
b Omar is going to redecorate his flat.  
c Omar is redecorating his flat.  
d Omar redecorates his flat.
46. "I'm going to look for a better job." This is a / an .....  
a prediction b threat c intention d promise
47. "Karim will come first this year." This is a / an .....  
a prediction b threat c intention d promise
48. "I will buy you a tablet for your birthday." This is a / an .....  
a prediction b threat c intention d promise
49. "Keep calm or I'll send you out." This is a / an .....  
a prediction b threat c intention d promise
50. "This school will be 70 years old next year." This is a / an .....  
a fact b future fact  
c plan d arrangement
51. Watch out! You're going to step into a hole. This means that the addressee ..... into a hole.  
a will step b will be stepped  
c is about to step d has stepped



# PART THREE

## Story Vocabulary, Skills and Advanced exercises

Lessons 5 & 6

### Part I

### Vocabulary

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات الرئيسية في قصة (Treasure Island) بالنسبة للمصبرات اللغوية الموجودة في الوحدة وقواعد ما بين السطور والجزء المخصص للطلاب المتأهلين

تلاوة

### Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

أهم المفردات اللغوية في قصة (Treasure Island) كما يمكنكم التطلع على نص القصة والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب

تلاوة

bottom(n)	أسفل / سفح - قاع	fresh(adj)	مُفَرَّش
burn - burned / burnt (v)	يحرق - يحترق	kneel down - knelt (v)	يركع / ينحني
crazy(adj)	مجنون	leader(n)	قائد
dark(n-adj)	ظلام - مظلم	on your own	بفردك
directions(n)	اتجاهات	realise(d) (v)	يُفهم
dry(adj)	جاف / جف	sail(ed)(n - v)	شرّاع العركب - يبحر
explain(ed)(v)	يشرح - يُفسّر	spade(n)	جاروف
fight-fought (v)	يقاتل	start(ed)(n - v)	بداية - يبدأ
flag(n)	علم - راية	voice(n)	صوت إنسان

### Exercise On Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- People ..... down when they pray.  
a. knell      b. knee      c. knead      d. kneel
- The police forces ..... the terrorists killing some of them and arresting the rest.  
a. caught      b. honoured      c. fought      d. realised
- I won't help you with the cooking. You will have to do it ..... your own.  
a. about      b. from      c. of      d. on
- The new coach won the Super Cup in his first match, which was a good .....  
a. spade      b. start      c. sail      d. fight
- We had to lower ..... the ..... because there was a storm.  
a. sails      b. seals      c. soil      d. harbour
- I asked my teacher to ..... a maths problem to me.  
a. think      b. understand      c. realise      d. explain

- Do you want to swim in this stormy weather? Don't be .....  
a. correct      b. right      c. wise      d. crazy
- I ..... city life to living in the countryside.  
a. sail      b. prefer      c. explain      d. start
- Without sun cream, the sun will ..... your skin.  
a. cool      b. shower      c. burn      d. freeze
- President Sadat was an intelligent .....  
a. leader      b. sailor      c. businessman      d. pirate
- Don't ..... what he says. He is a big liar.  
a. lead      b. burn      c. believe      d. prefer

### Part II

### Grammatical Hints

on

للحظ استخدام حرف الجر (on) مع وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي وبعض الأسماء الأخرى :

on (TV, the radio, the telephone, the internet, social media, mass media, a social networking site, a website ....)

ex. - People share information about themselves on social networking sites.

spend + money / time

spend money on + n. / inf. + ing = spend money to + inf.

ex. - He spent a lot of money on (buying) clothes.  
= He spent a lot of money to buy new clothes.

spend time + n. / (inf. + ing)

ex. - She spent two days preparing for the party.

It's a waste of time / money + (inf. + ing) ... مضاعة للوقت / المال ...

- It's a waste of money cooking all this food for two people.  
- It's a waste of time watching films again and again.

verb + obj. مفعول (inf. + ing)

catch - discover - feel - hear - leave - notice - observe - see -  
watch - find - overhear تنصت

ex. - The police caught him hiding the money he had stolen.  
- I saw him running in the street.

ومع أفعال أخرى يكون (inf. + ing) اختصار لـ (by + inf. + ing)

ex. - People connect to the internet by using their smartphones.  
= People connect to the internet using their smartphones.

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق



yet

① نستخدم (yet) بمعنى (حتى الآن) في الجمل المنفية في المضارع التام وتأتي غالباً في نهاية الجملة وهي تدل على توقع حدوث شيء لم يحدث حتى الآن.

ex. - My father hasn't arrived yet. (I expect he will arrive.)

② نستخدم (yet) بمعنى (حتى الآن) في الجمل الاستفهامية في المضارع التام وتأتي غالباً في نهاية السؤال، وهي تدل على توقع حدوث شيء لم يحدث حتى الآن.

ex. - Has Amira called yet? (I expect she will call.)

③ نستخدم (yet) بمعنى (حتى الآن) بعد صفات التفضيل.

ex. - As a writer, this is my best book yet.

④ نستخدم (yet) كاداة ربط بمعنى (لكن / ومع ذلك) وفي هذه الحالة تساوي (but) في المعنى.

ex. - He is very intelligent, yet too lazy to do anything.

### Exercise On Language Hints

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I haven't done the shopping .....  
a. just      b. already      c. ago      d. yet
- She spent the weekend ..... her mother.  
a. helping      b. helped      c. help      d. helps
- They spent a lot of money ..... their new flat.  
a. on      b. to      c. with      d. of
- Haven't you eaten your dinner ..... ?  
a. ago      b. after      c. yet      d. just
- She spent a week ..... for her birthday party.  
a. preparing      b. prepare      c. prepares      d. prepared
- She spent all her savings ..... a modern car.  
a. buys      b. buy      c. to buying      d. to buy
- This is Salah's best goal .....  
a. never      b. yet      c. but      d. however
- There will be better education ..... modern technology.  
a. use      b. used      c. to use      d. using
- It is a waste of time ..... online for three hours.  
a. chatted      b. to chatting      c. chatting      d. a chat

- She is stupid ..... very beautiful  
a. yet      b. although      c. since      d. as
- Listen to these people ..... about modern technology  
a. talks      b. be talked      c. talking      d. talked
- You can find information about everything ..... the internet.  
a. of      b. on      c. for      d. about

### Part III

### Language Skills

#### 1 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

• للمزيد من التدريبات منق المهارات

\* Write an essay about 150 words about your plans for the future :

#### My plans for the future

Everyone has his / her future plans. It is a good thing to have your own future plans. These plans are the goals that you want to achieve. In this essay, I'm going to write about both my work and family plans.

My work plans are very simple. I want to have a good job which pays me enough money. My dream job is to be an accountant in a bank. Although accountants work hard for many hours, they earn a lot of money. As an accountant, I won't need to look for extra work. As soon as I leave my work, I will give the rest of the day to my family.

My family plans are very ambitious. I intend to have a small family. My wife must have a good education. I prefer that she should be a housewife, but I don't mind if she has her own job. I wish I could live in a villa, not a flat. I want my villa to have a large garden with a swimming pool.

However, plans don't achieve themselves. I must work hard to reach my dreams. Without hard work and good planning, my plans will stay in the world of dreams.

#### 2 Translation الترجمة

• للمزيد من التدريبات منق المهارات

• Translate into Arabic :

- Egypt has achieved significant progress in various fields of industry, education and modern technology.
- In the future, the only thing that we can be sure of is that technology is not going to stand still in this ever-changing world.
- Many people now use smartphones which can connect to the internet and send emails. These phones can help you control your personal life as well as your business.



## 2 Translate into English :

- ١- إضاعة الوقت من أهم سلبيات استخدام وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي، فمحب عليك أن تحدد الوقت الذي يمكنك أن تقضه على هذه المواقع.
- ٢- يعتبر التليفون المحمول ثورة كبيرة في عالم الاتصالات، فلقد جعل من الممكن التواصل مع أي إنسان في أي مكان بسرعة كبيرة.
- ٣- تتيح الأجيال الجديدة من الهواتف الذكية إجراء مكالمات الفيديو، كما أنها تتيح الكثير من التطبيقات التي تساعدك في دراستك أو عملك.

## Vocabulary related to translation texts - المفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختيار على الوحدة

achievements	إنجازات	revolution	ثورة
fields	مجالات	significant	ملحوظ / بارز
industry	صناعة		

## Part IV Just for Advanced level

للمتقدمين فقط

## 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

• هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب المتقدمين فقط.

تلاوي

## click

- **click (n)** نقرة - صوت طقطقة
  - With a single **click** on the mouse, you can get the information you need.
  - The door shuts with a **click**.

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- at the click of a mouse بسرعة جداً / في غمضة عين
- shut / close -with a click يُحدث صوت نقرة عند القفل
- **click (on) (v)** ينقر - يُحدث صوت طقطقة على
  - I **clicked on** the link but it did not open.

## communicate

- **communicate (with) (v)** يتواصل - يتصل مع
  - People from all over the world **communicate with** each other using emails.
- **communicate ... to** يُبلغ ... ل / ينقل ... إلى
  - The manager **communicated** the decisions **to** the secretary by email.
- **communicate (to) (v)** ينقل / ينقل مرض
  - His flu was **communicated to** all his friends.
- **communication (n)** اتصال / تواصل - القدرة على التواصل
  - Ayman's good **communication** makes him successful.

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- be in communication with يكون على تواصل مع
  - a means of communication وسيلة اتصال أو تواصل
  - a lack of communication انعدام التواصل
  - poor communication علاقة أو تواصل ضعيف
  - direct communication اتصال مباشر
  - establish communication with يقيم علاقات مع
  - communication skills مهارات التواصل
- كلمة (communications) تعني وسائل التواصل مثل الإنترنت والراديو والتلفزيون وكذلك الطرق والسكك الحديدية. وهذا المعنى فهي جمع دائماً:
- Modern **communications** help us learn and work from home.

## download - upload

- **download (v)** رفع ملف (على الإنترنت)  $\neq$  **upload (v)** رفع ملف (من الإنترنت)
    - Sama **downloaded** some educational videos from EKB. بنك المعرفة المصري.
    - He has **uploaded** some files on Google Drive.
  - **download (n)** ملف مرفوع على الإنترنت  $\neq$  **upload (n)** ملف مُنزل من الإنترنت
    - I keep the **downloads** in a folder called «Internet Files».
    - Some websites pay you money for your **uploads**.
  - **downloading (n)** الرفع على الإنترنت  $\neq$  **uploading (n)** التنزيل من الإنترنت
    - **Downloading** files from the internet takes less time than **uploading** them.
- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :
- download ... from يُنزل من
  - download to / onto يُنزل إلى
  - upload ... to يرفع على

## hack

- **hack (into) (v)** يخترق / يقرص (يحاول سرّاً الوصول إلى أو تغيير المعلومات على أجهزة الغير)
  - She was able to **hack** the password.
- **hack / hacking (n)** عملية اختراق أجهزة الكمبيوتر (تهكير)
  - You need to protect your laptop against **hacks / hacking**.
- **hack (n)** سياسي مفسد / كاتب غير محترف
  - The meeting was full of **hacks**.
- **hacker (n)** قرصان (هاكر)
  - I don't know how the **hacker** could get into the system.



the internet

• the internet (n)

- You can find all the information you need on the internet.

- on the internet
- buy ... on the internet
- surf the internet
- internet shopping
- internet banking

link

• link (v)

- Friendship links Mr Nasser and me.

• link ... to / with (v)

- Friendship links me to / with Mr Nasser.  
- This road links Cairo to Alexandria

• link ... together (v)

- Friendship links Mr Nasser and me together.

• link / linkage (between ... and...) (n)

- Friendship is the link between Mr Nasser and me.

• link (n)

- I will send you the link of my blog.

lock

• lock (v)

- I locked the front door.

• be locked in / into

- The player was locked into a three-year contract.

• lock ... in ...

- The policeman locked the criminals in a cell.

• lock ... out

- I am locked out because I have lost my keys.

• lock + up / away

- The policeman locked the criminals up.  
- The policeman locked up the criminals

• lock + up / away

- My mother locks up/ away her jewellery in the safe.

شبكة الإنترنت

لاحظ ضرورة استخدام (the):

ولاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

يذهب على الإنترنت - go on the internet  
يشترى ... من على الإنترنت  
اتصال بالإنترنت - an internet connection  
التسوق عبر الإنترنت  
العمليات المصرفية على الإنترنت

يربط - يوصل

يربط ... بـ

يربط ... معاً

رابط / علاقة بين ... و ...

رابط (الصفحة أو موقع على الإنترنت)

يقفل - يغلّق

مقيد بـ

يحبس ... في ...

يحجز ... خارج

يسجن ...

يضع في مكان آمن

الخزنة

= My mother locks her jewellery up / away in the safe.

• lock (n)

- In hotels, there is a lock on each door.

• locked (adj)

- You can't enter the office. The door is locked.

القفل

مقفل - مغلق

password

• password (n)

- You need to enter your password to check your email.

• password-protected (n)

- All the data on the central computer are password protected.

كلمة السر - كلمة المرور

محمي باستخدام كلمة المرور

phishing

• phishing (n)

- He was arrested for phishing.

• phisher (n)

- He was arrested because he was a phisher.

scam

• scam (n)

- There was no flat for sale. It was just a scam.

• scam (med) (v)

- It is easy for evil people to scam simple people.

• scammer (n)

- Don't believe him. He is a scammer.

عملية نصب أو احتيال - غش

ينصب علي - يغش

نصاب - محتال - غشاش

security

• secure (d) (v)

- The police secure citizens and their property.

• secure (d) (v)

- He used his farm to secure the loan.

• secure (adj) محمي

- Your money is secure in the bank.

• security (n) انعدام الأمن

- The security forces protected the building.

يحمي - يؤمن

يضمن (يستخدم شيء كضمان)

في خطر / غير محمي

انعدام الأمن

software

• software (n)

- I downloaded the new software.

برنامج حاسوبي (كلمة لا تُعد)

لاحظ التعبيرات والمصطلحات اللفظية التالية:

- install software - anti-virus software  
- برنامج مكافحة الفيروسات  
- a piece of software - برنامج حاسوبي

Altfwok.com موقع المتقوّف



### 3 مقاطع نهاية الكلمات Suffixes

Suffix	Function	Examples	أمثلة
-ing	تكون اسم / صفة	cyberbullying(n) embarrassing(adj)	التنمر الإلكتروني مضرج
-ise / -ize	تكون فعل	summarise / summarize	ملخص
-ive	تكون صفة	creative	مبتدع - خلاق
-ment	تكون اسم	management	إدارة
-ology / -logy	تكون اسم له علاقة بالعلم أو التكنولوجيا	technology	التكنولوجيا

### Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

أولوية : استجابات التلاميذ بنصف ساعة للواجب والتقييم

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- To join this club, fill in this .....  
a. app      b. application      c. malware      d. bucket
- A device is a machine or tool used for a/an ..... purpose.  
a. particular      b. popular      c. connected      d. online
- If I don't hear the ..... of the lock, you know the door isn't locked.  
a. comment      b. possibility      c. post      d. click
- His intelligence ..... itself to us in everything he does.  
a. contacts      b. connects      c. communicates      d. receives
- You are no more than a ..... who frightens people online.  
a. cyberbullying      b. cyberbully      c. phishing      d. scam
- ..... is a giant digital library.  
a. An internet      b. Internet      c. Net      d. The internet

### 5

### technology

- **technology (n)** : التكنولوجيا (المعدات والآلات) التي تساعد على التطور العلمي والتكنولوجي.  
Modern **technology** has made life easy.  
أحدث التكنولوجيات والتطورات العلمية
- **Information Technology (IT)** : تكنولوجيا المعلومات
- **advanced technology** : التكنولوجيا المتطورة
- **digital technology** : التكنولوجيا الرقمية
- **advances / developments in technology** : التطورات التكنولوجية
- **technologist (n)** : الخبير / خبيرة تكنولوجيا  
In our school, Mr. Mohammed Omar is a real **technologist**.
- **technological (adj)** : متعلق بالتكنولوجيا  
Life has become faster thanks to **technological** development.

### 2 Prefixes

Prefix	Function	Examples	أمثلة
anti-	ضد	anti-virus antibiotic	مقاوم الفيروسات مضاد حيوي
cyber-	متعلق بالتكنولوجيا والتكنولوجيا المعلومات	cyberbullying cyber-crime	التنمر الإلكتروني الجريمة الإلكترونية
dis-	يتكون العكس	dishonest	غير أمين - متعاذع
down-	أسفل	downstairs	بالطابق الأسفل
down-	من الإنترنت	download	تنزيل - تحميل (من الإنترنت)
mal-	سيء - خبيث - ضار	malware	البرمجيات الخبيثة
self-	الذات - ذاتي	self-management	إدارة الذات
up-	أعلى	upstairs	بالطابق العلوي
up-	إلى الإنترنت	upload	الرفع - وضع (على الإنترنت)



7. Love of beauty ..... the two writers.  
a. links b. uploads c. bullies d. provides
8. I can't leave the club. I'm ..... in a five-year contract.  
a. connected b. linked c. locked d. communicated
9. My father refused to use the family house to ..... my brother's loan from the bank.  
a. borrow b. lend c. secure d. endanger
10. Saudi Arabia buys military ..... like tanks and ..... missiles from the USA.  
a. software b. hardware c. presentation d. prediction

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	التعبير (fill in an application) يعني (بملاً طلب انضمام) ولا يمكن استخدام (app) لأنها تعني (تطبيق رقمي)
2.	a	التعبير (particular purpose) يعني (غرض محدد)
3.	d	التعبير (the click of the lock) يعني (نقرة القفل)
4.	c	التعبير (communicates itself to us) يعني (يظهر لنا بوضوح)
5.	b	الضمير (who) بعد الفراغ يتطلب استخدام اسم عاقل
6.	d	لا بد أن تُستخدم أداة التعريف (the) قبل الاسم (internet) بمعنى الشبكة الدولية
7.	a	الفعل (links) هنا يعني (يربط / يجمع بين)
8.	c	التعبير (be locked in) يعني (مُلازم به / مُقيّد به)
9.	c	الفعل (secure) هنا يعني (يضمن / يُستخدم كضمان لـ)
10.	b	الدبابات والصواريخ تعتبر مُعدات مادية (hardware)

### Advanced Exercise on Language

تدوين : التدريبات التالية بنسبها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. She ..... to the park with us in the evening tomorrow. She knows all about it.  
a. goes b. will go  
c. is going to go d. is going
2. I can see you are busy, so I ..... long.  
a. am not staying b. will stay  
c. won't stay d. am not going to stay
3. I ..... some old friends at the club tomorrow evening.  
a. will see b. am seeing  
c. am going to be seen d. see
4. I'll try to advise her but I know she .....  
a. doesn't listen b. isn't listening  
c. won't listen d. isn't going to listen
5. You ..... so lazy. Stop it, please. It's annoying.  
a. will be b. are being  
c. are going to be d. are to be
6. Being intelligent, she ..... first next year.  
a. comes b. is coming  
c. is going to come d. will come
7. I ..... here until he returns to tell him the instructions.  
a. will wait b. won't wait  
c. waited d. didn't wait
8. Not until the manager calls me ..... the office.  
a. I leave b. I have left  
c. will I leave d. did I leave

Altfwok.com موقع التفوق



No. Answer & Explanation

1.	d	- الذهاب إلى الحديقة أمر تم الاتفاق عليه كما يتضح من السياق
2.	c	- قرار سريع
3.	b	- لقاء الأصدقاء أمر تم الاتفاق عليه كما يتضح من السياق
4.	c	- مجرد تنبؤ حتى لو أنه بعد (I know)
5.	b	- يمكن استخدام (be) كفعل أساسي في الأزمنة المستمرة للدلالة على سلوك متعمد وغير مقبول غالباً لأنه وقتي وغير دائم
6.	d	- مجرد تنبؤ لأن هذه الكلمة تدل على صفة شخصية (ولا تعبر عن دليل) (intelligent)
7.	a	- السياق مستقبل والمعنى يتطلب الإثبات
8.	c	- إذا بدأت الجملة بـ (Not until) فلا بد أن يتقدم فعل مساعد مناسب للزمن على الفاعل في الجملة الرئيسية وهي هنا: - ... will I leave the office. - ولا يمكن استخدام (did I leave) لأن السياق مستقبل



# Test on Unit 5

Understand

Apply

Create

## Part One

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- "Security is maintained by the police." The word 'security' in this context is the antonym of .....  
a. dangerous b. endanger c. danger  
d. insecurity e. secure
- 'Advantages' is to 'disadvantages' as ..... is to .....  
a. correct b. greedy c. funny  
d. hard e. incorrect

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

- The company computer system was ..... They lost a lot of money.  
a. hijacked b. hacked c. kidnapped d. secured  
(الاعتداء عليه ٢٠٢٢)
- A/An ..... is a computer programme designed to do a specific function.  
a. app b. CV c. advert d. PhD  
(البرمجيات - العنصرية ٢٠٢٠)
- Implementing security at the internet gateway can block ..... email and sites.  
a. pushing b. punishing c. phishing d. pinching  
(التهديد ٢٠٢٢)
- The message to transfer money was fake. It was a big .....  
a. skim b. scar c. scam d. scan  
(الخداع - دزق ٢٠٢٠)
- Next week, she ..... 16 years old.  
a. is going to be b. going to be c. will be d. is being  
(المرحلة العمرية - تعاقب ٢٠٢٢)
- Everything is arranged, so my father ..... to Saudi Arabia.  
a. travel b. is travelling c. travels d. will travel  
(الترحال - خير القادر بهي ٢٠٢٢)
- The train to Aswan ..... at 7 a.m.  
a. leaves b. leave c. is leaving d. will leave  
(الترحال - خير القادر بهي ٢٠٢٢)
- Amr is a very clever student. I think he ..... the full mark.  
a. is going to get b. is getting c. gets d. will get  
(الدرجة الشاه ٢٠٢٢)
- I will see her after she ..... back.  
a. comes b. came c. will come d. had come



12. We have some fantastic news. My sister ..... a baby.  
 a. will have                      b. is having  
 c. shall have                    d. is going to have
13. .... you let me use your mobile?  
 a. Has                              b. Does                      c. Shall                      d. Will
14. Everything has been prepared for the journey. My family and I ..... to Alexandria tomorrow.  
 a. will go                              b. are going to go  
 c. is going                              d. are going
15. All driverless cars will be .....  
 a. electric                              b. electrician                      c. harmful                      d. electrostatic
16. A ..... is a secret word that you use to log into a site.  
 a. passport                              b. crossword                      c. password                      d. passage

• Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (الفيوم - أبشواي ٢٠٢٢)

Scientists believe that in twenty years from now we will be seeing driverless buses on the streets of major cities. This might seem unbelievable, but bus design experts are working in laboratories trying to design driverless buses. An automated means of transport would not only be reliable but also cheaper and environmentally friendly because the buses would run on electricity or biofuel.

Research has shown that nearly 60 % of the running cost of a bus is spent on the driver. Therefore, the use of a driverless bus would inevitably reduce operating costs. The vehicle is able to navigate by combining satellite technology with a special system. This system uses magnets which are positioned in the road. Driverless buses will probably make our everyday lives easier. However, we must **consider** what will happen to the bus drivers who will **eventually** find themselves without a job if this project becomes a reality.

17. Driverless buses will certainly ..... operating costs.  
 a. decrease                      b. double                      c. increase                      d. raise
18. When something is environmentally friendly, then it doesn't cause ..... to the environment.  
 a. mistake                      b. harm                      c. benefit                      d. advantage

19. The best meaning of the underlined word "**consider**" is .....  
 a. think about                      b. remember                      c. forget                      d. ignore
20. What is a suitable title for the passage?  
 a. The inevitable use of driverless buses  
 b. The merits of driverless buses  
 c. Bus drivers' future after using driverless buses  
 d. The merits and demerits of driverless buses
21. The antonym of the word "**eventually**" is .....  
 a. finally                              b. lastly                              c. firstly  
 d. mostly                              e. at first
22. Driverless cars will run on .....  
 a. unnatural fuel                      b. biofuel                              c. non-renewable energy  
 d. nuclear energy                      e. electricity
23. Due to driverless bus, bus drivers will find themselves .....  
 a. lazy                              b. jobless                              c. exhausted  
 d. unemployed                      e. busy

### Part Two

1. **Translate into Arabic :**  
 Social media wastes not only time, but also destroys health. There must be strict control over the amount of time one spends on social media.  
 (التأثيرية التكنولوجية ٢٠٢٢)
2. **Translate into English :**  
 لقد أصبحت الهاتف الذكية خطراً كبيراً على الأطفال والشباب لما تسببه لهم من أضرار صحية، كما تُنقدهم القدرة على التراجع بشكل جيد.  
 (الفيوم - أبشواي ٢٠٢٢)
3. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on:**  
**The effects of modern technology on communication**

• تلويح • للتدريب على أشكال مختلفة من قطع الفهم بنظام اسئلة MRQ. بنك الاسئلة



# UNIT 6

## Learning from literature

SB pages 62 : 71 WB pages 122 : 127

### Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

#### Reading :

A biography on Stevenson, A poem.  
The Gardener

#### Writing :

A short review of a poem; A book review

#### Listening :

A conversation about Robert Louis  
Stevenson

#### Speaking :

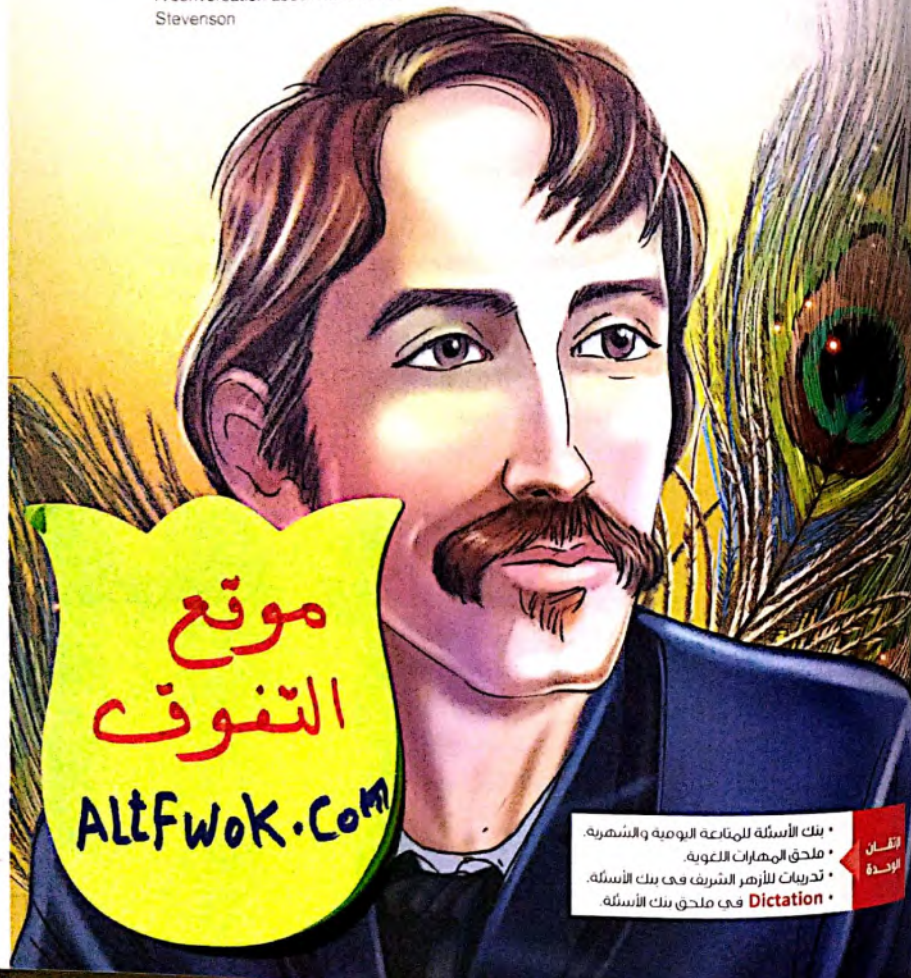
Polite requests

#### Language :

Verbs + infinitive or -ing form

#### Life skills :

Communication; Critical Thinking



موقع  
التفوق

AltFwok.com

• تلك الأسئلة للمتابعة اليومية والتشجيعية.  
• ملحق المهارات اللغوية.  
• تدريبات للأمر الشرف في تلك الأسئلة.  
• Dictation في ملحق تلك الأسئلة.

الأسئلة  
الوحدة

# PART ONE

LESSONS

# 1 & 2

SB pages 62 : 65 WB pages 122 & 123



## Part I

## Vocabulary

• لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

### تلوّيه

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

currant(n)	الكشمش (أحد أصناف العنب الخالي من البذر)	lock(ed) (n - v)	قفل - يقفل
row(n)	صف	novel(n)	رواية
currant row	صف من نبات الكشمش	plot(n)	قطعة أرض - جبانة (مقابر)
dig - dug (v)	يحفر - يغرس	plot(n)	الحبكة (ذروة الأحداث في القصة/الرواية)
gravel(n)	الحصى	plot (ted) (v)	يتزاظا / يتأمر - يخطط
walk(n)	مشي - ممر	poem(n)	قصيدة
keep the gravel walk	يسير على الطريق المهد بالحصى	poet(n)	شاعر
hay(n)	تبن / قش	poetic(adj)	شعري
literature(n)	الأدب	poetry(n)	الشعر - النظم

• من المفهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

### تلويه

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

adventure(n)	مغامرة	pirate(n)	قرصان
biography(n)	السيرة الذاتية	popular(adj)	ذو شعبية
case(n)	حالة - قضية	publish(ed) (v)	ينشر
choice(n)	اختيار	regret(ted) (n - v)	الندم - يندم - يئنف
choose - chose -	يختار	request(ed) (n - v)	طلب - يطلب
chosen (v)		romantic(adj)	رومانسي - جالم
compare(d) (v)	يقارن	rule(d) (n - v)	قاعدة - يتحكم
consider(ed) (v)	يعتبر - يفكر في	sailing(n)	الإبحار
discuss(ed) (v)	يناقش	Scottish(adj)	أسكتلندي
discussion(n)	مناقشة	sentence(n)	جملة
feed - fed(v)	يُطعم	serious(adj)	جاذ
follow(ed) (v)	يتبع / يلي - يتتبع	strange(adj)	غريب
form(n)	شكل - صيغة	suppose(d) (v)	يفترض



full-time (adj)	دوام كامل	tools (n)	أدوات
helpful (adj)	مفيد - منعمون	treasure (n)	كنز
improve (d) (v)	تحسن - يتحسن	unwell (adj)	مرضى
island (n)	جزيرة	warm (adj)	دافئ
joy (n)	فرحة - فجة	well (adj)	صحة جيدة
Kidnap (ped) (v)	خطف	while (n)	فترة من الوقت
lawyer (n)	محامي	wish (ed) (n - v)	أمنية - يتنى
path (n)	طريق مشاة - سبيل		

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

• تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواحي النظم المستخدمة - كتاب دة

Memorise	Understand
dig (v)	يحفّر - يحفر to break up and move earth with your hands or a machine
gravel (n)	الحصى small stones, used to make a surface for paths, roads, etc.
hay (n)	شعير / قش dried grass that people use to feed animals
lock (v)	يقفل to close something using a key
novel (n)	رواية a long written story in which the characters and events are usually imaginary
plot (n)	قطعة أرض a small piece of land for growing things on
poem (n)	قصيدة a piece of writing often arranged in lines that rhyme
poet (n)	شاعر someone who writes poems
poetry (n)	الشعر - النظم a form of literature, or artistic writing, that attempts to stir a reader's imagination or emotions
treasure (n)	كنز gold, silver, money, etc. that someone has hidden

### Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### 1 Key vocabulary

1. The best material for the construction of the garden walks is .....

- a. dig      b. hay      c. gravel      d. plot

2. My friend entered a ..... competition and won a prize last year.

- a. poetry      b. poetess      c. poems      d. poet

3. .... language is emotionally effective.

- a. Poet      b. Poets      c. Poems      d. Poetic

4. Shakespeare was a great playwright and a .....

- a. poetry      b. poet      c. poems      d. poetic

5. In addition to plays, Shakespeare wrote great ..... which are still admired.

- a. poetry      b. poet      c. poems      d. poetic

6. There are gravel ..... among trees and plants in parks.

- a. walks      b. rhymes      c. raws      d. candles

7. The cow was hungry, so the farmer found it some ..... to eat.

- a. butter      b. hay      c. water      d. cheese

8. I have a small ..... in my garden where I plant some vegetables.

- a. rhyme      b. farm      c. field      d. plot

9. Our house was robbed last night since we forgot to ..... the front door.

- a. look      b. lock      c. unlock      d. open

10. Novels, poems and plays are forms of .....

- a. science      b. fashion      c. dirt      d. literature

### 2 Important Vocabulary

11. Life is full of situations which we must accept as we have no .....

- a. appetite      b. choice      c. desire      d. need

12. We call a book about the life of someone a .....

- a. research      b. biography      c. novel      d. poem

13. .... a hungry family can be very expensive.

- a. Failing      b. Feeding      c. Falling      d. Feeling

14. In ..... you need help, call me at once.

- a. case      b. rule      c. adventure      d. joy

15. Some ..... attacked the ship to steal things from it.

- a. pirates      b. pilots      c. parents      d. pioneers

16. A group of words that start with a capital letter, end with a full stop

- and give some meaning is known as a .....  
a. word      b. line      c. sentence      d. verse



17. "He kept the gravel walk". In this sentence, 'walk' means a .....  
 a. journey      b. path      c. trip      d. movement
18. She is still ..... the issue. She hasn't made a decision yet.  
 a. Kidnapping      b. supposing      c. ruling      d. considering
19. Football is the most ..... game all over the world.  
 a. popular      b. romantic      c. unwell      d. helpful
20. Don't ..... yourself to others. Everyone is different.  
 a. regret      b. review      c. compare      d. request
21. Never ..... anything good you have done to anybody.  
 a. regret      b. grow      c. feed      d. lie
22. This ..... problem needs time and collaboration to be solved.  
 a. handy      b. easy      c. simple      d. serious
23. My father has a/an ..... job as the manager of a bank.  
 a. part-time      b. full-time      c. polite      d. impolite
24. President Sadat started to ..... in 1970.  
 a. Kidnap      b. suppose      c. rule      d. consider
25. She is ..... You can depend on her.  
 a. popular      b. romantic      c. unwell      d. helpful
26. I intend to stay with my aunt in the countryside for .....  
 a. while      b. whilst      c. a while      d. during
27. He has no health problems. This means he is .....  
 a. well      b. will      c. sick      d. bad
28. My grandfather's garage is full of ..... which he uses to fix cars.  
 a. barrows      b. gravels      c. tools      d. mice
29. I ..... she went shopping, but I am not sure.  
 a. Kidnap      b. suppose      c. rule      d. consider
30. I think he is ..... because he looks pale.  
 a. popular      b. romantic      c. unwell      d. helpful
31. Good citizens ..... the rules.  
 a. kill      b. forget      c. break      d. follow
32. To make a polite, ..... always say please and excuse me.  
 a. request      b. tick      c. phrase      d. organisation
33. Giving someone a red rose usually creates a/an ..... feeling.  
 a. popular      b. romantic      c. unwell      d. helpful

34. He likes ..... and often does new and risky things.  
 a. case      b. rule      c. adventure      d. joy
35. The child was ..... by a gang of thieves who then asked his parents to pay a large sum of money.  
 a. kidnapped      b. supposed      c. ruled      d. considered

### 3 Definitions

36. A person who writes poetry is called a .....  
 a. pioneer      b. novelist      c. poet      d. poem
37. A ..... row is a line of plants that have small fruits.  
 a. fruitless      b. bad      c. current      d. currant
38. A ..... is a long written story in which the characters and events are usually imaginary.  
 a. hay      b. verse      c. line      d. novel
39. A ..... is a piece of writing often arranged in lines that rhyme.  
 a. poet      b. poem      c. poetry      d. poetic
40. .... is a form of literature, or artistic writing, that attempts to stir a reader's imagination or emotions.  
 a. Poet      b. Poem      c. Poetry      d. Poetic
41. To ..... is to move something in or under soil using a tool.  
 a. lock      b. swing      c. uncover      d. dig
42. .... is dried grass that people use to feed animals.  
 a. Plot      b. Hay      c. Treasure      d. Swing
43. The word ..... means gold, silver, money, etc. that someone has hidden.  
 a. treasure      b. money      c. gemstone      d. property
44. To ..... is to close something using a key.  
 a. lock      b. close      c. shut      d. book
45. A ..... is a small piece of land for growing things on.  
 a. rock      b. plot      c. ground      d. soil
46. .... is small stones, used to make a surface for paths, roads etc.  
 a. Sand      b. Stone      c. Rock      d. Gravel



## Part II Vocabulary Study

تأليفه ساعد فؤادك على الارتقاء بمستواك في طريق استذكار هذا الدرس مسبقاً بشكل جيد وفي تدريباته

## 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

be	best known for مشهور أكثر -	improve (his) health يحسن صحته
	a job يؤدي مهمة - يقوم بعمل	the gravel walk يمشي على الطريق الممهّد بالحصى (وليس على النباتات)
do	a favour يصنع معروفًا	a film ينتج فيلم
	something for لأجل يقوم بشيء	a request يطلب
follow	rules يتبع القواعد	a surface يمهّد سطح
		preparations for يقوم باستعدادات لـ
		make

## 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
lock-up	small prison سجن صغير (التخشي)
walk	route / path طريق للتزّهر سراً
well-known	famous معروف - مشهور

## 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
avoid	يتجنب	confront	يراجه
boring	مُمل	interesting, exciting	مُثَبِّت
formal	رسمي	informal	غير رسمي - دارج
full-time	دوام كامل	part-time	جزئي - لبعض الوقت
lock	يقفل	unlock	يفتح
popular	ذو شعبية	unpopular	غير شعبي
well-known	معروف - مشهور	unknown, nameless	مغمور - غير معروف

## 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

gravel (n)	حصى	The paths in the park are covered with gravel.
gravelled / gravelly (adj)	مغطى بالحصى	The paths in the park are gravelled/gravelly.

lock (v)	يقفل	I locked the door.
lock (n)	قفل	There's a lock on the door.
locked (adj)	مقفول	The door is locked.

poem (n)	قصيدة	I wrote a poem.
poet / poetess (n)	شاعر / شاعرة	I am a poet / a poetess.
poetry (n)	الشعر - النظم	I write poetry.
poetic (adj)	شِعْريّ	I like Shawki's poetic language.

## 5 Expressions &amp; Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a book of facts كتاب علمي	I'm afraid I can't	يؤسفني أنني لا أستطيع
a full-time writer كاتب مُتفرّغ	In particular	بالتحديد - على وجه الخصوص
a good length for a poem طول مناسب لقصيدة	its rhythm is too slow	إيقاعه بطيء جداً
a long time ago منذ وقت طويل	lines that rhyme	سطور شعرية ذات قافية
a piece of writing عمل كتابي	not feeling very well	شعري أنه ليس بخير
an adventure story قصة مغامرة	on his way home	في طريق عودته للمنزل
be best known for مشهور أكثر به	similar to	مشابه لـ
different from/to مختلف عن	this was where	لقد كان ذلك هو المكان الذي
faculty of arts كلية الآداب	travel books	أدب الرحلات
for a while لفترة من الوقت	wedding party	حفلة زفاف

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

arrange ... in يُرتب ... على شكل	learn from يتعلم من
break up يُفكّك	make ... into يحوّل ... إلى
come from يأتي من	mix with يختلط به
compare ... to يقارن ... به	put ... away يضع ... جانباً - يتركب
get away from يتبعد عن	sail from ... to ... يسافر من ... إلى ...
learn about يتعلم عن	



## 7 Clear the confusion

row / raw

• row

- In class, I sit in the third row.

• raw

- People can't eat raw meat.

صف (جنا إلى جنب)

نر / غير مطهى / خام

currant / current

• currant(n)

- There are some currant trees in the garden.

• current(adj)

- I follow current events on the internet.

نبات الكشمش (له ثمار تشبه العنب أو الزبيب)

حالي / جاري

## General Exercise On Vocabulary study

• MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- Thank you for the ..... you have done for me.  
a. favour      b. home      c. rules  
d. request      e. job
- You will need to make .....  
a. a favour      b. preparations      c. reason  
d. a request      e. health
- A person who is popular is not .....  
a. small      b. unknown      c. adult  
d. famous      e. unpopular
- 'Clear' is to 'pure' as 'walk' is to .....  
a. route      b. go      c. step  
d. path      e. come
- Giza Pyramids are well-known all over the world. The antonyms of the word "well-known" are .....  
a. celebrated      b. nameless      c. well-built  
d. unknown      e. famous
- Many people left the film before the end because it was very boring. The antonyms of "boring" are .....  
a. annoying      b. interesting      c. terrifying  
d. exciting      e. frightening

(ادارة الشريعة - لغات ٢٠٢٢)

(القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٢)

7. Some types of sand are ..... into glass.

- a. thrown      b. turned      c. fallen  
d. made      e. done

8. I asked my friend to wait for ..... until I get dressed.

- a. good      b. ever      c. some time  
d. while      e. a while

• MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Good citizens always ..... the rules.  
a. break      b. have      c. follow      d. spend
- The fresh air of the countryside has ..... my health.  
a. made      b. did      c. improved      d. stayed
- He had offered to help even before I ..... a request.  
a. made      b. did      c. improved      d. stayed
- Formal and informal are .....  
a. synonyms      b. antonyms      c. lines      d. verses
- "She had a full-time job." "Full" here is an antonym of .....  
a. part      b. empty      c. little      d. few
- In a park, we walk along paths which are covered with .....  
a. gravel      b. gravelled      c. gravelling      d. gravels
- In a park, we walk along paths which are .....  
a. gravel      b. gravelled      c. gravelling      d. gravels
- He used a heavy hammer to break ..... the small rock.  
a. in      b. up      c. of      d. into
- Look at this shop. This is ..... I saw you for the first time.  
a. where      b. when      c. what      d. who
- Being sociable اجتماعي, he likes to mix ..... others.  
a. with      b. by      c. from      d. of
- I am very happy in my ..... job.  
a. currant      b. current      c. currency      d. currently
- Cotton is a ..... material.  
a. some      b. same      c. row      d. raw



## Part III Reading &amp; Listening

## 1 Reading Texts

## A. Robert Louis Stevenson

(SB page 62)

Robert Louis Stevenson was born in Scotland in 1850 and died 44 years later<sup>(1)</sup> in Samoa, a small island<sup>(2)</sup> in the South Pacific<sup>(3)</sup>. He was not always well<sup>(4)</sup> because the weather<sup>(5)</sup> in Edinburgh was too cold for him. When he was a child, he couldn't always go to school. He studied to become a lawyer<sup>(6)</sup> at Edinburgh University, but he always wanted to write. At the age of 21, he decided to become a full-time writer.<sup>(7)</sup>



## Check Vocabulary

- (1) فيما بعد
- (2) جزيرة
- (3) المحيط الهادي
- (4) بصحة جيدة
- (5) الطقس
- (6) محامي
- (7) كاتب متفرغ
- (8) أكثر دفئاً
- (9) يُحسِن
- (10) فترة من الوقت
- (11) برغم أن
- (12) مشهور بـ
- (13) روايات
- (14) مختطف
- (15) قضية
- (16) قصائد
- (17) كتب الرحلات
- (18) ناجح
- (19) مغامرة
- (20) قراصنة
- (21) ذو شعبية
- (22) يتحول إلى

He often travelled to warmer<sup>(8)</sup> places to try to improve<sup>(9)</sup> his health. For a while<sup>(10)</sup> he lived in France and this was where he met his wife, Fanny. She was from the United States, so Stevenson also travelled to America with her.

Although<sup>(11)</sup> he is best known for<sup>(12)</sup> his novels,<sup>(13)</sup> like Kidnapped<sup>(14)</sup> and Strange Case<sup>(15)</sup> of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde, Stevenson also wrote many poems<sup>(16)</sup> and travel books.<sup>(17)</sup> His first successful<sup>(18)</sup> novel was Treasure Island – an adventure<sup>(19)</sup> story about pirates.<sup>(20)</sup> His books are still very popular<sup>(21)</sup> today and many of them have been made into<sup>(22)</sup> films.

## B. The Gardener (SB page 63)

The gardener<sup>(1)</sup> does not love to talk. He makes me keep the gravel<sup>(2)</sup> walk; And when he puts his tools<sup>(3)</sup> away, he locks<sup>(4)</sup> the door and takes the key.<sup>(5)</sup>



## Check Vocabulary

- (1) بستاني
- (2) الخصى
- (3) أدوات
- (4) يقفل
- (5) مفتاح

Away behind the currant<sup>(6)</sup> row,<sup>(7)</sup> Where no one else but cook<sup>(8)</sup> may go, Far in the plots,<sup>(9)</sup> I see him dig.<sup>(10)</sup> Old and serious,<sup>(11)</sup> brown and big.

He digs the flowers, green, red, and blue, Nor wishes<sup>(12)</sup> to be spoken to.

He digs the flowers and cuts the hay,<sup>(13)</sup> And never seems<sup>(14)</sup> to want to play.

- (6) نبات الكشمش
- (7) صف
- (8) طباخ
- (9) قطع أرض
- (10) يحفر - يفرس
- (11) جاد
- (12) ينهي
- (13) ينزق
- (14) يبدو

## 2 Workbook Texts

## A. Poem 1 My friend's cat

Every day when I come home  
I look for my friend's cat  
I usually find this cat  
Lying in an old hat.  
What do you think of that?

## Poem 2 The boy's toy

There was a small boy  
Who had a wooden<sup>(1)</sup> toy  
He loved that toy.  
One day he took it to bed  
And slept with it by<sup>(2)</sup> his head. He loved that toy.  
When the boy was woken<sup>(3)</sup>  
He found the toy was broken!<sup>(4)</sup>  
He loved that toy.

(WB page 124)

## Check Vocabulary

- (1) خشبي
- (2) بجوار
- (3) استيقظ
- (4) مكسور

## B. Sherif : Taha, could you do something for me ?

(WB page 123)

Taha : Yes, of course. What is it ?

Sherif : Can you play football with us tonight ? We need another player.

Taha : No, I am afraid I can't. I hurt my leg last week. I can't run on it.

Sherif : Ok, don't worry. I'll ask Omar.

## C. Randa : Good morning. I wonder if you can help me.

Assistant : Certainly. What is it ?

Randa : I don't suppose you could tell me who the manager is ?

Assistant : Yes, of course. It's Mr. Mansour.

Randa : Could you do me a favour ?

Can you give him my CV ?

I'd really like to work here.

Assistant : No problem, I'll give it to him when I next see him.



3 Listening Texts

Audioscript

(58 page 64)

Teacher : This week we're studying the Scottish<sup>(1)</sup> writer, Robert Louis Stevenson. In particular<sup>(2)</sup> his poetry not his novels. Have any of you heard about him or read any of his work ?

Nesma : Didn't he write Treasure Island ? I tried reading it last year, but it was a bit boring<sup>(3)</sup> so I decided to watch the film instead.

Teacher : Did you like it ?

Nesma : Yes, it was really good. I love adventure films<sup>(4)</sup> and I enjoy reading adventure stories, too. I just found Treasure Island a bit difficult.

Teacher : Well, it was written a long time ago. He was born in 1850 and Treasure Island was published<sup>(5)</sup> in 1881. And Wafaa, have you read any of his books ?

Wafaa : I don't think so. I prefer reading romantic stories<sup>(6)</sup> and poems.

Teacher : Well, Stevenson wrote poems too. In fact, he wrote all kinds of things. He began writing stories when he was a child and unwell. Unfortunately, Stevenson was often very ill and he finished writing Treasure Island while he was ill in bed. He continued to write more books, including a collection of poems<sup>(7)</sup> called A Child's Garden of Verses and he also travelled a lot to get away from<sup>(8)</sup> the cold Scottish weather.

Nesma : Where did he go ?

Teacher : As a young man, he went to Europe, France and Switzerland<sup>(9)</sup> mainly<sup>(10)</sup>. In fact, his first book was about his travels in France. He and his family loved sailing and they wanted to sail from America, where they were living, to the South Pacific. The family chose to build a house in Samoa and the Stevenson family lived there until he died in 1894.

Now, for this week's lesson, I want you to choose a story or a poem by Stevenson and bring it to class to discuss. Then ...

Check Vocabulary

- (1) لاسكتلندي الجنسية
- (2) على وجه الخصوص
- (3) مملة قتيلا
- (4) أفلام المغامرات
- (5) ينشر
- (6) قصص رومانسية
- (7) مجموعة مختلفة من القصائد
- (8) يهرب من
- (9) دولة سويسرا
- (10) في القلب إلى حد بعيد

Audioscript

(58 page 65)

Wafaa : I don't have time to go to the library this afternoon. Could you do me a favour<sup>(1)</sup> and go for me ?

Nesma : Yes, of course. Which books do you want me to get ?

Wafaa : Can you find A Child's Garden of Verses ? I prefer reading poetry to long stories.

Nesma : No problem. But, could you do something for me when you're in town, please ?

Wafaa : Yes, what is it ?

Nesma : I don't really enjoy reading, so can you get me a DVD of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde ? Then, I won't have to read it !

Wafaa : Nesma !

Check Vocabulary

(1) favour

Listening WB

(WB page 125)

Lesson 4

A sailor went to sea, sea, sea.

To see what he could see, see, see.

But all that he could see, see, see.

Was the bottom of the deep blue sea, sea, sea.

Part IV

Language

Verbs + infinitive / - ing form

1 Verbs + to + inf.

afford to	بتحمل تكاليف	manage to	يتسكن من
agree to	يوافق أن	offer to	يعرض أن
arrange to	يرتب أن	plan to	يخطط أن
choose to	يختار أن	promise to	يعهد أن
decide to	يقرر أن	refuse to	يرفض أن
expect to	يتوقع أن	threaten to	يهدد أن
fail to	يفشل في أن	want to	يريد أن
help to	يساعد في	wish to	يتسنى أن
hope to	يأمل أن	warn (not) to	يخبر أن / ألا
intend to	ينوي أن	would like to	يريد أن
learn to	يتعلم أن		

- Hazem is planning to go to university next year. He hopes to study medicine.



بعض الأفعال السابقة قد يأتي بعدها المفعول أولاً ثم (to + inf) :

- I wanted Omar to work hard.
- They expected me to come first.

في حالة النفي يمكن أن تُستخدم (not to) بعد الأفعال السابقة ويكون معناها مختلف عن نفي الفعل نفسه، لاحظ الفرق :

- Ahmed decided not to use my tools.  
(أخذ أحمد قراراً ألا يستخدم أدواتي - لن يستخدمها)
- Ahmed didn't decide to use my tools.  
(لم يقرر أحمد أن يستخدم أدواتي - قد يقرر أن يفعل ذلك فيما بعد)

بعض الأفعال السابقة يمكن أن تأتي بعدها حروف جر أخرى غير (to) بمعنى مختلفة، لاحظ :

- I agree with you. (أتفق معك)
- The couple agreed on a time for the wedding. (اتفقوا على)

بعض الأفعال السابقة يُمكن أن يتبعها (that) ثم جملة :

- They decided that they won't sell the family house.

### Mini Test 1

Apply

Choose the correct Answer from a, b, c or d:

- I planned ..... the weekend with my grandparents.  
a. spend      b. to spend      c. spending      d. to spending
- I promise ..... I will be always helpful to you.  
a. to      b. with      c. on      d. that
- This player intends ..... this year. He can play for two more seasons.  
a. retire      b. to retire      c. not to retire      d. retiring

### 2 Verb + [inf. + ing]

avoid	يتجنب	include	يشمل / يتضمن
consider	يفكر في	keep	يظل / يستمر في
deny	ينكر	mind	يمنع
dislike	يكره	practise	يمارس
enjoy	تستمتع	recommend	يوصي بـ / يُجِيز
finish	ينهي - ينتهي	suggest	يقترح
imagine	يتخيل		

- You should avoid going out late at night.
- She has just finished cleaning her bedroom.

في حالة النفي يمكن أن تُستخدم (not + inf. + ing) بعد الأفعال السابقة ويكون معناها مختلف عن نفي الفعل نفسه، لاحظ الفرق :

- He suggested not going to the park.  
(اقترح عدم الذهاب إلى الحديقة - لا يريد أن يذهب)
- He didn't suggest going to the park.  
(لم يقترح الذهاب إلى الحديقة - ليست فكرته)

لاحظ استخدام صيغة (subjunctive) مع الأفعال التالية :

suggest / recommend / advise / ask ... + (that) + Subject + inf. / should + inf. ...

- I suggest that Sama join the school trip. (Not : joins)
- = I suggest that Sama should join the school trip.

### Mini Test 2

Choose the correct Answer from a, b, c or d:

- Do you enjoy ..... a sport ?  
a. do      b. doing      c. to do      d. to doing
- He denied ..... me before. He said it was our first meeting.  
a. seeing      b. to see      c. not seeing      d. not to see
- I can't imagine ..... in the city. I enjoy its excitement and noise.  
a. live      b. to live      c. living      d. not living
- She suggested that her mother ..... another doctor.  
a. seeing      b. to see      c. see      d. will see
- Would you mind ..... me a hand?  
a. to give      b. giving      c. being given      d. give

### 3 Verb + [inf. + ing] / [to + inf.]

الأفعال التالية يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) دون فرق في المعنى :

begin / start	يبدأ	like	يحب / يفضل
continue	يستمر	love	يحب
hate	يكره	prefer	يفضل

- ex. - We continued to run / running until we got home.
- The wind began to blow / blowing just as we arrived home from school.
- ولكن لاحظ أنه إذا استخدمنا (would) قبل الأفعال love / prefer / like يأتي بعدها غالباً (to + inf) :

- ex. - I'd prefer to finish my work early today.
- I'd love to attend your birthday party.
- لاحظ أن (starting / beginning) يأتي بعدها (to + inf) فقط : (Not : starting getting)
- ex. - The weather is starting to get colder.



① الأفعال التالية يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) مع وجود فرق واضح في المعنى  
remember, forget, stop, try, go on + to + inf. / (inf. + ing)

### 1. remember

- remember + to + inf. يتذكر أن يفعل  
ex. - Remember to bring your homework tomorrow.
- remember + gerund يتذكر أنه فعل  
ex. - I remember waking up in the middle of the night.

### 2. forget

- forget + to + inf. ينسى أن يفعل (هنا الشيء - لم يتم القيام به)  
ex. - She forgot to buy her grandfather's newspaper, so he was angry.
- forget + gerund ينسى أنه فعل (فعل الشيء - لكنه نسي ذلك)  
ex. - I forgot phoning the manager, so I phoned him again.

### 3. stop

- stop + to + inf. يتوقف عما يفعله لكي يفعل شيء آخر  
ex. - On her way home, Dina stopped to talk to her friend Warda.
- stop + gerund يتوقف عن فعل شيء (بشكل دائم أو مؤقت)  
ex. - Dina and Warda have stopped talking to each other.

### 4. regret

- regret + (inf. + ing) يندم على شيء قد فعله  
ex. - I regret wasting my time.
- regret + to + inf. ... يشعر بالأسف لأنه مضطر لعمل شيء  
ex. - I regret to tell you that your arm is broken.

### 5. go on

- go on + (inf. + ing) يستمر في القيام بنفس العمل أو النشاط  
ex. - Rodayna went on studying physics for three hours.
- go on + (to + inf.) ينتقل من عمل إلى عمل آخر  
ex. - Rodayna studied physics for three hours, then she went on to study Arabic.

### 6. try

- try + to + inf. يحاول أن يفعل  
ex. - You tried to answer the difficult question, didn't you?
- try + (inf. + ing) يجرب القيام بشيء ليرى النتيجة  
ex. - Try taking an aspirin. It might work.

## Mini Test 3

Choose the correct Answer from a, b, c or d:

- It continued ..... for three hours non-stop.  
a. raining      b. to raining      c. to rain      d. a & c
- I'd love ..... your birthday party. Surely, I'll be there on time.  
a. attending      b. to attend      c. to attending      d. a & b
- Remember ..... off the gas before you go out.  
a. attending      b. turning      c. to turn      d. to be turned
- I remember ..... that man before.  
a. seeing      b. to see      c. to seeing      d. a & b
- He stopped ..... because it affected his health badly.  
a. to smoking      b. smoking      c. to smoke      d. b & c
- He stopped ..... outside because other people on the bus refused to let him smoke while driving.  
a. to smoking      b. smoking      c. to smoke      d. b & c

## Notes for more understanding

### Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

① يُستخدم المصدر بدون (to) بعد الأفعال الناقصة:

can / could / may / might / must / mustn't / needn't / shall / should / will / would .....

- She can speak 3 languages.

② جميع حروف الجر يأتي بعدها اسم (noun) أو فعل مضاف له (ing):

- I will go on working for this company.

- I'm worried about the health of my mother.

③ يُستخدم اسم مكان بعد حرف الجر (to) عندما يكون معناه (إلى):

- They went to Aswan.

④ يُستخدم الفعل في المصدر (inf.) بعد حرف الجر (to) عندما يكون معناه (أن - لكي):

- I hope to win the next match.

- We work hard to achieve our goals in life.



adapt to	يتكيف مع	be opposed to	يعترض على
apply .... to	يطبق / يطبق على	contribute to	يساهم في
be used to	كان معتاد على	lead to	يؤدي إلى
become used to	تعود على	look forward to	ينتظر إلى
get used to	تعود على	object to	يعترض على
be accustomed to	معتاد على	take to	يعتاد على

- Pollution leads to having health problems.  
= Pollution leads to health problems.

نستخدم (to + inf.) في حالة وجود فعل بعد بعض الصفات مثل:

happy / sad / glad / ready مستعد / unwilling /  
eager متحمس / pleased / lucky / amazed .....

- She was ready to live in Aswan after getting married there.

في حالة وجود فعل بعد (know / show / learn / teach / tell) نستخدم (how to + inf.) أو (to + inf.) فقط ولكن الفعلين (know/show) لابد أن يليهما (how to + inf.):

- I don't know to use this mobile. (X)
- I don't know how to use this mobile. (✓)
- I'll show you to use this mobile. (X)
- I don't show you how to use this mobile. (✓)

في حالة وجود فعل بعد (what / how / where.....) نستخدم (to + inf.):  
- He got lost; he didn't know where to go.

الأفعال و الظروف الآتية يأتي بعدها inf. فقط بدون to:

had better يفضل / would rather ينبغي /  
make يدع - يسمح / let يجعل - يصنع

- She would rather stay at home.

ولكن لاحظ الفعل (make) إذا ما استخدم في صيغة المبني للمجهول يتم استخدام (to + inf.) بعده

- She was made to write the essay again.

لاحظ استخدام (to + inf.) بعد الكلمات (the first / the second / the last / the next)

- Mona was the last to watch the film.

الفعل (help) يأتي بعده المصدر مع (to) أو بدونها:

- He helped me do (to do) the job.

11 لاحظ ما يلي : It + be + adj. صفة + (for + subj. / obj. pron.) to + inf. ...

- It was easy for me to do the job.

12 الأفعال الآتية يأتي بعدها (inf. + ing) في حالة عدم وجود مفعول ، و يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) في حالة وجود مفعول:

advise يوصي به / allow يسمح / forbid يمنع / recommend يوصي به /  
permit يسمح / encourage يشجع

- We don't allow smoking here.

= We don't allow anyone to smoke here.

13 الأفعال الآتية يستخدم بعدها المصدر ليدل على أننا تابعنا الحدث بالكامل ويأتي بعدها (inf. + ing) ليدل على أننا تابعنا جزء من الحدث:

hear يسمع / see يرى / notice يلاحظ / watch يشاهد

- I heard Mariam sing a song. = I heard the whole song.
- I heard Mariam singing a song. = I heard part of the song.

## General Exercise On Language Apply

• التمرينات التالية مرتبة بشكل متدرج تصاعدياً حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم

1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My mother promised ..... me to finish my school project.

- a. helps      b. help      c. helping      d. to help

2. She avoided ..... her older sister while she was studying.

- a. to disturb      b. disturbing      c. disturbed      d. disturbs

3. Our national team is expected ..... in the next world cup finals.

- a. play      b. playing      c. to play      d. to playing

4. The gardener allowed us ..... in the park.

- a. cycle      b. to cycle      c. cycling      d. to cycling

5. He is very ill, so he stopped .....

- a. smoke      b. smoking      c. to smoke      d. smoked

6. Do you regret not ..... the museum when you were in Cairo?

- a. to visit      b. to visiting      c. visit      d. visiting



7. They want ..... their new house. (التراسعالية ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. to painting b. to be painted c. to paint d. painted
8. My parents suggested ..... to the theatre yesterday. (البع دماي ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. going b. go c. went d. gone
9. He is looking forward to ..... his friends. (إدارة الشرقية - لغات ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. meet b. meets c. met d. meeting
10. I like ..... football. (الشهيد سيد زكريا الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. to play b. playing c. play d. a & b
11. Civil engineers get used to ..... outdoors in extreme conditions. (إدارة القصر ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. have worked b. working c. works d. worked
12. Don't forget ..... our books with you the next time you come. (إدارة الزينية ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. to bring b. to bringing c. bringing d. bring
13. Since the invention of the internet, I stopped ..... newspapers. (التراسعالية ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. to buy b. to buying c. buying d. bought
14. Ali: I have got flu. Bassem: Try ..... an aspirin. It's good. (ادفو الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. to take b. taking c. to be taken d. to taking
15. I tried ..... my eyes open, but I couldn't. (غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. keep b. to keep c. kept d. keeping
16. Many people in our town objected ..... the new bridge. (الطود - التحرير الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. to build b. to building c. build d. building
17. I was made ..... a fine for not wearing the seat belt. (ادفو - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. pay b. paying c. to pay d. paid
18. When I visit a foreign country, I'd rather ..... in a good hotel. (الفيوم - إرشواي ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. stayed b. stay c. staying d. can stay
19. I recommend that he ..... to English programmes. (الفيوم - إرشواي ٢٠٢٢)  
 a. is listening b. was listened c. listen d. listening

• تلوته • ذاكر ما تم شرحه في الشاعرة جيداً واستعد للتدريبات الشاملة ضمن الدرسين الثلاث والاربع.



Part I

Vocabulary

• تلوته • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيداً ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

candlelight(n)	نور الشمعة	line(n)	سطر شعري
contrast(ed) (n - v)	تباين / اختلاف - يقارن	rhyme(d) (n - v)	القافية - يُقفي / يُشجع
garden(n)	بستان	rhythm(n)	إيقاع
gardener(n)	بستاني (جنايني)	variety(n)	تنوع - تعددية
hop(ped) (n - v)	قفزة - يقفز - يحجل	verse(n)	فقرة شعرية
		issue(n)	قضية

• تلوته • من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

activity(n)	نشاط	especially(adv)	بصفة خاصة
author(n)	مؤلف	fair(adj)	عادل
brief(adj)	مختصر	grown-ups(n)	الكبار
broken(adj)	مكسور	issue(n)	قضية
clear(adj)	صافي - واضح	hate(d) (v)	يكره
clearly(adv)	بوضوح	narrate(d) (v)	يسرد - يروي
dedicate(d) (v)	يخصص - يُكرّس	repeated(adj)	متكرر
describe(d) (v)	يصف	review(n)	عرض نقدي
determine(d) (v)	يحدد - يضمن على	situation(n)	موقف
differently(adv)	بشكل مختلف	subject(n)	موضوع
dress(ed) (n - v)	فستان - يرتدي ملابس	summary(n)	تلخيص

موقع التفوق AltFwok.com



### 3 Definitions تعريفات

تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلم المستهدفة - هام جدا

تلويح

Memorise	Understand
hop (ped) (v) يحجل	to move by jumping on one foot
rhyme (d) (v) يتطابق في القافية	if two words or lines of poetry rhyme, they end with the same sound, including a vowel
rhythm (n) إيقاع	a repeated sound in music, poems, etc
verse (n) فقرة شعرية	lines that form one part of a poem

### Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### 1 Key vocabulary

- Does it ..... with sit?  
a. read b. rhyme c. write d. roll (العامرية الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
- If you ..... some of his early writing with his later work, you can see how much he improved.  
a. contrast b. hack c. comment d. lock (البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٠)
- The word "blue" ..... with "clue".  
a. pinches b. rhymes c. includes d. hides
- It was a very long poem. It had about 60 .....  
a. verses b. rows c. rhythms d. pleasures
- I had to ..... after the injury I had yesterday.  
a. run b. hope c. hop d. happen (السواح - طما ٢٠٢٠)
- He is interested in social .....  
a. issues b. hopping c. mutiny d. verse
- When the lights go out at night, we usually depend on .....  
a. daylight b. candlelight c. the sun d. darkness
- Children like poems and music that have strong .....  
a. verse b. rhyme c. rhythm d. poem

9. We have a small ..... in front of our house in which we plant flowers.

- a. park b. field c. garden d. villa

10. The ..... of taste, shape and colour is what makes one fruit different from another.

- a. variety b. stress c. sentence d. line

11. This poem has twelve verses, four ..... each.

- a. poems b. poets c. rhymes d. lines

#### 2 Important Vocabulary

12. She always ..... in front of the mirror.

- a. dresses b. wears c. puts on d. takes (الشرقية - الرافيق ٢٠٢٠)

13. It was not ..... to play the final match on the other team's home town.

- a. broken b. brief c. fair d. Scottish

14. He expresses his ideas in a ..... way.

- a. clearness b. clarity c. clear d. clearly

15. He expresses his ideas .....

- a. clearness b. clarity c. clear d. clearly

16. Mr Mohammed has a good style in ..... short stories.

- a. determining b. narrating c. hating d. sailing

17. As a young man, I used to ask ..... for advice because they are wise . حكماء .

- a. teenagers b. infants c. kids d. grown-ups

18. He won't play tomorrow's match because he has a ..... arm.

- a. broken b. brief c. fair d. long-term

19. As a mother, she ..... all her time to her children.

- a. borrows b. takes c. dedicates d. receives

20. His ..... mistakes make me angry. He never seems to learn from them.

- a. pleasant b. popular c. repeated d. enjoyable

21. The police haven't ..... the cause of the accident yet.

- a. determined b. narrated c. hated d. described



22. Most managers do not like long reports. They prefer ..... notes.  
a. broken b. brief c. fair d. Scottish

### 3 Definitions

23. .... is a repeated sound in music, poems, etc.  
a. Rhythm b. Rhyme c. Verse d. Stanza
24. If two words or lines of poetry ....., they end with the same sound, including a vowel.  
a. dig b. rhythm c. rhyme d. swing
25. Lines that form one part of a poem are called a .....  
a. poet b. verse c. rhyme d. rhythm
26. To ..... is to move by jumping on one foot.  
a. hope b. hop c. jump d. leap

## Part II Vocabulary Study

تأنيبه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلزمات لفظية

come	home	يعود للبيت	have	a rhythm	به إيقاع
give	a reason for	يُبرز	stay	fun	يرح / يلهو
spend	a rhythm	تعطي إيقاع		in bed	يلزم الفراش
	time reading	يقضي الوقت في القراءة			

### 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
clear	واضح obvious, understandable, direct, uncomplicated, explicit
clear	صافي bright, cloudless
grown-ups	الكبار adults
hate	يكره loathe, detest

### 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
agree about	يتفق في	disagree about	يختلف في
clear	واضح	vague, unclear, ambiguous	غامض
clear	صافي	cloudy	غائم
dress	يرتدي ملابس - يُلبس	undress	يخلع ملابس - يُعري
fair	عادل	unfair	ظالم - جائر
hate	يكره	love, like	يحب
light	النور	dark, darkness	ظلام

### 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

clear	
clear(ed) (v)	يوضح - يُقَيِّم - My teacher <b>cleared</b> the difficult point for me.
clearance (n)	إزالة - <b>Clearance</b> of forests is dangerous to the environment.
clarity (n)	وضوح - The <b>clarity</b> of the meaning makes it easy to understand it.
clear (adj)	واضح - It is <b>clear</b> that he is angry.
clearly (adv)	بوضوح - He is <b>clearly</b> angry.
hop	
hop(ped) (v)	يقفز - يحجل - This bird <b>hops</b> .
hop (n)	قفزة - This bird takes short <b>hops</b> .
hopping (adj)	القفز - الحجل - This is a <b>hopping</b> bird.
rhyme	
rhyme(d) (v)	يسجع - يُقَيِّم - 'Tin' <b>rhymes</b> with 'thin'
rhyme (n)	القافية - قصيدة - This poem has a nice <b>rhyme</b> .
variety	
vary(ied) (v)	يتنوع - يختلف - People <b>vary</b> in size and personality.
variety (n)	تشكيلة متنوعة - تنوع - There is a <b>variety</b> of cotton clothes in this shop.
various (adj)	متعدد - مختلف - There're <b>various</b> cotton clothes in this shop.
variable (adj)	متغير - مُتبدِّل - The speed of this car is <b>variable</b> .



5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات

a brief summary	ملخص موجز	everyday life	الحياة اليومية
a clear conclusion	خاتمة واضحة	feel differently	لديه شعور مختلف
a form of writing	أحد أنواع الكتابة	I hated it	كُنت أكره ذلك
a mind map	خريطة ذهنية	in addition to	بالإضافة إلى
at night	في الليل	in my opinion	من وجهة نظري
be outside playing	الخروج بالخارج	make it easy to say	يجعل من السهل قولها
be special about	الشيء الخاص	quite the other way	على العكس تمامًا
by candlelight	على ضوء الشمعة	stressed words	كلمات مشددة في النطق
by day	نهارًا	summarize the main points	يُلخص النقاط الرئيسية
compare and contrast	مقارنة وشرح التباين	the part I find boring is ...	الجزء الذي أراه مملاً هو ...
describe how I feel	صف كيف أشعر	when it is light	في النهار
each other	بعضهم البعض	words that rhyme	كلمات تُقفي مع بعضها البعض
easy to remember	سهل التذكر		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

agree about	يتفق في	look for	يبحث عن
disagree about	يختلف في	rhyme with	يُقفي مع
get up	يقوم	stay in	يبقى/يقيم في
go past	يمر	write about	يكتب عن

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

<b>strong / strange</b>	
1. strong (adj)	قوي
- He has strong muscles.	عضلاته
2. strange (adj)	غريب
- People don't like strange things.	
<b>feel different / feel differently</b>	
1. feel different	يشعر أنه مختلف أو مميز
- His excellent skills make him feel different.	
2. feel differently	لديه شعور مختلف
- Everyone enjoys their time. I don't know why you feel differently.	

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

MCQ: Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

- Global warming is one of the main ..... that must be faced and solved.  
a. issues      b. rules      c. roles  
d. problems      e. reviews
- In a line of poetry, stressed words ..... the rhythm.  
a. lose      b. have      c. give  
d. do      e. spend
- "I hate that kind of person." In this sentence, we can replace the verb 'hate' with .....  
a. love      b. detest      c. loathe  
d. admire      e. disagree
- "I have expected him to recognise his tablet as the difference is clear." The adjective 'clear' in this sentence is an antonym for .....  
a. vague      b. obvious      c. pure  
d. unclear      e. explicit
- 'Hate' is to 'love' as 'light' is to .....  
a. bright      b. sunny      c. dark  
d. darken      e. darkness
- Birds are usually active ..... day.  
a. in      b. by      c. at  
d. of      e. during the
- The jobs we have to do in ..... life sometimes make us forget our social duties.  
a. daily      b. every day      c. everyday  
d. all today      e. no day

MCQ: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The doctor advised me to ..... in bed until I am completely better.  
a. make      b. do      c. improve      d. stay



2. When your father ..... home, I'll tell him you don't want to study your lessons.  
a. comes b. has c. follows d. spends
3. My children ..... much fun in the park yesterday.  
a. came b. had c. followed d. spent
4. Aya ..... a lot of time watching TV.  
a. gave b. made c. broke d. spent
5. The words "through" and "throw" .....  
a. lock b. rhyme c. rhythm d. bare
6. Children like listening to and reading .....  
a. locks b. rhymes c. rhythms d. bares
7. He expresses his ideas in a ..... way.  
a. clearness b. clarity c. clear d. clearly
8. He expresses his ideas .....  
a. clearness b. clarity c. clear d. clearly
9. It is nothing of your business to agree or disagree ..... what I say.  
a. in b. for c. at d. about
10. Short lines of poetry are easy .....  
a. remember b. remembering c. to remember d. remembers
11. 'Lap' rhymes ..... 'tap'.  
a. in b. on c. with d. for
12. Before electric lamps, people used to read at night ..... candlelight.  
a. for b. from c. to d. by
13. I am not used to this place. It is ..... to me.  
a. light b. popular c. strange d. strong
14. I know why you feel ..... . You are not used to the hot weather of Aswan.  
a. differently b. different c. clear d. row

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق

## Part III

## Reading &amp; Listening

## 1 Reading Texts

## C. Bed in Summer

(SB page 66)

In winter<sup>(1)</sup> I get up<sup>(2)</sup> at night and dress<sup>(3)</sup> by yellow candlelight.<sup>(4)</sup>

In summer quite the other way,<sup>(5)</sup> I have to go to bed by day.<sup>(6)</sup> I have to go to bed and see The birds still hopping<sup>(7)</sup> on the tree,

Or hear the grown-up<sup>(8)</sup> people's feet<sup>(9)</sup> Still going past<sup>(10)</sup> me in the street.

And does it not seem hard<sup>(11)</sup> to you, When all the sky is clear<sup>(12)</sup> and blue, And I should like so much to play. To have to go to bed by day.



## Check Vocabulary

- (1) فصل الشتاء  
(2) يستيقظ من النوم  
(3) يرتدي ملابس  
(4) ضوء الشمعة  
(5) عني العكس تماماً  
(6) نهاراً  
(7) يقفز على قدم واحدة  
(8) بحتل  
(9) أقدام  
(10) يمر بـ  
(11) صعب  
(12) صافي

## D. Khaled's opinion about the poem

(SB page 66)

## Khaled, 4 : 04 PM

The words Stevenson has used very clearly<sup>(1)</sup> describe<sup>(2)</sup> the situations<sup>(3)</sup> he's writing about and I really like that. I also think the poem's subject<sup>(4)</sup> is very interesting because everyone feels differently<sup>(5)</sup> in different seasons.<sup>(6)</sup> In my opinion, poets<sup>(7)</sup> should write about everyday life.<sup>(8)</sup>



## Check Vocabulary

- (1) موضوع  
(2) يصف  
(3) المواقف  
(4) موضوع  
(5) بشكل مختلف  
(6) فصول  
(7) شعراء  
(8) الحياة اليومية



However,<sup>(9)</sup> I think the second verse<sup>(10)</sup> is too long and its rhythm<sup>(11)</sup> is too slow.<sup>(12)</sup>

Hamid, 5 : 36 PM

### Hamid's opinion about the poem

I love the language in the poem, especially<sup>(13)</sup> the way Stevenson describes the light<sup>(14)</sup> at different times of day.<sup>(15)</sup> I also think the second verse is great because the rhymes<sup>(16)</sup> in it are so clever. However, in my opinion, the poem's subject is quite boring<sup>(17)</sup> because going to bed and getting up aren't very interesting activities.<sup>(18)</sup> I think poets should write about more exciting<sup>(19)</sup> things.

### Sara's opinion about the poem

(SB page 67)

My favourite poem is Bed in Summer because it describes how I felt when I was young. In the summer I had to go to bed when it was light and I hated<sup>(20)</sup> it. Like<sup>(21)</sup> the author<sup>(22)</sup> I wanted to be outside<sup>(23)</sup> playing and I didn't think it was fair<sup>(24)</sup> that everyone else was outside having fun.<sup>(25)</sup>

It's a good length<sup>(26)</sup> for a poem, only three verses and I like the fact<sup>(27)</sup> that the words rhyme.<sup>(28)</sup> I don't like poems which don't rhyme. The first two lines<sup>(29)</sup> rhyme, 'night' and 'light' and then the next two lines rhyme, 'way' and 'day'. This makes it easy to say and easy to remember!

Robert Louis Stevenson was ill when he was a child and stayed in bed a lot. That's why I think he wrote this poem.



- (9) مع ذلك
- (10) فقرة شعرية
- (11) إيقاع
- (12) بطيء
- (13) خاصة
- (14) الضوء
- (15) النهار
- (16) القوافي
- (17) ممل
- (18) لنشطة
- (19) مثير
- (20) يكره
- (21) مثل
- (22) مؤلف
- (23) بالخارج
- (24) عادل
- (25) يمرح
- (26) طول
- (27) حقيقة
- (28) يُقفى
- (29) مسطر شعري

## 2 Video script section

Literature<sup>(1)</sup> comes in a variety<sup>(2)</sup> of forms<sup>(3)</sup> : poetry<sup>(4)</sup>, novels<sup>(5)</sup>, travel books and biographies<sup>(6)</sup> are just a few.

Reading literature from different times helps us learn about the world we live in, about important modern issues<sup>(7)</sup> and about how much society<sup>(8)</sup> has changed.

When you read any piece of literature, it's helpful<sup>(9)</sup> to consider<sup>(10)</sup> your own opinion - why you like or dislike a particular<sup>(11)</sup> character or whether you have experienced something similar to what you've read in a poem. Discussing this with your friends can also help you learn more about each other and the world around you.

### Check Vocabulary

- (1) الأدب
- (2) تنوع
- (3) أشكال / أشكال
- (4) شعر
- (5) روايات
- (6) سير ذاتية
- (7) قضايا معاصرة
- (8) المجتمع
- (9) مفيد / مساعد
- (10) تعبر عن
- (11) خاصة

اطلب من الطلاب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإلقاء الأسئلة التالية عليهم :

1. What different forms of literature does the video name ?
2. What can reading literature from different times teach us ?
3. What should you discuss with your friends ?

## Part IV

## Language



شاهد وتعلم

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

تنويه

## General Exercise

## On Language

التدريبات التالية مُرتبة بشكل متدرج تصاعدياً حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم.

تنويه

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

### 1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. You should ..... something good in your free time.  
a. does                      b. do                      c. did                      d. done
2. Dr Mustafa has agreed ..... an article about COVID-19.  
a. to write                      b. writing                      c. to writing                      d. writes



3. Have you finished ..... the book that I gave you ?  
a. to read      b. from reading      c. reading      d. read
4. Yara hopes ..... a job next month.  
a. finding      b. to find      c. finds      d. find
5. You should avoid ..... friends with such bad people.  
a. to make      b. make      c. to making      d. making
6. I like ..... football matches on TV.  
a. watching      b. to watch      c. to watching      d. a & b
7. I'd like ..... football matches on TV.  
a. watching      b. to watch      c. to watching      d. a & b
8. My uncle has offered ..... me how to drive a car.  
a. teaching      b. teach      c. to teach      d. taught
9. I like ..... in London as it's a beautiful city.  
a. to living      b. live      c. lives      d. living
10. Reem promised ..... and she usually keeps her promises.  
a. she comes      b. to come      c. coming      d. will come
11. Would you ..... helping me? - No, not at all.  
a. think      b. mind      c. remember      d. remind
12. The child started ..... because he was hungry.  
a. crying      b. cried      c. is crying      d. cries
13. The thief denied ..... the money.  
a. stolen      b. was stealing      c. to steal      d. stealing
14. We have arranged ..... at 9 o'clock.  
a. meeting      b. will meet      c. to meet      d. met
15. I wish ..... a car.  
a. to have      b. had      c. having      d. will have
16. I prefer ..... in a swimming pool.  
a. swim      b. to swim      c. to swimming      d. swam
17. I feel like ..... a cold drink.  
a. have      b. to have      c. having      d. to having
18. The little girl ..... playing with her toys until midnight.  
a. wanted      b. kept      c. decided      d. promised

19. One day, I'd like ..... poems myself.  
a. to write      b. writing      c. to writing      d. wrote
20. He hopes ..... the test first time.  
a. passing      b. to be passed      c. to pass      d. to passing
21. Omar has decided ..... with his father when he finishes university.  
a. to work      b. to be worked      c. working      d. to working
22. Our house was robbed last night since we forgot ..... the front door.  
a. locking      b. to lock      c. locked      d. locks
23. When you go diving, you should avoid ..... the coral reefs.  
a. damage      b. damages      c. damaging      d. to damage
24. The naughty boy promised the school principal ..... well in class.  
a. behaving      b. to behave      c. to have behaved      d. behave

## 2 Special cases

25. Enjy is sorry that she was unable to help her mother last night. This means she ..... her mother last night.  
a. regrets helping      b. doesn't regret to help  
c. regrets not to help      d. regrets not helping
26. I regret ..... to the cinema. It was not a very good movie.  
a. to go      b. go      c. going      d. went
27. I regret ..... that we can't go to the Science Museum next week. There are no more tickets.  
a. saying      b. to say      c. to saying      d. have said
28. Salma was busy ..... the washing up.  
a. does      b. doing      c. to do      d. done
29. Why didn't you remember ..... me the key? How can I open the door now?  
a. to bring      b. bring      c. bringing      d. have brought
30. I suggest that Samy ..... the club.  
a. join      b. joined      c. has joined      d. will join
31. Many people in our town objected ..... the new bridge.  
a. to build      b. to building      c. building      d. built



32. My father often ..... me to drive his car.  
a. lets      b. makes      c. allows      d. denies
33. The rules of the library don't allow .....  
a. to smoking      b. smoking      c. smoke      d. to smoke
34. I prefer being jobless to ..... like a slave عبد in such a company.  
a. be treated      b. treating      c. being treated      d. treat me
35. We all recommend ..... that book.  
a. that read      b. that he read      c. to read      d. to reading
36. After she stopped ....., everyone clapped.  
a. to sing      b. singing      c. sang      d. sung
37. I regretted ..... her in public. It was bad for me.  
a. criticise      b. criticising      c. to criticise      d. to criticising
38. I regret ..... but it is the law. Tomorrow is my last day at work.  
a. to retire      b. retiring      c. to retiring      d. retire
39. Stop ..... You are giving me a headache.  
a. to shout      b. shouted      c. shouting      d. to shouting
40. He found the film quite frightening, so he stopped ..... it.  
a. to watching      b. to watch      c. watching      d. watched
41. I stopped ..... a shower to refresh myself. It was very hot.  
a. to take      b. to taking      c. taking      d. being taken
42. If you want to stay healthy, you should try ..... more exercise.  
a. did      b. to doing      c. to do      d. do
43. Try ..... the mobile over there, it might get a better signal.  
a. to put      b. will put      c. putting      d. put
44. I tried ..... some medicine but I found that the only chemist's in our area was closed.  
a. bought      b. buying      c. to buy      d. to buying
45. I have a stomach ache, so I tried ..... some medicine.  
a. taking      b. to take      c. to be taken      d. to taking
46. Please, remember ..... your books with you next time.  
a. to bring      b. bring      c. bringing      d. brings

47. I remember ..... the zoo every year when I was young.  
a. visiting      b. to visit      c. visited      d. visit
48. Don't forget ..... bread on your way home, Ashraf.  
a. buying      b. bought      c. to buy      d. to buying
49. I don't forget ..... my wife for the first time.  
a. seen      b. I see      c. to see      d. seeing
50. The gardener let us ..... in the park.  
a. cycle      b. to cycle      c. cycling      d. to cycling
51. The gardener allowed us ..... in the park.  
a. cycle      b. to cycle      c. cycling      d. to cycling
- 3 Check your understanding**
52. I heard Omar talking on his mobile. This means .....  
a. I heard everything he said.      b. I heard part of what he said.  
c. I heard nothing he said.      d. I heard everything he didn't say.
53. Try using this cream. This means .....  
a. I know this cream will work.      b. I know this cream won't work.  
c. I want you to use it and see what will happen.  
d. I hope this cream won't work.
54. "He has stopped drinking coffee as it is unhealthy." What does this mean?  
a. He wants to drink coffee.      b. He didn't drink coffee.  
c. He no longer drinks coffee.      d. He stopped to drink.
55. "I remember taking an aspirin." This means .....  
a. I took an aspirin.      b. I didn't take an aspirin.  
c. I remember to take an aspirin.      d. I will take an aspirin.

ALTfWOK.com موقع التفوق





Part I

Vocabulary

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات الرئيسية في قصة (Treasure Island)، بالإضافة للمهارات اللغوية الموجودة في الوحدة وقواعد ما بين السطور والجزء المخصص للطلاب المتقدمين

تدوينة

Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

• أهم المفردات اللغوية من قصة (Treasure Island) كما يمكنكم التطلع على نص القصة والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب.

تدوينة

advantage(n)	ميزة	fort(n)	حصن
adventure(n)	مغامرة	get to - got to (v)	يصل إلى
alive(adj)	على قيد الحياة	give ... an advantage	يمنح ..... ميزة
arrival(n)	وصول	pick(ed) up (v)	يأخذ - يلتقط
blow - blew - blown (v)	تهب - ينفخ	prevent(ed)(v)	يمنع
cannon(n)	مدفع	put up a flag	يرفع علم
contact(ed) (n - v)	اتصال - يتصل به	race(n)	سباق
defend(ed) (v)	يدافع عن	sink- sank - sunk (v)	يغوص - يغطس
diary(n)	مفكرة يومية	supplies(n)	مؤن
entry(n)	مدخل مقدمة	well- defended(adj)	حصين - منيع
fire(d) at (v)	يطلق النار على	wind(n)	الرياح

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- When a place is not easy to break into, we say it is well- .....  
a. furnished      b. dressed      c. known      d. defended
- Climbing Mount Everest is a/an .....  
a. adventure      b. diary      c. contact      d. accident
- When the wind ....., a lot of leaves fell from the trees.  
a. sank      b. stopped      c. blew      d. fired
- Wood does not ..... in water.  
a. sink      b. blow      c. defend      d. give
- To ..... the school, you need to cross the street.  
a. get from      b. get on      c. get up      d. get to

- It ..... you an advantage to be good with a computer.  
a. fires      b. gives      c. prevents      d. puts
- A ..... is a heavy weapon.  
a. gun      b. knife      c. cannon      d. sword
- I won't ..... you from defending yourself. You can say why you made this mistake.  
a. sink      b. blow      c. allow      d. prevent
- The criminal fired his gun ..... the driver.  
a. at      b. with      c. from      d. of
- It is necessary to put ..... a flag on the top of each school.  
a. off      b. up      c. down      d. for

Part II

Grammatical Hints

home

1 عند استخدام كلمة (home) ك ظرف مكان، لا تأخذ حرف الجر (to) مع أفعال الحركة التالية:

go - arrive - leave - reach - return - come

- ex. - I go home at three o'clock. (Not: go to home)  
- Mum returned home and prepared lunch. (Not: return to home)

2 عند استخدام كلمة (home) كإسم بعد الصفات والضمائر، فهي تأخذ حرف الجر (to):

- ex. - I go to my home at three o'clock.  
- Mum returned to the family home and prepared lunch.

in addition to / as well as

جملة + بالإضافة إلى ذلك In addition

- He went to the market. In addition, he went to the zoo.

بالإضافة إلى n. / (inf. + ing) In addition to

- ex. - In addition to going to the market, we went to the zoo.  
- We went to the zoo in addition to going to the market.

بالإضافة إلى n. / (inf. + ing) As well as

- ex. - As well as going to the market, we went to the zoo.  
إذا استخدمت as well as بين فاعلين، فإن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الأول من ناحية المفرد والجمع:

- ex. - I as well as Ali have a car.  
- Eman as well as her brothers likes fish.



يمكن ان تربط as well as معولين او صفتين

ex. - Hala plays the guitar as well as the piano.  
- Rania is talented as well as beautiful.

في عمر at the age of

At the age of + العمر = when + subject + was / were + العمر = aged + العمر

ex. - My grandmother died in 2018 at the age of 92.  
= My grandmother died in 2018 when she was 92.  
= My grandmother died in 2018, aged 92.

Like / Unlike

يمكن استخدام (like / unlike) كروابط:

جملة + , + اسم + على عكس Unlike - مثل Like

ex. - Like his father, Abdulrahman works hard.  
- Unlike his friends, Ahmed doesn't play football.

لهذا السبب that's why

جملة نتيجة + so / that is why / as a result / for this reason +

ex. - He didn't earn enough money. That's why he travelled abroad.  
- I've been feeling tired all week, so I'm going to bed early tonight.  
- It's my mother's birthday soon. For this reason, I want to buy her a present.

### Exercise On Language Hints

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I feel tired. I will ..... home.  
a. go to      b. go      c. arrive to      d. return to
- ..... football, I also play tennis.  
a. As      b. Like      c. In addition      d. In addition to
- I play football, ....., I play tennis.  
a. As      b. Like      c. In addition      d. In addition to

- Nasser ..... his cousins likes chicken.  
a. as well as      b. and      c. in addition      d. or
- As well as ..... my mother, I did my homework.  
a. helping      b. help      c. helps      d. a help
- I was so tired yesterday. .... I went to bed early.  
a. Because      b. Although      c. That's why      d. In addition to
- ..... her two sisters, Sama is always nervous.  
a. As      b. Unlike      c. Because      d. In addition
- My grandfather died in 2000, ..... 62.  
a. since      b. ago      c. age      d. aged
- When I finish the report, I will ..... my home.  
a. return      b. go      c. arrive      d. go to
- She was very busy preparing for the party, ..... she called me to go and help her.  
a. in addition      b. as well as      c. so      d. because
- ..... his mother, Ahmed doesn't like noise. They both can't live in a busy city.  
a. Like      b. Unlike      c. As      d. As well
- I left university in 1994, ..... the age of 22.  
a. in      b. at      c. on      d. for

ALTfwoK.com موقع التفوق



## Part III Language Skills

## 1 Polite request الطلب المهنى

Making a Request	Reply
<b>Formal Requests</b> الطلب بطريقة رسمية	
1 Could you possibly + inf. ....? هل من الممكن أن ...?	- Certainly. بالتأكيد
2 I wonder if you could + inf. .... أتساءل إذا ما كان بإمكانك ...	- That's not a problem. هنا لا يمثل مشكلة.
3 I don't suppose you could + inf. .... أظن أنه لا يمكنك أن ...	- Yes, of course. نعم بالطبع.
4 Do you think you could + inf. ....? أتعتقد أنه يمكنك ...?	- No. I'm afraid I can't. لا، للأسف لا أستطيع.
<b>Informal Requests</b> الطلب بطريقة ودية (غير رسمية)	
1 Can you + inf. ....? هل يمكنك أن ...?	- Yes. What is it? نعم، ماذا تريد؟
2 Could you do me a favour, please? هل يمكن أن أقدم لي معروفًا من فضلك؟	- No problem. لا توجد مشكلة في ذلك.
3 Could you do something for me? هل يمكن أن تفعل شيئًا لأجلي؟	- Sure. بالتأكيد.

Would you mind + inf. + ing / noun .....?  
هل تمانع أن .....?

- No, I don't. / No problem. / No, not at all.

- Yes, I do.

(Agreeing)

(Disagreeing)

## 2 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

تلويح

## Writing Reviews

- ١- عند كتابة مقال يتضمن عرض نقدي لعمل فني أو أدبي (قصة / رواية / مسرحية / مسلسل / فيلم)، ينبغي تكتب ببساطة ووضوح عن النقاط التالية:
- Begin with a brief summary (40-60 words).

- Determine the most important topics. / characters / plot.  
حدد أهم الموضوعات / الشخصيات / الحبكة.
- Dedicate a paragraph for each idea / topic / character.  
خصص فقرة لكل فكرة / موضوع / شخصية.
- Write a short clear conclusion. The conclusion summarizes the main points of the review in addition to your opinion.  
اكتب خاتمة قصيرة وواضحة، وتتضمن الخاتمة النقاط الرئيسية للعرض النقدي بالإضافة لوجهة نظرك.
- ٢- عند كتابة مقال يتضمن عرض نقدي لقصة، ينبغي أن تكتب ببساطة ووضوح عن النقاط التالية:
- The title العنوان
- The author المؤلف
- Date published تاريخ النشر
- The main idea / topic الفكرة الرئيسية / الموضوع
- What you like about it الشيء الذي يعجبك
- What you don't like about it الشيء الذي لا يعجبك
- Conclusion الخاتمة

## Model review

- Write a review of about 150 words about a film or a book you like :

## Welad El-Am (The Cousins)

Welad El-Am (The Cousins) is an Egyptian action film. It is a story of love and betrayal directed by Sherif Arafa.

Salwa (Mona Zaki) realizes that her husband, Ezzat (Sherif Mounir), is really Daniel; an Israeli spy who kidnaps her and their two children to Israel to start a new life there.

Mostafa (Karim Abdel Aziz), the Egyptian officer, has been after Daniel for a while. When Salwa asks for help from a man in the street in Israel, her story reaches the Egyptian authorities and Mostafa is sent to collect information on Daniel and rescue Salwa.

There are conflicts of interest. Mostafa's hatred of Daniel is mixed with his need to do things correctly. Salwa's desire to leave is mixed with her belief that Daniel loves her.

The plot also involves Dareen, the Palestinian suicide bomber. There is also the Israeli woman who befriends Salwa in order to watch her.



Mona Zaki's performance as Salwa was strong. Sherif Mounir and Karim Abdel Aziz have done a great job as well.

To conclude, the film is really great. The story, the actors and the direction worked together to make this film which I see deserves watching.

### 3 Translation الترجمة

للمزيد من التدريبات فادق المهارات. **تلويح**

#### 1 Translate into Arabic :

1. Novels and stories depend on narration and details. Poetry, on the other hand, depends on rhyme, rhythm and rhetorical phrases.
2. Nature, as it was created, was full of harmony and beauty. When man interfered stupidly with it, he destroyed everything beautiful.
3. One has to do their best at work to achieve their goals. They should also enjoy the beauties of life to ease the pressure of work.

#### 2 Translate into English :

- 1- عندما تتساقط أوراق الأشجار في فصل الخريف وتصبح الأغصان عارية، تفقد الطبيعة جزءاً كبيراً من جمالها وجاذبيتها.
- 2- ليس هناك شك أن قراءة الأعمال الأدبية لها فوائد كثيرة، فهي تثري ثقافتنا وتعطينا خبرات كثيرة وتجعلنا نستمع بالمواقف التي يخلقها الكاتب.
- 3- الشعر يأخذك إلى عالم خيالي مليء بالسعادة والانسجام الروحي، فهو يخاطب الشاعر الحيلة التي لا يجيد الجميع التعبير عنها.

#### Vocabulary related to translation texts مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختبار على الوحدة

address	يخاطب	harmony	الانسجام
appealing	جذاب	interfere	يتدخل
attractiveness	الاجاذبة	literary	أدبي
beauty	الجمال	narration	السر
create	يخلق	paradoxes	مفارقات
culture	الثقافة	phrase	عبارة
destroy	يهدم	pressure	الضغط
details	التفاصيل	rhetorical	بلاغية
ease	يخفف عن	spiritual	روحي
enrich	يثري	there's no doubt	ليس هناك شك
experience	الخبرة	undoubtedly	بلا شك
feelings	الشاعر		

## Part IV Just for Advanced level

تلويح فقط

هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب المتقدمين فقط

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

#### verse

- verse (n) مقطع من الشعر (جزء من قصيدة يحتوي على عدد من السطور الشعرية)  
- This poem has five verses. Each verse includes six lines.
- verse (n) آية (في القرآن أو الكتاب المقدس)  
- Helmi recites some verses before he starts his work in the office.
- verse (n) الشعر - النظم  
- This play is written in verse.

#### rhyme

- rhyme (n) الغائبة  
- Traditional poetry always has rhymes.
- rhyme (n) شعر مُقَفَّى (له قافية)  
- This poem is written in rhyme.
- rhyme (n) تشد / قصيدة  
- I liked rhymes when I was in primary school.
- rhyme (with) (v) يسجع / يكون قافية مع  
- The word "night" rhymes with "white".

#### plot

- plot (n) قطعة أرض (مساحة صغيرة)  
- I have a small vegetable plot.
- plot (n) مدفن العائلة  
- My grandfather bought this plot a short time before his death.
- plot (against) (n) مؤامرة / مكيمة (ضد)  
- There was a plot against the company to make it lose a lot of money.
- plot (n) حبكة الرواية أو الفيلم (ذروة الأحداث)  
- The plot of the film was exciting.
- plot (against / to) (v) يتآمر / يكيد (ضد - لكي)  
- He plotted to steal the safe of the supermarket.  
- They plotted against their manager.



### walk

- walk (v) يمشي / يسير - يمشي سيراً في - يمشي (حيوان) سيراً  
 - She always walks to school.  
 - I like walking in the fields near my country house.  
 - She walks her dog in the afternoon.
- walk (v) يوصل (يمشي مع شخص ليضمن أنه وصل لمكان ما بأمان)  
 - Don't worry, I'll walk you home.
- walk (n) طريق مشاء (خاصة للتنزه)  
 - The walks around the park are covered with gravel.
- walk (n) التنزه سيراً (تمشية للمساحة)  
 - I usually go for a walk (go walking) at weekends.

### poetry

- poetry (n) الشعر  
 - I studied English poetry at university.
- write poetry يكتب الشعر  
 - recite poetry يلقى الشعر  
 - a line of poetry بيت شعر  
 - a piece of poetry مقطوعة شعرية  
 - a volume / collection of poetry ديوان شعر
- poet (n) شاعر  
 - In Arabic, Hafez Ibrahim is my favourite poet.
- poem (n) قصيدة  
 - Ahmed Shawky wrote great poems.
- poetic / poetical (adj) شعري - شاعري  
 - My daughter has the talent of poetic expression.

### literature

- literature (n) الأدب (الروايات والقصص والشعر والمسرحيات ... إلخ)  
 - Poetry is the oldest form of Arabic literature.
- literary (adj) أدبي (متعلق بالكتابات الأدبية)  
 - I used to read literary criticism. النقد

## 2 Important Idioms مصطلحات هامة

keep the gravel walk	to stay on the path through the garden يلزم الطريق المغطى بالحصى في البستان كي لا تغطأ قدماء النباتات
currant row	a line of plants that have small fruits صف من نبات الكشمش (نبات شبيه بالعنب أو الريب)

## 3 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Meaning المعنى	Examples أمثلة
a-	تُكوّن صفة أو ظرف	aloud awake بصوت عال مستيقظ
co-	مساعد / مصاحب	co-pilot مساعد طيار
mis-	خطأ	misunderstand يسى فهم
re-	يعيد / يكرر	resend يعيد إرسال

## 4 suffixes مقاطع ناهية

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
-ache	تعطى معنى ألم	headache صاع
-ant	تُكوّن أسماء وصفات	applicant pleasant متقدم لوظيفة سار
-ible	تُكوّن صفات	sensible عاقِل / حكيم
-ic	تُكوّن صفات	rhythmic ذو إيقاع قوي
-ical	تُكوّن صفات	rhythmical ذو إيقاع قوي
-ure	تُكوّن أسماء	pleasure سعادة

## Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: The street is dark and empty.

B: No problem. I'll ..... you home.

a. pinch

b. walk

c. plot

d. lock



2. The desert is the ..... of a lot of animals.  
a. house      b. hole      c. home      d. nest
3. The play is written in ..... It has rhymes.  
a. verse      b. poem      c. English      d. rhythm
4. The ..... each measure 20 metres by 30 metres.  
a. land      b. plots      c. area      d. ground
5. A: Do you mind helping me?  
B: ..... What would you like me to do?  
a. Sure      b. Yes, not at all      c. Yes, of course      d. No, not at all
6. .... what way will you pay back your debts?  
a. On      b. In      c. With      d. At
7. The word 'time' rhymes with .....  
a. rhythm      b. rhyme      c. verse      d. poet
8. Our parents are to thank for the ..... they do to us.  
a. harms      b. favours      c. damages      d. vowels
9. Terrorists ..... against their countries.  
a. bare      b. hop      c. profit      d. plot
10. "He has a pleasant character". In this sentence, 'pleasant' means .....  
a. naked      b. happiness      c. joy      d. friendly

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	- التعبير (walk you home) يعني (أرافقك في الطريق إلى المنزل)
2.	c	- كلمة (home) هنا تعني (موطن)
3.	a	- التعبير (written in verse) يعني (مكتوب بصيغة الشعر)
4.	b	- وجود (each) بمعنى (كل منهم) بعد الفراغ يتطلب اسم جمع
5.	d	- الرد بالقبول على الصيغة (Do you mind ...) يتطلب صيغة النفي
6.	b	- التعبير (In what way) يعني (بأي طريقة)
7.	b	- كلمة (time) تسجع أو تُكوّن قافية مع كلمة (rhyme)
8.	b	- كلمة (favours) تعني (فضائل / أعمال طيبة) وهو ما يستوجب الشكر
9.	d	- التعبير (plot against) يعني (يتآمر ضد)
10.	d	- حسب السياق فإن كلمة (pleasant) تعني (friendly)

### Advanced Exercise on Language

تدريب: التدريب الثاني يليها الإجابة والتوضيح

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
1. I suggested stopping him ..... that old film as it was a waste of time.  
a. watching      b. watches      c. watched      d. to watch
  2. Why do you go on ..... the same lies again and again?  
a. to tell      b. telling      c. to telling      d. be told
  3. I recommend ..... meals at home.  
a. have      b. to have      c. having      d. to having
  4. I recommend my children ..... meals at home.  
a. have      b. to have      c. having      d. to having
  5. I don't allow anyone ..... in my office.  
a. smoke      b. smoking      c. to smoking      d. to smoke
  6. I don't allow ..... in my office.  
a. smoke      b. smoking      c. to smoking      d. to smoke
  7. I ..... go out late at night.  
a. wouldn't rather      b. would rather to not  
c. would rather didn't      d. would rather not
  8. I was made ..... my room before I went out.  
a. to tidy      b. to tidying      c. to tidying      d. not tidy
  9. It is starting ..... again.  
a. raining      b. to rain      c. rains      d. to raining
  10. Fancy ..... you here.  
a. seeing      b. is seeing      c. was seeing      d. see

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	- يمكن أن يأتي بعد الفعل (stop) الصيغة (inf. + ing) أو (from + inf. + ing)
2.	b	- الفعل الإحتلاطي (go on) عندما يعني (يستمر في عمل نفس الشيء) يأتي بعده (inf. + ing)
3.	c	- بعد (recommend) يأتي (inf. + ing)
4.	a	- عندما يأتي بعد (recommend) جملة فإن فعلها يكون إما مصدر أو (should + inf.)
5.	d	- بعد (allow + obj.) يأتي (to + inf.)
6.	b	- بعد (allow) دون متفعّل بعدها يأتي (inf. + ing)
7.	d	- النميص (would rather) يتم نفيه بوضع (not) بعده
8.	a	- الفعل المبني للمجهول (be made) يأتي بعده (to + inf.)
9.	b	- بعد (starting) يأتي (to + inf.) وليس (inf. + ing)
10.	a	- بعد (fancy) يأتي (inf. + ing)



# Test on Unit 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

## Part One

• MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- "I hate that kind of person." In this sentence, the verb 'hate' is an antonym for .....  
a. love b. detest c. loathe  
d. admire e. disagree
- "I have expected him to recognise his tablet as the difference is clear." The adjective 'clear' in this sentence is a synonym of .....  
a. vague b. obvious c. pure  
d. unclear e. explicit

• MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

- In a park, we walk along paths which are covered with .....  
a. gravel b. gravelled c. gravelling d. gravels  
(كسر الشبخ - دسوق ٢٠٢٠)
- ..... is the best literary أدبي form that expresses emotions.  
a. Poetry b. Poet c. Poems d. Poetic  
(سوهاج - المراجعة ٢٠٢٠)
- He went to the ..... to visit his dead father.  
a. plot b. plotter c. pottery d. plotted  
(الفيوم - الشواشنة ٢٠٢٢)
- Please, can you ..... the door when you leave the room ?  
a. look b. stick c. lock d. dig
- What secret did you regret ..... someone?  
a. telling b. to telling c. tell d. to tell  
(افتح الله كبرية الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
- I am looking forward to ..... in paradise.  
a. live b. living c. lived d. lives
- Hazem is planning ..... to university next year.  
a. goes b. going c. to go d. gone
- The manager decided ..... the reports before he left the office.  
a. read b. reading c. to read d. reads
- Sami enjoys ..... science fiction novels.  
a. read b. to read c. reading d. reader
- They don't allow us ..... in the park .  
a. to cycling b. cycling c. to cycle d. cycle
- He is used ..... up early.  
a. to getting b. getting c. to get d. get

تلويح  
يمكنك حل  
التمرين وتصويبه  
إلكترونياً



- I can't afford ..... this expensive flat.  
a. to buy b. buying c. buy d. to buying
- Animals usually sleep on .....  
a. straw b. stew c. attics d. tunnels
- She doesn't allow ..... in her house.  
a. to smoke b. smoked c. smokes d. smoking

• Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

(الفيوم - القدرير الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)

"She's coming. Hide it quickly!" The girls quickly shoved it under the table and acted as if nothing had happened. When Miss Farida entered the classroom, everyone stood up and greeted her. She gave them a smile. The girls noticed that there was sadness in her eyes. Poor Miss Farida!

They wished with all their hearts that they could do something to help her, but there was nothing that they could do. Miss Farida told them that she would miss them. She explained that she would give anything to stay as their teacher, but she had no choice. Her father was gravely ill. Her mother was too elderly to be left alone with him. She simply had to return to her hometown in a neighbouring country.

Looking at the list of email addresses in her hand, she promised she would keep in touch with them. She encouraged them to study and play hard and to always do their best, then she got ready to leave. Our class monitor walked over to her and handed her a small package. With tears in her eyes, Miss Farida opened it. "It's from our trip to Siwa the last term. "Look at it and always remember us," said our monitor. She nodded, "Thank you. I'll frame it and put it up on the wall of my room." Then she left. Miss Farida is one of the best teachers who devotes all her life to people, and she is never forgotten because of her cooperation and tolerance.

- The best title to the passage is .....  
a. Miss Farida's departure  
b. The good relation between Miss Farida and her class  
c. The gift to Miss Farida  
d. Miss Farida's good qualities and her strong personality



18. Miss Farida was  
 a. the school headmistress  
 b. the class teacher  
 c. a good student at a secondary school  
 d. ungrateful at her parents
19. Miss Farida planned to keep in touch with the students by  
 a. sending letters  
 b. exchanging emails  
 c. visiting each other  
 d. meeting at the nearby
20. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to  
 a. Miss Farida's photo at school  
 b. the picture of Miss Farida's house  
 c. the picture of Miss Farida's parents  
 d. the gift for Miss Farida
21. The synonym of the word "devotes" is "        ".  
 a. dedicates      b. takes      c. withdraws  
 d. lets              e. gives
22. The students will remember Miss Farida because of .....  
 a. the gift they gave her      b. her wealth and happiness  
 c. her tolerance              d. her care of her parents  
 e. her cooperation
23. Miss Farida encouraged her students .....  
 a. not to study well              b. to study hard  
 c. to do their best                d. to frame photographs  
 e. put photographs on the wall

**Part Two**

**1. Translate into Arabic :**

Reading gives us the chance to enjoy the beauty of life. It helps us to learn and see the world in a different way.

الكتاب يعطينا الفرصة للاستمتاع بجمال الحياة. إنه يساعدنا على التعلم ورؤية العالم بطريقة مختلفة.

**2. Translate into English :**

نحن نكتب لكم رسالة. لذا يجب أن ندافع عنه ونحسه من أي اعتداء .. كما يجب أن نتسلح بالعلم ونعمل بجد من أجل تقدم هذا الوطن وإزدهاره

**3. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on :  
 Your Favourite Writer**





Part I Vocabulary

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

adventure(n)	مغامرة	mysterious(adj)	غامض
anti-virus (adj)	مكافحة الفيروسات	name(d) (n - v)	اسم - يذكر اسم
app(n)	تطبيق	old-fashioned(adj)	قديم - عفا عليه الزمن
care(n)	عناية / رعاية	online (adj - adv)	عبر الإنترنت - متصل
case(n)	حالة / قضية	paintings(n)	لوحات
communicate(d) (v)	يتصل - يتواصل	password(n)	كلمة المرور
communication(n)	التواصل - الاتصال	penfriend (n)	صديق بالمراسلة
concerned(adj)	مهتم	perhaps(adv)	ربما
continue(d) (v)	يستمر - يديم	popular(adj)	شائع - ذو شعبية
copy(ied) (v)	ينسخ	prefer(red) (v)	يفضل
cover(ed) (n - v)	غلاف - يغطي	print(ed) (v)	يطبع
cruel(adj)	قاسي	professor(n)	أستاذ جامعي
Dark Ages(n)	عصور الظلام	real(adj)	حقيقي
definitely(adv)	بالتأكيد	recommend(ed) (v)	يوصي به / يركي
details(n)	تفاصيل	relaxing(adj)	مريح
difference(n)	اختلاف / فرق	reply(ied) (v)	يرد - رد
encourage(d) (v)	يشجع	rest (ed) (n - v)	بقي - راحة - يستريح
escape(d) (v)	يهرب	save(d) (v)	يحفظ - يدخر
ever(adv)	على الإطلاق - من قبل	setting(n)	مكان وزمان الأحداث
face(d) (v)	يواجه	smartphone(n)	الهاتف الذكي
impossible(adj)	مستحيل	software(n)	برامج - برمجيات
interesting(adj)	شيق	strange(adj)	غريب
kidnapped(adj)	مخطف	surprisingly(adv)	من المفاجأة
like(conj.)	مثل	technology(n)	تكنولوجيا
lose - lost (v)	يفقد - يخسر	text(n)	رسالة نصية - نص
material(n)	محتويات	trick(ed) (v - n)	يخدع - خدعة

2 Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

action(n)	حركة - حدث	maps(n)	خرائط
almost(adv)	تقريباً	message(n)	رسالة
around(adv)	حول	museum(n)	متحف
arrange(d) (v)	يرتب	situation(n)	موقف
character(n)	شخصية	still(adv)	لا يزال
dangerous(adj)	خطير	successful(adj)	ناجح
decide(d) (v)	يقرر	together(adv)	معاً
example(n)	مثال	true(adj)	صحيح
fantastic(adj)	رائع	warmer(adj)	أكثر حمية
farm(n)	مزرعة	wonderful(adj)	رائع
full(adj)	مملوء		

Part II Language Study

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

express	ideas	تعبير عن أفكار	send	a message to	يرسل
have	a penfriend	لديه صديق مراسلة		a long time	يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً
make	friends with	يُصادق / يُصاحب	take	it for granted	يكون على يقين / يظن أنه من المسلم به

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

an example is	أحد الأمثلة هو	just a pen and paper will do	فقط قلم وورقة سفيان بالغرض
and so on	وهكذا	know very well	يعرف جيداً
around the world	حول العالم	live on a farm	يعيش في مزرعة
as far as I'm concerned	على قدر اهتمامي	make ... stressed	تجعل ... تحت ضغط
as well as	بالإضافة إلى	not my kind of book	ليس نوعي من الكتب
different from	مختلف عن	old-fashioned	ذو أسلوب قديم - موضة قديمة
each other	بعضهم البعض	on a ship	على سفينة
events of the story	أحداث القصة	online clubs	نادي / منتدى على الإنترنت
for the rest of your life	طوال ما تبقى من عمرك	really fun	ممتع فعلاً
full of action	ملي بالأحداث		
seventeen-year-old	ذو السبعة عشر عاماً		



be here to stay	استمر / لا غنى عنه	that is just the start of	هذه مجرد بداية لـ
in the 1930s	في ثلاثينات القرن العشرين	the Dark Ages	عصور الظلام
Information Dark Age	عصر الظلام الرقمي	travel through	يسافر عبر
it's not all good news		you shouldn't judge	لا تحكم بالظاهر
	لمست أخبار جيدة على الإطلاق	a book by its cover	يسكن من / ينح في
continue to	استمر لي	manage to	ينتقل
copy ... onto	نسخ ... على	move to	يقيم مع
decide to	قرر أن	send ... away	يأخذ ... بعيداً
encourage ... to	يشجع ... أن	stay with	يرسل
escape with	يهرب مع	take ... away	
hack into	يحترق	write to	

Reading & Listening texts

1 Reading Texts

A. Why penfriends are history ! (SB page 72)

Communication<sup>(1)</sup> is easy today. Many people use apps<sup>(2)</sup> on their smartphones<sup>(3)</sup> to talk to their friends. When we send a message<sup>(4)</sup> to a friend, we take it for granted that he or she will reply<sup>(5)</sup> very soon.

Before the internet, people wrote letters and many people had penfriends<sup>(6)</sup>. These were people they did not always meet, but people they chose to write to about their lives. The letters sometimes took a long time to arrive, but penfriends were very popular<sup>(7)</sup>.

An example<sup>(8)</sup> is Nellie Roberts and Daphne Meech. These two Australian women are now 90 years old. They first decided<sup>(9)</sup> to write to each other<sup>(10)</sup> in the 1930s, and are now perhaps<sup>(11)</sup> the longest two people ever<sup>(12)</sup> to be penfriends.

Nellie Roberts first had penfriends when she was 10, but only one penfriend continued<sup>(13)</sup> to write to her. Like<sup>(14)</sup> Nellie, Daphne lived on a farm<sup>(15)</sup> and the two women enjoyed writing about their lives. As well as<sup>(16)</sup> letters, they sent each other black and white photos. They did not meet until 1962, 30 years after their first letter.

- Check Vocabulary**
- (1) التواصل - الاتصال
  - (2) تطبيقات
  - (3) الهواتف الذكية
  - (4) رسالة
  - (5) يرد
  - (6) أصدقاء مراسلة
  - (7) شائع - ذو شعبية
  - (8) مثال
  - (9) يقرر
  - (10) بعضهم البعض
  - (11) ربما
  - (12) على الإطلاق
  - (13) يستمر
  - (14) مثل
  - (15) مزرعة
  - (16) بالإضافة إلى

Nellie still<sup>(17)</sup> prefers writing letters, and says that she is never going to use technology<sup>(18)</sup> to communicate<sup>(19)</sup>. Surprisingly<sup>(20)</sup>, there are now many online<sup>(21)</sup> clubs for penfriends. They encourage<sup>(22)</sup> people to write letters to penfriends around<sup>(23)</sup> the world, and they are very successful<sup>(24)</sup>. Many say that writing letters is relaxing<sup>(25)</sup> and a warmer<sup>(26)</sup> way to communicate than with an email or text<sup>(27)</sup>. You do not need apps, passwords or anti-virus software. As Nellie says, 'Just a pen and paper will do.'

- Check Vocabulary**
- (17) لا يزال
  - (18) تكنولوجيا
  - (19) يتواصل
  - (20) بشكل مفاجئ
  - (21) على الإنترنت
  - (22) يشجع
  - (23) حول
  - (24) ناجح
  - (25) مريح
  - (26) أكثر حميمية
  - (27) رسالة نصية

B. A fantastic adventure story ! (SB page 74)

In my opinion, Robert Louis Stevenson's Kidnapped<sup>(1)</sup> is not as great as Treasure Island or as exciting as The Strange<sup>(2)</sup> Case<sup>(3)</sup> of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde, but it is full<sup>(4)</sup> of action<sup>(5)</sup> and really fun.

I enjoyed it very much. The story happens in 1751 and it begins when seventeen-year-old David Balfour goes to stay with his mysterious<sup>(6)</sup> uncle in Scotland. His uncle is a cruel<sup>(7)</sup> man and he tricks<sup>(8)</sup> David. He arranges<sup>(9)</sup> for a ship to take David away to America. However, David manages to<sup>(10)</sup> escape<sup>(11)</sup> with a friend and that is just the start of their adventures<sup>(12)</sup>. I recommend<sup>(13)</sup> this book to everyone who likes adventure stories.

James (UK)

- Check Vocabulary**
- (1) المخطوف
  - (2) غريب
  - (3) حادثة / قضية
  - (4) مملوء
  - (5) حركة - حدث
  - (6) غامض
  - (7) قاسي
  - (8) يخدع
  - (9) يرتب
  - (10) يتمكن من
  - (11) الهروب
  - (12) مغامرة
  - (13) يوصي بـ / يوصي

C. Not the best book for me (SB page 74)

As far as I'm concerned<sup>(1)</sup>, this book is too old-fashioned<sup>(2)</sup>. The story is interesting<sup>(3)</sup> and there is a lot of action, but I don't think the characters<sup>(4)</sup> are very real<sup>(5)</sup>. David Balfour is a seventeen-year-old boy, but his life is very different from mine. The language is also old-fashioned. I prefer<sup>(6)</sup> to read more modern books. Kidnapped is just not my kind of book.

Peter (Canada)

- Check Vocabulary**
- (1) مهتم
  - (2) قديم / قديم
  - (3) شيق
  - (4) شخصيات
  - (5) حقيقي
  - (6) يفضل



(SB page 74)

## D. My favourite book !

Kidnapped has so much action and adventure! This really is my favourite book. David Balfour's uncle tries to send him away to America on a ship, but David escapes and makes friends with<sup>(1)</sup> a man called Alan Breck. Together<sup>(2)</sup> they travel through Scotland and face<sup>(3)</sup> many dangerous<sup>(4)</sup> and exciting situations.<sup>(5)</sup> I love all the details<sup>(6)</sup> about the places they visit. You can really feel like you are in Scotland. I will definitely<sup>(7)</sup> read this book again.

Tara (Ireland)

## Check Vocabulary

- (1) يتصادق - يصاحب مع
- (2) معا
- (3) يواجه
- (4) خطير
- (5) مواقف
- (6) تفاصيل
- (7) بالتأكيد

## 2 Listening Texts

(SB page 73)

**Interviewer** : Hello, today I'm talking to Professor<sup>(1)</sup> Marwan Shabana,

a history teacher at the University of Cairo. He's just written a very interesting book about the future of

technology. And it's not all good news, is it Professor?

**Professor** : That's true,<sup>(2)</sup> although no one knows what will happen in the future, of course!

**Interviewer** : What are you worried about?

**Professor** : Well, there was a time in history when very few people wrote about what happened in their lives. We call these the Dark Ages,<sup>(3)</sup> because we don't know much about this time. I'm worried that we are going to have an information Dark Age in the future.

**Interviewer** : Why is that?

**Professor** : Today we use computer technology for almost<sup>(4)</sup> all our information. We use computers for our writing, photographs, music and films. This is fantastic,<sup>(5)</sup> of course, but what will happen to it in the future? The technology of today quickly becomes old. I think that we'll lose<sup>(6)</sup> a lot of material<sup>(7)</sup> because new technology won't be able to read it.



## Check Vocabulary

- (1) استاذ جامعي
- (2) صحيح
- (3) عصور الظلام
- (4) تقريباً
- (5) رائع
- (6) يفقد - يخسر
- (7) محتويات

**Interviewer** : But, we'll copy<sup>(8)</sup> all the important information onto our new technology, won't we?

**Professor** : I agree, we will. But history teaches us that there are some things we don't think are important today that will be very important in the future. These are the things I worry that we will lose. People won't think something is important to save,<sup>(9)</sup> or we will forget the passwords<sup>(10)</sup> to give us this information.

**Interviewer** : What can we do about this?

**Professor** : In my opinion, we need to print<sup>(11)</sup> more, like we did in the past. Look in a museum<sup>(12)</sup> and you will see wonderful<sup>(13)</sup> old paintings,<sup>(14)</sup> photographs, maps<sup>(15)</sup> and so on.<sup>(16)</sup> With care,<sup>(17)</sup> these will be with us for a long time.

**Interviewer** : So, do you think old technology is better than new technology?

**Professor** : I'm not so sure about that! Of course, we need new technology, but will the software that we use today be on the computers of tomorrow. We need old technology as well. For example, my father kept all of his letters to my mother before they married. I don't have any of the emails I sent to my wife, because we don't usually keep emails! I think we need to print more information as well as keeping it on a computer. Then we won't have another Dark Age.

**Interviewer** : It's an interesting idea. Thank you for talking to us.

- (8) ونسخ
- (9) يحفظ
- (10) كلمات مرور
- (11) يطبع
- (12) متحف
- (13) رائع
- (14) لوحات
- (15) خرائط
- (16) وهكذا
- (17) عناية / رعاية

AltFwOk.com موقع التفوق



# Treasure Island



موقع  
التفوق  
ALTfwok.com

## Main Characters



Dr. Livesey



Jim Hawkins,  
A young teenage boy



Captain Smollett,  
the ship's captain



Mr. Trelawney

## The Pirates



Billy Bones



Long John Silver



Captain Flint,  
His parrot



Ben Gun



Pew

## Setting

The story takes place at The Admiral Benbow Inn in Bristol on the Hispaniola, a sailing ship on Treasure Island, an island in the Caribbean.



## Treasure Island

By Robert Louis Stevenson



# CHAPTER

# 1

موقع  
التفوق

ALTfWok.com

## Vocabulary

adventure (n)	مغامرة	hide - hid - hidden (v)	يخفي - يخفى
blind (adj)	كفيف البصر	inn (n)	نزل (أنتدق صغير)
captain (n)	قبطان - قائد	owe (ed) (v)	يدين بـ ... (عليه دين)
cliff (n)	مُنحدر	own (ed) (v)	يملك
coin (n)	عملة معدنية	pale (adj)	شاحب اللون
danger (n)	الخطر	papers (n)	مستندات - أوراق
dare (d) (v)	يجرؤ	scar (n)	ندبة - أثر جرح
frightened (adj)	خائف	sword (n)	سيف
grab (bed) (v)	يجذب بشدة - يخطف	terrible (adj)	فظيع
guard (ed) (n - v)	يحرس - حارس	travel (led) (n - v)	السفر - يسافر
gun (n)	بندقية	weak (adj)	ضعيف - واهن
hand (ed) (n - v)	يعطي (باليد) - يد		

## Words and their definitions

scar	: a mark on the skin from a cut or a wound	أثر جرح في الجسم
cliff	: a steep piece of land or rock	منحدر
dare	: to be brave enough to do something	جرى
pale	: having a skin colour that is very white or whiter than it usually is	شاحب
sword	: a weapon with a long, sharp blade	سيف

## Before You read

Look at the pictures. What do you think the story is about?

Jim Hawkins

I'll start by writing about the time when my father owned<sup>(1)</sup> an inn<sup>(2)</sup> called the Admiral Benbow, many years ago. I remember the day when a man walked into the inn. He was tall and strong, with an old blue coat and a scar<sup>(3)</sup> on his face.

He looked around<sup>(4)</sup> him.

## Check Vocabulary

- (1) امتلك
- (2) نزل / فندق
- (3) ندبة / أثر الجرح
- (4) نظر حوله



"This is a nice, quiet place. I'll stay here. Please, take this up<sup>(5)</sup> to my room," he said, pointing to a large wooden box.

"You can call me Captain. And this is for you," he continued, handing my father three or four gold coins<sup>(6)</sup>.

The Captain was usually a quiet man. He spent his days walking on the beach or on the cliffs<sup>(7)</sup>. When he came back, he always asked, "Did any sailors<sup>(8)</sup> visit the inn today?" At first, we thought he wanted to find some other sailors, but later we realised<sup>(9)</sup> that he didn't want any sailors to find him.

In the evenings, the Captain sometimes told stories about his time at sea. My father was worried that nobody would want to visit the inn because they would be frightened by the Captain's stories, but I think people liked them.

The Captain stayed at the inn for months. He did not give us any more money for his room and my father did not dare<sup>(10)</sup> to ask him for more.

One morning, the Captain went for a walk<sup>(11)</sup> along the beach. I was helping my mother to make breakfast when another man walked into the inn. He was thin and pale<sup>(12)</sup>, with three fingers on his left hand. He sat down and asked, "Is this table here for my friend Bill?"

I told him that I did not know Bill and said that the table was for the Captain.

"Well, my friend Bill might say that he's the Captain," he said. "He has a scar on his face and likes to tell a story. Is that him?"

"Yes," I said. "He's gone for a walk." "Which way did he walk?" he asked.

I pointed towards the beach. The man stood up and waited by the door for the Captain to return.

- (5) ورفع ... إلى  
(6) عملات ذهبية  
(7) منحدرات  
(8) بحارة  
(9) ادرك / فهم  
(10) يجرؤ  
(11) ذهب في تمشية  
(12) شاحب

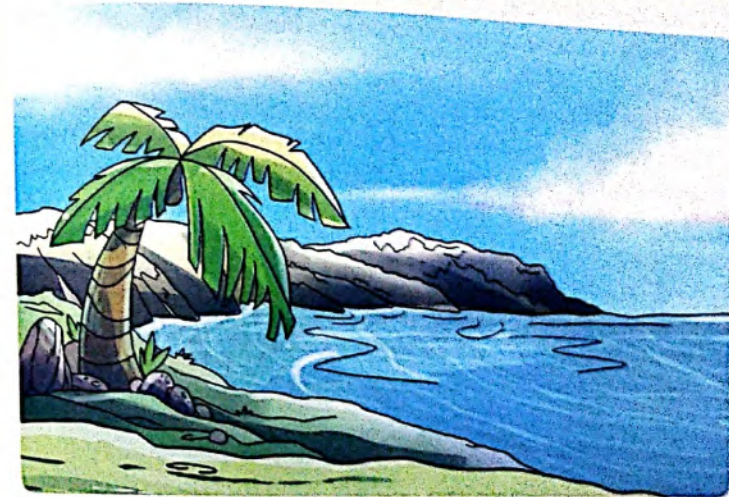
When the Captain saw the man, he looked pale and ill. "Black Dog!" the Captain said.

"That's right," he replied<sup>(13)</sup>. "I've found my friend Bill! We've had a lot of adventures<sup>(14)</sup> since I lost these fingers!"

I left them to talk. Then suddenly there were loud shouts<sup>(15)</sup> and both men stood up and ran outside. The Captain had a sword<sup>(16)</sup> and then I saw Black Dog running away with blood<sup>(17)</sup> on his arm. The man continued running until we could not see him.

The Captain walked back into the inn. He looked ill and suddenly he fell over. I thought perhaps he was hurt from the fight<sup>(18)</sup>. At that moment, the doctor arrived to see my father who was sick. "Help us, Dr Livesey! The Captain is hurt!" said my mother.

The doctor looked at him and said, "He is not hurt, but he is very ill. Help me to take him upstairs<sup>(19)</sup>."



We took the Captain up to his bedroom and the doctor gave him some medicine<sup>(20)</sup>. The Captain stayed in bed, but he was not quiet. He told me about his travels at sea, and said that he had something which people wanted. "Black Dog is not as bad as some of the other men," he said, "They all want to find me. Tell me if you see them!"

- (13) اجاب / رد  
(14) مغامرات  
(15) صرخات عالية  
(16) سيف  
(17) دم  
(18) معركة / مشاجرة  
(19) السور العلوي  
(20) دواء



That evening, my father died. I felt terrible<sup>(21)</sup> and forgot all about the strange things<sup>(22)</sup> that the Captain told me.

Then, a week later, I saw a blind man<sup>(23)</sup> coming down the road towards<sup>(24)</sup> the inn. He stopped outside the door when he was near and asked, "Where am I? Will a kind<sup>(25)</sup> person help me?" "You are at the Admiral Benbow Inn in Black Hill Cove," I told him.

At that moment, he grabbed my hand<sup>(26)</sup>.

"Take me to the Captain!" he said. "Take me to him now!"

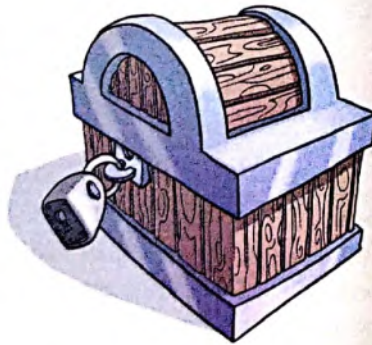
I walked with the blind man into the inn and took him to the Captain. The Captain looked very surprised<sup>(27)</sup> to see him.

"Now, Bill, stay where you are. I can hear you. Take this." He then put something in the Captain's hand, turned around<sup>(28)</sup> and left. The Captain looked at what the man gave him. "Ten o'clock!" he said.

"I have time!"<sup>(29)</sup>

Then the Captain suddenly fell to the floor. He was dead. I found my mother and we talked about what we should do. We knew that the Captain had a box in his room and it probably had money in it. The blind man and Black Dog probably wanted this. I thought about taking the box to Dr Livesey, but I did not want to leave my mother. We knew that we were in danger<sup>(30)</sup>. We decided to go to the nearest village<sup>(31)</sup> and ask our neighbours<sup>(32)</sup> for help guarding<sup>(33)</sup> the inn.

However, none of the people in the village wanted to help us. They did not come back with us, but one man went to tell Dr Livesey. Another man said that we could have his gun<sup>(34)</sup>.



- (21) شعرت بالسوء
- (22) أشياء غريبة
- (23) رجل كفيف
- (24) تجاه / ناحية
- (25) طيب / عطوف
- (26) أمسك بيدي
- (27) مندهش
- (28) استدار حول
- (29) لديه وقت
- (30) في خطر
- (31) أقرب قرية
- (32) جيران
- (33) حماية
- (34) بندقية

It was dark when we returned to the inn. We found the key to the box in the Captain's jacket. I also saw the message<sup>(35)</sup> that the blind man gave to the Captain. It said, "You have until ten o'clock tonight." We went upstairs and my mother soon opened the box with the key. Inside, we found some clothes, some guns, some papers and other things. We also found a bag with some coins inside.

"We only have time until ten o'clock," I said. "Let's leave before the blind man and Black Dog return."

"I'll only take the money which the Captain owes<sup>(36)</sup> us," my mother said, opening the bag.

We stood up to leave, and I decided to take the papers from the box, too. We walked as quickly as we could back towards the village, but as we walked, we heard the sound of people in the road behind us.

"Take the money and run," said my mother. "I'm too weak<sup>(37)</sup> to continue."

I did not want to leave her, so we stopped under a bridge<sup>(38)</sup>, where we could hide<sup>(39)</sup> in the dark.



- (35) رسالة
- (36) يدين لـ
- (37) ضعيف
- (38) كوبري
- (39) يختبئ



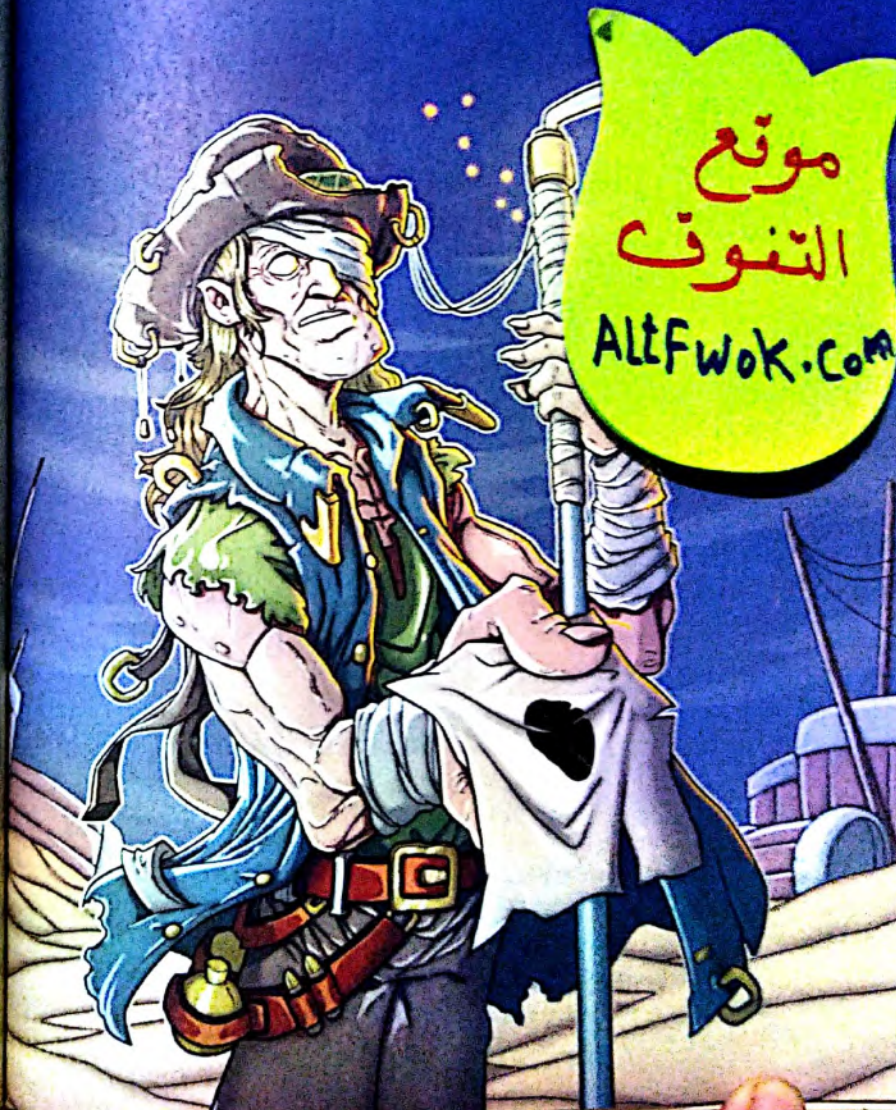


## Check your Understanding Chapter 1

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- You \_\_\_\_\_ me twenty thousand pounds. Please, I need my money back.  
a. own      b. owe      c. possess      d. have
- The policeman \_\_\_\_\_ the criminal's arm and pushed him into the police car.  
a. bit      b. guarded      c. released      d. grabbed
- There was a small \_\_\_\_\_ by the road where we could have a meal and spend the night.  
a. beach      b. inn      c. prison      d. pool
- Being \_\_\_\_\_, he needs someone to help him cross the road.  
a. strong      b. indebted      c. blind      d. wealthy
- There's a night watchman who \_\_\_\_\_ our school at night.  
a. guards      b. steals      c. fears      d. frightens
- In ancient times, people usually carried \_\_\_\_\_ to protect themselves or fight others.  
a. tanks      b. submarines      c. missiles      d. swords
- I wanted to ask my father for more pocket money, but I didn't \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. guard      b. dare      c. attack      d. owe
- This wound الجرح might leave a / an \_\_\_\_\_ on your cheek.  
a. scare      b. scar      c. inn      d. guard
- His long illness made him go \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. healthy      b. powerful      c. pale      d. strong
- Be careful! This \_\_\_\_\_ is steep and very dangerous.  
a. cliff      b. plain      c. lake      d. tree

## CHAPTER 2





## Vocabulary

catch - caught (d) (v)	قبض على	island (n)	جزيرة
clue (n)	دليل / مفتاح كل اللغز	magistrate (n)	قاضي / محقق
cook (n)	طاه - طباخ	map (n)	خريطة
crew (n)	طاقم سفينة / طائرة	rich (adj)	ثري / غني
cross (n)	علامة (x / +)	rob (bed) (v)	يسرق
dead (adj)	ميت	sail (ed) (v)	يسبح
direction (n)	اتجاه	secret (n - adj)	سر - سري
escape (d) (v)	يهرب	servant (n)	خادم
head (n)	رئيس - قائد	the rest (n)	الباقى
include (d) (v)	يشمل / يتضمن - ضمّن	treasure (n)	كنز

## Words and their definitions

- ▶ **clue** : an object or a piece of information that helps to solve a crime  
مفتاح لحل اللغز
- ▶ **crew** : all the people who work on a ship or a plane  
طاقم سفينة / طائرة
- ▶ **escape** : succeed in leaving a place when someone or something is trying to stop you  
يهرب
- ▶ **head** : the most important person in an organisation  
رئيس / قائد
- ▶ **magistrate** : someone who decides if a person is guilty of less serious crimes in a court  
قاضي / محقق
- ▶ **rob** : steal something from a person, shop ... etc.  
يسرق / يسلب
- ▶ **servant** : someone whose job is to live in another person's house and do jobs for them, such as cleaning  
خادم

## Before You read

- What do you think will happen next in the story?

I could see the road from where we were hiding, and soon I saw eight men. One of them was the blind man. I saw them walk down the road to the Admiral Benbow Inn. They were surprised to see that the door was open, then they all ran inside. I heard someone shout, "Bill's dead!"

"Go and find his box," said the blind man.

A little later, a window opened from the Captain's bedroom and a man called out<sup>(1)</sup>, "Someone has opened the box!"

"Is it there?" said the blind man.

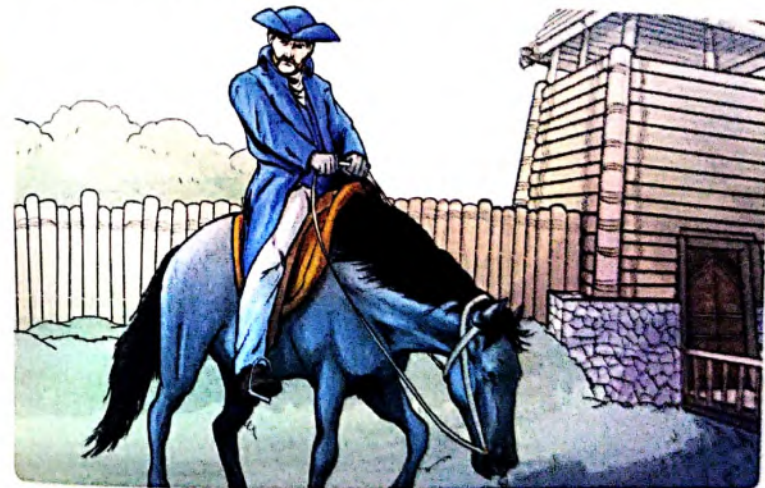
"Only the money is there," replied the man.

"It's the boy and the woman from the inn!" shouted the blind man. "Let's find them!" The men started to look around the house.

"If you find it you'll all be rich!" said the blind man.

At this time, we heard horses coming down the road. When the men heard the horses, they started to run in all directions<sup>(2)</sup>.

The horses arrived, so I ran out to see who was riding them. One of them was the boy who went to get Dr Livesey, and the rest<sup>(3)</sup> were policemen. Two men took my mother to the village, where she soon felt better<sup>(4)</sup>, and the others tried to catch the men. But it was too late: we heard that they escaped<sup>(5)</sup> on a boat.



I returned to the Admiral Benbow with the police.

"What did they want?" said Mr Dance, the head of the police<sup>(6)</sup>.

"I think that they wanted this," I said, showing him the papers that I still had in my jacket. "I'd like to take them to Dr Livesey."

## Check Vocabulary

- (1) تاسى
- (2) اتجاهات
- (3) البقية
- (4) شعر بتحسن
- (5) هرب
- (6) رئيس الشرطة



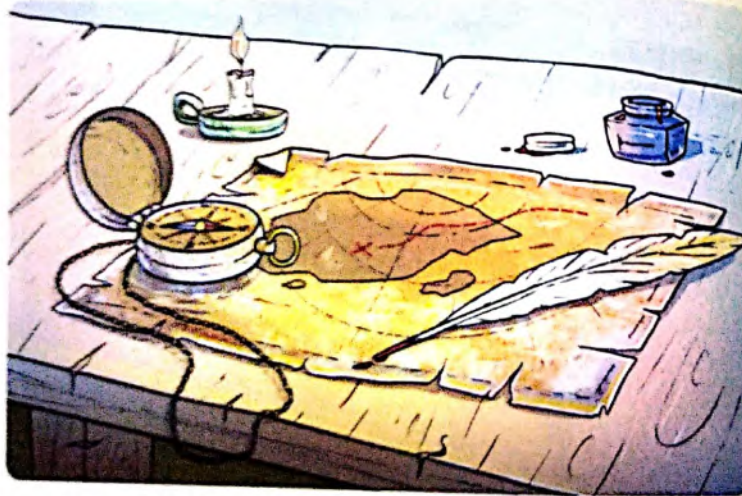
"That's a good idea," said Mr Dance. "He's a magistrate<sup>(7)</sup> as well as a doctor. He'll know what to do. I'll come with you."

We found that Dr Livesey was not at home, but was eating at the house of Mr Trelawney, an important rich man. Mr Trelawney asked us into his house. I showed Mr Trelawney and Dr Livesey the papers that the Captain had in his box.

"I think this might be a clue<sup>(8)</sup> as to where Flint buried<sup>(9)</sup> his treasure!"<sup>(10)</sup> said Dr Livesey.

"That is why those men were not interested in<sup>(11)</sup> money," agreed<sup>(12)</sup> Mr Trelawney. "If you are right, we should take the next boat from Bristol and go and find the treasure ourselves!"

"If Jim here agrees," said the doctor, looking at me, "we should look at these papers now."



The doctor looked at the papers. Some of them seemed to describe<sup>(13)</sup> the ships that the Captain and his men had robbed<sup>(14)</sup> of money. Then we looked at the other papers and saw a map<sup>(15)</sup> of an island, with a big cross<sup>(16)</sup> on it next to the words, "most of treasure here."

"Dr Livesey, we should go to Bristol tomorrow," said Mr Trelawney. "In a few days, we'll find the best ship in England. Jim Hawkins here can come as our ship's boy. You can be the ship's doctor."

"I agree," said the doctor, "but those men who tried to find the map will now be looking for us. We are not safe anymore. We must not tell anyone else what we know."

It took us longer than we thought to be ready to leave<sup>(17)</sup> England. While Mr Trelawney prepared for<sup>(18)</sup> the journey<sup>(19)</sup> in Bristol, I stayed at Mr Trelawney's house with his servant Redruth and spent hours studying the map, thinking about the treasure that we might find.

One day, a letter was sent to me from Mr Trelawney.

It said that a good man called Blandly had a ship called the Hispaniola for us. Trelawney said that he had found a crew<sup>(20)</sup> ready to work on it. The crew included<sup>(21)</sup> a man called Long John Silver, who had lost a leg but was a good cook<sup>(22)</sup>. Silver also knew other men who would join us. Trelawney said that everyone was excited by<sup>(23)</sup> the thought<sup>(24)</sup> of the treasure. I was surprised by this, as I thought we had to keep the news<sup>(25)</sup> of the treasure a secret<sup>(25)</sup>.

I was very excited by the thought of the journey and I went to say goodbye<sup>(26)</sup> to my mother at the Admiral Benbow Inn. I was very sad to leave her the next day, when I travelled to Bristol with Redruth. We had just one night in the city before we were going to sail<sup>(27)</sup>.

AltFwOk.com موقع التفوق



## Check your Understanding Chapter 2

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The \_\_\_\_\_ decided that the man was innocent <sup>بائس</sup> and set him free.  
a. pirate      b. sailor      c. cook      d. magistrate
- It is one of the policemen's jobs to \_\_\_\_\_ criminals and send them to prison.  
a. hold      b. catch      c. hand      d. overlook
- The job of the new \_\_\_\_\_ is to clean the house and the garden.  
a. master      b. landlord      c. servant      d. captain
- Dr Zewail was the \_\_\_\_\_ of the team who discovered the femtosecond.  
a. head      b. hand      c. lord      d. owner
- The ancient Egyptians left us lots of hidden \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. islands      b. crosses      c. treasures      d. crews
- There are signs along the roads that show us \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. treasures      b. directions      c. riches      d. meals
- The \_\_\_\_\_ of the plane consisted of a pilot, a copilot and eight attendants.  
a. passengers      b. wings      c. engine      d. crew
- Poor is to \_\_\_\_\_ as servant is to master.  
a. wealth      b. wealthy      c. poverty      d. the rich
- The police have found a strong \_\_\_\_\_ that helped them solve the crime.  
a. clue      b. cross      c. island      d. blind
- This \_\_\_\_\_ is a good tourist attraction for people who like fishing, diving and sailing. Water completely surrounds it.  
a. hill      b. mountain      c. island      d. river
- He was set free <sup>أطلق سراحه</sup> after the \_\_\_\_\_ had decided that he was not responsible for the crime.  
a. captain      b. magistrate      c. pilot      d. sailor

## CHAPTER 3





## Vocabulary

attack (ed) (n - v)	هجوم - قهرم	mutiny (n)	تمرد / عصيان
barrel (n)	برميل الخشب	note (n)	ملاحظة - رسالة قصيرة
crutch (n)	عكاز - ركيزة	of different sizes	ذو أحجام مختلفة
destination (n)	مقصد - وجهة السفر	parrot (n)	ببغاء
empty (ied) (n - v)	فارغ - بصرى	patient (adj - n)	مرضى - صبور
finger (n)	إصبع اليد	pay - paid (for) (v)	يدفع ثمن
frightened (adj)	خائف	pirate (n)	قرصان
gang (n)	عصابة	reach (ed) (v)	يصل إلى
harbour (n)	ميناء - مرسى	return (ed) (v)	يعود - يُعيد
helper (n)	مساعد	safe (adj)	آمن - في أمان
journey (n)	رحلة	sailor (n)	بحار
lose a leg	يفقد إحدى ساقيه	save (d) (v)	يُخّذ - يُدّخر
make me laugh	يجعلني أضحك	secret (n - adj)	سر - سري

## Words and their definitions

- **harbour** : an area of water next to the land where ships can stay safely ميناء
- **mutiny** : when a group of people refuse to obey the person in charge of them and take control for themselves تمرد
- **crutch** : a special stick which you put under your arm to help you walk when you have hurt your leg عكاز
- **parrot** : a brightly coloured bird which can learn to speak ببغاء
- **barrel** : a large container made of wood برميل
- **pirate** : a sailor who attacks ships and steals from them قرصان
- **gang** : a group of people that causes trouble عصابة
- **secret** : known about by only a few people and kept from others سر
- **patient** : able to wait calmly for a long time صبور
- **attack** : an act of violence that is intended to hurt a person or damage a place هجوم

## Before You read

What do you think life is like on the Hispaniola?

The next morning, Mr Trelawney asked me to take a note<sup>(1)</sup> to Long John Silver. I went to the inn which Silver owned. It was full of<sup>(2)</sup> people, but I soon saw a tall, strong man with one leg. He looked very happy and seemed to know all of the people there. I walked up to him and gave him the note. When he saw that it was from Mr Trelawney, he looked surprised and said, "Ah, you must be the new ship's boy!"

At that moment, one of the men in the inn quickly left the room. I saw that he had three fingers on one hand.

"It's Black Dog!" I called. "Stop him!"

"Yes, stop him! He did not pay for<sup>(3)</sup> his food!" called Silver to one of his helpers<sup>(4)</sup>. The helper ran out of the door.

"Do you know that man? Black Dog, is it?" Silver asked me.

"Yes, he was one of the men who attacked<sup>(5)</sup> my home. Did Mr Trelawney tell you about that?" I replied. "Ah, yes. I've seen him in my inn before. He sometimes comes with a blind man."

"The blind man is called Pew," I said. "He was with Black Dog when they attacked."

"Then we must catch them both," said Silver. However, the helper returned and said he could not catch Black Dog.

"Well, we must return to Mr Trelawney," said Silver.

We walked back along the harbour<sup>(6)</sup> past boats of different sizes<sup>(7)</sup>, all preparing to go to sea. Silver told me all about the boats and I knew that he was a great sailor.

We found Dr Livesey with Mr Trelawney when we returned to his hotel, and told them about Black Dog.

"There is nothing we can do now," said Mr Trelawney. "We leave at four o'clock this afternoon. Get your hat, Jim, we'll go on the ship now," he said to me.



## Check Vocabulary

- (1) ملاحظة
- (2) مليء
- (3) يدفع لـ
- (4) مساعدين
- (5) هاجم
- (6) ميناء، المرسى، الميناء
- (7) أحجام مختلفة



It took some time to reach the Hispaniola. When we walked onto the big ship, the captain, Smollett, did not look happy to see us.

"What's the problem?" asked Mr Trelawney.

"I don't like the men on this ship and I'm not happy about where we're going," he said. "Why not?" asked Dr Livesey.

"I was told that the destination<sup>(8)</sup> of the journey was a secret," he explained. "But the crew tell me we're looking for treasure. I know that looking for treasure always means danger. And when I go on a journey, I like to be able to choose my own crew."

"Don't you like the crew we chose?" asked Mr Trelawney.

"If I sail with them, I want you to stay at the front of the ship for all the journey, and to keep guns with you. And don't show anyone the map," said Smollett.

"Are you worried there will be a mutiny<sup>(9)</sup>?" asked Dr Livesey.

"I don't like the men on the ship and I'm not happy about where we're going," he said.

"Why not?" asked Dr Livesey.

"It's my job to keep you safe<sup>(10)</sup>, that's all," said Smollett, and walked to another part of the ship.

"I think you've two good men on the ship," said Dr Livesey. "That's Long John Silver and Captain Smollett."

"I know Long John Silver is a good man," said Mr Trelawney, "but I don't think Captain Smollett is." I agreed with Mr Trelawney. I did not like Captain Smollett.

The Hispaniola finally left Bristol and our long journey began. Silver was able to walk around the ship on one leg, using only a crutch<sup>(11)</sup>. All the men liked him and he was a good cook, his kitchen always clean. When he wasn't working, he looked after his parrot<sup>(12)</sup>. He called it Captain Flint and said it was 200 years old. The parrot could talk, too, which always made me laugh<sup>(13)</sup>.



- (8) وجهة (السفر)  
(9) تمرد / عصيان  
(10) يمسك على سلامتك  
(11) دعامه / عكاز  
(12) بيقاء  
(13) جعلني أضحك

One night, before I went to bed, I decided to eat an apple. The apples were kept in a big barrel<sup>(14)</sup> which I climbed inside, because it was nearly empty<sup>(15)</sup>. Before I left the barrel, I heard a man talking nearby<sup>(16)</sup>. It was Silver and what he said was terrible.



"On that journey, Flint was the captain," he said.

"It was then that I lost my leg and Pew became blind. After that journey, I put a lot of money in the bank. It was a great journey, and most of the same crew are on this ship today."

"You won't be able to return to Bristol after this journey," said another sailor called Dick. "What will happen to your inn?"

- (14) برميل  
(15) فارغ  
(16) قريب / محاور  
(17) صبور

"I've sold it," said Silver. "My wife has the money and is waiting for me to return in a secret place. And after this journey, you'll have lots of money, too."

Another man joined them and said, "I'm tired of waiting. When can we attack Captain Smollett?"

"You must be patient<sup>(17)</sup>," said Silver. "Trelawney has the map, so we wait until they have found the treasure. We might also want Smollett to take us home before we attack."



"We shouldn't wait that long," replied another sailor.

"You're like the others," said Silver. "You want to do things quickly. That's what Pew and Flint wanted to do. What happened to them? Pew is blind and Flint is dead!"

I began to realise that Silver was not only a crook, but he was also a pirate, and the other crew were part of his gang.

"No, we wait," continued Silver. "When the time is right, I'll kill Trelawney and his friends! Now, Dick, can you get me an apple?"

When I heard these words, I was very frightened. However, before Dick came to the barrel, I heard another sailor call out: "I can see land!"

It was this news that saved me, because the sailors now all forgot about apples. We were near the Treasure Island.



(13) ديك  
(14) قراصنة  
(15) عصاة  
(16) لوطس / ياكسة



## Check

### your Understanding Chapter 3

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My daughter has a ..... that can sing and repeat what we say.  
a. puppy      b. parrot      c. kitten      d. hen
- What we say here is top ..... It is not for publishing.  
a. secret      b. public      c. score      d. tip
- The fox that ..... and kills the birds on our farm comes from the neighbouring desert area.  
a. feeds      b. returns      c. attacks      d. protects
- If you go on working hard, you will ..... your goal.  
a. lose      b. mistake      c. fail      d. reach
- A: What is your next ..... ? B: London. I'm going there next Friday.  
a. secret      b. barrel      c. destination      d. mutiny
- Don't be ..... The lion is in its cage.  
a. frightened      b. frightening      c. tired      d. tiring
- The coach depends on his ..... to find information about other teams.  
a. sailor      b. helpers      c. pilot      d. cook
- I asked Sama to ..... the book she had borrowed from me.  
a. return      b. take      c. catch      d. attack
- It is not safe to go sailing in this area because there are .....  
a. rescuers      b. parrots      c. patriots      d. pirates
- One of the ..... told his captain that he could see land in the distance.  
a. sails      b. sellers      c. sailors      d. seals
- One of the sailors led a ..... against the captain, but they failed to take the ship.  
a. barrel      b. parrot      c. crutch      d. mutiny



## General Exercises on Chapters 1, 2 & 3

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The people tried to catch the thief, but he .....  
a. caught b. escaped c. arrested d. managed
- Be careful or you will fall off the ..... ; it's very steep.  
a. mountain b. hall c. well d. cliff
- We ..... much to our great teachers.  
a. take b. lend c. owe d. borrow
- Black Dog is ..... ; he has lost his sight.  
a. deaf b. blind c. dumb d. crippled
- Outside the building there are two men whose job is to ..... and protect us.  
a. guard b. attack c. prevent d. own
- The thief had a long curved ..... on his cheek, so we could recognize him.  
a. skate b. sky c. skin d. scar
- What a brave young man! He was the only student who ..... to say the truth.  
a. could b. dared c. refused d. disagreed
- A/An ..... is a group of people who work against the law.  
a. gang b. crew c. staff d. team
- Unfortunately, the burglar ..... the house.  
a. stole b. took c. owed d. robbed
- The ship ..... helped each other to control the situation well.  
a. gang b. staff c. crew d. team
- A ..... is a bird with brightly coloured feathers that can learn to copy human speech.  
a. chick b. duck c. parrot d. pirate

موقع التفوق  
Altfwok.com

- The ..... is the person who is in charge of ..... a ship, or a plane.  
a. hostess b. sailor c. driver d. captain
- I don't have a lot of money on me; only a few ..... in my pocket.  
a. wealth b. coins c. jewellery d. gold
- Strong is to ..... as blind is to sighted.  
a. power b. powerful c. weak d. terrible
- My friend went on a journey in the forest. He was looking for .....  
a. adventure b. safety c. sleep d. technology
- Always keep away from .....  
a. dangerous b. danger c. safety d. safe
- Afraid and ..... are synonyms.  
a. terrific b. terrifying c. frightening d. frightened
- He had a ..... with which he could shoot the lion dead.  
a. sword b. knife c. gun d. stick
- I asked the secretary to ..... me the report in person. شخصياً  
a. hand b. owe c. fear d. dare
- The escaping criminal ..... in the fields, away from the police.  
a. left b. fought c. hid d. guarded
- A : " Who ..... this villa? B: It is my uncle's.  
a. owes b. owns c. guards d. grabs
- These ..... prove that Mr Ashraf has a villa, two blocks of flats and three modern cars.  
a. pepper b. peppers c. paper d. papers
- My uncle likes ..... . He is usually away in one place or another.  
a. coins b. guns c. travel d. reading
- My cousin works as a ..... in a famous restaurant.  
a. cooker b. cook c. cooking d. cooks
- The ..... on the map shows the place where the ship sank. غرق  
a. sail b. island c. cross d. crew
- Catch is to free as ..... is to alive.  
a. dead b. death c. die d. deadly



27. A group of prisoners were able to ..... from the police van.  
 a. lock      b. catch      c. arrest      d. escape
28. I asked my mother to ..... hot pepper in the salad.  
 a. include      b. cook      c. grow      d. sail
29. Some students were playing football. The ..... were sitting under the leafy trees.  
 a. students      b. rest      c. whole      d. other
30. Keep the password ..... . Never tell anyone what it is.  
 a. popular      b. public      c. known      d. secret
31. The clever captain ..... the ship safely during the storm.  
 a. sank      b. flew      c. sailed      d. drowned
32. The police are searching for the gang who ..... the money of the bank.  
 a. robbed      b. guarded      c. saved      d. returned
33. Google ..... help you to know the directions.  
 a. store      b. maps      c. cloud      d. mail
34. One of the sailors led a ..... against his captain.  
 a. rescue mission      b. mutiny      c. murder      d. mirror
35. This oil field produces two million ..... a day.  
 a. pirates      b. destinations      c. barrels      d. parrots
36. I asked one of my secretaries to take a ..... to the general manager.  
 a. away      b. rest      c. meal      d. note
37. After the accident that hurt his leg, Mr Nasser had to be on ..... for three months.  
 a. crutches      b. prison      c. charge      d. crew
38. Nothing is left in the fridge. It is completely .....  
 a. full      b. filled      c. empty      d. stuffed
39. A learner has to be ..... . Learning takes its time.  
 a. patience      b. patient      c. ill      d. diseased
40. You have to ..... for the drinks. They are not free.  
 a. call      b. drink      c. take      d. pay
41. Sama cried in pain when her brother shut the door on her .....  
 a. finger      b. note      c. crutch      d. harbour

## CHAPTER 4





## Vocabulary

as usual	كالمعتاد	hurt - hurt (v)	يؤذي - مضاب
blow a whistle	تطلق صفارة	kill (ed) (v)	يقتل
branch (n)	فرع - نخس	low (adj)	منخفض
climb (ed) (v)	تسلق	mark (ed) (v)	يُعلِّق - يعلِّق
climb out of	تسلق خارجاً من	marked (adj)	مُعلِّق
close (to)	قريب - لصيق	mistake (n)	خطأ
coast (n)	ساحل	organise (d) (v)	يُنظِّم
count (ed) (v)	عدّ - يحصى	relax (ed) (v)	يستريح
disease (n)	مرض	rocky (adj)	صخري
excited (adj)	مُثار - سعيد	shore (n)	شاطئ
expression (n)	تعبيرات الوجه	shout (ed) (n - v)	صرخة - بصرخ
fight - fought (v)	يقاتل - يقاتل	surprised (adj)	مُدهش
forever (adv)	للأبد	thought (n)	فكرة
hill (n)	تل	trust(ed) (n - v)	يثق - الثقة
hold onto - held (v)	تشبث به	whistle(d) (n - v)	صفارة - يصفّر

## Words and their definitions

- branch** : a part of a tree that grows out from the trunk  
فرع شجرة
- disease** : an illness which affects a person, animal or plant  
مرض
- shore** : the land along the edge of a large area of water such as a sea, an ocean or a lake  
شاطئ
- trust** : to believe that someone is honest or will not do anything bad or wrong  
يثق به
- whistle** : a small object that produces a high whistling sound when you blow into it  
صفارة

I heard people running to look at the island, and I quietly climbed out of the barrel. I then walked up to join the sailors **at the side of** <sup>(1)</sup> the ship. We could see two low hills <sup>(2)</sup> and one big one. The island was now very close <sup>(3)</sup>.

"I've been here before," said Silver. "I know where the ship should stop."

## Check Vocabulary

- على جانب (1)
- تلال منخفضة (2)
- قريب (3)

"I have a map here," said Captain Smollett. "Can you take us to that place?"

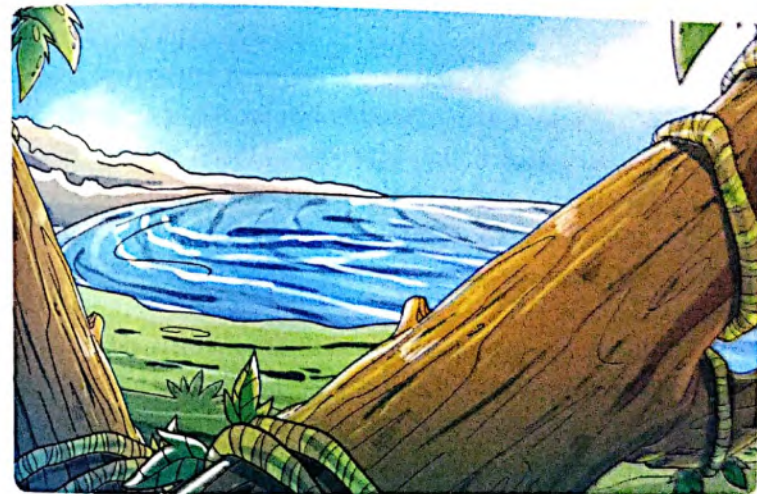
I saw that Silver was excited to take the map, but it was not the one with the treasure marked <sup>(4)</sup> on it. "Yes, I can see it. You must go here," he said, pointing to a place on the map.

Then he turned to me and said, "You'll love this island. You can swim and climb trees and walk up the hills!"

I smiled <sup>(5)</sup> at Silver, but inside I was very frightened of him now. I could not trust <sup>(6)</sup> anything that he said. I soon found Dr Livesey and quietly said to him, "I must speak to you, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. I have some terrible news <sup>(7)</sup>."

Dr Livesey's expression <sup>(8)</sup> did not change. He asked me to find his glasses downstairs and walked off to talk to Mr Trelawney and Smollett.

I waited downstairs and soon the three men joined me. "What do you want to tell us?" asked Mr Trelawney.



I told them everything that I had heard in the barrel. When I finished talking, they thanked me. "Captain," said Mr Trelawney. "You were right and I was wrong. What shall we do?"



"I'm surprised too," said Captain Smollett. "They have worked hard and been a better crew than I <sup>(9)</sup> expected. Now we must continue. We can't go back, or they might attack us <sup>(10)</sup> immediately. I don't think that they will attack us until we find the treasure. Long John Silver did not find all of this crew, so some of the men are good men. We must wait, watch and attack them when they don't expect it."

"Jim can help us," said Dr Livesey. "The men all trust him. He can listen and find out who we can trust."

I did not like this thought. I counted the men that Silver did not find for the crew. There were seven from a crew of nineteen, and I was one of them.

The next morning, the Hispaniola stopped close to the island. There were many trees, and above the trees I saw the <sup>(11)</sup> rocky tops of the hills. Silver helped Captain Smollett to sail the boat closer to the shore <sup>(12)</sup>. It was very hot and very quiet. It <sup>(13)</sup> smelled like bad eggs.

"This place is only good for <sup>(14)</sup> diseases," said Silver.

The crew worked hard on our journey to the island, but now they did not seem to want to work. I remembered Dr Livesey talking about a mutiny. Perhaps it was near. Only Silver worked as hard as usual <sup>(15)</sup>.

Later, Captain Smollett told us that he had a plan.

"Let's ask the men if they'd like to spend the afternoon on the island. If they go, we can take the ship. If they don't go, we know we need to fight them for the ship."

Mr Trelawney agreed. We decided to tell all the men we could trust about our plan and gave them all guns. Captain Smollett then told the crew that they could all have the afternoon on the island to relax <sup>(16)</sup>, if they wanted to.

"When you hear a gun at the end of the day, it'll be time to come back," he said.

All the crew suddenly looked happy and they all agreed to go. Perhaps they thought that they could find the treasure immediately.

- (9) توقع
- (10) في الحال
- (11) قمم صخرية
- (12) شاطئ (البحر)
- (13) رائحتها مثل
- (14) أمراض
- (15) كالعادة
- (16) يستريح / يستريح

Captain Smollett asked Silver to <sup>(17)</sup> organise the men. Six men would stay on the Hispaniola and thirteen would take the small boats to the shore. I realised that there were six of Silver's men on the ship. The men in our group would not be able to take the ship, so I decided I would go with Silver onto the island. I got on one of the boats quietly, but Silver saw me. Had I made a big <sup>(18)</sup> mistake?

The boat I was in was fast, and we were nearly on the beach first when I held onto the <sup>(19)</sup> branch of a tree and jumped out of the boat. I heard someone calling me, but I did not listen and began to run as fast as I could.

When I stopped, I felt happy. Silver did not know where I was. This part of the island was open, with just a few trees. I could see the hills in front of me. As I walked, I saw pretty flowers, snakes and small birds.

Suddenly a cloud of birds flew into the sky and knew that something was coming towards me. I was correct, because I then heard people talking. I decided to hide behind some trees.

I realised that one of the people was Silver, but I could not hear what he was saying. Soon the birds returned, and I knew that the men had gone. I told myself that it was my job to find out what these men were planning to do. So I decided to follow them, without them seeing me. After a few minutes, I saw Silver and another sailor talking near a beach.

"I want you to join us, Tom, because I know you're a good sailor. I'm telling you this to save you!" said Silver.

"Silver," Tom replied, "you're a good man and you shouldn't work with these pirates. I'd prefer to lose my hand than work with them!"

I knew then that here was a man that we could trust. Then came news of another. I suddenly heard a terrible shout, then all was quiet.

"What was that?" asked Tom.

Silver smiled and said "That? Oh, I think that was Alan."

"Alan!" cried Tom. "He's a good man. If your men have hurt him, then you are no friend of mine. I won't help you!"

- (17) ينظم
- (18) خطأ
- (19) فرع (شجرة)





Tom began to walk away from Silver along the beach. Silver suddenly threw his crutch at Tom, and it hit him hard on the back. He fell to the ground, and before he could stand again, Silver killed him with a knife<sup>(20)</sup>.

Silver now blew a whistle<sup>(21)</sup> and I knew that more of his men would soon arrive on the beach. I was very frightened. I walked quietly back into the trees, then ran as quickly as I could.

As I ran, I began to think. What could I do now? When we heard Captain Smollett's gun, could I go back to the beach to be with these men? If I did, I knew that they would kill me. I would have to stay on the island forever<sup>(22)</sup>.

### Check Vocabulary

(20)

يسكين

(21)

يصفر

(22)

إلى الأبد



## Check

### your Understanding Chapter 4

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... is a part of a tree that grows out from the trunk الجذع and that has leaves أوراق and fruit growing from it.  
a. leaf      b. root      c. branch      d. seed
2. The ..... is the area where the land meets the sea.  
a. shore      b. coast      c. wave      d. harbour
3. The ..... is the land along the edge حافة of a large area of water such as an ocean مُحيط or lake. بحيرة  
a. shore      b. coast      c. wave      d. harbour
4. A / An ..... is an illness which affects يؤثر على a person, animal, or plant.  
a. fight      b. expression      c. branch      d. disease
5. A ..... is a small object شيء that produces a high sound when you blow ينفخ into it.  
a. mark      b. thought      c. whistle      d. mistake
6. To ..... is to rest يستريح or do something that is enjoyable, especially after you have been working.  
a. mark      b. relax      c. exert      d. labour
7. To ..... is to believe that someone is honest أمين or will not do anything bad or wrong.  
a. blow      b. doubt      c. lie      d. trust
8. The little child held ..... the leg of a chair to help him stand up.  
a. of      b. off      c. onto      d. into
9. The referee ..... his whistle and ended the match.  
a. blew      b. said      c. fed      d. bit
10. When the car hit the man, he gave a loud .....  
a. rhyme      b. laugh      c. smile      d. shout



# CHAPTER 5

موقع  
التفوق

ALTfwok.com



## Vocabulary

allow(ed) (v)	يسمح -	interested (adj)	مهتم
believe (d) (v)	يصدق - يؤمن	kneel down - knelt (v)	يركع
bottom (n)	أسفل / سفح - قاع	leader (n)	قائد
burn - burned / burnt (v)	يحرق - يحترق	on your own	بمفرده
crazy (adj)	مجنون	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
dark (n - adj)	الظلام - مظلم	realise (d) (v)	يبرك - يفهم
different (adj)	مختلف	reply (ied) (v)	يرد - يجيب
directions (n)	اتجاهات	sail (ed) (n - v)	شراع المركب - يبحر
dry (adj)	جاف / جشن	skin (n)	الجلد
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح - يفسر	spade (n)	جاردف
fight - fought (v)	يقاتل	start (ed) (n - v)	بداية - يبدأ
flag (n)	علم - راية	voice (n)	صوت انسان
fresh (adj)	مُنعش	worry (ied) (n - v)	القلق - يقلق

## Words and their definitions

crazy	: unwell in your mind	مجنون
sail	: a piece of material used to control wind power on a ship or a boat	شراع
leader	: the person who controls other people	قائد
fight	: to hit, kick or fire guns at other people	يقاتل

I finally stopped running and saw that I was close to<sup>(1)</sup> the bottom of one of the small hills. The air was fresher<sup>(2)</sup> here and the trees were taller. Suddenly, from up the hill, something jumped behind a tree. I did not know if it was a man or an animal but it looked big and dangerous.

I decided to walk back towards the beach, but then I saw him again.

I realised it was a man, but he was running very fast from tree to tree.

I remembered that I had a gun and this made me feel safer<sup>(3)</sup>. I decided to walk towards the man.

### Check Vocabulary

- (1) قريب من  
(2) أكثر نضارة  
(3) يشعر أكثر أماناً



When he saw me walking towards him, to my surprise<sup>(4)</sup>, he came out from behind the tree and knelt down<sup>(5)</sup> in front of me. "Who are you?" I asked.

"Ben Gun," he said in a dry voice<sup>(6)</sup>. "I've not spoken to anyone for three years."

The man had very long hair and skin that was burned by the sun<sup>(7)</sup>. His clothes were dirty and made of old sails<sup>(8)</sup>.

"What happened to you?" I asked.

"I was left here by a ship," he said. "I've lived on fish and fruit ever since. I dream of<sup>(9)</sup> eating good food again."

"If I can get back to my ship, I'll give you bread and cheese," I said.

He began to look worried. "If you can get back to your ship?! Why? What's to stop you?" he said. "It isn't a problem with you," I replied.

"I'm a good man," he told me. "I'm very rich, too!" he said in a quiet voice.

AltFwOk.com موقع التفوق



I began to think that perhaps Ben Gun was crazy. Ben Gun saw that I did not believe him<sup>(10)</sup>.

"I am rich! And you can be rich too, because you found me!" he said. Then he looked worried and said, "You didn't come on Flint's ship, did you?"

I realised now that this man could help me.

"No, Flint's dead, but some of Flint's crew is on the ship. That is not good for any of us." I told him. "Is there a man with one leg?" he asked.

"Yes, Silver. He's the cook and their leader<sup>(11)</sup>," I explained.

"If you work for Silver, I'm finished," he said.

I decided to tell him my story from the start, and he looked very interested.

"You're a good boy," he said at the end. "Don't worry, you can trust me. Do you think that Trelawney would give me money and allow<sup>(12)</sup> me to come home on the ship if I helped him?" he asked.



"Of course," I replied. "And he'll need your help on the ship home, I'm sure."

"You're right," he said. "You know, I was on Flint's ship when he hid the treasure here. He was with six men and they were on the island for



about a week. We waited for them on a ship called the Walrus. One day, Flint returned to the ship *on his own*<sup>(13)</sup>. The other six men were dead. We don't know how he did it. Billy Bones and Long John Silver were with me on the ship. They asked Flint where the treasure was. 'You can go on the island and look for it,' he said. 'But you'll be there on your own. I'm taking this ship home.'

"Three years ago, I was on a different ship. When we saw the island, I told our crew that Flint's treasure was *بمفرده*<sup>(13)</sup> on it. We spent twelve days looking for it. They were not *جاروف*<sup>(14)</sup> happy when we found nothing. One day, they went back to the ship and told me I could stay. 'Here's a gun and a *spade*<sup>(14)</sup>. You can look for the treasure on your own!' they said. So, you tell Trelawney, I would prefer to work for a man I can trust like him, than with a group of pirates."

"I'll tell him, but how can I return to my ship from here?" I asked him. "I have a boat. I made it myself. We could go to the ship when it's dark!" Suddenly, we heard the sound of a gun.

"They have started to fight," I said. "We must be quick!"

I began to run back with Ben. He gave me directions, and ran easily next to me.

We heard more guns, then I saw a flag flying above some trees.



## Check

### your Understanding Chapter 5

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A / An ..... is the person who controls other people.  
a. servant      b. pirate      c. leader      d. inn owner
2. To ..... is to hit, kick or fire guns at other people.  
a. fight      b. help      c. assist      d. support
3. .... means unwell in one's mind.  
a. Helpful      b. Kind      c. Sane      d. Crazy
4. A / An ..... is a piece of material used to control wind power on a ship or a boat.  
a. sail      b. row      c. engine      d. sailor
5. A ..... is a tool for digging that has a long handle and a broad metal blade that you push into the ground.  
a. gun      b. spade      c. note      d. map
6. Your ..... stops you thinking clearly and taking the right decision.  
a. education      b. health      c. worry      d. experience
7. When it is ....., it is difficult or impossible to see.  
a. dark      b. right      c. light      d. sunny
8. I ..... that the man was a criminal when I saw the gun he was carrying.  
a. fought      b. sailed      c. worried      d. realised
9. Raise *رفع* your ..... so that we can hear you.  
a. head      b. sound      c. voice      d. noise
10. I felt relaxed after the walk in the ..... air of the countryside.  
a. fresh      b. poisoned      c. bad      d. hot
11. When the police officer fired his gun, the terrorist ..... down to his knees and gave up.  
a. led      b. believed      c. replied      d. knelt

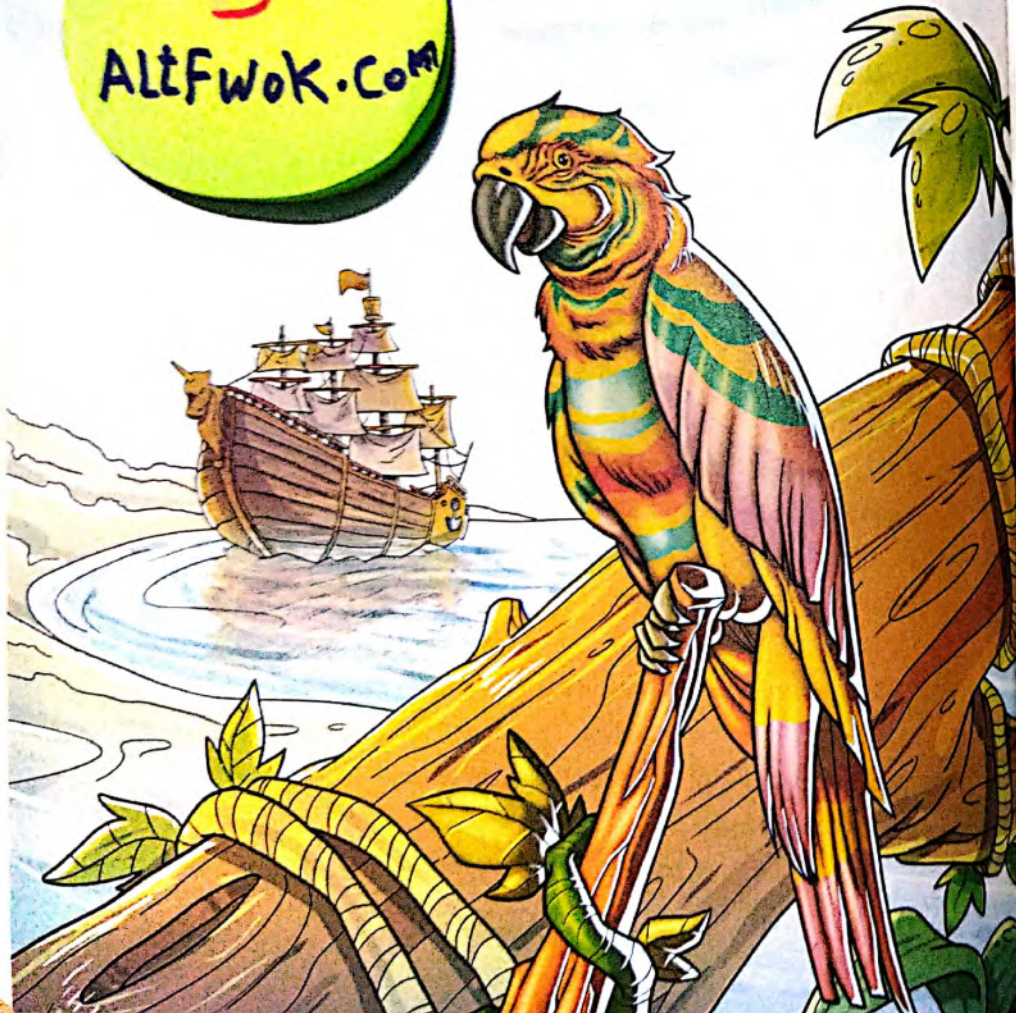


# CHAPTER

# 6

موقع  
التفوق

AltFwok.com



## Vocabulary

advantage (n)	ميزة	fort (n)	حصن
adventure (n)	مغامرة	get to - got (v)	وصل إلى
alive (adj)	على قيد الحياة	give ... an advantage	يمنح ميزة
arrival (n)	وصول	hit - hit (v)	يضرب - يضرب
attack(ed) (n - v)	هجوم - يهاجم	pick(ed) up (v)	يتناول - يلتقط
blow - blew - blown (v)	تهب - ينفخ	prevent(ed) (v)	يمنع
cannon (n)	مدفع	put up a flag	يرفع علم
contact (ed) (n - v)	اتصال - يتصل بـ	race (n)	سباق
defend(ed) (v)	يدافع عن	sink - sank - sunk (v)	يغوص - يغطس
diary (n)	مفكرة يومية	supplies (n)	مؤن
entry (n)	مدخل مقدمة	well-defended (adj)	حصين - منيع
fire (ed) a gun	يطلق النار من بندقية	wind (n)	الرياح
fire (ed) at (ed) (v)	يطلق النار على		

## Words and their definitions

cannon	: a large gun with wheels	مدفع
contact	: communicate with someone or something	يتواصل مع
defend	: protect someone or something from being attacked	يدافع عن
supplies	: food, clothes etc. that you need to take with you for a period of time	مؤن / تجهيزات

Dr Livesey :

When the boats went to the shore, I talked to Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. There was no wind at all, so we knew we could not take the ship, even if we wanted to attack the six men who stayed on the ship with us. Then we heard that Jim Hawkins was on the island with Silver and his men. We were very worried about him.



I decided to take a boat to the shore with another man we could trust, called Hunter. When we reached the island, we walked a little way and then we found a small fort<sup>(1)</sup>. It was big enough for about twenty-five people and was very well defended<sup>(2)</sup>. It also had water. Then I heard a shout. I thought that Jim was dead.

We ran back to the boat and soon returned to the Hispaniola. I told Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney my plan<sup>(3)</sup>. We quickly put food, medicines and guns in the boat.

At the same time, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney said to Silver's men who were still on the ship, "We have guns. If you try to contact<sup>(4)</sup> Silver, you will be dead."

They looked very surprised.

I then took the boat back to the beach with Hunter and another sailor called Joyce. We quickly took everything up to the fort, then I left Hunter and Joyce in the fort and returned to the Hispaniola.

We knew that Silver had more men than us, but we also knew that none of them had guns. We thought that this gave us an advantage<sup>(5)</sup>. On the Hispaniola, Trelawney helped me to put food and more weapons<sup>(6)</sup> into the boat. Then we called for Captain Smollett, Redruth and a good sailor called Abraham Gray, and they climbed into the boat with us.

Our journey back to the island was more difficult than the others. There were more people and supplies<sup>(7)</sup> now, so the boat was heavy and very close to the water. We had to be very careful to prevent<sup>(8)</sup> the boat from sinking<sup>(9)</sup>. The wind blew<sup>(10)</sup> from a different direction, too, and we were not moving towards the beach near the fort.

"We'll never get to the beach!" I said.

"We must keep in this direction<sup>(11)</sup>," said Captain Smollett. "Work hard, be patient, and we will arrive." Then his voice changed. "The cannon<sup>(12)</sup>!" he called.

I looked round and realised that the men we left on the Hispaniola were preparing a cannon. We were moving so slowly that we were not far from the ship. It would be easy for them to hit us.

### Check Vocabulary

- (1) حصن / قلعة
- (2) محصنة جيدا
- (3) خطة
- (4) يتصل بـ
- (5) ميزة
- (6) أسلحة
- (7) إمدادات / مؤن / مخازن
- (8) يمنع
- (9)غرق
- (10) تهب الرياح
- (11) يستمر في هذا الاتجاه
- (12) مدفع

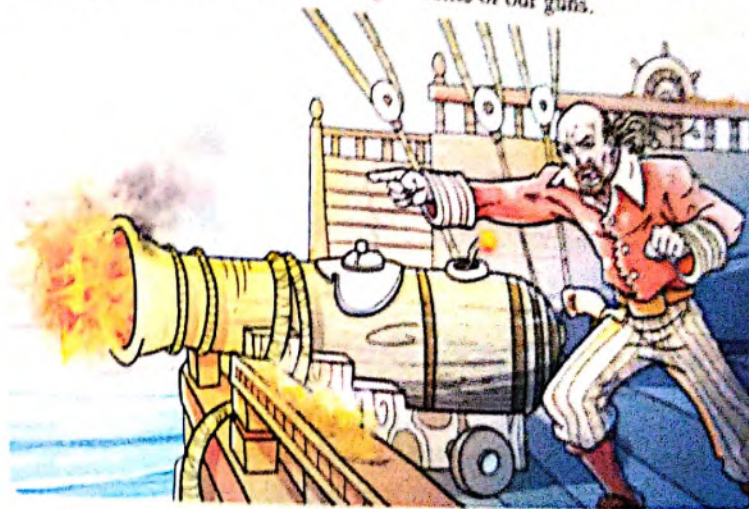
Trelawney stood up with a gun and fired at<sup>(13)</sup> the pirates, and one of them fell.

We heard a cry from the ship, and another from the beach. We saw that the other pirates were getting into their boats.

"Go as fast as you can," said Captain Smollett. "If we don't get to the beach, we're finished."

"They are only using one boat," I said. "The other men are walking to the beach to wait for us." "It's a long way for them to run," said Captain Smollett. "It's a race<sup>(14)</sup> to get there first."

We moved fast, and the wind was not so strong near the beach. However, Trelawney fired his gun again which made us all move to one side of the boat. It started to sink, but we were in just three feet<sup>(15)</sup> of water. It was not difficult to walk to the beach, but we had lost many of our supplies in the water, including<sup>(16)</sup> some of our guns.



There were now voices in the trees and we knew that the pirates were near. We had to get to<sup>(17)</sup> the fort before the pirates got to the beach. We all ran as fast as possible and at last we saw the fort in front of us. At the same time, seven pirates arrived at the other side of it. The pirates looked surprised to see the fort and stopped. This gave us time to fire our guns, and they quickly turned and ran into the trees behind them.



Before we could enter the fort, we heard another gun fire<sup>(18)</sup>, and poor Redruth fell down. We quickly picked him up<sup>(19)</sup> and took him into the fort, but it was too late: he was dead. Trelawney was very sad. Redruth had been a good servant<sup>(20)</sup> to him.

Captain Smollett put up a flag<sup>(21)</sup> inside the fort and counted the supplies, then he asked me, "How long will we have to spend on this island?"

- (18) إطلاق النار  
(19) يلتقط  
(20) خادم  
(21) يرفع (العلم)  
ينزله / ينفض (العلم)



"In England, I told Blandly that if we were not back by August, to come and find us," I explained.

"We need the supplies that were lost in the sea," said Captain Smollett. "Without them, we have enough supplies until July only."

At that moment, we heard gun fire and the fort was nearly hit. "They can see the flag," said Trelawney. "We should take it down<sup>(22)</sup>."

"No!" said Captain Smollett. "We keep the flag! It will show the pirates that we are not frightened of them!"

The gun fire continued, but it was almost impossible for them to hit anyone inside the fort.

Just then, we heard someone calling.

"Doctor! Mr Trelawney! Captain! Are you there?"

I ran to the door of the fort and I found Jim Hawkins, safe and alive!

## Check

### your Understanding Chapter 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- To ..... is to protect someone or something from being attacked.  
a. fire      b. pick      c. sink      d. defend
- ..... are food, clothes etc. that you need to take with you for a period of time.  
a. Supplies      b. Communications  
c. Diaries      d. Entries
- To ..... is to communicate with someone or something.  
a. fire      b. burn      c. contact      d. supply
- A ..... is a large gun with wheels.  
a. gun      b. cannon      c. sword      d. fort
- A ..... is a strong building or group of buildings used by soldiers or an army for defending an important place.  
a. diary      b. gun      c. contact      d. fort
- A / An ..... is an exciting experience in which dangerous or unusual things happen.  
a. adventure      b. advantage      c. contact      d. connect
- A / An ..... is a good or useful feature ..... that someone or something has.  
a. adventure      b. advantage      c. contact      d. connect
- To ..... means to arrive somewhere.  
a. sail      b. arrive to      c. get to      d. leave for
- A ..... is a book in which you write down the things that happen to you each day.  
a. dairy      b. diary      c. fort      d. cannon
- To ..... means to shoot bullets ..... or bombs. .....  
a. fire      b. shout      c. point      d. defend



## General Exercises on Chapters 4, 5 & 6

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات.

• ④ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. People who suffer from starvation usually need food .....  
a. supplies      b. surveys      c. reviews      d. analysis
2. Our brave army soldiers ..... our country against enemies.  
a. offend      b. defend      c. attack      d. fight
3. When did you ..... to your office ?  
a. stay      b. reach      c. arrive      d. get
4. I usually ..... my friends by using my mobile phone.  
a. communicate      b. connect      c. contact      d. control
5. A ..... is a heavy metal weapon.  
a. knife      b. cannon      c. pistol      d. gun
6. What are the ..... and disadvantages of the internet ?  
a. advantages      b. points      c. sides      d. demerits
7. My mother ..... down to take the little girl into her arms.  
a. broke      b. fell      c. knelt      d. raised
8. I used to depend on myself and do the homework ..... my own.  
a. on      b. of      c. from      d. with
9. The young man behaved foolishly, so people believed he was .....  
a. wise      b. polite      c. active      d. crazy
10. Captain Smollett had a ..... to save the ship from Silver and his men.  
a. plane      b. plan      c. plain      d. pain
11. Archaeologists try to look for the ..... of the pharaohs.  
a. pleasures      b. pressures      c. treasures      d. sessions

موقع التفوق  
AltFwOk.com



# New Hello!

By A Group Of Supervisors

## Questions Bank

بنك الأسئلة والامتحانات  
التدريبية طبقاً لنواتج التعلم

الصف الأول الثانوي  
الفصل الدراسي الأول



موقع  
التفوق

AltFwok.com

El-Moasser  
Dictionary

داخل الملحق  
قاموس المعاصر  
اللغوي



EL-MOASSER

GUIDE

1<sup>st</sup>  
Sec.  
2023  
FIRST TERM



# CONTENTS



## **PART 1** Student's Follow-up page 3

- Follow your progress in vocabulary - تابع مستواك في إتقان المفردات اللغوية

## **PART 2** Assess yourself page 10

1. Five Monthly Accumulative Assessment Model Tests on all Units (According to the New System)  
١. خمس تقييمات تراكمية شهرية للتقييم على كل الوحدات طبقا للمنظومة الجديدة
2. General Exercises collected from SB & WB Exercises  
٢. تدريبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات

## **PART 3** Model Tests & Al-Azhar Tests page 31

1. 15 Assessment Model Tests on the whole curriculum (According to the New System)  
١. خمسة عشر نموذج اختبار للتقييم على المنهج بأكمله (طبقا للمنظومة الجديدة)
2. Al Azhar Exams & Exams for students with special needs  
٢. اختبارات للأزهر الشريف والدمج
3. Islamic selections  
٣. مختارات إسلامية لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

## **PART 4** El Moasser Dictionary page 90

• قاموس المعاصر للمفردات اللغوية

## **PART 1**

### Student's Follow-up

المتابعة المستمرة للطالب

موقع  
التفوق  
AltFwok.com



تنويه

- Follow your progress in vocabulary

- تابع مستواك في إتقان المفردات اللغوية باستخدام QR code للتدريب الإلكتروني المستمر.

تابع مستواك أولا  
بأول إلكترونيًا





## Follow your progress in vocabulary

تابع مستواك في إتقان المفردات اللغوية باستخدام QR code للتدريب الإلكتروني المستمر

### Unit 1

استخدم QR code اختيار استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة



#### Lessons 1 & 2

.....	حماية البيئة - صيانة	isolated (adj)	.....	marks
.....	من أضرار حماية البيئة	lean - leaned / leant (v)	.....	
.....	النظم السني	material (n - adj)	.....	
.....	الساحة الممتدة	spicy (adj)	.....	
.....	صانع مراعي للبيئة	sustainable (adj)	.....	
.....	معرض لخطر - مهدد بالانقراض	swell - swelled -	.....	
.....	البيئة	swollen (up) (v)	.....	
.....	من الناحية البيئة	trek(ked) (n - v)	.....	
.....	تأثير - أثر - يؤثر	including (prep)	.....	
.....	يغزل	unique (adj)	.....	

#### Lessons 3 & 4

.....	نشط	noisy (adj)	.....	marks
.....	قديم - عتيق	over the moon	.....	
.....	جميل	old (adj)	.....	
.....	مُبل	peace (n)	.....	
.....	مشغول - مزدحم	peaceful (adj)	.....	
.....	هادئ - ساكن	pros and cons	.....	
.....	مُزدحم	quiet (n - adj)	.....	
.....	مثير	relax(d) (v)	.....	
.....	غريب / نادر - أجنبي	relaxing (adj)	.....	
.....	جديد	stuck (adj)	.....	

#### Lessons 5 & 6 Treasure Island

.....	كفيف - أعمى	hide - hid - hidden (v)	.....	marks
.....	قبطان - قائد	inn (n)	.....	
.....	مُخترع صخري	owe(d) (v)	.....	
.....	عملة معدنية	own(ed) (v)	.....	
.....	يجرؤ	pale (adj)	.....	
.....	خائف	papers (n)	.....	
.....	يجذب بشدة - يخطف	scar (n)	.....	
.....	بحرس - حارس	sword (n)	.....	
.....	بندقية	terrible (adj)	.....	
.....	يُعطي (يلوّن)	adventure (n)	.....	

### Unit 2

استخدم QR code اختيار استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة



#### Lessons 1 & 2

.....	موافقة - اتفاق	iron(ed) (n - v)	.....	marks
.....	الدم	level(n)	.....	
.....	التعرض بالدم	long-term(adj)	.....	
.....	منعطف الدم	pressure(n)	.....	
.....	رغبة - يرغب	prestige (n - adj)	.....	
.....	يشزع	roar(ed) (n - v)	.....	
.....	النشزع	role model(n)	.....	
.....	مُشزع	model(n)	.....	
.....	كريم - سخّي	speed(n)	.....	
.....	ذكاء	support(ed) (n - v)	.....	
.....	نسبة الحديد في الدم	transplant(ed) (n - v)	.....	

#### Lessons 3 & 4

.....	عالم أحياء	party(n)	.....	marks
.....	الماشية	livestock(n)	.....	
.....	المجتمع	monitor(ed) (v - n)	.....	
.....	مشهور	organisation(n)	.....	
.....	حارس	track(ed) (v - n)	.....	
.....	فريق الصيد	aim (n)	.....	

#### Lessons 5 & 6 Treasure Island

.....	دليل	map(n)	.....	marks
.....	خاء - طباخ	rich(adj)	.....	
.....	خاقم سفينة / طائفة	rob(bed)(v)	.....	
.....	علامة (x / +)	sail(ed)(v)	.....	
.....	اتجاه	secret(n-adj)	.....	
.....	يهوب	servant(n)	.....	
.....	رئيس - قائد	the rest(n)	.....	
.....	جزيرة	treasure(n)	.....	
.....	قاسى - محقق	call out	.....	

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق



## Unit 3

باستخدام QR code اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

للمراجعة



## Lessons 1 &amp; 2

.....	مُذِل - رائع جدًا	owe(d) (v)	.....	marks
.....	ذِين (مديونية)	plump(adj)	.....	
.....	يكسب - يحنى مال	prison(n)	.....	
.....	تاجر	rat(n)	.....	
.....	تعيس - باتس	terrible(adj)	.....	

## Lessons 3 &amp; 4

.....	جمعية - اتحاد	plan(ned) (v)	.....	marks
.....	مُجْتَمَع - جماعة	voluntary work	.....	
.....	الثقافة	youth (n)	.....	
.....	بنك الطعام	youth association	.....	

## Lessons 5 &amp; 6 Treasure Island

.....	يهاجم - هجوم	make me laugh	.....	marks
.....	برميل (خشى)	mutiny(n)	.....	
.....	عُكَّاز - ركيزة	note(n)	.....	
.....	مُفَضِّل - وجهة السفر	of different sizes	.....	
.....	فارغ - يُفَرِّغ	parrot(n)	.....	
.....	إصبع اليد	patient (adj-n)	.....	
.....	خائف	pay - paid(for)(v)	.....	
.....	عصابة	pirate(n)	.....	
.....	مُرْتَضَى - مرفأ	save(d)(v)	.....	
.....	مُسَاعِد	secret (n-adj)	.....	

## Unit 4

باستخدام QR code اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

للمراجعة



## Lessons 1 &amp; 2

.....	نصيحة	noticeboard(n)	.....	marks
.....	يسمع	populate(d) (v)	.....	
.....	يتواصل - يتصل	population(n)	.....	
.....	تواصل - اتصال	produce(d) (v)	.....	
.....	يوصل - يربط	production(n)	.....	
.....	مرتبط	pronounce(d) (v)	.....	
.....	ارتباط - اتصال	pronunciation(n)	.....	
.....	يُغَلِّم - يُخَبِّر	salutation(n)	.....	
.....	معلومة/معلومات	take ... for granted	.....	

## Lessons 3 &amp; 4

.....	يُنْشِئ - يُبْلِغ	nurse(n)	.....	marks
.....	بلطجي - مُنْشِئ	nursing(n)	.....	
.....	البلطجة - التَنَشُّر	phone-in(n)	.....	
.....	يغش - غشاش	police(d) (v)	.....	
.....	الغش	police(n)	.....	
.....	تُفَرِّض - ترعى المرضى	policing(n)	.....	

## Lessons 5 &amp; 6 Treasure Island

.....	يطلق صارفة	hold - held (v) (onto)	.....	marks
.....	فزع - نُحْشِن	low(adj)	.....	
.....	ينسلق	mark(ed) (v)	.....	
.....	ينسلق خارجاً من	marked(adj)	.....	
.....	قريب - لصيق	organise(d)(v)	.....	
.....	ساحل	relax(ed)(v)	.....	
.....	بعُد - نُحْصِي	rocky(adj)	.....	
.....	مرض	shore(n)	.....	
.....	تعبيرات الوجه	thought(n)	.....	
.....	يُخَالِل - يَشْجُر	trust(ed)(n - v)	.....	
.....	للأبد	whistle(d) (n - v)	.....	
.....			.....	
.....			.....	
.....			.....	



## Unit 5

de modo que se  $\mathbf{u}$  e  $\mathbf{v}$  são vetores de  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , então  $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$  e  $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$  também são vetores de  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

## Lessons 1 & 2

شبكة (إلكترونية)	Internet of Things (IoT)
رابط	link(ed) (n - s)
أمان - سلامة	security(n)
هاتف ذكي	smartphone(n)
تكنولوجيا	technology(n)
إنترنت	the internet (n)

## LESSONS 3 & 4

كلمة السر	password(n)
معلومات شخصية	personal details(adj)
خداع	phishing(n)
مستفيد	post(ed) (v)
السر الإلكتروني	satnav(n)
مخدع	scam(n)
هاتف ذكي	smartphone(n),
البرمجيات	software(n)
تحميل	upload (n)
محمّل على جوال	upload(ed) (v)
نقل - نقل	uploading (n)
البرمجيات الخبيثة	hacking (n)

**Lessons 5 & 6** Treasure Island

السكر / سحج - طاع	fresh(adj)
كعنز - كعنزة	kneel down - knelt (v)
مكون	leader(n)
الطام - ططم	on your own
المرعات	realise(d) (v)
حار / حتر	sail(ed)(n - v)
سحر - سحر	spade(n)
سحق	start(ed)(n - v)
علم - راية	voice(n)

## Unit 6

3. *Scaph. ferulif. Agrellii* (Agrelius) Agrelius, 1908, *Opusc. Ich.* 1: 106, fig. 106.

## Lessons 1 & 2

الكتبتني / الكتبني	lock(ed) (n - v)
الكتب / الكتب	novel(n)
الكتب / الكتب	plot(n)
كتب من ذات الكتبني	plot (ted) (v)
كتب - نكتب	poem(n)
الكتبني	poet(n)
كتبني - نكتب	poetry(n)
كتب على الطريق العبد	literature (n)
الكتبني	
كتب / كتب	

## Lessons 3 & 4

بهر الشعاعه	line(n)
مايان / اخلاف -	rhyme(d) (n - v)
وضع النماين	rhythm(n)
مستار	variety(n)
مستاي احايي	verse(n)
فرد - فطر = محمل	issue (n)

**Lessons 5 & 6** Treasure Island

حصنة	fort(n)
حصار	get to - got(v)
على غير العادة	give ... an advantage
وسل	pick(ed) up (v)
منع - يمنع	prevent(ed)(v)
سلك	put up a flag
امسك - يمسك بـ	race(n)
يداع من	sink - sunk - sunk (v)
مؤنن: يرميات	supplies(n)
مسلح مقدمة	well- defended(adj)
يطلق النار على	wind(n)

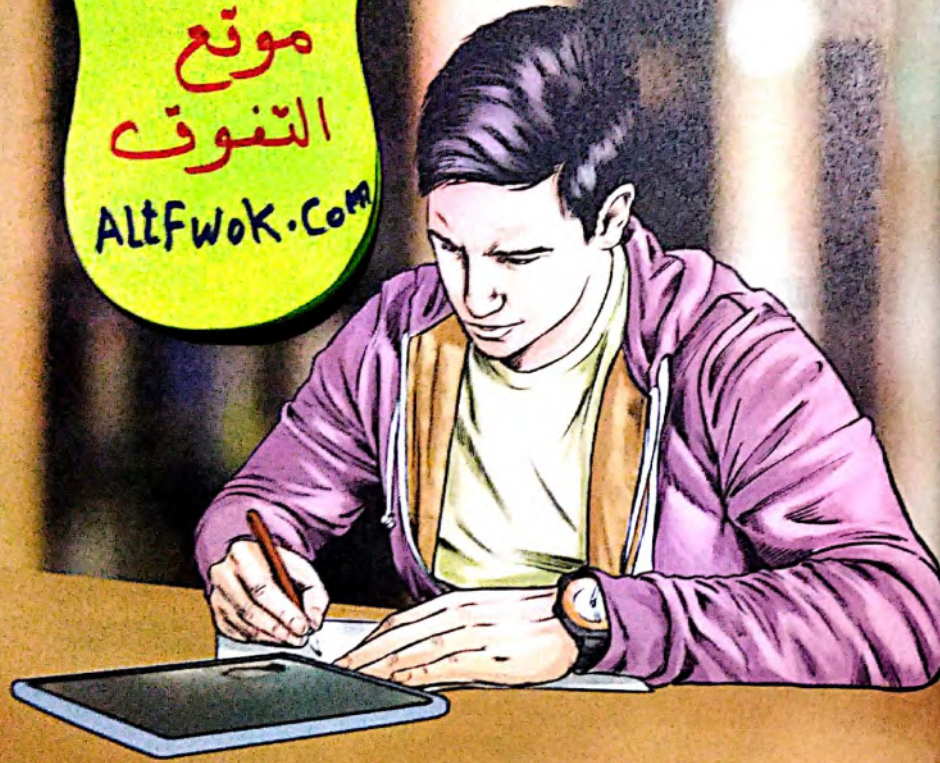


## Assess yourself

قيم نفسك

موقع  
التفوق

AltFwok.com



## 1. Five Monthly Accumulative Assessments

١. خمس تقييمات شهرية تراكمية على الوحدات

## 2. General Exercises collected from SB &amp; WB

٢. تدريبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

## 5 Monthly Accumulative assessments

خمس تقييمات شهرية تراكمية

## 1 A sample test on each two units

١- الاختبار على كل وحدتين

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

## Test 1 based on Units 1 &amp; 2

## Part one



Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. When I was on holiday in the countryside, I sometimes .....  
a. went trekking   b. went on a trek   c. went on   d. trekking   e. trekked into
2. The antonyms of "generous" are ..... and .....  
a. helpful   b. selfish   c. mean   d. intelligent   e. stupid

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. Your blood ..... should be measured every day.  
a. pleasure   b. treasure   c. pressure   d. donation
4. Good doctors have a ..... of duty.  
a. skill   b. sense   c. responsibility   d. charity
5. The local ..... have started a charity to help poor children in the neighbourhood.  
a. security   b. communication   c. technology   d. community
6. We are in bad need for a/an ..... because the patient needs blood.  
a. borer   b. mower   c. owner   d. donor
7. Winning the gold medal ..... a good impact on him.  
a. had   b. took   c. did   d. read
8. We are all responsible for ..... our environment.  
a. conserving   b. confusing   c. conversing   d. commuting
9. Don't leave until I ..... you.  
a. told   b. had told   c. tell   d. was told
10. I am sure he ..... a lot of money. He just doesn't want to lend you any.  
a. is having   b. is going to have   c. will have   d. has
11. .... lunch ready before the guests arrived ?  
a. Are   b. Had   c. Was   d. Does
12. I got used to ..... in a small office.  
a. work   b. working   c. works   d. worked
13. He ..... allowed to leave until he finished the report.  
a. didn't   b. isn't   c. wasn't   d. hadn't
14. I was watching a film and my father arrived. This means that my father arrived ..... the film.  
a. during   b. before   c. while   d. after



15. .... sleeping, I had a nightmare.  
 a. While                      b. As                      c. When                      d. During
16. Ahmed ..... a glass of milk every morning.  
 a. always has                      b. always had had                      c. has always                      d. had always

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

I was very interested while listening to my friend telling me the following story which he had read in a newspaper. It was a hot noon, and the few people walking along the street stood struck **dumb** gazing up a man in the air little by little falling down to the earth. His wide new garment acted as a parachute when his foot slipped off the wooden board he was standing on while painting the front of a high house.

It was funny that he fell down on his feet inside the box of a lorry that happened to be passing by at the time. When the people shouted, the lorry driver stopped and the man jumped off delighted at being saved. If the lorry had been a second later, it would have knocked him down dead, so he insisted on giving the driver a **treat**. He crossed the street to buy him a coca cola. On his way back, he was so excited that he couldn't avoid being struck down by a motorcycle running fast along the street. He fell down on the ground. The people hurried to help him rise to his feet, but they found him dead.

17. The man's garment caused him to .....  
 a. fall down dead                      b. fall off the board  
 c. fall down gradually                      d. fall down rapidly
18. The idea of the passage is .....  
 a. a story                      b. an experiment  
 c. fancy                      d. facts
19. The lorry had arrived at the place .....  
 a. when the man's foot slipped off                      b. while the man was painting  
 c. before the man reached the ground                      d. after the man reached the ground
20. The word "**treat**" in the passage most likely means .....  
 a. behaving towards someone  
 b. an unexpected gift  
 c. a cure given for patients  
 d. a thing that you buy to remind yourself of a place
21. The man was lucky when .....  
 a. he fell into the lorry box                      b. people hurried to help him  
 c. the motorcycle ran fast                      d. he fell down on the ground  
 e. his wide garment acted as a parachute

22. The word "dumb" means people who can't .....  
 a. listen                      b. see                      c. speak  
 d. eat                      e. talk
23. A garment is a kind of .....  
 a. metal                      b. clothes                      c. plastic  
 d. wood                      e. clothing

## Part two

## 1. Translate into Arabic :

Tourism increases the opportunity for mutual understanding and peace among nations and it has an effect on bringing nations closer.

## 2. Translate into English :

إن التدخين عادة سيئة تدمر الصحة، لذلك لا يُسمح للمدخنين بالتدخين في الأماكن العامة، لأنه من غير المقبول أن ينسحب المدخنون في الضرر لغيرهم كما يضرّون أنفسهم.

## 3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Egypt is proud of its distinguished scientists in all fields"

## Test 2 based on Units 3 &amp; 4

## Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. The driver was fined because he had ..... the traffic law.  
 a. supported                      b. kept                      c. broken                      d. issued                      e. disobeyed
2. Voluntary can be antonymous with ..... and .....  
 a. plump                      b. compulsory                      c. obligatory                      d. full                      e. unusual

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. If something ..... wrong with the car, call the garage.  
 a. has                      b. does                      c. makes                      d. goes





4. You don't have to answer this question as it is .....  
a. social      b. advisory      c. optional      d. compulsory
5. Instructions are always put on the ..... for everyone to read.  
a. communication      b. connection      c. noticeboard      d. forecast
6. The ..... of opinions should be respected, even if you don't like it.  
a. leader      b. friendship      c. diversity      d. punctuation
7. The old family house is ..... by my grandparents  
a. populated      b. population      c. polluted      d. pollution
8. .... isn't allowed and it is considered a crime.  
a. Polling      b. Bullying      c. Pulling      d. Bull
9. Finally, she ..... how to use the smartphone. Now she can surf the net.  
a. learns      b. has learnt      c. had learnt      d. was learning
10. Omar ..... wastes his time.  
a. don't      b. isn't      c. doesn't      d. never
11. I have had lunch .....  
a. already      b. yet      c. just      d. so far
12. France and Italy are ..... European countries.  
a. a      b. an      c. no article      d. the
13. .... there any information about the exam results?  
a. Are      b. Is      c. Were      d. Has
14. I'm very busy. I have ..... work to do.  
a. a little      b. lots of      c. a lot      d. a few
15. It's the first time I ..... alone.  
a. travel      b. to travel  
c. to travelling      d. have ever travelled
16. I need ..... information.  
a. an      b. few      c. some      d. many

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

After having an accident on the high way, a traveller wanted to describe the experience he had. "A first responder is someone who immediately tries to help with some incident that occurs. This could be a response to someone who is hurt or injured, a natural disaster or maybe your pet needs help.

The response might be at your house or in your neighbourhood. When called, the first responder is trained to come right away. A quick response is the surest way that the incident can be resolved in the shortest time and with the least amount of damage to individuals and to property.

A first responder is responsible for the protection and preservation of life, property,

evidence and the environment. They are trained in many areas like emergency management, public health, clinical care, public works and in operating equipment.

Together, they work to provide support services at the "onset" of an incident. "Onset" means at the early stages. They work to help in all response areas of prevention, response and **recovery**.

Calling for emergency is one way you can ask for help from first responders. You should know when it is appropriate to call this emergency help number. But it should be prevented in cases that are not emergencies. It wastes people's time and takes away resources needed for other emergency situations.

We **salute** those people who are first responders and thank them for their quick responses to help out in situations when needed.

17. If the first responders didn't answer the call, .....  
a. nothing would happen      b. people will go to their place  
c. someone may be hurt      d. neither a, b nor c
18. The first responders .....  
a. save people in accidents      b. call for emergency  
c. can't help when a house is burnt down      d. neither a, b nor c
19. When there is no emergency, we .....  
a. should go and help first responders  
b. should phone to know the work of first responders  
c. must not phone first responders  
d. should go to thank first responders
20. The first three paragraphs speak about the .....  
a. management      b. damage  
c. responders      d. recovery
21. The best word to replace the underlined word "**recovery**" is .....  
a. return      b. healing      c. reply  
d. resize      e. restoration
22. The best title for the passage can be .....  
a. Emergency      b. Neighbourhood      c. Protection  
d. Car races      e. Rescue
23. The word "salute" can have the same meaning as .....  
a. greet      b. despise      c. care  
d. need      e. welcome



## Part two

## 1. Translate into Arabic :

Practising activities at school is of great importance. Students should get the chance to participate effectively in such activities as they teach them cooperation, discipline and self-reliance.

## 2. Translate into English :

تمثل حياتنا اليومية بالكثير من التحديات التي تتطلب الصبر والتعاون والعمل الجاد للتغلب عليها لتحقيق كل آمنا وأمل وطننا.

## 3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Spending free time in a positive way"

## Test 3 based on Units 5 &amp; 6

## Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- The word "scam" can have the same meanings as ..... and .....  
a. trick      b. prison      c. fraud      d. security      e. safety
- Ask people who have already bought the products. Don't believe .....  
a. ads      b. advantages      c. adverts      d. disadvantages      e. centres

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Don't believe messages to transfer money. They are always big .....  
a. skims      b. scars      c. scams      d. scans
- Say and ray are two words that .....  
a. rhyme      b. verse      c. poem      d. synonym
- The small road between the fields is covered with .....  
a. gravel      b. gravelled      c. gravelling      d. gravels
- Don't ..... the novel to the film. They are completely different.  
a. contrast      b. hack      c. comment      d. lock
- We have a small ..... where we plant some vegetables.  
a. plot      b. plotter      c. pottery      d. plotted
- She had to ..... after she had injured her leg.  
a. run      b. hope      c. hop      d. happen

- A: We haven't got any cheese. B: I know. I ..... some this evening.  
a. will buy      b. am going to buy      c. will be buying      d. will have bought
- A speech ..... in the meeting by the minister.  
a. is giving      b. is being given      c. gives      d. is going to give
- I've decided that I ..... in it next month.  
a. am going to stay      b. will stay      c. am staying      d. have stayed
- I regret ..... to the beach. It was very cold and windy there.  
a. to go      b. go      c. going      d. went
- I regret ..... the school trip has been cancelled.  
a. saying      b. to say      c. to saying      d. have said
- I was busy ..... the washing up when you called.  
a. does      b. doing      c. to do      d. done
- After doing the shopping, she ..... home.  
a. has gone      b. had gone      c. go      d. will go
- He asked Malak ..... lunch.  
a. prepares      b. prepare      c. to prepare      d. preparing

## Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

What does so much technology do to a child's learning life? Are traditional forms of learning dying a slow death? Today, a teacher should be able to teach more than what Google has to offer. However, while we have technology, we have to be extra **cautious** as children are highly vulnerable to cyber crime. Students who have laptops must be only under strict vigilance. Instructions on cyber crime are organized to create awareness about the medium and its misuse.

In the 90s, grown-ups had to gradually convert to the digital age. Today, children seem born into it. Their handwriting and vocabulary have suffered. Parents complain that their child's handwriting is **deteriorating**. If students can read up everything online, they may stop going to school. If students can learn online, so why they should go to school or have teachers. It is something like self-education.

Another drawback of the net age is that students are at a loss if one doesn't understand content on the net or have a guide at hand. Technology can never replace a teacher. If pen and paper once defined school days, it's the stylus and touch screen that do so today. Perhaps the two can co-exist.

- Students still go to school because .....  
a. technology can never replace a teacher      b. they find pleasure in the school court  
c. learning causes slow death      d. they improve their handwriting
- What defines the net age?  
a. Pen and paper      b. School and teacher  
c. Stylus and touch screen      d. Paper and papyrus



19. Students may stop ..... if they can read up everything online.  
 a. eating b. smoking  
 c. going to school d. watching TV
20. The summary of the last paragraph is .....  
 a. the advantages of the internet b. the disadvantages of the internet  
 c. the drawback of education d. increasing the use of the internet
21. The word "cautious" can be replaced with .....  
 a. technological b. careful c. careless  
 d. catchy e. alert
22. "Parents complain that their child's handwriting are deteriorating". The verb "deteriorating" can be antonymous with .....  
 a. developing b. decreasing c. drawing  
 d. explaining e. improving
23. The best title for the passage can be ".....".  
 a. Education b. Technology  
 c. Education and technology d. Education without technology  
 e. The effect of technology on education

## Part two

## 1. Translate into Arabic

Terrorists are working in dark to spoil Egypt's economy and ruin tourist industry. They are not loyal to their country. They terrify and kill innocent people, which is rejected by all religions.

.....

.....

## 2. Translate into English :

يجب على الشباب أن يستفيدوا من أوقات فراغهم بشكل إيجابي، وذلك عن طريق ممارسة الأنشطة المفيدة مثل الرياضة أو القراءة أو حتى الانضمام لجمعية خيرية.

.....

.....

## 3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"The development of education"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 2 A sample test on each three units

اختبار على كل ثلاث وحدات

## Test 4 based on Units 1, 2 &amp; 3

## Part one



Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. He was ..... because of murdering an old woman.  
 a. imprisoned b. rewarded c. taken to prison d. awarded e. given
2. You can say that somebody played a ..... or a .....  
 a. suggestion b. talk c. trick d. rule e. role

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. He tried to ..... me that I should join the school trip but I refused.  
 a. purchase b. insulate c. persuade d. propose
4. Professor Magdi Yacoub has done a lot of heart .....  
 a. transports b. transplants c. plants d. planets
5. His clothes shop ..... him 4000\$ last month.  
 a. won b. earned c. gained d. beat
6. .... people have to follow a diet.  
 a. Pump b. Dump c. Plump d. Bump
7. She has gone to ..... the children from the nursery.  
 a. consist b. contact c. collect d. connect
8. I ..... my friend Salah a big sum of money.  
 a. awl b. own c. owe d. awe
9. As a child, I always ..... when I took any medicine.  
 a. crying b. cry c. cried d. was crying
10. "He likes ..... his daughters equally." This means he has two daughters.  
 a. all b. many c. either d. both
11. He ..... late for work.  
 a. is always b. always is c. doesn't always d. don't always
12. I closed the door and ..... to my bed.  
 a. return b. returning c. had returned d. returned
13. Aya ..... two glasses of lemon juice so far.  
 a. drinks b. drank c. was drinking d. has drunk
14. Ahmed isn't here. He ..... to the club.  
 a. had gone b. goes c. has been d. has gone
15. At seven o'clock yesterday, he ..... his homework.  
 a. does b. has done c. had done d. was doing
16. Don't go out till you ..... your work.  
 a. do b. does c. did d. had done



Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Should we work all the time without having a rest or entertainment ? The answer is that we cannot go on working without stopping, from time to time and at regular **intervals**, to have some rest and recreation . If we do so, we can make mistakes and the quality of our work might get worse.

An overcrowded person may end up by losing the ability to think clearly and by having no energy to go on working. Sleep is one of the ways in which nature renews our energy. Sports and games are also essential for brain workers who stay in closed offices and do not have a good chance to exercise their muscles. Such activities as swimming and walking may do a lot of good to them. So, we should not waste our weekends. They should be made full use of and spent in the open. Having forgotten all about our work and the worries of life, we can then enjoy ourselves to the full and return the next day to work with our energy fully renewed. Change has a magic effect on man's health and consequently on his performance.

17. The best summary to the passage is .....

- a. We don't have a time of entertainment
- b. Man should have a time of entertainment
- c. Entertainment is a waste of time
- d. Work hard all the time

18. Overworking results in .....

- a. loss of energy
- b. more energy
- c. more experience
- d. creative thinking

19. The writer suggests that brain workers .....

- a. should waste their weekends
- b. should spend their weekends somewhere outside
- c. should give up their weekends
- d. should spend their weekends in their workplaces

20. "Change has a magic effect on man's health", the word "**magic**" in the sentence means .....

- a. bad
- b. positive
- c. negative
- d. passive

21. The word "**intervals**" can have the meaning of .....

- a. stages
- b. periods
- c. cages
- d. classes
- e. pauses

22. Change has a great effect on man's .....

- a. chance
- b. apology
- c. taste
- d. performance
- e. work

23. Sports and games are ..... for brain workers.

- a. not important
- b. important
- c. boring
- d. harmful
- e. essential

## Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

During my first job interview, I easily got confused and couldn't introduce myself well to the interviewer, so I hope to do better next time.

2. Translate into English :

آتت من تطوير المنظومة التعليمية في مصر لكي تراكب متطلبات العصر الحديث، ولابد من تحويل التعليم من معاناة إلى متعة لكل من المتعلم والمعلم.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Your dreams for the future"

## Test 5 based on Units 4, 5 &amp; 6

## Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. Stressed words in poetry, ..... the same rhythm.  
a. come      b. have      c. give      d. cause      e. drive
2. The synonyms of the word clear are ..... and .....  
a. unfair      b. complicated      c. unclear      d. direct      e. obvious

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. We all should reject .....  
a. rucksack      b. bullying      c. gravel      d. conservationists
4. .... programs can destroy the data on your computer.  
a. Software      b. Malware      c. Security      d. Hardware
5. It is not polite to ask strangers ..... questions.  
a. scientific      b. legal      c. public      d. personal
6. Young men like the fast ..... of modern music.  
a. words      b. verse      c. rhyme      d. rhythm
7. .... and clothing a big family can be very expensive.  
a. Failing      b. Feeding      c. Falling      d. Feeling
8. The ..... attacked the ship.  
a. pirates      b. pilots      c. parents      d. pioneers
9. I don't have ..... money with me. I can't buy this blouse.  
a. a few      b. many      c. little      d. much
10. If the garden had a white rose tree and a red moon, I'd prefer ..... white one.  
a. a      b. an      c. the      d. some
11. I won't go out until I ..... lunch.  
a. have      b. will have      c. was having      d. had



12. Oh, the bucket is full. I ..... off the tap.  
 a. will turn      b. am going to turn      c. am turning      d. turn
13. We forgot ..... the front door, so the thieves went in and robbed the house.  
 a. locking      b. to lock      c. locked      d. locks
14. Be careful while working in the garden. Avoid ..... small plants.  
 a. damage      b. damages      c. damaging      d. to damage
15. How ..... work do you do every day?  
 a. many      b. much      c. often      d. old
16. He was ready ..... in Luxor after getting married there.  
 a. living      b. live      c. to live      d. of living

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Travelling is something which people do every day. It is very difficult to avoid the need to travel. It may be a trip to school, university or to work. Travelling can often take a long time, especially when great distances need to be covered. People often enjoy travelling abroad for holidays. But for some people travelling is not fun at all. Some people suffer from travel sickness. This means that they will become very unwell each time they travel. Travelling can be either affordable or **costly**. It often depends on how far you want to travel and the choice of transport.

Using a bicycle will not cost anything as you power it by using your legs. However, the use of a bicycle can be hard work and can take a lot of time to travel long distances.

Cars and motorcycles are faster modes of transport, but are more expensive to use as gasoline is needed for them to work. It can usually be assumed that the longer you wish to travel, the more expensive and time consuming it will be.

The use of a plane is necessary for people wanting to travel very long distances. A pilot will fly a plane from an airport for many thousands of miles to take people to places far away. Although traffic is rarely a problem for airplanes, it can take a lot of preparation to travel by plane. People often need to arrive at the airport three hours prior to departure.

A train is another mode of transport which is ideal for travelling long distances within the same country, or between countries which are connected by land. A train driver will stop at train stations on route to allow passengers wishing to proceed to the scheduled destination to board the train. A number of destinations can be travelled by using the sea. People often depart from a harbour in a ship which is driven by a captain. If the journey is a long distance, people may choose to sleep on the ship while they wait to arrive at their **destination**. Some people choose to go on a cruise for their holiday, which would involve stopping at many different city ports for a short amount of time. People who need to travel short distances may choose not to use any transport at all. People often rely on their legs to take them to places nearby. This is often encouraged as certain modes of transport have been said to produce harmful emissions and damage the environment.

17. Why do some people not enjoy travelling? .....  
 a. Because they find it a waste of time      b. Because it is not comfortable  
 c. Because it is expensive      d. Because they become unwell
18. The use of bicycles is hard work because .....  
 a. they are easy to park      b. they are small  
 c. they pollute the environment      d. they have to be pedalled
19. The best title to the passage is ".....".  
 a. Means of transport      b. Travelling  
 c. Going to work is difficult      d. Traffic Jam
20. The word "**destination**" in the passage means .....  
 a. the place where someone is going      b. your fate  
 c. the place where someone was born      d. your hobby
21. The word "**costly**" can have the meaning of .....  
 a. cheap      b. affordable      c. expensive  
 d. inexpensive      e. pricey
22. People often depend on their legs to travel to ..... places.  
 a. far      b. remote      c. nearby  
 d. distant      e. neighbouring
23. When you travel by sea, you can depart from a .....  
 a. harbour      b. cliff      c. ferry  
 d. jam      e. port

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Youth are considered the backbone of any nation. They are its present and future. Their country's progress is their responsibility.

2. Translate into English :

إن حياة أي إنسان لها جانبين مهمين هما العمل والترفيه، فنحن لن نكون ناجحين إلا بالعمل ولن نكون سعداء إلا بوجود قدر مناسب من الترفيه.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"How to keep healthy and fit"

ALTfwoK.com موقع التفوق



## General Exercises collected from SB&WB

تدريبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

### Practice Exercises

#### A. Vocabulary and Structures

##### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Dalia didn't have ..... friends when she started at her new school.  
a. the b. some c. a d. any
- In Egypt, students in primary school have to wear ..... uniform.  
a. the b. a c. an d. no article
- The teacher gave us ..... homework for the next lesson.  
a. a b. many c. some d. any
- A: What do you intend to study when you join the university?  
B: I ..... engineering.  
a. will study b. am going to study  
c. study d. would study
- Why ..... you volunteer at the new youth club next summer?  
a. don't b. didn't c. do d. did
- Did you ..... your arm yesterday?  
a. broke b. break c. breaking d. broken
- We should ..... money to charities to help the poor.  
a. donate b. steal c. take d. refuse
- The beach was really ..... , so we couldn't find a place to sit.  
a. beautiful b. exotic c. crowded d. isolated

##### 2 Fill in the gaps with one word :

Next week, our school (1) ..... holding a special event to help students to (2) ..... what to do after their exams. In the morning, we're (3) ..... to watch videos about career and listen to speeches by people with different jobs. I think we (4) ..... be able to ask questions, but I'm not certain. In the afternoon, we're going (5) ..... work in groups and do some more research about the jobs we (6) ..... interested in.

##### 3 Translate into Arabic :

1. Ecotourism aims at providing holidays to places which are endangered and isolated.

2. Try to avoid mixing with bad friends who have bad habits.

##### 4 Translate into English :

١. ذهبنا إلى الشاطئ، في نهاية الأسبوع الماضي واستمتعنا بالسباحة في البحر.

٢. هل سبق لك أن قضيت إجازة الصيف مع أصدقائك خارج القاهرة؟

##### 5 Read the text and answer the questions :

#### Cyberbullying

The word cyberbullying refers to bullying on the internet or on a smartphone. Most teenagers have experienced some kind of cyberbullying, and it affects both girls and boys. One problem is getting offensive messages on social media, in texts or emails. Another problem is when bullies post personal information or pictures of someone. Sometimes it can be anonymous, and that means the victims don't know who is attacking them, which can be very stressful.

Teenagers need to know that they can talk to an adult about what is happening. It's important to report bullies on websites and the police can also help. Any kind of bullying can have serious consequences, so most schools have systems to deal with cyberbullying. It is very important to report any problems and help everyone to stay safe online.

##### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :

- Cyberbullying affects .....  
a. boys b. girls c. boys and girls
- Most teenagers have to .....  
a. talk to adults about cyberbullying  
b. have been bullies  
c. experience cyberbullying
- Cyberbullying is not .....  
a. unusual b. anonymous c. a problem
- Who needs to be safe online ? .....  
a. Friends b. Adults c. Everyone

##### B. Answer the following questions :

5. What are the best ways of staying safe online ?

6. What can you do if you discover someone you know is a cyberbully ?

7. Why do some people become bullies ?

AltFwok.com موقع التوفيق



**6 Choose one of the two topics. Write about 150 words on the topic :**

1. Write a three-paragraph essay about the advantages and disadvantages of living in a place which is a popular tourist destination. Include your opinion on whether it is a good or bad thing.
2. Write an email to a friend telling him about a place you would like to visit on holiday. Include reasons why you want to go there, what you would do there and what time of year you would like to go.

**Practice Exercises 2**

**A. Vocabulary and Structures**

**1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Have you finished ..... your room yet?  
a. to clean      b. cleaning      c. clean      d. cleaned
2. I forgot ..... my calculator to school.  
a. bring      b. brings      c. brought      d. to bring
3. Basel offered ..... me with my homework.  
a. helped      b. helping      c. to help      d. help
4. Egyptian cotton clothes ..... all over the world.  
a. are selling      b. sell      c. are sold      d. sold
5. The ..... is the natural world around us.  
a. atmosphere      b. environment      c. location      d. situation
6. I have a new ..... on my smartphone which helps me practise foreign languages.  
a. hack      b. app      c. connection      d. scam
7. A person who writes poetry is called a .....  
a. journalist      b. novelist      c. poem      d. poet
8. A novel usually tells a ..... story.  
a. long      b. true      c. travel      d. historical

**2 Fill in the gaps with one word :**

I am always careful when I (1) ..... my shopping online. I use different passwords for each site, and my passwords (2) ..... usually quite complicated. This is because

I (3) ..... a bad experience once when I (4) ..... buying a pair of shoes online. I got a strange email from the website and I (5) ..... know what to do with it. In the end, I opened the email and my computer turned off and on again. Some criminals (6) ..... attacking my computer.

**3 Translate into Arabic :**

1. The Internet Of Things (IOT) is developing very fast in a lot of fields.

2. I'm going to buy some new clothes for the party next weekend.

**4 Translate into English :**

١. اضطريت أن أعيد كتابة واحب اللغة الإنجليزية لأشى أحت على سؤال بطريقة خاطئة.

٢. سوف يستعمل الفندق الجديد مراد وطاقة آمنة على البيئة.

**5 Read the text and answer the questions :**

Tourist or Traveller ?

Some people say that a tourist visits the sights, but a traveller talks to the local people. This is because different people want different experiences when they go on holiday.

Some tourists prefer food which is familiar to them and so they often look for famous fast food restaurants, or food from their own country. They want to see the famous museums, monuments and beaches, and they will usually speak in their own language when they go abroad.

On the other hand, travellers will usually learn a few phrases in the local language, and they want to eat in typical cafés and restaurants. Sometimes they will look for places to visit that are less famous because they enjoy finding something a little different.

Today, both travellers and tourists are learning about their impact on the environment. It seems that whatever type of traveller you are, it's always good to respect the places you visit so that other people can enjoy them, too.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a , b or c :**

1. Why do travellers go to foreign countries ?  
a. To see the sights.      b. To meet new people.  
c. To take photographs.



2. Tourists do not usually .....  
 a speak English                      b go to local restaurants  
 c visit famous monuments
3. Travellers try to .....  
 a speak the local language                      b eat at fast food restaurants  
 c go to famous beaches
4. These days, tourists and travellers both .....  
 a visit famous monuments  
 b reduce their impact on the environment  
 c eat at local restaurants

### B. Answer the following questions :

5. What type of damage can tourism cause ? Why is it important not to damage the places we visit ?
6. Which type of visitor do you think you are most similar to ? Why ?
7. Do you think that travelling to different countries changes how you see the world ? Why ? / Why not ?

### 6 Choose one of the two topics. Write about 150 words on the topic :

1. Write a summary of a story you read and enjoyed.
2. Write an autobiography describing your life so far. Include your interests and experiences, and say what you hope to do in the future.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

### Practice Exercises 3

#### A. Vocabulary and Structures

#### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... your parents usually donate blood ? - Yes, they always do so.  
 a. Do                      b. Did                      c. Why                      d. When
2. When Aya visited me, I ..... my room. So, she offered to help me.  
 a. decorate                      b. was decorating                      c. am decorating                      d. decorating
3. I remember ..... that young men last summer when I was in Sharm El-Sheikh.  
 a. to see                      b. see                      c. seeing                      d. had seen

4. Sorrowfully, my uncle has been ill ..... he was a young man.  
 a for                      b when                      c ago                      d since
5. The tennis player is ..... for doing a lot of voluntary work.  
 a admired                      b not respected                      c interested                      d disliked
6. The Galapagos Islands in Ecuador are famous for the ..... animals such as the turtles which live there.  
 a. unknown                      b unique                      c wild                      d. huge
7. The police ..... the young man of stealing the money.  
 a excused                      b thanked                      c accused                      d rewarded
8. It is taken for ..... that bullying is a bad behaviour which we all must change.  
 a. granted                      b. refusal                      c. denial                      d. decided

### 2 Fill in the gaps with one word :

Last year, we learnt about pollution at school, so in the summer I decided to (1) ..... on a volunteering holiday (2) ..... my friends. We had to clean (3) ..... beaches along the north coast. There (4) ..... a lot of plastic rubbish like water bottles and plates in the sand. We worked in teams, and each team cleaned a different part (5) ..... the beach. We were careful not to damage (6) ..... shells or wildlife.

### 3 Translate into Arabic :

1. I remember playing that card game when I was a child.

2. Which do you prefer : reading a poem or a short story ?

### 4 Translate into English :

١. ولد روبرت شتيفن في اسكتلندا في عام ١٨٥٠ ومات عن عمر يناهز ٤٤ عاماً.

٢. لقد انتهت نرا من تناول الغداء وسوف أتعلم بك في خلال عشر دقائق.

### 5 Read the text and answer the questions :

Mary Shelley

In 2018, it was two hundred years since the publication of the Gothic novel *Frankenstein, or the Modern Prometheus*. It was written by Mary Shelley, who was born in London in 1797. She was the daughter of the famous writer, Mary Wollstonecraft, and the philosopher, William Godwin. Mary didn't go to school, but she educated herself using her father's library at home.



In 1812, Mary met the poet, Percy Bysshe, and in 1816, they got married in France. Then, in 1817, Mary wrote a travel book about the journey she took with Shelley to France and Switzerland. After her husband's death in 1822, Mary returned to England and she continued to write novels. Many people think that *The Last Man* (1826) is her best book, but *Frankenstein* is Mary Shelley's most famous novel. It tells the story of what happens when a scientist creates a human being. There have been many different films about the story. Some of them are frightening but others are comedies.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :**

- When was the first publication of *Frankenstein* ? .....  
a. 2018                      b. 1818                      c. 1797
- Mary Shelley was born in London and became a .....  
a. poet                      b. writer                      c. philosopher
- Mary Shelley's most famous book is .....  
a. a travel book                      b. *The Last Man*                      c. *Frankenstein*
- Frankenstein* is a .....  
a. Gothic novel                      b. comedy                      c. poem

**B. Answer the following questions :**

- Mary Shelley didn't go to school. Do you think it is easier or more difficult to educate yourself today ? Why ?
- Why do you think so many film versions of *Frankenstein* have been made ?
- What kind of stories frighten you ? Why do they frighten you ?

**6 Choose one of the two topics. Write about 150 words on the topic :**

- Write about a website that you think is useful for school work. Explain what information is on the site and why it is useful for students.
- Write a blog post on the age you think children should start using the internet. Add photos if you can.

## Model Tests & Al-Azhar Tests



**1. 15 Assessment Model Tests**

١٥ اختبار على المصحح بالكامل (يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه)

**2. Al Azhar Exams & Exams for students with special needs**

٢ اختبارات للأزهر الشريف والدمج

**3. Islamic Selections**

٣ مختارات إسلامية لطلاب الأزهر الشريف



## 15 Model Tests

اختبر قدرتك على التفكير في هذه الامتحانات

• Understand • Apply • Create

### Model 1

#### Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given.

1. Can you repeat your question in other words? It is not clear. The antonyms of "clear" are:
  - a. ambiguous
  - b. obvious
  - c. vague
  - d. bright
  - e. cloudy
2. A good leader should have some qualities as being:
  - a. extremist
  - b. fair
  - c. violent
  - d. wise
  - e. stubborn

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. This party is boring. We \_\_\_\_\_ a good time.
  - a. don't have
  - b. aren't having
  - c. didn't have
  - d. hadn't had
4. Sorry, I \_\_\_\_\_ you at the moment.
  - a. don't help
  - b. can't help
  - c. am not helping
  - d. am not helped
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ my computer very often.
  - a. am not using
  - b. am not used
  - c. doesn't use
  - d. don't use
6. There's \_\_\_\_\_ /s/ sound in the word 'city'.
  - a. a
  - b. an
  - c. the
  - d. no article
7. I was made \_\_\_\_\_ a fine for not wearing the seat belt.
  - a. pay
  - b. paying
  - c. to pay
  - d. paid
8. Have you sent all the invitations \_\_\_\_\_? That's so fast!
  - a. already
  - b. just
  - c. yet
  - d. ever
9. The teacher wrote the names of the winning students on the \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. chat board
  - b. noticeboard
  - c. guard room
  - d. changing room
10. A/an \_\_\_\_\_ is someone who hurts or frightens someone who is smaller or less powerful than them.
  - a. bully
  - b. biologist
  - c. expert
  - d. archaeologist
11. The \_\_\_\_\_ between smoking and cancer is very clear.
  - a. connection
  - b. disconnection
  - c. donation
  - d. transplant
12. The diet he follows makes him go \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. healthy
  - b. powerful
  - c. pale
  - d. strong

13. Do you know the most enormous animal on land? Another word for "enormous" in this question is:
  - a. passive
  - b. gigantic
  - c. positive
  - d. fantastic
14. After the match, he preferred to \_\_\_\_\_ with a cup of tea.
  - a. stress
  - b. sleep
  - c. worry
  - d. relax
15. My grandpa once \_\_\_\_\_ me a present.
  - a. is giving
  - b. gives
  - c. gave
  - d. giving
16. I suggest Rodayna \_\_\_\_\_ engineering like her mother.
  - a. studies
  - b. studying
  - c. have studied
  - d. study

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A friend of mine once had an amusing experience on a bus. He very **rarely** travels by bus because he has been driving his own car for many years. But it so happened that his car broke down near his home. He was going to buy a fridge after he had taken out of the bank five thousand pounds that could cover the price of the set. He put the money in an envelope in one of his pockets and got on a bus. He met an old friend on the bus and had a conversation with him.

Unconsciously, every now and then he put his hand on his pocket to make sure that the envelope was still there. But suddenly he felt it had gone. He looked at the faces of the people around him but couldn't know which was the thief. **He didn't lose his nerve** and with a smile said to his friend, "A foolish thief has taken from my pocket an envelope which is full of newspaper cuttings about a subject. I am going to write an article for my paper. I think the fool thought it was full of money."

Everybody heard what he said and the man looked down and saw his envelope under the feet of the passengers. He picked it. As he was anxious to count the money in it, he left the bus the next stop. He was happy to find all the five thousand pounds in the envelope.

17. The writer's friend pretended to be a \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. bus driver
  - b. journalist
  - c. policeman
  - d. thief
18. The thief threw the envelope on the bus floor because \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. it contained five thousand pounds
  - b. he was tricked into believing that it had no money
  - c. he was tricked into believing that it didn't have newspaper cuttings
  - d. he was afraid of being arrested
19. The writer's friend had his money back \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. because he knew the thief at once
  - b. because he knew the thief but didn't arrest him
  - c. because he behaved wisely
  - d. because he didn't know the thief at all



20. The thief was really .....  
 a. intelligent    b. nervous    c. foolish    d. happy
21. The underlined sentence "He didn't lose his nerve" which is mentioned in the passage means most likely that .....  
 a. the writer's friend stayed calm  
 b. the writer's friend became nervous  
 c. the writer's friend became furious  
 d. the writer's friend stayed tensioned  
 e. the writer's friend didn't get angry
22. After the writer's friend found the envelope, he was ..... to count the money in it.  
 a. wise    b. worried    c. intelligent  
 d. foolish    e. anxious
23. The word "rarely" can be replaced by .....  
 a. seldom    b. always    c. usually  
 d. often    e. scarcely

## Part two

## 1. Translate into Arabic :

Infectious diseases have become various and dangerous especially in winter, so we should be careful about ourselves and don't use other people's things.

## 2. Translate into English :

تعلم الدول المتقدمة أن الاستثمار في الإنسان من خلال توفير الظروف السلائمة لإيجاد شخص متعلم متحضر قادر على الإنتاج هو أفضل استثمار.

## 3. Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic :

The four seasons of the year are characterized by different kinds of weather and activities. Which season is your favourite and why ?

## Model 2

## Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. It is not good to avoid your problem. The opposites of "avoid" in this sentence are .....  
 a. ignore    b. face    c. follow    d. improve    e. confront
2. I didn't enjoy reading that novel. It was boring. The antonyms of "boring" are .....  
 a. interesting    b. tiring    c. annoying    d. amazing    e. exhausting

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. Before joining the university, I ..... living away from my family.  
 a. used    b. didn't use to    c. used to    d. wasn't used to
4. I want to get a carpenter ..... the front door of my house.  
 a. fix    b. fixed    c. to fix    d. be fixed
5. I know the names of all people in our street, ..... little children.  
 a. include    b. including    c. includes    d. included
6. My sister has a flat on ..... 2<sup>nd</sup> floor.  
 a. a    b. an    c. the    d. no article
7. A: I'm thirsty. B: Just a minute! I ..... some cold water.  
 a. will get    b. am going to get    c. am going    d. got
8. I prefer ..... in the New Capital as it is modern.  
 a. to living    b. live    c. lives    d. living
9. You need to work in ..... with your team members.  
 a. location    b. destination    c. pollution    d. collaboration
10. A/An ..... is the operation of moving an organ, piece of skin etc. from one person to another.  
 a. experience    b. transplant    c. exploration    d. transmission
11. Sometimes, a/an ..... can be as loving as a real parent.  
 a. father    b. stepfather    c. orphan    d. attendant
12. He is nervous because he is ..... at work.  
 a. stress    b. stressed    c. stressful    d. stresses
13. He is accused of ..... That means trying to trick a person into giving information over the internet to take money from them.  
 a. phishing    b. fishing    c. emptying    d. catching



14. My mother used to nurse us when we were ill. The opposite of "nurse" is to .....  
 a. support      b. look after      c. care about      d. ignore
15. When ..... this house built ?  
 a. does      b. was      c. did      d. will
16. She is stubborn عصبية. It ..... easy to make her agree to this plan.  
 a. won't be      b. isn't going to be  
 c. isn't being      d. is

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Walking in the street at night, I found a purse full of money and an identity card. I found a photo of a pretty young lady. I put it back in the purse and went directly to the police station. The sergeant made a note of my name and address. Last Friday, I was invited to a party in my friend's house in Shoubra. A neighbour of my friend came to visit his wife. When I looked at her face, I found it familiar to me although we hadn't met before. After a short time, I remembered that she was the lady I had seen in the photo.

I was able to describe the purse and the sum of money accurately. She was surprised and we went together to the police station to get the purse back. After getting out of the police station, she thanked me a lot. She told me that she had looked for her purse for a long time until she lost hope to find it. I went home feeling happy as I was able to make this lady happy. It is good to feel **satisfied** with yourself.

17. The writer met the purse owner in .....  
 a. the police station      b. street  
 c. their first school      d. his friend's house
18. The purse owner was astonished because .....  
 a. she lost her purse  
 b. she met the person who found her purse accidentally  
 c. the person who found her purse was honest  
 d. she met the writer at her house
19. This passage is extracted from a .....  
 a. comic      b. science book  
 c. religion book      d. story
20. If the lady didn't visit the wife of the writer's friend, she would .....  
 a. not know about her purse      b. not forget about her purse  
 c. forget about the money      d. find her purse

21. If you find a sum of money, it's honest to .....  
 a. give it to the police      b. give it to your friends  
 c. share it with others      d. share it with the police  
 e. look for its owner
22. The word "satisfied" means .....  
 a. angry      b. happy      c. cross  
 d. nervous      e. content
23. The lady lost hope about .....  
 a. getting to the police station      b. getting her purse back  
 c. finding her bag      d. getting married  
 e. making money

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

My father is a famous mechanic in our neighbourhood. He works hard for long hours to earn enough money for us.

2. Translate into English :

اعتمد المصريون القدماء على النباتات والأعشاب في علاج العديد من الأمراض، ولقد اعتمد العلم الحديث على نفس الطريقة بسبب الآثار الجانبية للأدوية الكيميائية.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :  
 "Famous Egyptian women".

موقع  
التفوق  
AltFwok.com



## Model 3

## Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- When I read two ..... of the poem, I liked it very much.  
a. lines      b. poets      c. verses      d. rhymes      e. plots
- Global warming is one of the main ..... that must be faced and solved.  
a. rules      b. reviews      c. roles      d. issues      e. problems

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Our teacher asked us to avoid ..... our time in useless things.  
a. waste      b. to waste      c. wasting      d. to wasting
- I can't meet you at five because I ..... my duties.  
a. won't have finished      b. will be finished  
c. may have finished      d. had finished
- He listened to music while ..... his car.  
a. was driving      b. driving      c. drove      d. were driving
- Many writers ..... by Shakespeare, the great English playwright.  
a. influenced      b. have influenced      c. were influenced      d. were influencing
- A: Why have you got so much vegetables?  
B: Because I ..... a meal for ten people.  
a. cook      b. am going to cook      c. will cook      d. have cooked
- What time ..... home last night?  
a. did you get      b. were you getting      c. had you got      d. were you got
- My parents warned me not to ..... liars.  
a. trust      b. think      c. connect      d. distrust
- ..... pay for the tickets but children travel for free.  
a. Infants      b. Adults      c. The young      d. The poor
- The police have found a/an ..... that he is the thief.  
a. clue      b. cross      c. island      d. idea
- He ..... much money from exporting vegetables abroad.  
a. makes      b. gives      c. gains      d. does
- When the little boy went back home, he asked his brother for ..... about a science problem.  
a. donation      b. verse      c. advice      d. rhyme
- When my little brother does anything wrong, I become .....  
a. delighted      b. over the moon      c. furious      d. satisfied

- The moon ..... round the earth.  
a. has moved      b. will move      c. moves      d. moved
- She ..... for work an hour ago.  
a. has left      b. left      c. is leaving      d. will leave

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Many animals in the world today are in danger. For many of them, the biggest danger is humans. People have always killed animals for their meat or their skins, others are killed because they eat crops or animals which belong to farmers. Certain animals, such as tigers and elephants, used to live in great numbers in countries like India. People have hunted them so much that there aren't many left alive. However, there are now laws to stop this.

In South America, many different birds and animals have lost their natural homes in the forests because thousands of trees have been cut down or burnt. People then used the land for farming or for building roads and towns.

We are too late to save some animals. A few are now **extinct**. This means there are none left anywhere in the world. Others are only in zoos or special parks. Zoos such as the one in Giza, are important because they can help some animals to live. It also make us able to provide **care** for animals and learn more about them in zoos.

- After the trees have been cut down, the forest land in South America is not used for .....  
a. roads      b. farms      c. towns      d. zoos
- According to the passage, zoos are important for animals because .....  
a. they save animals from death      b. we enjoy visiting them  
c. animals can be seen there      d. people can eat meat there
- The underlined word "**extinct**" in the passage means .....  
a. active      b. not active  
c. existing      d. no longer existing
- The best title to the passage is ".....".  
a. Animal protection      b. Pollution  
c. Climate change      d. Animals' life
- ..... do their best to keep animals safe.  
a. Conservationists      b. Hunters      c. Policemen  
d. Farmers      e. Environmentalists



22. The verb "care" can be replaced by .....  
 a. look for      b. look after      c. look behind  
 d. look out      e. take care of
23. People used animals' land for .....  
 a. cutting down trees      b. milking cows  
 c. planting crops      d. building zoos  
 e. building roads and towns

## Part two

## 1. Translate into Arabic :

Before submitting your exam answers, you should revise every item well and to be sure that you have answered all of them.

## 2. Translate into English :

لا تدع أطفالك يمارسوا ألعاب الكمبيوتر كثيرًا، فلقد أثبتت الدراسات الحديثة خطورة مثل هذه الألعاب على الأطفال خاصة إذا كانت ألعاب عنف.

## 3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Exploring the space"



## Model 4

## Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- It's a long walk from my house to the club. The word "walk" can be replaced by .....  
 a. route      b. flight      c. path      d. destination      e. voyage
  - It's better to invite them all, ..... Adham.  
 a. generally      b. rarely      c. loudly      d. especially      e. particularly
- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
- We decided ..... in a five-star hotel.  
 a. to stay      b. staying      c. to staying      d. stay
  - A: What would you like to start with? B: I ..... lentil soup, please.  
 a. would have      b. am having      c. will have      d. going to have
  - I don't have ..... friends; just three close ones.  
 a. any      b. lot of      c. many      d. a few
  - It's two months since we ..... in Cairo.  
 a. have stayed      b. were staying      c. stayed      d. are staying
  - English ..... all over the world.  
 a. speaks      b. is spoken      c. is speaking      d. spoke
  - If he ..... the label, he'd know what this drink consists of.  
 a. read      b. reads      c. is reading      d. was read
  - A / An ..... is a dishonest plan to steal money.  
 a. import      b. deal      c. scam      d. export
  - Sara's ..... with Noha started at primary school.  
 a. friendship      b. diversity      c. salutation      d. expression
  - I know how to overcome this difficult situation as I have ..... it before.  
 a. extracted      b. married      c. owed      d. experienced
  - People who ..... the law must be fined.  
 a. save      b. obey      c. follow      d. break
  - The ..... were taken to the public hospital.  
 a. solutions      b. victims      c. spices      d. adverts
  - To keep the gravel walk means to stay on the .....  
 a. Indian Wars      b. barrow      c. path      d. wall



15. Would you mind ..... me to the airport ?  
 a. driving      b. to driving      c. of driving      d. to driving
16. To me, either answer ..... acceptable.  
 a. are      b. were      c. is      d. has

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

The average age of the population of many countries is getting older. This means that businesses in those countries must adjust to older customers. In fact, many companies are working to respond the special needs of the elderly. One example of this is the medical industry. New medicines and technologies are being developed especially for the health problems of older people. Another business that offers services for the elderly is the tourist industry. Many travel agencies offer special trips for groups of older people. And finally, there are many different kinds of products made for the elderly. These include everything from shoes and shampoos to magazines and furniture.

In industrialized countries today, many elderly people face the **danger** of living alone and lonely. That leads to the feeling of depression. In the past, older people usually lived with other members of the family. They usually had some responsibilities around the home. For example, older women could help take care of the children or prepare meals. These days, married adults often prefer to live **on their own**, far away from other parents. Older people sometimes feel that they do not concern anyone.

17. The best summary to the passage can be ".....".  
 a. Medicine industry develops special drugs      b. Serving the elderly  
 c. Tourist companies      d. Serving the environment
18. Some elderly people feel they are cut off from the world when .....  
 a. they can help their sons      b. they can't help their sons  
 c. their sons and daughters live far from them      d. they face health problems
19. The idiom "**on their own**" in the passage means .....  
 a. alone      b. belonging to  
 c. possess      d. without help from anyone
20. Those who serve the elderly are .....  
 a. helpful      b. impatient      c. evil      d. unkind
21. The antonym of "**danger**" is .....  
 a. responsibility      b. safety      c. opportunity  
 d. depression      e. security

22. Many travel agencies ..... special trips for the elderly.  
 a. request      b. travel      c. offer  
 d. pick      e. suggest
23. Living alone and lonely leads to the feeling of .....  
 a. depression      b. confidence      c. hope  
 d. pride      e. sadness

## Part two

## 1. Translate into Arabic :

Many writers depend on their writings on real stories that they might have happened to them or to some people that they knew well.

## 2. Translate into English :

من الجيد أن نضع لنفسك أهدافاً تسعى لتحقيقها في فترة زمنية محددة، ولكن الأفضل أن تكون هذه الأهداف مناسبة لقدرك  
 لتحقيقها بسهولة.

## 3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

Everywhere we go, we use many modern inventions which help us live a better life. In your opinion, what is the most important invention in your life ?





## Model 5

## Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

1. We have faced many major problems. The antonyms of "major" are .....  
a. important    b. main    c. minor    d. unkind    e. unimportant
2. Brilliant scientists ..... new devices all the time to make life easier.  
a. discover    b. create    c. explore    d. invite    e. invent

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Do you think that Cairo ..... bigger in the future?  
a. is    b. is going to be    c. will be    d. is being
4. He is collecting all the paintings which his friend .....  
a. drew    b. had drawn    c. draws    d. has drawn
5. This playground ..... for training.  
a. used    b. is used    c. uses    d. is using
6. "Doctors are supposed to help sick people" means: .....  
a. They help sick people    b. They should help sick people  
c. They must be helped by sick people    d. They might have helped sick people
7. .... yesterday evening?  
a. What were you doing    b. What you were doing  
c. What doing you were    d. What were doing you
8. I want ..... bottle of cold water.  
a. a    b. an    c. the    d. no article
9. A / An ..... is a steep piece of land or rock.  
a. scar    b. cliff    c. area    d. island
10. The problem was discussed a lot on the .....  
a. media    b. room    c. mid    d. middle
11. The ..... decided that the man was innocent <sup>بريء</sup> and set him free.  
a. pirate    b. sailor    c. cook    d. magistrate
12. .... conclusion, I'd like to thank you for your attendance.  
a. In    b. At    c. On    d. About
13. It's important to lock your house before going out. The antonym of "lock" is to .....  
a. shout    b. separate    c. open    d. rob
14. I needed help, so I asked my friend to ..... me a favour.  
a. push    b. take    c. send    d. do

15. Try ..... the aerial over there, it might work better.  
a. to put    b. putting    c. will put    d. put
16. Nurses ..... after patients in hospitals. It's their job.  
a. are looking    b. looked    c. look    d. looks

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People may be divided into two groups, winners and losers. Because our families and friends have a great effect on us as we grow, we are born hopeless and dependent on our environment. Winners are able to change their situations and become independent by being responsible for their own lives. They don't blame others for their mistakes, they do their own thinking, they listen to, think of what they say and then they make their decisions.

Although they may fall at times, yet they keep self-confidence. Winners **overcome** their bad experiences. They enjoy work, play, food and the world of nature. They freely enjoy themselves, but they can give it up if duty calls.

Losers, on the other hand never learn to take responsibility for their own lives. There are many reasons why people can become losers: disease, poor food, cruelty, unhappy relationships and bad experiences, these can slow down the normal progress towards becoming a winner. But whereas winners fight these situations, losers don't do anything and use them as excuses. Losers usually feel anxious, unhappy and bored. They are afraid to try new things and repeat their own mistakes again and again. Losers spend their lives waiting for something wonderful to happen to save them from their problems with their lives but never try to change.

17. The passage is mainly about .....  
a. winners and losers    b. winners  
c. losers    d. all people
18. When the winners fall at times, they .....  
a. are afraid to try new things    b. keep their self-confidence  
c. spend their time waiting    d. repeat their own mistakes
19. Winners can change their own ideas by .....  
a. using their mistakes as excuses    b. blaming others for mistakes  
c. being in charge of their own lives    d. waiting for something wonderful
20. The verb "overcome" can have the meaning of .....  
a. get up    b. get on    c. get by    d. get over



21. Losers need .....  
 a. to change their mind  
 b. not to change their ideas about themselves  
 c. not to change their ideas  
 d. to use their mistakes as excuses  
 e. to learn from their mistakes
22. Which of the following is correct ?  
 a. People may fail at times but not all times.  
 b. People should think of their ways in life.  
 c. People can't change their mind.  
 d. Winners can't get over their bad experiences.  
 e. Winners can't fight dangerous situations.
23. Winners are .....  
 a. responsible      b. evil      c. bad  
 d. careless      e. careful

## Part two

## 1. Translate into Arabic :

Although many scientists have warned us recently that mobile phones have bad effects on our health, people often use their mobile phones more than before.

## 2. Translate into English :

تسعى الحكومة بجد لحل مشكلة الازدحام في المدن الكبرى إما بإنشاء العديد من الكبارى أو بناء مدن جديدة وتشجيع المواطنين للانتقال للعيش بها.

## 3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"A review of a novel you have read"

موقع  
التفوق  
ALTfWok.com

## Model 6

## Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. These two mobile phones are similar. The antonyms of "similar" are .....  
 a. unlike      b. alike      c. comparable      d. resembling      e. different
2. I think Adham can do this job ..... He is very clever.  
 a. properly      b. negatively      c. correctly      d. improperly      e. wrongly

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. Esraa ..... on her mobile when suddenly the battery went dead.  
 a. didn't talk      b. wasn't talking      c. was talking      d. has talked
4. When I was young, I ..... much free time, so I played a lot with my friend.  
 a. used to having      b. don't use to have  
 c. used to have      d. didn't use to have
5. Rokaya ..... the washing-up when her father arrived home.  
 a. did      b. was doing      c. is doing      d. does
6. I spent ..... useful time in the library.  
 a. a      b. an      c. the      d. no article
7. He prepared everything. He .....  
 a. was showering      b. has showered  
 c. will shower      d. is going to shower
8. I really hate ..... alone.  
 a. to living      b. living      c. lives      d. live
9. Every member of the ..... must respect the freedom of others.  
 a. experience      b. beliefs      c. community      d. merchant
10. My children, Rodayna and Ahmed, are ready to ..... and hurt each other for any reason.  
 a. call      b. populate      c. fight      d. avoid
11. Sending messages online to frighten or worry someone is called .....  
 a. applying      b. sharing      c. blogging      d. cyberbullying
12. I'd like to speak to the head of the department. The word "head" in this sentence is .....  
 a. a part of a body      b. a leader of a place      c. a way of thinking      d. a place to stay in
13. I spent the whole day ..... on the beach.  
 a. spicing      b. impacting      c. sunbathing      d. increasing



14. The governor is giving a ..... in the conference.  
 a. talk      b. talks      c. talking      d. to talk
15. Yasser plans ..... aboard next year.  
 a. to work      b. working      c. has worked      d. to working
16. My sister ..... a baby. She is pregnant.  
 a. is going to have      b. will have      c. is having      d. shall have

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Everyone of us dreams of becoming famous one day or another. Sportsmen and champions of games and sports enjoy great fame. Film stars, singers and musicians are known all over the world. They have admirers and fans who send them letters and hang their photographs on the walls of their houses.

The rules of the world, kings, presidents, politicians and great men are famous people and their fame goes far wide. Anyhow, fame is not easily obtained but it is the result of hard work and suffering.

But, the life of famous people is not an easy one. It is very busy and full of troubles and responsibilities. They appear smiling but in fact they are unhappy, and their time is arranged for them. Newspapers and magazines write about them and sometimes about their private lives and this annoys them. Their smallest mistakes appear larger by those who dislike them. Though fame has its troubles, a great number of people desires to get fame.

17. Famous people may appear happy .....  
 a. although they are not wealthy  
 b. despite being far from happiness  
 c. in spite of having time arranged for them  
 d. because their fame has gone far and wide
18. Famous people feel furious when .....  
 a. they are well known all over the world  
 b. they have fans  
 c. their private lives are talked about  
 d. their photographs are hung on the walls
19. The underlined sentence "their time is arranged for them" most likely means that famous people .....  
 a. have free time as they like  
 b. are free to do what they like  
 c. are not always busy and have spare time  
 d. aren't free to do what they like

20. According to the passage, the life of famous people is .....  
 a. an easy one      b. full of hardships and duties  
 c. full of fun and pleasure      d. an enjoyable one
21. The best title of the passage is ".....".  
 a. Sportsmen      b. Champions      c. Film stars  
 d. Famous people      e. Celebrities
22. A great number of people desire to get fame. This means they ..... to get fame.  
 a. want      b. detest      c. meet  
 d. mistake      e. wish
23. Fame is not easily ..... but it is the result of hard work and suffering.  
 a. given      b. obtained      c. achieved  
 d. desired      e. got

## Part two

## 1. Translate into Arabic :

If you go on working without having a rest from time to time, you won't be able to continue, or you will make a lot of mistakes.

## 2. Translate into English :

قد لا يعرف الكثير من الناس أن عدم الإهتمام بنظافة الأسنان يؤدي لمشاكل صحية عديدة في الكثير من أعضاء الجسم منها  
 السمعة والقلب.

## 3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Staying healthy"





## Model 7

## Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. She did a / an ..... search for the good hotels in this area.  
a. offline      b. online      c. disconnected      d. connecting      e. internet
2. To make sure that no one can use your mobile when you are away, it's better to have a/an .....  
a. lock      b. argument      c. software      d. passport      e. password

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. My elder brother ..... maths easier because he was good at it.  
a. helped me learn      b. helped me learning  
c. helped me from learning      d. helped me to learning
4. This is the most interesting novel I've ..... read.  
a. never      b. yet      c. ever      d. since
5. The trumpet is a musical instrument that ..... by musicians all over the world.  
a. is played      b. used to play      c. is playing      d. plays
6. He walked for a long time till he finally got ..... his destination.  
a. of      b. off      c. on      d. to
7. I'm looking forward ..... the new art exhibit.  
a. to see      b. to be seen      c. seeing      d. to seeing
8. He was so active that he took ..... in different activities at his school .  
a. place      b. part      c. after      d. in
9. The author of this book is a famous man of arts. The best word to replace "author" is .....  
a. designer      b. warrior      c. writer      d. worker
10. Her ..... changed once she heard of her success.  
a. expression      b. experiment      c. disease      d. coast
11. I didn't know a lot about them because we didn't get in ..... for long.  
a. conduct      b. connect      c. contract      d. contact
12. White blood cells ..... the body against infection.  
a. defend      b. defence      c. offend      d. offence
13. They built a ..... to protect them against the enemy attacks.  
a. forte      b. fruit      c. fort      d. forty

14. A: Could you lend me L.E. 100? B: .....  
a. Certain      b. Certainly      c. Currently      d. Curtain
15. How long ago ..... you visit your uncle ?  
a. do      b. does      c. did      d. had done
16. They plotted ..... the new manager fail.  
a. to make      b. against making      c. to making      d. making

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Now all our free time is regulated by TV. We rush home to be in time for this or that programme. We have given up sitting at table and having an evening meal of the day together.

A sandwich will be enough to enjoy the programme to the full. The TV demands absolute silence and attention. If any member of the family dares to open his mouth during a programme, he is quickly silenced.

Whole generations are growing addicted to TV. Food is left uneaten, homework undone and sleep is lost. To keep the children quiet, mothers put their children in the living room and turn on the TV. It doesn't matter that the children will watch **rubbishy** programmes of crimes and violence, so long as they are quiet. Some say that TV is a waste of time. But it is said that you have the choice. If you don't like it, don't buy a set or switch it off. If you boast you don't watch TV, it's like boasting you don't read books."

17. According to the passage, while watching a programme on TV, .....  
a. nobody can talk  
b. the family are chatting to each other  
c. everybody can give their opinion of the programme  
d. the members of family make noise
18. Nowadays , people rush home to be .....  
a. early enough for a TV programme      b. on time for a TV programme  
c. late for a TV programme      d. silenced for a TV programme
19. The sentence "It doesn't matter" can be replaced by ".....".  
a. It is not your business      b. It hasn't happened  
c. It is not important      d. Don't care
20. The summary of the last paragraph is ".....".  
a. Everyone has the choice.      b. We should watch TV.  
c. We shouldn't watch TV.      d. Don't read books.







15. Law does not ..... smoking in public places الأماكن العامة  
 a. allowing      b. allows      c. allowed      d. allow
16. My reading glasses ..... missing.  
 a. had      b. was      c. is      d. are

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

It was a very dark night and extremely cold. I remember that night quite well. It was in the early eighties of the previous century. Electricity had just arrived at our little village some months earlier but on that particular night, it went off. Everybody had already entered their houses and closed their doors. Strong wind began to blow followed with a loud sound of thunder, then I heard some shots of a gun mixed with the horrible sounds of dogs barking. Being a little child, I was really frightened.

When it was early morning and we set out for dawn prayer at the little mosque of our village, we found uncle Fahmy was killed. His body lying on the dusty road by the Nile. I will never forget this scene. Uncle Fahmy used to be a very kind and humble man. I had never heard him shouting. He used to attend prayer at the mosque with us.

I was extremely sad and asked people around me, "Why was he killed?" I was told that he was killed because his grandfather once killed a member of the other family". I wondered as that wasn't uncle Fahmy's fault. Some people neglected my words, others looked at me with a sad face.

17. The passage is a .....  
 a. poem      b. story  
 c. real accident      d. scientific fact
18. Electricity had just arrived at the little village .....  
 a. in the 16<sup>th</sup> the previous century  
 b. in the 19<sup>th</sup> of the previous century  
 c. in the 18<sup>th</sup> of the previous century  
 d. in the 20<sup>th</sup> of the previous century
19. The weather that night was ..... cold.  
 a. very      b. as      c. not      d. absolutely
20. The moral of the story is .....  
 a. we shouldn't take revenge in blood  
 b. we should be indoors during the storm  
 c. we should have memories from the past  
 d. we shouldn't care of others in our village

21. Some people looked at the writer with a sad face as they wanted to say that he was .....  
 a. right      b. shy      c. guilty  
 d. sad      e. correct
22. "Some people neglected my words" this means that they didn't ..... my words.  
 a. speak      b. listen to      c. dare  
 d. face      e. care about
23. Uncle Fahmy was killed .....  
 a. without any guilt      b. in cold blood  
 c. without any evil      d. without any grudge  
 e. without any violence

## Part two

## 1. Translate into Arabic :

The whole world suffers from coronavirus disease, but we should try to live with it or life will stop on this planet.

## 2. Translate into English :

لكل ما الحرية في اختيار هواياته المفضلة التي يرى أنها تعبر عن شخصيته، ولكن لا يجب السخرية من هوايات الآخرين.

## 3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Travelling is a useful and enjoyable hobby."





## Model 9

## Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. El-Moasser always provides us with many questions to ..... our skills.  
a. prove      b. avoid      c. improve      d. develop      e. destroy
2. You should be quiet when you ..... an important decision.  
a. do      b. damage      c. take      d. protect      e. make

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. When I ..... my friend on my way back home, he was doing shopping .  
a. was meeting      b. met      c. has met      d. had met
4. During the previous conference, he ..... a speech.  
a. gives      b. has given      c. gave      d. had given
5. He said that he ..... doing his maths homework after he wrote the essay .  
a. will finish      b. would finish      c. have finished      d. had finished
6. A: How is Sama getting to the airport ?  
B: She said that her brother ..... her a lift.  
a. would have given      b. should have given      c. was giving      d. is giving
7. The firefighter ordered ..... the building at once.  
a. to everyone leaving      b. everyone to be left  
c. everyone to leave      d. leaving everyone
8. I forgot ..... the report with me, so I had to go back to get it.  
a. to take      b. to taking      c. taking      d. take
9. He is a good captain of our team because he has a good .....  
a. person      b. character      c. family      d. company
10. She has done voluntary work for a charity. As a volunteer, she works for the charity for .....  
a. free      b. pleasure      c. treasure      d. money
11. In oil industry, a ..... is the unit of measurement.  
a. bottle      b. ton      c. metre      d. barrel
12. A group of criminals who work together is called a .....  
a. tank      b. bang      c. gang      d. bank
13. The woman dressed her children quickly because she was late. The opposite of "dressed" is .....  
a. took off      b. took on      c. looked up      d. looked after

14. He always has a ..... expression on his face. He never looks happy.  
a. miser      b. miserable      c. miserly      d. misread
15. We ..... the email and replied to it.  
a. received      b. receive      c. have received      d. would receive
16. I ..... in the chat room since five o'clock when the phone rang.  
a. am      b. was      c. had been      d. have been

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Searching for a job is not an easy task. You have to keep reading daily newspapers and magazines. Sometimes, advertisers use the most expensive way of advertising. It is the TV advertisement, so, applicants have also to follow watching television. When you reply to a job advertisement, there are some things you should put in your letter. You should show that you are interested in **current** affairs. You should write about your qualities that make you suitable for it. You also need to write the name of someone who can say that you are an honest and good worker. The person who recommends you is a referee. To be successful applicant, you should have good command of English. You should be efficient and well organized. You should also have some computing skills. General knowledge is a must. An applicant who says "Maldives in Africa" will certainly lose probable new job during his interview.

17. According to the passage, a referee .....  
a. may know the applicant  
b. should know the applicant  
c. should know the adviser  
d. should be interested in current affairs
18. Applicants should write about .....  
a. their qualifications and characteristics  
b. their neighbours' qualities  
c. why they left their current jobs  
d. the person who can say that they are selfish
19. As mentioned in the passage, the applicant should ..... English.  
a. provide      b. eradicate      c. master      d. neglect
20. The best title of the passage is ".....".  
a. How to interview an applicant  
b. How to be a good applicant  
c. How to lose a job  
d. What are the bad qualities of an interviewer



21. To be a successful applicant, you should have some skills.
- a computing      b eating      c cooking  
d industrial      e language
22. The word "current" means .....
- a past      b recent      c future  
d ancient      e present
23. General knowledge is ..... to get the job.
- a not important      b interested      c essential  
d devised      e necessary

## Part two

## 1. Translate into Arabic :

When we get older, we suffer forgetting things all the time. We can overcome it by some activities as doing crossword puzzles.

## 2. Translate into English :

يعتقد البعض أن بعض الطيور ترمز للخير أو الشر، فالبعض يرى الغراب كرمز للموت والمعاناة، والبعض الآخر يرى في السر القوة والشجاعة.

## 3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"What would you like to be after leaving school?"



## Model 10

## Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. Modern technology has ..... It isn't good all the time, so we should make the best use of it.
- a pros and cons      b wrong and correct  
c advantages and disadvantages      d causes and results  
e speakers and listeners
2. Many people left the film before the end because it was very boring. The antonyms of "boring" are .....
- a annoying      b interesting      c terrifying      d exciting      e frightening

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. A gang of thieves ..... into my house yesterday night.
- a were breaking      b had broken      c broke      d break
4. While you ..... on holiday, just relax and do not think about work.
- a are      b are being      c were      d were being
5. I ..... five clients ..... today.
- a have met      b have been met      c was met      d meet
6. My brother wants to play ..... piano in the future.
- a an      b the      c no article      d a
7. This old-aged tree isn't safe to sit under. It ..... at any time.
- a will fall      b is falling      c is going to fall      d falls
8. I haven't finished ..... all my jobs yet.
- a do      b to do      c to doing      d doing
9. It was unusual that no one has made any ..... on the meeting.
- a face      b part      c connect      d comment
10. "Brown" rhymes with ".....".
- a clown      b glue      c draw      d naughty
11. To ..... is to steal something from a person, shop, etc.
- a give      b donate      c hide      d rob
12. He wanted to drink, but his bottle was empty. The antonym of "empty" is .....
- a fill      b full      c dull      d busy
13. I don't think you are fat. You are only .....
- a clumsy      b obese      c plump      d crescent



14. Mr Nasser is a ..... friend of mine. He is always helpful and never stops supporting me.  
 a. true                      b. teenager                      c. physical                      d. false
15. She gave me ..... binoculars.  
 a. much                      b. some                      c. any                      d. a
16. He took .....  
 a. smoke                      b. to smoke                      c. smoking                      d. to smoking

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

When a family climbs into a vehicle to go on a trip or even a short ride, it is important that everyone is as safe as possible. We know that terrible accidents can occur. That's why devices like seatbelts and airbags have been invented and put into cars, vans and trucks.

Unfortunately, devices that are meant to save lives can be a threat to life. The airbag is such a device. Airbags were designed to inflate quickly in an accident. They were designed to stop an average adult male who didn't **bother** to fasten his seatbelt from smashing into or through the front of a car. Therefore, they inflate at approximately 200 miles per hour. It delivers a blow that can seriously injure or kill a child or a small adult.

Children shouldn't sit in the front passenger seat of a vehicle that has a passenger side airbag. They are always safer in the center rear seat. That day will come when vehicles are equipped with smart airbags that automatically adjust their force to the size and weight of a passenger.

17. Airbags inflate ..... in accidents.  
 a. manually                      b. rapidly  
 c. gradually                      d. slowly
18. Airbags save ..... life.  
 a. a fat adult's                      b. children's  
 c. an average adult's                      d. a thin adult's
19. The main idea of the passage is that .....  
 a. people should take care of car safety  
 b. people should go to short rides  
 c. families should travel together  
 d. cars shouldn't be safe
20. The verb "bother" can be replaced by .....  
 a. get                      b. treat                      c. annoy                      d. deal
21. The word "occur" can have the meaning of .....  
 a. happen                      b. take place                      c. take after  
 d. look for                      e. resemble

22. According to the passage, which of the following is not true? .....

a. Airbags inflate quickly  
 b. Airbags were designed to protect travellers  
 c. Airbags don't have cons  
 d. Airbags don't cause harm at all  
 e. Airbags endanger people's lives

23. The passage is about .....

a. car safety                      b. trips                      c. families  
 d. short rides                      e. protecting people's lives

**Part two**

**1. Translate into Arabic :**

Do you know that the human brain is very active during the day dream time and it can solve the most difficult problems easily ?

**2. Translate into English :**

إن تناول وجبة غفائية متوازنة وتدريب يرمي منتظم هما الطريق الأمثل لإملاك صحة جيدة ومظهر رائع والقدرة على الإبداع في العمل.

**3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :**

**"Lifelong learning"**





## Model 11

## Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. Nabil : Do you think Noha can do this exam alone ?

Adham : Yes, I think so because she is .....

- a. stubborn      b. brilliant      c. foolish      d. tolerant      e. intelligent

2. Elephants are one of the giant animals on land now. The synonyms of "giant" are .....

- a. tiny      b. enormous      c. delighted      d. gigantic      e. ancient

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. I think I ..... well in the next exam .

- a. do      b. am going to do      c. am doing      d. will do

4. Take a taxi when you ..... to leave.

- a. want      b. will want      c. are going to want      d. wanted

5. The bag ..... into pieces when it fell down .

- a. tear      b. was tearing      c. tore      d. was torn

6. He bought ..... goods at this supermarket.

- a. little      b. lot of      c. lots of      d. much

7. A: ..... visited London? B: I hope I go there one day.

- a. Do you ever      b. Did you ever      c. Had you ever      d. Have you ever

8. They ..... many subjects since the teacher told them to write their opinion.

- a. have studied      b. studied      c. are studying      d. were studying

9. The child's parents or ..... must give their consent إقرار بالموافقة before she has the operation.

- a. designers      b. guardians      c. donors      d. monitors

10. A scientist who studies the natural processes of living things is a/an .....

- a. actor      b. physician      c. activist      d. biologist

11. Students need to be ..... to continue their work readily.

- a. donated      b. endangered      c. encouraged      d. scared

12. The police are looking for ..... to find the real criminal.

- a. clues      b. glues      c. officers      d. policemen

13. Thanks to your donations, the ..... was able to continue its work.

- a. volunteer      b. aid      c. charity      d. belief

14. The ..... on the plane did their best to make the passengers pleased.

- a. staff      b. stuff      c. crew      d. crew

15. The thief was seen ..... away.

- a. running      b. to run      c. to running      d. a & b

16. I expect uncle Omar ..... us tonight.

- a. will visit      b. is visiting      c. is going to visit      d. visited

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Horses are beautiful creatures. They can be different in colours, and can run quickly. People like to watch horses because they are strong and powerful.

Horses are mammals. The mother horse generally has one baby in the spring, and feeds the baby milk. Horses have long legs, and big eyes that can see almost all the way around them. They can walk, trot, gallop and jump.

Young horses that are one year old or younger are called foals. A young female horse is called a filly, and a young male horse is called a colt. After 4 years, a horse is considered an adult. Many people think that a pony is a young horse, but that is incorrect. A pony is a type of horse that does not grow very large.

Horses can live up to 20 or 25 years. Sometimes people can tell how old a horse is by looking at its teeth! They generally sleep standing up, so that if a killer animal approaches, they can run away quickly. Horses only need about three hours of sleep per day! Their hooves need to be taken care of.

For food, horses eat foods such as grass, hay, oats, corn, apples, and carrots. They are herbivores, meaning they do not eat other animals. Their stomachs are small, so they need small, frequent feedings.

There are wild horses, but many people have horses as pets, too. They ride the horses and may teach the horses tricks. When people first started to take horses as pets, they were just used for work. The horses would pull carriages so people could ride tractors, or ploughs so the farmers could more easily tend their fields. Horses were also used to move goods from place to place by carrying objects on their backs. Some horses now work as therapy horses. When these strong creatures are treated with care, they make wonderful companions.

17. The mother horse gives birth to ..... a year.

- a. one horse      b. two horses      c. no horses      d. three horses

18. The best summary of the text is .....

- a. horses are beautiful      b. kinds of horses  
c. horses' habitat      d. mammals

19. Generally, horses sleep .....

- a. upside down      b. standing up      c. sitting down      d. in beds



20. A horse can be a friend when .....
- a. you are kind to him      b. you are cruel to him  
c. you are greedy with him      d. you are sad with him
21. According to the passage, which of the following is correct?
- a. A pony is a young horse.      b. A pony is an old horse that doesn't work.  
c. A pony is a small type of horse.      d. A pony is a large type of horse.  
e. One-year old horse is called a foal
22. The best title for this passage is ".....".
- a. Horses      b. Animal life      c. Kinds of horses  
d. Horses' food      e. Horses are strong creatures
23. According to the passage, horses .....
- a. cannot do anything      b. can do many things  
c. can do one thing only      d. cannot learn anything at all  
e. make wonderful companions if treated with care

## Part two

## 1. Translate into Arabic :

To keep your youthful appearance over time, you need to have more vegetables and fruits that contain vitamins A and E regularly.

## 2. Translate into English :

إن ارتفاع درجة حرارة الأرض أحد أهم المشكلات التي تواجه البشرية في الفترة الحالية؛ لأنها تؤدي لتدمير الغطاء الجليدي وتغير المناخ.

## 3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"How can all the society be helpful towards the disabled المعاقين ؟"

## Model 12

## Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. They all admire Mr. Tarek because he is a ..... person.  
a. generous      b. stingy      c. miser      d. rude      e. kind
2. Farmers usually care about their ..... They feed them well.  
a. plants      b. cattle      c. kettle      d. villagers      e. livestock

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. She has stopped ..... some milk for the hungry baby.  
a. buying      b. to buying      c. to buy      d. buys
4. He's booked his ticket. He ..... to the USA tomorrow.  
a. is travelling      b. is going to travel      c. travels      d. will travel
5. Someone who's broken ..... leg finds it difficult to walk.  
a. a      b. an      c. the      d. no article
6. He is furious as a tricycle ..... his new car.  
a. hits      b. was hitting      c. has hit      d. is hitting
7. Giraffes ..... on meat. They are vegetarian animals.  
a. feed      b. fed      c. don't feed      d. didn't feed
8. I ..... to preparing my meals when I started to live away from my family.  
a. used      b. got used      c. get used      d. become used
9. The Red Sea coast is a tourist .....  
a. party      b. paradise      c. trip      d. flight
10. Mohammed Salah is the best ..... in Liverpool.  
a. final      b. football      c. footballer      d. cup
11. Different societies have different .....  
a. cultures      b. experience      c. prison      d. believes
12. Mr Mohammed is always ..... You can chat with him at any time.  
a. website      b. blog      c. online      d. offline
13. To ..... is to believe that someone is honest أمين or will not do anything bad or wrong.  
a. blow      b. doubt      c. lie      d. trust
14. .... is something that sheep and goats can eat.  
a. Meat      b. Iron      c. Hay      d. Kebab
15. The sun's energy ..... by solar panels الخلايا الشمسية.  
a. is collected      b. is collecting      c. collects      d. collected



16. I \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese. I've passed three modules so far.

- a. studied      b. 'm studying      c. was studying      d. have studied

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Many people like to eat pizza, but not everyone knows how to make it. Making the perfect pizza can be complicated, but there are lots of ways for you to make a more basic version at home.

When you make pizza, you must begin with the crust. The crust can be hard to make. If you want to make the crust yourself, you will have to make dough using flour, water, and yeast. You will have to knead the dough with your hands. If you do not have enough time to do this, you can use a prepared crust that you buy from the store.

After you have chosen your crust, you must then add the sauce. Making your own sauce from scratch vegetables can take a long time. You have to buy tomatoes, peel them, and then cook them with spices. If this sounds like too much work, you can also purchase jarred sauce from the store. Many jarred sauces taste almost as good as the kind you make at home.

Now that you have your crust and your sauce, you need to add the cheese. Cheese comes from milk, which comes from cows. Do you have a cow in your backyard? Do you know how to milk the cow? Do you know how to turn that milk into cheese? If not, you might want to buy cheese from the grocery store instead of making it yourself.

When you have the crust, sauce, and cheese ready, you can add other toppings. Some people like to put meat on their pizza, while other people like to add vegetables. Some people even like to add pineapple! The best part of making a pizza at home is that you can customize it by adding your own favourite ingredients.

17. The writer's main purpose in writing this passage is to .....

- a. describe the history of pizza  
b. teach a healthier way to make pizza  
c. outline steps to make a basic pizza at home  
d. provide tips about how to make your pizza especially delicious

18. The author asked a series of questions in paragraph four to .....

- a. support the idea that most people cannot make homemade cheese  
b. reinforce the idea that most people probably live on farms  
c. prove that store-bought cheese tastes better than homemade cheese  
d. emphasize the superiority of homemade cheese over store-bought cheese

19. To \_\_\_\_\_ is to mix the ingredients together using your hand.

- a. scratch      b. purchase      c. knead      d. peel

20. When you make pizza, you must begin with the .....

- a. vegetables      b. crust      c. fruits      d. meat

21. As used in paragraph one, which word means the opposite of "complicated" ?

- a. Difficult      b. Simple      c. Hard  
d. Complex      e. Easy

22. As used in paragraph three, which is the best synonym for purchase?

- a. forget      b. buy      c. ask  
d. cook      e. shop

23. Eating at restaurants .....

- a. costs much money      b. is so healthy  
c. costs less money      d. is as healthy as eating at home  
e. isn't so healthy as eating at home

### Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Countries had realised that energy sources won't last forever, so they began to look for other renewable replacements as solar power.

2. Translate into English :

أثبت الباحثون أن ممارسة الرياضة تنسى من ذكاء الأفراد. فقد لوحظ أن الطلاب الذين يمارسون رياضة بانتظام أكثر ذكاءً من لا يمارسون الرياضة.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Spare time is a double edged weapon سلاح ذو حدين"





## Model 13

## Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

1. Be careful! When you travel to any place for the first time, it is easy to ..... so you should have a map and the important numbers of this place.  
a. get promoted    b. go missing    c. get lost    d. go snorkelling    e. go losing
2. The doctor asked me to monitor my grandfather because of his illness. "Monitor" can be replaced by .....  
a. observe    b. look for    c. watch    d. see off    e. collect

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. When they met their friend, he ..... the homework his teacher gave him.  
a. does    b. doing    c. is doing    d. was doing
4. It ..... my habit to have coffee at this café when I worked there.  
a. is    b. was    c. has been    d. had been
5. Going back home, I found that the window ..... So, I went to get new glass for it.  
a. broken    b. was broken    c. is breaking    d. break
6. We ..... met our friend lately. He is still away.  
a. have    b. haven't    c. had    d. hadn't
7. .... in the office, he received a call from his wife.  
a. During    b. On    c. While    d. After
8. He exerts great efforts. They all think his work is .....  
a. amaze    b. amazing    c. amazed    d. amazingly
9. To have a good building, you need to have a good ..... first.  
a. donor    b. design    c. guardian    d. ecotourist
10. His good company ..... had a good ..... on his life.  
a. impact    b. cause    c. reason    d. connection
11. He doesn't know much in science. His science knowledge is .....  
a. limit    b. limiting    c. limitless    d. limited
12. Living near the ..... gave him the chance to sit by the sea often.  
a. bleach    b. peach    c. beach    d. cost
13. A lot of rain fell and this caused to ..... our streets from the neighbouring ones.  
a. flood    b. isolate    c. connect    d. link

14. The way he tackled the problem was a / an ..... one. No one else had had that idea before.  
a. unique    b. common    c. ordinary    d. unsuccessful
15. He is ..... HIV patient.  
a. no article    b. the    c. an    d. a
16. He refused ..... for what he had done.  
a. apologise    b. apologised    c. apologising    d. to apologise

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Scientists believe that there is a number of reasons for climatic changes. One reason could be the changes in the amount of heat which actually comes from the sun at different times. Another could be volcanic dust. People have also been adding gases such as carbon dioxide to the atmosphere. These are called greenhouse gases because they hang in the atmosphere around the Earth like the roof and walls of a greenhouse. The Earth receives heat and light from the sun which sends this back into space as infrared radiation. Much of this radiation cannot pass through the greenhouse gases and this causes increased temperatures near the Earth.

The amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere is increasing mainly because all countries burn fossil fuels such as oil, natural gas and coal. The **destruction** of the big rainforests, which **absorb** carbon dioxide and give out oxygen, makes matters worse.

What can be done to prevent this situation? Global warming is a problem that affects every country and every person in the world. First of all, all governments must agree to stop the destruction of the world's rainforests. Secondly, they must agree to reduce the amount of carbon dioxide that transport and industries emit into the atmosphere. And we can all play a part as individuals. We should all try to reduce the amount of carbon dioxide we emit into the atmosphere. This can be done by driving fuel efficient cars. The best way people can help is to use public transport as much as possible instead of their cars. And finally, we should plant more trees in the cities and on farms to give us back the air we need.

17. To help, people can use .....  
a. their private cars    b. their old buses  
c. private cars and bicycles    d. public transport
18. Trees are important because they .....  
a. take in oxygen and produce carbon dioxide    b. create infrared radiation  
c. produce carbon dioxide    d. take in carbon dioxide and emit oxygen
19. If the amount of carbon dioxide doubles, the average temperature will .....  
a. decrease    b. reduce    c. increase    d. improve



20. The best title to this passage is ".....".  
 a. Driving environment friendly car      b. Climatic changes  
 c. Effects of nature      d. Using public transport
21. The word "destruction" can be replaced by ".....".  
 a. building      b. construction      c. damage  
 d. education      e. ruin
22. Carbon dioxide is considered one of the ..... gases.  
 a. atmosphere-polluting      b. greenhouse  
 c. increasing      d. rainforest  
 e. decreasing
23. The word "absorb" can have the meaning of .....  
 a. take off      b. take in      c. indulge  
 d. melt      e. soak up

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Old monuments always represent the great creativity of ancient civilizations. Our role is to keep them safe for our next generations.

2. Translate into English :

للمتاحف أهمية كبيرة، فهي تحافظ على التراث من الضياع أو السرقة. معظم هذه المتاحف عامة تملكها الدولة والقليل منها خاصة بملكيها أفراد.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Recycling وإعادة تصنيع الأشياء is a way to solve many problems."

موقع  
التفوق

Alifwok.com

Model 14

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. They were ..... for the missing ring all the night.  
 a. thanking      b. looking      c. shouting      d. searching      e. leaving
2. It's good to donate blood to save other people's lives. The antonyms of "donate" are .....  
 a. keep      b. send      c. receive      d. offer      e. give

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. .... the party, I met several old friends.  
 a. On      b. During      c. While      d. As
4. You ..... too much sugar to my coffee. It tastes too sweet.  
 a. had added      b. were adding      c. were added      d. have added
5. Rodayna isn't in her office. I think she ..... home.  
 a. will go      b. was gone      c. has been      d. has gone
6. She is carrying too .....  
 a. many luggage      b. much luggage      c. a few luggage      d. luggages
7. You look very ill. I ..... you to the doctor.  
 a. take      b. will take      c. am taking      d. am going to take
8. We intend ..... to spend the next weekend on the beach.  
 a. to go      b. to be going      c. to going      d. go
9. He paid back all his ..... because he didn't want to go to prison.  
 a. skills      b. debts      c. tips      d. steps
10. They had a / an ..... about the best solution to the problem of air pollution.  
 a. debate      b. salutation      c. teammate      d. effect
11. .... means to be connected to the internet or available on the internet.  
 a. Network      b. Website      c. Online      d. Offline
12. To achieve your jobs in time, you need to ..... your time well.  
 a. waste      b. do      c. make      d. use
13. He is known to be severe with his children. The antonym of the word "severe" is .....  
 a. cruel      b. hard      c. gentle      d. violent
14. He was very young and weak, so older students ..... him.  
 a. drove      b. gave      c. bullied      d. went



15. This road ..... used anymore.  
 a. didn't b. doesn't c. isn't d. is
16. It's two weeks ..... I last met aunt Nadia.  
 a. ago b. for c. since d. as

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

It was the end of the weekend and Nadia was worried. She had still not done her homework. Nadia had missed the day of school because she had been ill. She had phoned her friend Azza and asked what homework their teacher had set for the summer holiday. Azza had told her that the teacher had asked them to write a composition. Nadia had written down the title. It was "The best things in life are three".

Nadia didn't know what to write. When she thought about the best things in life, they didn't seem to be "three" at all. She thought about her parents. There were two of them. Her brothers and sisters, there were four of them. She thought about happiness, love and nature. She couldn't count these at all. On the first day at school, Nadia's teacher asked her to read her composition to the class. Nadia stood up and began. "I don't think the best things in life are three at all," she said. "I think they are things you can't count". The other students started to laugh. "Nadia," said her teacher stopping her, The title of the composition was: "The best things in life are free not three."

17. The passage is .....  
 a. scientific b. narrative  
 c. imaginative d. historical
18. Nadia disagreed with the title of the composition because .....  
 a. she wrote it down wrongly  
 b. she couldn't count the best things in life  
 c. she didn't want to write the composition  
 d. she didn't have time to write the composition
19. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to .....  
 a. the homework title b. the book they read  
 c. the summer holiday d. the telephone
20. Nadia's teacher was ..... with Nadia.  
 a. happy b. pleased c. angry d. worried
21. Nadia had missed the day of school because she had been ill.  
 This means she was ..... from school.  
 a. absent b. present c. over the moon  
 d. worried e. not attendant

22. The best title of the passage is .....  
 a. freedom is not worthy b. freedom is not the best thing  
 c. life has countless good things d. the best things in life are free  
 e. freedom is worthy
23. The word "set" can have the meaning of .....  
 a. determined b. dealt c. counted  
 d. lived e. scheduled

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Plants, flowers and trees are necessary to breathe clean and fresh air and to have a good view. That's why, we should plant them everywhere.

2. Translate into English :

بعد انتشار حوادث السطو على المنازل في المنطقة التي نعيش بها الفترة الأخيرة، بدأنا نفكر في تركيب كاميرات مراقبة وقيام بعض المتطوعين بالحراسة.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Without cooperation, there is no success."





## Model 15

## Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. She refused to admit breaking the camera. The antonyms of "admit" are  
a. deny      b. conceal      c. adopt      d. consist      e. agree
2. All the countries around the world give a great interest to the ..... because they are the backbone of any nation.  
a. disabled people      b. old people      c. children      d. youth      e. young people

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. The little bird ..... by its mother till it can fly.  
a. feeds      b. is fed      c. fed      d. was fed
4. A: ..... your work yet ? B: I'm about to finish it, sir.  
a. Do you do      b. You haven't done      c. Have you done      d. Are you doing
5. .... is the protection of natural life.  
a. Conservation      b. Reservation      c. Admiration      d. Organization
6. My father was delighted with my results. The word "delighted" can be replaced by  
a. satisfied      b. angry      c. amazed      d. astonished
7. While ..... the experiment, my teacher had a severe headache.  
a. did      b. were doing      c. are doing      d. doing
8. They ..... here since their grandfather built the house.  
a. have lived      b. had lived      c. are living      d. were living
9. I ..... you a lot for your help.  
a. own      b. owe      c. lend      d. borrow
10. They were ..... in the lift for an hour when electricity went off.  
a. struck      b. stuck      c. sick      d. stick
11. They had ..... of things to do. This means they were very busy.  
a. lot      b. loaf      c. loaves      d. loads
12. They were ..... when they won the prize. This means they were pleased.  
a. over the moon      b. under the moon      c. in a tight corner      d. out of the blue
13. Some thieves broke ..... the old man's house yesterday.  
a. on      b. onto      c. into      d. in
14. ...., you tell him the news? Are you able to do that?  
a. Able      b. Dare      c. Brave      d. Courageous

15. Your grandmother needs help ..... some bags into her flat.  
a. carries      b. to carry      c. carrying      d. carried
16. We hardly heard ..... news of him since he left the company.  
a. any      b. some      c. many      d. much

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

There are many reasons to use alternative energy sources. One reason is to reduce pollutants and greenhouse gases. Alternative or renewable energy sources help to reduce the amount of toxins that are a result of traditional energy use. These alternative energy sources help protect against the harmful by-products of energy use and help to preserve many of the natural resources that we currently use as energy sources.

There are many alternative energy sources. Wind power, solar power, geothermal power, and hydroelectric power are some examples.

Wind power is the ability to **capture** the wind in a way to propel the blades of wind turbines. When the blades **rotate**, this movement is switched into electrical current with the help of an electrical generator. In older windmills, wind energy turned mechanical machinery to do the physical work like pumping water to get water. Wind towers are built on wind farms, and usually there are several towers built together. There are several advantages of this energy source: there is no pollution, it never runs out, farming and grazing can still take place on the same land as the wind turbines, and wind farms can be built anywhere. One disadvantage is that you need a consistent wind to get enough power. If the wind speed decreases, less electricity is produced.

Geothermal means "earth heat". This energy captures the heat energy under the Earth. Hot rocks under the ground help to heat water to produce steam. If holes are dug in this area of the ground, then the steam shoots up and is purified and used to drive turbines, which in turn gives power to electric generators. The advantages of this type of energy is that there are no harmful by-products, it is self-sufficient, and the plants are generally small so there is no negative visual effect on the area surrounding the plant.

17. In geothermal energy, the main factor of doing the work is .....  
a. the heat of the earth      b. steam coming out  
c. digging the earth      d. using hard rocks
18. According to the passage wind power is .....  
a. discovered in modern ages      b. used along history  
c. used only for generating electricity      d. always harmful
19. The suitable title of passage is .....  
a. alternative energy      b. electricity  
c. windmills      d. population



20. In the future, the more pollution we get, .....  
 a. the wider ozone layer hole is      b. the narrower ozone layer is  
 c. the bigger planet is      d. the large planet is
21. The underlined word "capture" may be replaced by ".....".  
 a. catch      b. leave      c. change  
 d. fix      e. seize
22. The word "rotate" can have the meaning of .....  
 a. turn off      b. turn around      c. turn on  
 d. turn out      e. spin
23. According to the passage, traditional energy use is ..... to the environment.  
 a. useful      b. harmful      c. friendly  
 d. useless      e. toxic

## Part two

## 1. Translate into Arabic :

Robots have become more common in many fields. During coronavirus, many countries as China used them to discover and look after infected people.

## 2. Translate into English :

يعتقد البعض أن أي قصة أو كتاب ناجح من المسكن أن يصبح فيلم ناجح، ولكن الحقيقة أنه لا يوجد دليل على ذلك.

## 3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"What's the role of the society towards old people?"

موقع  
التفوق  
ALTfWok.com

## 1 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة الجيزة - القسم العلمي

## A. Listening

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer :

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. James has ..... things to do.  
 a. many      b. a few      c. a little      d. a lot
2. James is very ..... about visiting Egypt.  
 a. sad      b. upset      c. happy      d. nervous

## B. Vocabulary and Structures

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. While I was doing my homework, my mother ..... dinner.  
 a. prepares      b. preparing      c. is preparing      d. was preparing
2. I lived in London ..... 2016.  
 a. for      b. since      c. in      d. ago
3. .... school holidays are starting soon.  
 a. The      b. An      c. A      d. No article
4. Be careful, the car ..... you. It's very near.  
 a. will hit      b. is going to hit      c. will be hitting      d. hits
5. There are very few of these kinds of giraffes now, they are .....  
 a. safe      b. isolated      c. endangered      d. dangerous
6. I always try to ..... food and clothes to my local charity.  
 a. sell      b. want      c. owe      d. donate
7. Most people take clean water for ....., but not all place have it.  
 a. granted      b. given      c. having      d. done
8. The message to transfer money was fake. It was a big .....  
 a. skim      b. scar      c. scam      d. scan

## C. Language Function

## 3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Omar : I'm bored. I have nothing to do.

Father : Well, (1) ..... ?

Omar : The club! That's good idea. Do you know what I can do there ?

Father : Yes, (2) ..... .

Omar : That's great and I'm good at basketball. When (3) ..... ?

Father : You can go (4) ..... .

## D. Comprehension

## 4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Every year, more and more people are connected to the internet in Egypt. A recent survey found that around 50 million people use the internet on a computer or smartphone.



In the survey, many people said that they used the internet every day, usually for communication so they could talk to friends or family. Many used apps on their phones so they can listen to music or watch films. Other people said they never used the internet. This was usually because they did not understand the technology. Many people also said they did want to use the internet when shopping. They were worried about security and the possibility that their computer might be hacked.

#### A. Answer the following questions :

1. What do many people use the internet for ?

2. Why don't many people use the internet ?

3. Why do people use apps on their phones ?

#### B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "survey" means .....  
 a. questionnaire    b. quiz    c. competition    d. match
5. Many people thought that their computer might be .....  
 a. connected    b. hacked    c. lost    d. stolen

#### E. Novel (Treasure Island)

#### 5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The thief had a long curved ..... on his face, so we could recognize him.  
 a. skate    b. sky    c. skin    d. scar
2. A ..... is a large container made of wood or metal.  
 a. tin    b. jar    c. barrel    d. cup

#### F. writing

#### 6 Write a paragraph of 80 words on :

The good and bad things about moving to a new school in another town.

#### 7 A. Translate into Arabic :

The best way to make friends is to join clubs or do team sports you like.

#### B. Translate into English :

رغبة صلاح في مساعدة الآخرين هي أنه يريد أن يمتح الشباب فرصة للنجاح.

## 2 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

الإدارة المركزية لاسئلة المتفوقين - القسم العلمي

### A. Listening

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer :

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Egypt is developing eco-tourism to protect the environment along the Red Sea .....  
 a. Cost    b. Cast    c. Coast    d. Course
2. Tourists are taught how to avoid ..... the fish and keep the special coral reefs safe.  
 a. staying    b. preserving    c. damaging    d. keeping

### B. Vocabulary and Structures

#### 2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The ..... of other people have to be respected.  
 a. believes    b. beliefes    c. beliefs    d. believe
2. The old family house is ..... by my grandparents.  
 a. populated    b. population    c. polluted    d. populating
3. As a child, I always ..... when I took my medicine.  
 a. crying    b. cries    c. cried    d. was crying
4. I have had lunch .....  
 a. already    b. yet    c. just    d. so far
5. My father ..... with pride when he heard that I had come first.  
 a. showed    b. rose    c. swelled    d. puffed
6. To be a ..... , work hard to a plan.  
 a. successfully    b. successful    c. success    d. succeed
7. .... is considered a crime.  
 a. Uploading    b. Downloading    c. Phishing    d. Fishing
8. I suggest that Rodayna ..... engineering like her mother.  
 a. studies    b. studying    c. has studied    d. study

### C. Language Function

#### 3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

A customer has a problem with internet service.

Assistant : Hello, we are Customer Service, how can I help you ?

Customer : Hi, (1) ..... ?

Assistant : I'm sorry to hear that (2) ..... ?

Customer : My connection is dropping out and the speed is very slow.

Assistant : Let me check (3) .....

Customer : My phone number is 0123456789.

Assistant : Thank you . I'll send technician to your house.

Customer : Okay, (4) ..... home then.



## D. Comprehension

## 4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

In 1957, scientists said that nothing could live in the waters of River Thames. The river was polluted by the waste which came from hundreds of homes, waste from factories is very dangerous as some of which was full of poison, also ran into the river. Things began to change in 1990. Now the river is very clear. It is thought that about 125 kinds of fish live there today. It's a place where many animals visit including dolphins and even whales. Today the river faces a different problem. There is more and more plastic which people dump into the Thames.

## A. Answer the following questions :

1. Why couldn't anything live in the waters of the Thames ?

2. What problem does the river face now ?

3. What should you do to keep rivers clean ?

## B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. What does the underlined word "which" refer to ?  
 a. the factories                      b. the river  
 c. the waste from homes              d. the waste from factories
5. .... in the River Thames in 1957.  
 a. Fish started to live                      b. Nothing lived  
 c. Pollution was worst                      d. Plastic pollution started

## E. Novel (Treasure Island)

## 5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This wound might leave ..... on your cheek.  
 a. scare                      b. scar                      c. scarp                      d. scary
2. One of the sailors led a/an ..... against the captain.  
 a. invasion                      b. murder                      c. mutiny                      d. mirror

## F. Writing

## 6 Write an essay of not less than 80 words on :

"Tourism in Egypt and how to encourage it"

## 7 A. Translate into Arabic :

Don't fear when your enemies criticise you. Beware when they applaud.

## B. Translate into English :

لم تعد الوظيفة الحكومية حلاً يسعى إليه الشباب الطموح

## 3 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة الشرقية - القسم الأدبي

## A. Listening

## 7 Listen and choose the correct answer :

انصتوا للاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Cairo is the ..... of Egypt.  
 a. port                      b. capital                      c. north                      d. airport
2. All Egyptians speak .....  
 a. English                      b. Spanish                      c. Arabic                      d. French

## B. Vocabulary and Structures

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When ..... you finish your work ?  
 a. are                      b. have                      c. has                      d. did
2. We all ..... Mohamed Salah as he is polite and generous.  
 a. hate                      b. respect                      c. discourage                      d. avoid
3. How ..... light is there in the cave ?  
 a. much                      b. many                      c. often                      d. far
4. Village people build their houses with local .....  
 a. tourists                      b. environments                      c. animals                      d. materials
5. I've already booked the tickets, we ..... abroad today.  
 a. are travelling                      b. travel                      c. travels                      d. travelled
6. Every year, more and more people are ..... to the internet in Egypt.  
 a. connected                      b. connect                      c. connection                      d. contact
7. The police ..... the young man of stealing the money.  
 a. excused                      b. thanked                      c. accused                      d. rewarded
8. A novel is a long written .....  
 a. article                      b. history                      c. poem                      d. story



## C. Language Function

## 3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Nader is talking to Ali who has been on holiday.

Nader : Hi! Where have you been ?

Ali : (1) .....

Nader : How was your holiday ?

Ali : It was the best holiday in my life.

Nader : (2) .....

Ali : I went to the North Coast. It's fantastic.

Nader : Really! Did you go with your parents ?

Ali : (3) ..... I went with my cousins.

Nader : (4) .....

Ali : Yes, I'll post them on my Facebook today. You can check them.

## D. Reading comprehension

## 4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

One day, Tom woke up and saw that it was snowing outside. He decided to go out. There was enough snow to go sledging. He went into the garden shed to find his sledge. He took off the old sheet his father used for covering the sledge and looked at it. His mother called to him, "Take your gloves with you in case your hands get cold". Tom took them and ran towards the big hill where all his friends were playing in the snow.

## A. Answer the following questions :

1. What was the weather like ?

.....

2. Why did Tom go to the garden shed ?

.....

3. How did Tom's father protect the sledge ?

.....

## B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

4. Tom's mother asked him to take his .....

a. sledge      b. gloves      c. sheet      d. clothes

5. Tom was .....

a. obedient      b. disobedient      c. rude      d. lazy

## E. Islamic selections

## 5 Choose the correct answer :

1. The five pillars of Islam are .....

a. interested      b. excited      c. separated      d. interrelated

2. .... is the second pillar of Islam.

a. Prayer      b. Zakat      c. Pilgrimage      d. Fasting

## F. Writing

## 6 Write a paragraph of 80 words on :

"The age you think children start using the internet"

## 7 A. Translate into Arabic :

The best way to make friends is to join clubs or do the team sport you like.

## B. Translate into English :

يحب كثير من الناس رجل الأعمال لعطفه وتبرعاته الكريمة للجمعيات الخيرية في مصر.

## 4 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة بني سويف - القسم الأدبي

## A. Listening

## 1 Listen to the text then choose the correct answer :

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. The discovery mentioned in the text is .....

a. The Femtosecond      b. The Electric light  
c. The radio      d. Television

2. All Egyptians are ..... of Dr Ahmed Zewail.

a. pride      b. proud      c. paid      d. pulled

## B. Language Function

## 2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue "

Sami : Excuse me. I advise you not to drink that water from that river.

Tourist : (1) ..... I know that the water isn't very clean.

Sami : (2) .....

Tourist : I'm from England. I've just spent a week walking across the desert.

Sami : (3) .....



Tourist : No, it is not dangerous.

Sami : (4) .....

Tourist : I learned skills such as using the sun to find my way.

### C. Vocabulary and Structures

#### 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Dalia didn't have ..... friends when she started at her new school.  
a. the b. some c. a d. any
- We should ..... money to charities to help the poor.  
a. donate b. steal c. take d. refuse
- I have a new ..... on my smart-phone which helps me practise foreign languages.  
a. back b. app c. connection d. scam
- The person who writes poetry is called a .....  
a. journalist b. novelist c. poem d. poet
- Sadly, my uncle has been ill ..... he was a young man.  
a. for b. when c. ago d. since
- It is taken for ..... that bullying is as bad behaviour which we all must change.  
a. granted b. refusal c. denial d. decided
- The local people benefit when lions .....  
a. is protected b. isn't protected c. are protected d. protects
- The match ..... at 10 o'clock.  
a. will start b. starts c. is going to start d. is starting

### D. Reading comprehension

#### 4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Dolphins are regarded as the friendliest creatures in the sea and stories of them helping drowning sailors have been common since Roman times. The more we learn about dolphins, the more we realize that their society is more complex than people previously imagined. They look after other dolphins when they are ill, care for pregnant mothers and protect the weakest in the community, as we do. Some scientists have suggested that dolphins have a language but it is much more probable that they communicated with each other without needing words. Could any of these mammals be more intelligent than man ? Certainly the most common argument in favour of man's superiority over them that we can kill them more easily than they can kill us is the least satisfactory. On the contrary, the more we discover about these remarkable creatures, the less we appear superior when we destroy them.

#### A. Answer the following questions :

- How do you think dolphins are like humans ?
- What reason for man's superiority to dolphins does the writer mention ?
- In what way can we be wrong about our superiority to dolphins ?

#### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Dolphins have been ..... sailors.  
a. drowning b. saving c. sinking d. tricking
- Dolphins live in ..... and have cooperative societies.  
a. isolation b. loneliness c. families d. individuals

### E. Islamic selections

#### 5 Choose the right answer :

- What is the second pillar of Islam ? .....  
a. Zakat b. Prayer c. Fasting d. Pilgrimage
- Muslims perform prayers ..... times a day.  
a. Two b. three c. four d. Five

### F. Writing

#### 6 Write a paragraph of 80 words on :

"Your role model"

#### 7 A. Translate into Arabic :

Eco-tourism aims at providing holidays to places which are endangered and isolated.

#### B. Translate into English :

يُفضل التقدم المهائيل في وسائل التواصل والبراميل تحول العالم إلى قرية صغيرة.

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق



## 1 امتحان الدمج

## A. Language Functions

1 Choose the correct sentence in the following dialogue :

- Hana and Rana are talking about last summer holiday.

Rana : (1) \_\_\_\_\_

- a. I have a passport.
- b. I went to Indonesia.
- c. I was happy.

Hana : (2) \_\_\_\_\_

- a. What was it like ?
- b. Who did you go with ?
- c. How did you go there ?

Rana : It was an enjoyable journey.

Hana : (3) \_\_\_\_\_

- a. How long did you stay there ?
- b. What's your favourite subject ?
- c. What did you see there ?

Rana : I saw orangutans in the forest.

## B. Writing and Usage

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c :

1. Ecotourism doesn't ..... the natural environment.  
a. damage      b. isolate      c. conserve
2. Forests ..... us with the oxygen we need.  
a. respect      b. dive      c. provide
3. Whales are very ..... animals that live in seas and oceans.  
a. big      b. small      c. tiny
4. She had a/an ..... on her knee yesterday.  
a. operate      b. operation      c. cooperation
5. Hesham ..... tennis at this moment.  
a. play      b. played      c. is playing
6. I asked the chef about the ..... of the delicious dish.  
a. chemicals      b. ingredients      c. swimming
7. When I was young, I used to ..... swimming.  
a. go      b. went      c. had gone

Match "A" with "B" to make correct sentences :

(A)	(B)
1- Ahmed Zewail was	a- break the rules.
2- The Nile used to	b- protects people from diseases.
3- We mustn't	c- awarded the Nobel Prize.
4- The Egyptian navy	d- make the soil fertile.
5- Vaccination	e- protects Egypt's coasts.

## 2 امتحان الدمج

## A. Language Functions

1 Choose the correct sentence in the following dialogue :

Ola : Do you think moving to a new school is a good or bad thing ?

Lina : (1) \_\_\_\_\_

- a. That's true. It is possible to make new friends.
- b. As far as I'm concerned, it's not a good idea.
- c. It's really difficult to make new friends.

Ali : (2) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Salim : I'm fifteen.

- a. How old are you ?
- b. Who are you ?
- c. Hi, Salim. How are you ?

Omar : (3) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Gamal : Yes, I did my homework yesterday.

- a. Did you do your homework ?
- b. Where did you do your homework ?
- c. When did you do your homework ?

## B. Writing and Usage

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c :

1. While Noha ..... her housework, the lights went out.  
a. did      b. was doing      c. does
2. Don't forget to come on time when you ..... to come for the interview.  
a. ask      b. are asked      c. asked



3. As a personal trainer to the rich and famous, he ..... over a million dollars a year.  
 a. earns      b. wins      c. gains
4. I need some advice on which computer to buy. The synonym of the word "advice" is .....  
 a. discouragement      b. relation      c. recommendation
5. You need to update your ..... software regularly to look for and remove viruses on your computer.  
 a. antivirus      b. antibiotic      c. antibodies
6. He practices ..... the guitar every day.  
 a. to play      b. playing      c. to be played
7. I like outdoor ..... such as hiking or climbing.  
 a. activities      b. subjects      c. toys

Match "A" with "B" to make correct sentences :

(A)	(B)
1- A food bank is a place	a- I can go instead of him.
2- Contact your local branch	b- to arrange an appointment.
3- She discovered that the job	c- wasn't as easy as it might seem.
4- A professional sportsman is	d- the one who earns money by playing a sport.
5- If Ramy can't attend the meeting,	e- where people collect food to give to others.

### C. Reading Comprehension

Read the passage, then answer the questions. Put (✓) or (X) :

Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan. My father bought our tickets at Ramses Station, then we got on the train. There were people from many countries on the train, for example, England and Australia. The train left Cairo at 8 o'clock, and soon we passed Giza. I enjoyed the view from the train window. We arrived at Luxor at a quarter past six. Many tourists left the train there. They wanted to see the Valley of the Kings! The train continued to Aswan. We arrived at ten o'clock. My uncle was there to meet us ! It was a wonderful journey.

- a. The train left Cairo at 9 o'clock. ( )
- b. They arrived at Aswan at 10 o'clock. ( )
- c. Few tourists left the train in Luxor. ( )
- d. The writer's uncle met them in Aswan. ( )
- e. There were lots of people from many countries on the train. ( )

## Islamic Selections

### Chapter (1) The Five Pillars of Islam

Answer the following questions :

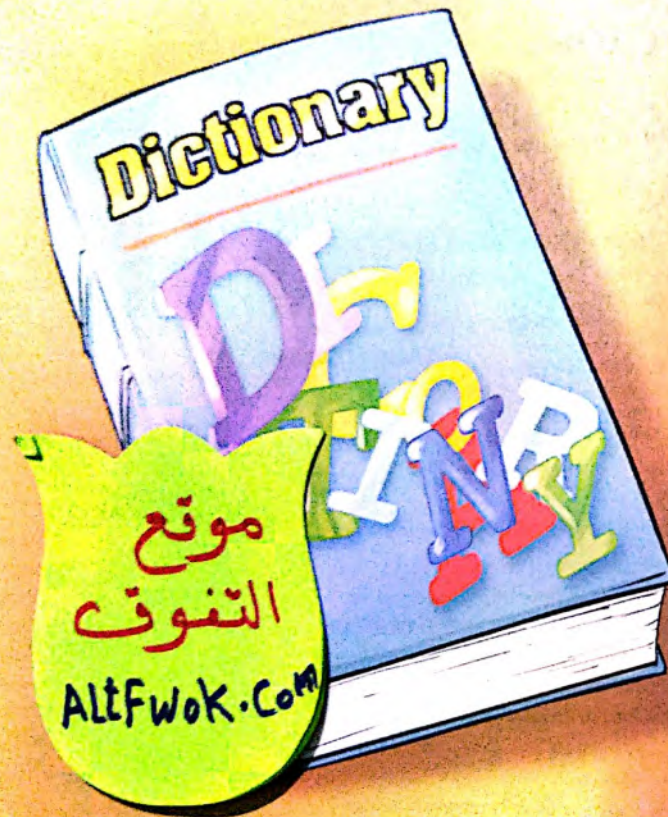
- What do the Five Pillars of Islam form ?
- How can Muslims have their minor sins cleared ?
- What are the outcomes of Zakat ?
- What would happen if any of the Muslims was ill or on a journey during the fast ?
- How does a Muslim become a true Muslim ?

### Chapter (2) Prayer

Answer the following questions :

- What happens as long as a Muslim adheres to keeping Allah in remembrance ?
- Mention the five daily prayers that a Muslim performs every day.
- What are the purpose of performing the daily prayers by Muslims ?
- What kind of fuel does a Muslim get from prayers ?
- How many are the daily prayers in reward ?





Vocabulary - Collocations - Synonyms - Antonyms  
- Expressions & Prepositions

## First Term Dictionary

عزيزي الطالب :

يحتوي هذا قاموس المعاصر لتعريف الأول الثانوي، والذي يتضمن كل ما يخص مفردات الفصل الدراسي الأول، وهو بمثابة مرجع تم تقسيمه إلى عدة أقسام لتعريف المفردات والصيغ والمترادفات والمضادات والتعريفات والمصطلحات بما في ذلك مفردات القصة (Treasure Island) والهدف من هذا القاموس هو أن تستطيع به كمرجع يمكنك الاستعانة به في البحث عن أي كلمة أثناء حل تدريبات المفردات والمراجعة حيث أنه مرادف لبحث، والله من المتفضل بهذا القاموس كمرجع لك في السنوات القادمة.

### 1 Exam Vocabulary

تمت كتابة المفردات الأكثر أهمية بلون مختلف حتى يسهل حفظها

Aa			
ability(n)	قُرة	allowed(adj)	مسمح به
abroad(adv)	بالخارج (خارج البلاد)	already(adv)	بالفعل
accident(n)	حادث	although (conj.)	برغم أن
account(n)	حساب (مصرفي أو على النت)	amazing(adj)	مذهل - رائع جدًا
achievement (n)	إنجاز - نجاح	amongst(pre)	بين / وسط
action(n)	خُذت - فعل	ancient(n)	قديم - عتيق
active(adj)	نشط	angle(n)	زاوية - جانب
activity(n)	نشاط	angry(adj)	غاضب
actually(adv)	في الواقع / بالفعل	anti-virus (adj)	مُكافح الفيروسات
add(ed) (v)	بضف	anymore(adv)	مرة أخرى
address(ed) (v - n)	بخطب - عنوان	app = application(n)	تطبيق (رسمي)
admire(d) (v)	يُعجب به	appearance(n)	مظهر
admit (ted) (v)	يُقر به / يعترف	area (n)	مسئلة
adult (n - adj)	شخص بالغ - راشد	around (adv - prep)	حول - حوالي
advantage(n)	ميزة	arrange(d) (v)	يُرتب
adventure(n)	مغامرة	article(n)	مقال
advert = advertisement (n)	إعلان	arts(n)	أدب - فنون
advice(n)	نصيحة	association (n)	جمعية - اتحاد
Africa(n)	إفريقيا	attack(ed) (n - v)	هجوم - يهاجم
again (adv)	مرة أخرى	attempt(ed) (n - v)	محاولة - يحاول
against(pre)	ضد	attractions(n)	عوامل الجذب
agreement(n)	غُدد - اتفاق - موافقة	author(n)	مؤلف
aim(ed) (n - v)	هدف - يهدف	avoid(ed) (v)	يتجنب - يتفادى
allow(ed) (v)	يسمح به	awful(adj)	فظيع / شديد



Bb

baby sister(n)	أخت رضيعية	blood pressure(n)	ضغط الدم
balcony(n)	شرفة / شرفة	blow - blew - blown (v)	نَهَبَ - يَنْفِخ - يُطْبِر
barrel(n)	برميل خشبي	board(n)	مِنشاة سفينة أو طائرة - لوحة
beach(n)	شاطئ	body(n)	الجزء الرئيسي - الجسم
beauty(n)	الجمال	book(ed) (v)	يُحجِر
become - became - become (v)	صَح	boring(adj)	مُمل
behave(d) (v)	سلوك / يتصرف	borrow(ed) (v)	يستعير - يستلف
behaviour(n)	سلوك	branch(n)	فرع - غصن
believe(n)	اعتقاد	brainstorm(ed) (v)	يستثير الفكر
benefit(ed) (n - v)	فائدة - يستفيد	break - broke - broken (v)	يكسر - يتكسر
biography(n)	السيرة الذاتية	break down (phr. v)	يتعطل
biologist(n)	عالم أحياء	brief (adj)	مُختصر - موجز
biology(n)	علم الأحياء	brilliant adj	رائع - متفوق
birth(n)	ميلاد	bring - brought (v)	يُحضِر - يجلب
bite - bit - bitten (n - v)	عُتة - يعض / يقضم	bully(ied) (v)	يُتَنَمَّر - يُبْلِطُج
blind(adj)	كفيف البصر	bully(n)	بلطجي - مُتَنَمَّر
blog(ged) (n - v)	مُتَوِّتة على الإنترنت - يُنَوِّن	bullying(n)	البلطجة - التَنَمَّر
blood(n)	الدم	business(es)(n)	شركات
blood donation(n)	التبرع بالدم	buy - bought (v)	يشترى

Cc

call(ed) (v)	يستدعي - يَظْهَر / يتصل به	chance(n)	فرصة
calm(adj)	هادئ	compassion(n)	رَأْفَة / رَحْمَة
camping(n)	الإقامة في معسكر	completed(adj)	مُكتمل
canal(n)	قناة - ترعة	concerned(adj)	مهتم - لديه اهتمام
cancer(n)	مرض السرطان	conclusion(n)	خلاصة - خاتمة
candlelight(n)	نور الشمعة	connect(ed) (v)	يربط
cannon(n)	مدفع	connected(adj)	مُتَّصِل - مُرتَبِط
carnival(n)	احتفال / مهرجانات	connection(n)	ارتباط - اتصال
case(n)	حالة - قضية	conservation(n)	الصيانة - حماية البيئة
castle(n)	قلعة	conservationist(n)	مُحافظ على البيئة
cattle(n)	الماشية	consider(ed) (v)	يفكر في - يضع في الإعتبار
cause(d) (n - v)	سبب - يُسَبِّب	contact(ed) (v - n)	يتصل / يتواصل - تواصل
centre(n)	مركز / وسط	contain(ed) (v)	يحتوي على

change(d) (v - n)	تُغَيِّر - يَتَغَيَّر - يُغَيِّر	conversation(n)	محادثة
character(n)	شخصية	cook(ed) (n - v)	طباخ - يطبخ
charity(n)	جمعية خيرية - العمل الخيري	cool(adj)	على الموضة - جميل / جذاب
cheap(adj)	رخيص الثمن	copy(ied) (n - v)	نسخة - يسخن
cheat(ed) (v - n)	يغش - غشاش	coral reefs / corals(n)	الشعاب المرجانية
cheating(n)	الغش	council(n)	مجلس / ديوان
check(ed) (v)	يتحقق من - يفحص	cow(n)	بقرة
circle(d) (n - v)	دائرة - يرسم دائرة - يحيط به	crazy(adj)	مجنون
classroom(n)	حجرة الدراسة	create(d) (v)	يخلق - يبتكر - يُوجد
cleaner(adj)	أكثر نظافة	creative(adj)	مُبدع - خلاق
clear(d) (adj - v)	صافي - واضح - يوضح	credit card(n)	بطاقة ائتمان
clearly(adv)	بوضوح	crescent (n)	هلال
click(ed) (n - v)	نقرة - يقر	crew(n)	طاقم سفينة أو طائرة
cliff(n)	منحدر	crime(n)	جريمة
close (to) (adj)	قريب - مُقَرَّب	criminal (n - adj)	مجرم - إجرامي
closing (n)	إنهاء - ختام	critical(adj)	نقد - نقدي
coast(n)	ساحل	cross(ed) (n - v)	علامة (X) أو - يتخطى
collaboration(n)	تعاون / تآزر	crowded(adj)	مزدحم
collect (ed) (v)	يجمع - يُحْجِر	cruise ship (n)	ساحرة سياحة
collection(n)	مجموعة	cruise(n)	تجربة بحرية
colourful(adj)	زاهي الألوان	crutch(n)	عُكَّاز - ركيزة - دعامة
comic(n)	مجلة مصورة للأطفال	cry(ied) (v)	يُحْكِي
comment(ed) (n - v)	تعليق - يُعَلِّق	culture(n)	الثقافة
common (adj)	عام - مُشْتَرَك - شائع	currant row	صف الكشمش / غيب
communicate(d) (v)	يتواصل - يتواصل	currant(n)	نبات الكشمش / غيب
communication(n)	تواصل - اتصال	currently(adv)	حاليًا
community(n)	مُجْتَمَع - جماعة	cute(adj)	جذاب - جميل
compare(d) (v)	يقارن	cyberbully (n)	متنمر عبر الإنترنت
contractions(n)	اختصارات	cyberbullying(n)	التنمر الإلكتروني
contrast(ed) (n - v)	تباين / اختلاف - يوضح التباين	cycle (d) (v)	يقود دراجة

Dd

damage(d) (v - n)	يُتَلَف - تلف / ضرر	dig - dug (v)	يُحْفِر - يخرس
dare(d) (v)	يجرؤ	dirty(adj)	قذر
data(n)	بيانات	disabled (adj)	مُعاق
date(n)	تاريخ اليوم - موعد	disappear(ed) (v)	يختفي - يتلاشى
day(n)	يوم - النهار	disaster(n)	كارثة - مأساة



debate(d) (n - v)	مناقشة - يناقش	disconnected(adj)	منفصل / متعزل
debt(n)	دين	discussion(n)	مناقشة / نقاش
decide(d) (v)	يقرر - يختار	disease(n)	مرض
dedicate(d) (v)	يخصص	dishonest(adj)	غير أمين - مُخادع
defend(ed) (v)	يدافع عن	dive(d) (v)	يقوص / يغوص
delete(d) (v)	يحذف	diversity(n)	التنوع
describe(d) (v)	يصف	diving(n)	الغوص / الغطس - رحلة غوص
description(n)	وصف	document(n)	وثيقة
deserve(d) (v)	يستحق	documentary (n - adj)	فيلم وثائقي - وثائقي
design(ed) (v - n)	يُصمم - تصميم	donated(d) (v)	يتبرع
desire(d) (n - v)	رغبة - يرغب	donation(n)	التبرع
destination(n)	مقصد - وجهة سفر	donor(n)	مُتبرع
destroy(ed) (v)	يُدمر	download (n)	ملف مُنزّل
details(n)	تفاصيل	download(ed) (v)	يحمل / يُنزّل (من الإنترنت)
determine(d) (v)	يحدد - يبيّن	downloading (n)	التحميل / التنزيل (من الإنترنت)
develop(ed) (v)	يُطوّر / يُنمّي / ينمو / يتطور	dragon(n)	تنين
device(n)	جهاز	dreamer (n)	حالم
dialogue(n)	حوار	dress(ed) (n - v)	فستان - يرتدي ملابس
die (d) (v)	يتوفى / يموت	dried(adj)	مُجفّف
difference(n)	اختلاف - فرق	driverless(adj)	بدون سائق
differently(adv)	شكل مختلف	drop(ped) (v - n)	يُسقط - قُطرة
		during	خلال / أثناء

Es

each (adv - pron - deter)	كُلّ / كُلّ من	environment(n)	البيئة
earn(ed) (v)	يكسب - يجني مال	environmentally(adv)	من الناحية البيئية
eco-hotel(n)	فندق صديق للبيئة	escape(d) (v - n)	يهرب - هروب
ecosystem(n)	النظام البيئي	especially(adv)	بصفة خاصة
ecotourism(n)	الساحة البيئية	essay(n)	مقالة
ecotourist(n)	سائح مُراعي للبيئة	estimate(d) (v)	يُقدّر - يفترض
eco-trip(n)	رحلة صديقة للبيئة	Europe(n)	قارة أوروبا
Ecuador(n)	الإكوادور	events(n)	أحداث
educate(d) (v)	يُعَلِّم	everyday (adj)	يومي
effect(n)	أثر	everywhere(adv)	في كل مكان
Egyptians(n)	المصريون	evidence(n)	دليل
electric(adj)	كهربائي	exactly(adv)	تمامًا - بالتحديد
electronic(adj)	إلكتروني	excited(adj)	سعيد - مُثار

embarrassing(adj)	مُزعج	exciting(adj)	مثير
emotional connection	ارتباط عاطفي	existed (v)	وجود / يتواجد
emotions(n)	مشاعر	exotic(adj)	غريب - أجنبي
empathy(n)	تعاطف - تفهم ظروف الآخرين	expensive(adj)	غالي الثمن
employ(ed) (v)	يوظف - يُشغّل	experience (d) (n - v)	تجربة - يمر بتجربة
employer(n)	صاحب العمل - مُوظف	expert (n - adj)	خبير
empty(ied) (adj - v)	فارغ - مُفرغ	explain(ed) (v)	يشرح / يوضح / يُفسّر
encourage(d) (v)	يُشجّع	explore(d) (v)	يستكشف
endangered(adj)	مُعرض للخطر	expressions(n)	تعابير
ending (v)	نهاية	extra (adj / adv)	إضافي - آخر
entertain(ed) (v)	يُسلّي - يُرفّه	extract(ed) (n - v)	مُستَخلَق / مُستَخرج - يفتس
entertainment(n)	تسلية / ترفيه		/ يُستَظف

Ff

face(d) (n - v)	وجه - يواجه	fly (n)	ذباب
fact(n)	حقيقة	follow(ed) (v)	يتبع / يلي - يتبع
factory(n)	مصنع	fondness(n)	غرام / إعجاب / حب شديد
factual(adj)	واقعي - متعلق بالحقائق	food bank	بنك الطعام
faculty(n)	كُلية	foot - feet(n)	قدم - أقدام
fair(adj)	عادل	footballer(n)	لاعب كرة قدم
famous(adj)	مشهور	forget - forgot -	نسي
farmer(n)	فلاح / مُزارع	forgotten (v)	
Faroe Islands(n)	جزر الفارو	formal(adj)	رسمي
fascinating(adj)	جميل / خلاب	fort(n)	حصن
favourite(adj)	مُفضّل	fortunately(adv)	لحسن الحظ
feed - fed(v)	يُغذّي	founder(n)	مؤسس - مُؤسس
feel - felt (v)	يشعر به	free(adj)	مجانبي
fewer(adj)	أقل في العدد	frequency(n)	تكرار
field (n)	مجال - حقل	friendly(adj)	ودود
fight - fought (v - n)	يقاتل / يتشاجر مع - مشاجرة	friendship(n)	الصداقة
finals(n)	النهائيات	full-time(adj)	دوام كامل
flexible(adj)	مرن	fun(n)	مرح / متعة
flight(n)	رحلة جوية	furious(adj)	ساحط / غاضب جدًا
fly - flew - flown(v)	يطير - يُطير - يُسرّع	fussy eater	منقلب المزاج بشأن الطعام



<b>Gg</b>		
gargle(n)	غصاية	gargle(v)
garden(n)	سجن	grammar(n)
garden(n)	سجنائي (جاني)	granddad(n)
gardening(n)	سنة / فلاة السنين	grass(n)
generous(adj)	كريم - سخو	gravel(v)
get along with	حسن التعامل مع	gravelled (adj)
get away from	سعد عن	great(adj)
get to - got(v)	وصل إلى	greeting(n)
giant (adj - n)	ضخم	grouped (n - v)
glad(adj)	سعيد / مسرور	grow - grew - grown (v)
go - went - gone (v)	جئت / ذهبت	grown-ups(n)
goats(n)	بقر	guarded (n - v)
gosh(n)	صراخ (عندما جمع)	guardian(n)
google (n)	تحرك البحث حول	guide(d) (n - v)
google(d) (v)	بحث على جوجل	

<b>Hh</b>		
habit(n)	عادة	hide - hid - hidden (v)
hacked (n - v)	خترق - تخرب	high school(n)
hacking(n)	اختراق - القرصنة	highlighted (n - v)
harmless(n)	مريض - مرفأ	historic(adj)
hard(adj)	صعب	hobby(n)
harm (ed) (n - v)	ضرر - يضر -	hometown(n)
hate(d) (v)	يكره	hop(ped) (n - v)
hay(n)	تنق / تنق	hopping(n)
head(n)	رئيس - قائد - رأس	horrible(adj)
header(n)	رأس الصفحة - عنوان رئيسي	host(ed) (n - v)
headquarters(n)	مركز القيادة	however (conj. - adv)
healthy	صحة جيدة	hunter(n)
heating(n)	التدفئة	hunting parties
helpful(adj)	مفيد - ميسر	hurt - hurt (v)

<b>Ii</b>		
idea (n)	فكرة	intelligent(adj)
illegally(adv)	شكل غير قانوني	intention(n)
image(n)	صورة	interesting(adj)
imaginary(adj)	خيالي / غير حقيقي	interests (n)
imagination (n)	خيال	internal(adj)

يجذب بشدة / يجذب  
القواعد النحوية  
جد  
غضب  
الجني  
مغطى بالحصى  
عظيم  
نحية  
مجموعة - يجمع / يجمع  
يزرع - يترك  
الكبار  
يحرص - حارس  
حارس  
مؤيد - مؤيد

يخفي - يخفي  
مدرسة ثانوية  
الجزء الأهم - يبرز  
تاريخي  
هواية  
مسقط رأس  
قفزة - يقفز - يجعل  
القفز - القفز  
نظير  
مضيف - يستضيف  
مع ذلك  
صيد  
فرق الصيد  
يؤذي - يفسد

ذكي  
نية  
شيق - مشير للاهتمام  
اهتمامات  
داخلي

imagine(d) (v)	تخيل	Internet of Things (IoT)	إنترنت الأشياء
imported (n - v)	أثر - مؤثر	internet(n)	الإنترنت
important (adj)	هام	interview(ed) (n - v)	مقابل / مقابلة شخصية - مقابلة
improved (v)	تحسن - يتحسن	introduce(d) (v)	يشرح - يقدم - يشرح
incubate (d) (v)	يشعل / ينضج - ينضج	iron level(n)	نسبة الحديد في الدم
increase(n)	دخل - مورد رزق	ironed (n - v)	جديد - صكوك - صكوك
increase(d) (v - n)	يزيد - يزداد - يزداد	island(n)	جزيرة
Indonesia(n)	إندونيسيا	isolated(adj)	معزول - منعزل
inform(ed) (v)	يُعلم - يُعلم	isolation (n)	عزلة - انعزال
impaired (v)	نقص - يزد	issue(n)	قضية
impaired (adj)	مصاب / معرج	imm(n)	جانب (العمل معاصر)
inspire (v)	يلهم - يلهي / يلهي		

	<b>Jj</b>	
job(n)	مهمة - وظيفة	join(ed) (v)

Kk			
keep - kept (v)	يحافظ على - يحتفظ بـ - يربط	kids(n)	الأطفال
keep the gravel walk	يلزم الطريق المسد بالحصي	killer(n)	قاتل
Kenya(n)	كينيا	kind(adj)	طيب - ناعم
key(n)	مفتاح	knowledge(n)	المعرفة
kidnap(ed) (v)	خطف	kneel down - knelt(v)	يركب

lady(n)	سيدة	like (prep - v)
large(adj)	كبير - ضخم	limited(adj)
later (adv)	فما بعد	line(n)
laugh(d) (n - v)	ضحكة - يضحك	link(ed) (n - v)
law(n)	القانون	list(ed) (n - v)
lawyer(n)	محامي	literature(n)
lean - leaned / leant(v)	يتحن / يس - يتكئ	little(adj)
leader(n)	قائد	live(d) (v)
Lemurs(n)	فرد اللبوس	livestock(n)
length(n)	طول	loads of
lesson(n)	درس - حصة	local(adj)
lettuce(n)	الخس	locals(n)
level(n)	مستوى / نسبة	locate(d) (v)



library(n)	مكتبة	booked(d) (v - v)	يُغلق - يُغلق
lie - lay - lain (v)	يُفقد - يمتد	long (adv/adj)	طويل المدى
life (lives) (n)	حياء حيوات	lucky (adj)	محظوظ
light(n - adj)	الضوء - خفيف الوزن		
lightning(n)	الإضاءة		

Mm

Maasan(n)	شعب الماساي	meaning(n)	معنى
machine(n)	آلة	medic(n)	وسائل الإعلام - وسائل التواصل
Machu Picchu(n)	حصن مانشو بيشو في المكسيك	medicine(n)	الطب - دواء
Madagascar(n)	جزيرة مدغشقر	misused(d) (v)	يُذكر
magistrate(n)	قاضى (جمع)	merchant(n)	تاجر
main(adj)	رئيسي / أساسي	Mexican (n - adj)	مكسيكي
mainly(adv)	أساساً	mind(n)	العقل
major(adv)	كبير	miserable(adj)	تعبس - بائس
make it clear	يوضح	miss(ed) (v)	يفقد - يفتقر
maker(n)	صانع	missing(adj)	مفقود - ناقص
malware(n)	البرمجيات الخبيثة	mix(ed) (v)	يختلط بـ - يخلط
management(n)	إدارة	model(n)	نموذج
map(n)	خريطة	modern(adj)	حديث - مُعاصر
market(n)	سوق	monitor(ed) (v - n)	يُراقب / يرصد - جهاز عرض
marks(n)	درجات	mosquito(n)	ناموسة
master(n)	السيد	movement(n)	حركة
material (n - adj)	مادة / غرض - مادي	moving(adj)	مُتحرك
maybe(adv)	ربما	mutiny(n)	تمرد - عصيان

Nn

name(d) (n - v)	اسم - يُسمى - يذكر اسم	nickname(n)	لقب - اسم شهرة
narrate(ed) (v)	يروي / يحكي	niece(n)	ابنة الأخ أو الأخت
narrow(adj)	ضيق	noisy(adj)	مُزعج - صاخب
nasty(adj)	قبيح - ذميم	note (n)	ملاحظة
National Park(n)	الحديقة الوطنية	noticeboard(n)	لوحة الإعلانات
natural(adj)	طبيعي	novel(n)	رواية - قصة طويلة
nearby (adj/ adv)	قريب / مجاور	nurse(d) (v)	تُمرض - ترعى المرضي
negative(adj)	سلبي	nurse(n)	ممرضة
neighbour(n)	جار	nursing(n)	التريض
network(ed) (n - v)	شبكة - يتصل عن طريق الشبكة		

Oo

objective(adj)	موضوعي (محايد)	orangutan(n)	إنسان القردة
offer(ed) (n - v)	عرض - يعرض	organisation(n)	مؤسسة - منظمة
once(adv)	مرة - ذات مرة	otherwise(adv)	وإلا
online (adj / adv)	متصل بالإنترنت - على الإنترنت	outside(adv)	بالخارج
opportunity(n)	فرصة	over the moon	سعيد جداً
optional(adj)	اختياري	owe(d) (v)	يدين - يدين مدين

Pp

pale(adj)	شاحب اللون - باهت	police(d) (v)	يفرض الأمر والاضطراب
paper(n)	ورق - مقال	police(n)	الشرطة
paradise(n)	جنة	policing(n)	فرض الأمن والاضطراب
parrot(n)	ببغاء	polite(adj)	مؤدب - مهذب
particular(adj)	مُعين / مُحدد	pollution(n)	التلوث
partner(n)	شريك - نظير / قريب	pool(n)	حمام سباحة - بركة
party(n)	فرق - جماعة - حزب	popular(adj)	ذو شعبية
pass(ed) (v)	يحجز - يمر - يُمرز	populate(d) (v)	يُغمر مكان
password(n)	كلمة المرور	population(n)	أعداد السكان
past(n)	الماضي	Portugal(n)	البرتغال
path(n)	طريق مشاة - ممر	positive(adj)	إيجابي
paw print	أثار أقدام الحيوان	possibility(n)	إمكانية
paws(n)	برائن - مخالب الحيوانات	posted(d) (v - n)	يرسل - منشور
pay - paid (v)	يدفع مال	pound(n)	جنية
peace(n)	السلام - السكينة	power station(n)	محطات الطاقة
peaceful(adj)	هادئ / ذو سكينة	practice(n)	ممارسة - تدريب
penny(n)	بنس (١/١٠٠ من الجنية)	praise(ed) (n - v)	المدح - يُثنى على - يمدح
perform(ed) (v)	يؤدي - يقوم بـ	prediction(n)	تنبؤ
personal(adj)	شخصي	prefer(red) (v)	يُفضل
personality(n)	شخصية	preparation(n)	إعداد - تجهيز
persuade(d) (v)	يُقنع	present(n)	الحاضر - الحاضر
petrol(n)	البنزين	presentation(n)	عرض تقديمي
phishing(n)	النصب الإلكتروني	presenter(n)	مقدم برنامج
phone-in(n)	برنامج يُشارك فيه الجمهور هاتفياً	pressure(n)	ضغط
photograph(ed) (n - v)	صورة - يلتقط صورة	prestige (n - adj)	تفوق / تميز / وجاهة - عالي الجودة
physical(adj)	بدني / جسدي - مادي	prison(n)	السجن



pink (n - adj)	وردي اللون	production (v)	إنتاج
pinpoint	قرصان	product (n)	إنتاج
place (n)	مكان	programmed (n - v)	برنامج - ترمج
plan (n) (v - n)	خطة - خطط	project (n)	مشروع
planning (n)	خطيط	promote (v)	يعظم
play (n)	مسرحية	promote (v)	الخط
plaza (n)	ساحة / فناء	promote (v)	بشكل صحيح
plot (n)	قطعة أرض	proper (adj)	مزايا وغيوب
plot (n)	الحبكة - ذروة الأحداث	protect (v)	يحمي
plot (adj)	مكتسب - ممتلئ قلباً	provide (v)	يوفر - يؤد به
poem (n)	قصيدة	publish (v)	ينشر
poet (n)	شاعر	punctuation (n)	علامات الترقيم
poetry (n)	الشعر - الطم	purpose (n)	غرض
point (v)	يشير		

Qq

quality (n)	سمة - سيرة	quarter (n)	رُبع
quantity (n)	كمية	quiet (n - adj)	هنا - هادئ

Rr

rainforest (n)	غابة مطيرة	resort (n)	منتجع سياحي
rail (n)	قار	respect (v) (n - v)	احترام - يحترم
read - read (v)	قرأ	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
reader (n)	قارئ	return (v)	يعود - يُعيد
realise (v)	يُحسب - يستوعب	review (v)	يُراجع
reason (n)	سبب	review (n)	عرض نقدي
rebuild - rebuilt (v)	يعيد بنا -	revise (v)	يراجع - يفتح
recent (adj)	حدث	reward (v) (n - v)	يُكافئ - مكافأة
recipient (n)	مستفيد - مُستلم	rhyme (n)	القافية - يُقفي / يشجع
recognise (v)	يعرف على	rhythm (n)	إيقاع
reduce (v)	يُقلل / يُخفّض	ride - rode - ridden (v)	يركب
regret (v) (n - v)	الندم - يندم - يفت	ring - rang - rang (v)	يرن
regular (adj)	معتاد / مألوف - منظم	roar (v) (n - v)	يرن - زئير
relationship (n)	علاقة	robot (n)	إنسان آلي
relaxing (adj)	مريح	role model (n)	قُدوة - نموذج يُحتذى
remote (adj)	بعيد / نائي	role (n)	دور
remove (v)	يزيل - يُبعد	roleplay (n - v)	(العبة) تمثيل الأدوار - يُمثل

repair (v)	يُصلح	romantic (adj)	رومانسي
repeated (adj)	متكرر	row (n)	صف
reply (v) (n - v)	رد - يرد	rucksack (n)	معلقة الظهر
request (v) (n - v)	طلب - يطلب	rude (adj)	رفيع - سي - اللادب
resent (n)	ساكن / زميل	rule (v) (n - v)	قاعدة - يُلزم

Ss

sad (adj)	حزين	solve (v)	يحل
safe (adj)	آمن	souvenir (n)	هدية تذكارية - تذكارات
Sahara (n)	الصحراء الكبرى	space (n)	المكان
sail (v) (n - v)	سبحر - شراع	special (adj)	مُستط - خاص
sailor (n)	بحار	speed (n)	سرعة
salutation (n)	رحمة	spelling (n)	تهجي الكلمات
sand (n)	الرمال	spend - spent (v)	يقتني وقت - ينفق مال
satnav (n)	الترجمة بالقرص الصناعي	spice (v)	يُثقل (بمعن توابل)
save (v)	يُفد - يُدخر / يوفر	spices (n)	توابل
scam (n)	احتيال - خدش	spicy (adj)	جديد - حار - ممتلئ بالبهارات
scientist (n)	عالم	spider (n)	عنكبوت
score (v) (n - v)	يُحزب / يحل - النقاط المسجلة	stadium (n)	مستاد
Scottish (adj)	إسكتلندي	steal - stole - stolen (v)	يسرق
season (n)	فصل / موسم	stepfather (n)	زوج الأم
section (n)	قسم - جزء	steps (n)	خطوات
security (n)	الأمن	still (adv)	لا يزال
seem (v)	يبدو	stir (v)	يُحرّك / يُجرب
self (n)	النفس - الذات	stone (n)	حجر
self-management (n)	إدارة الذات	storyteller (n)	قصاص (يحكي قصصاً)
sell - sold (v)	بيع	strange (adj)	غريب
sense (n)	حاسة	stressed (adj)	مُشدّد / متعب
sentence (n)	خُلة	stressed (adj)	مُستط (مُستط)
serious (adj)	خطير - جاد	structure (n)	تركيب - بنا
several (adj)	العديد من	stuck (adj)	عالق / محنّس - ملتصق
share (v)	يُشارك - يشارك	study (v)	يُدرّس - يُدّك
short story (n)	قصة قصيرة	subject (n)	موضوع
show - showed -	يُشّج - يُشّج - عُرض فني	successful (adj)	ناجح
shown (v - n)		suggestion (n)	الترّاع
sick (adj)	مرضى		



PART 4

sight(n)	منظر - البصر - أحد المعالم	summarise(d) (v)	ملخص
sign(n)	علامة / إشارة / لافتة	summary(n)	ملخص
single(adj)	مفرد - أعزب	sunbathe(d) (v)	بالجلد حذاء الشمس - يتعرض للشمس
site(n)	موقع	sunshine(n)	أشعة الشمس
situation(n)	موقف	supported (v - n)	بدعم - دعم
skill(n)	مهارة	supposed (v)	باعتبار
slow(adj)	بطيء	surface(n)	سطح
smartphone(n)	الهاتف الذكي	surprise(d) (n - v)	مفاجأة / دهشة - مفاجئ
social media(n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	survey(n)	بحث استقصائي
socialise(d) (v)	يتواصل عبر وسائل التواصل	sustain(ed) (v)	يحافظ - يثبتي على
society (n)	المجتمع	sustainable(adj)	دائم - صديق للبيئة
software(n)	برامج - برمجيات	swell - swelled -	يتورم - ينتفخ - يتزايد
solution(n)	حل	swollen (up) (v)	
		system(n)	نظام

Tt

take ... for granted	يُؤم ... به	together(adv)	معًا / سويًا
talk(ed) (n - v)	حديث - تحدثت	tonight(adv)	الليلة
Tanzania(n)	تنزانيا	tools(n)	أدوات
teach - taught (v)	يُدرّس	topic(n)	فكرة رئيسية
team sports(n)	رياضات جماعية	toy(n)	لعبة أطفال
teammates(n)	زملاء الفريق	track(ed) (v - n)	يرصد - يتابع - يمر
technology(n)	التكنولوجيا	traditional(adj)	تقليدي
teenager (adj - n)	مراهق	traditionally(adv)	بشكل تقليدي
temple(n)	معبد	transplant(ed) (n - v)	نقل - زراعة أعضاء
terrible(adj)	فظيع - سيء جدًا	travel(led) (v - n)	السفر - يسافر
test(ed) (n - v)	اختبار - يختبر	traveller(n)	مسافر - زحالة
text(n)	نص	treasure(n)	كنز
the Pacific(n)	المحيط الهادي	trek(ked) (v - n)	يسير لمسافة طويلة - رحلة
the wild	المنطق البرية	tribe(n)	طويلة سيرًا
theatre(n)	الشرح	trick(ed) (n - v)	قبيلة
thief - thieves(n)	لصوص	trouble(n)	خدعة - يخدع
thinking(n)	تفكير	true(adj)	مشكلة
tiny(adj)	ضئيل الحجم	trust (ed) (n - v)	حقيقي / صحيح - صادق
			ثقة - يثق به

Dictionary

tip (n)	نصيحة	try(ied) (v)	يُحارب - يحاول
tired-looking(adj)	يبدو عليه التعب	turtle(n)	سلحفاة مائية
title(n)	عنوان - لقب	twins(n)	توائم

Uu

ugly(adj)	قبيح	unwanted(adj)	غير مرغوب فيه
understand -	يفهم - يدرك	upload (n)	ملف مرصوع
understood (v)		upload(ed) (v)	يرفع ملف
underwater (adj - adv)	تحت الماء	uploading (n)	رفع ملفات على الإنترنت
unfriendly(adj)	غير ودود	upset(adj)	مزعج / متضايق - مضطرب
unique(adj)	فريد - مميز	use(d) (n - v)	استخدام - يستخدم
unusual(adj)	غير مأثور		

Vv

variety(n)	تنوع - تعددية	villagers(n)	القرودين
verse(n)	فقرة شعرية	visitor(n)	زائر
victim(n)	ضحية	voluntary work	عمل تطوعي
view(n)	وجهة نظر / رأي - منظر	voluntary(adj)	تطوعي
viewers(n)	المشاهدين	volunteer(n)	مُتطوع
village(n)	قرية	voluntourist(n)	سائح مُتطوع

Ww

wake - woke - woken (v)	يقظ - يستيقظ	while(n)	فترة من الوقت
walls(n)	أسوار / جدران	whistle(d) (n - v)	صفارة - يصفّر
warm(adj)	دافئ	wild(adj)	برّي
warmer(adj)	أكثر دفئًا	wildlife(n)	الحياة البرية
warning(n)	تحذير	wind(n)	الرياح
wear - wore - worn (v)	يرتدي	winter(n)	فصل الشتاء
weather(n)	الطقس	wish(ed) (n - v)	أمنية - يمني
web(n)	شبكة	wonder(ed) (v)	يتساءل
website(n)	موقع على الانترنت	wooden(adj)	خشبي
welcome(d) (v)	يُرحّب	World Cup(n)	كأس العالم
well(adj)	بصحة جيدة	worldwide (adj)	عالمي / دولي
well-known(adj)	مشهور	worry(ied) (n - v)	القلق - يقلق
		writer(n)	كاتب

Yy

yet(adv)	حتى الآن - ومع ذلك	youth association	جمعية شبابية
youth (n)	الشباب		



## 2 Verbal Collocations

Collocations with 'do':			
do	activities	do	puzzles
do	a favour	do	research
do	a job	do	something to help
do	a sport	do	the homework
do	exciting things	do	voluntary work
do	extra practice	do	wrong

Collocations with 'feel':			
feel	at home	feel	safe
feel	better	feel	so hard
feel	connected to	feel	stressed
feel	like		

Collocations with 'give':			
give	food	give	advice on
give	a chance	give	an opinion
give	blood	give	information
give	work / jobs	give	personal details
give	a title	give	a presentation
give	a sense of responsibility	give	a reason for
give	a nickname	give	a rhythm

Collocations with 'go':			
go	diving	go	missing
go	trekking	go	online
go	wrong	go	on a holiday

Collocations with 'have':			
have	a reason	have	common interests
have	a holiday	have	a desire to
have	an impact	have	health benefits
have	a strong taste	have	long-term illness
have	a good time	have	nothing to do

have	a child	have	a game
have	no parents	have	the ability to
have	debts	have	skills
have	a problem with	have	a class debate
have	bad news	have	an effect on
have	time	have	exams
have	no opportunity	have	a rhythm
have	a role	have	fun
have	a happy ending	have	a vote
have	a suggestion	have	a pen friend

Collocations with 'make':			
make	money	make	a decision
make	brief notes	make	life better
make	a suggestion	make	a request
make	a difference	make	a surface
make	friends	make	preparations for
make	sure	make	notes
make	movements	make	friends with

Collocations with 'take':			
take	a taxi	take	a photo
take	a cruise	take	turns
take	to prison	take	a long time
take	... for granted	take	practice

Other collocations:			
be	different to / from	increase	pollution
	not welcome here	introduce	a law
	right to	join	clubs
	ill	leave	school
become	friends		heavy
break	the law	look	like
bring	problems		right



call	the police	يطلب الشرطة	owe	money to	يدين بالمال لـ
change	your opinion	تُغيّر رأيك	pass	an exam	يجتاز امتحان
	your understanding	تتحقق من فهمك		a role	يلعب دورًا
check	blood pressure	يقس ضغط الدم	play	a trick on	يخدع
	iron level	يقس نسبة الحديد في الدم	protect	ecosystem	يحافظ على النظام البيئي
	satnav	يتحقق من التوجيه بالقمر الصناعي	provide	a holiday to	ينظم رحلات إلى
collect	food	يجمع الطعام	reach	the final	يصل للمباراة النهائية
come	home	يعود للبيت	run	the country	يدير البلد
create	jobs for	يوفر وظائف لـ	save	wild animals	يُقيّد الحيوانات البرية
	blood	يتبرع بالدم	send	a message to	يُرسل
donate	money	يتبرع بالمال	solve	a problem	يحل مشكلة
earn	money	يكسب مال	spend	time reading	يقضي الوقت في القراءة
express	ideas	يعبر عن أفكار		university	يبدأ الدراسة الجامعية
face	a problem	يواجه مشكلة	start	a conversation	يبدأ حوار
fight	the bullies	يقاتل المتنمرين		a new school	ينتقل لمدسة جديدة
find	a solution to	يجد حلاً لـ	stay	safe	يبقى بأمان
	the steps	يتبع الخطوات	study	in bed	يلزم الفراش
follow	rules	يتبع القواعد	tell	online	يلدس غُثَر الإنترنت
forget	your worries	تسي مخاوفك	try	a story	يحكي قصة
	lost	يتوه / يضل الطريق	win	a hobby	يجرب ممارسة هواية
get	the main idea	يفهم الفكرة الرئيسية		a prize	يفوز بجائزة
	a job	يحصل على عمل	write	a competition	يفوز بمسابقة
	good marks	يحصل على درجات جيدة		a summary	يكتب تلخيصًا
	money	يحصل على مال		a blog	يكتب منشور في ملونة
improve	his health	يُحسّن صحته			
include	information	يُضمّن معلومات			

3 Synonyms المتراكبات

Word	Synonym (=Meaning)
a long-term illness	مرض مُزمن
admire	يُعجب به
admit	يُقرّ به / يعترف به
	confess

advert	إعلان	advertisement / ad
amazing	مُذهل - رائع جدًا	very good - astonishing - awesome
ancient	قديم / عتيق	very old
app	تطبيق	application
blood donation	التبرع بالدم	giving blood
book	يحجز	reserve
cheat(ed)	يغش	deceive / trick
clear	واضح	obvious / understandable / direct / uncomplicated / explicit
clear	صافي	bright / cloudless
closing	إنهاء - ختام	conclusion / end / ending
common	عام - مُشترك - شائع	widespread / usual / ordinary / customary
concerned	مهتم - لديه اهتمام	interested / involved / affected / connected
connection	ارتباط - اتصال	link / relationship / relation
conservation	حماية البيئة	preservation
cool	علي الموضة / جميل / جذاب	fashionable
crowded	مزدحم	packed - congested - full
desire	رغبة - يرغب	wish
donate	يتبرع	give
earn	يكسب - يجني مال	make (money)
endangered	مُعرض للخطر	in danger - threatened
exotic	أجنبي	foreign
exotic	مُدهش / مُذهل (غير اعتيادي)	unusual / unconventional
famous	مشهور	well-known
generous	كريم - سخّي	giving / open-handed
giant	عملاق - ضخم	gigantic - enormous - huge
grown-ups	الكبار	adults
hate	يكره	loathe / detest
impact	أثر	effect - influence
intelligent	ذكي	clever - brilliant - bright
isolated	بعيد / ناء - مُنْعزل	remote - faraway
lock-up	سجن صغير (التخشبية)	small prison



livestock	الماشية	cattle
malware	برمجيات خبيثة	malicious software
material	قماش	fabric
miserable	نعيس - يائس	unhappy / depressed
monitor	يراقب / يرصد	track / observe / watch / keep an eye on
nurse(d)	تُرضع - ترضع الحرضي	care for / take care of / look after
over the moon	سعيد جداً	very happy
peaceful	هادئ / ذو سكينة	serene - calm - tranquil - quiet
police(d)	يفرض الأمن والاضطاط	control / keep in order / keep under control / regulate
recent	حديث	new / modern / late
relaxing	مريح	comforting
satnav	العلاحة بالقمر الصناعي	satellite navigation
scam	احتيال - غش	fraud - trick
search for	يبحث عن	look for
spicy	حريف - مثقل بالبهارات	hot
sustainable	دائم - صديق للبيئة	environmentally friendly
trek	رحلة طويلة (سيراً) - سير لمسافة طويلة	hike
unique	فريد - مستثنى	distinctive - individual - remarkable - special
voluntary	عمل تطوعي	unpaid
walk	طريق للمشترى سيرا	route / path

4 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (=opposite)
active	كسول - خامل
admire	يستحق - يستنكر
admit	يُنكر
advantages	عيوب - مساوئ
against	مع
agree(d)	يرفض
amazing	عادي
ancient	حديث - جديد
lazy - inactive	نشط - فعال
disapprove of	يُعجب به
deny / conceal	يقر به / يعترف
disadvantages	مزايا
with	ضد
disagree(d)	يوافق
ordinary	مذهل - رائع جداً
modern - new	قديم / عتيق

angry	غاصب	contented / satisfied - pleased	راضي - سعيد
avoid	يتجنب	confront	يراجع
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبح
boring	مُمل	exciting - interesting	مثير - شيق
borrow	يستعير - يستلف	lend	يقرض - يُسلف
busy	مشغول	free	أمر - غير مشغول - متفرغ
calm - quiet	هادئ	noisy	مزعج - صاخب
clear	واضح	vague / unclear	غامض
clear	صافي	cloudy	غائم
common	عام - مُشترك - شائع	unusual / rare	غير مألوف - نادر
correct	صحيح	incorrect	غير صحيح
crowded	مزدحم	empty	فارغ
donate	يتبرع	keep / receive	يحتفظ به / يتسلم
download	تنزيل - يُحمّل (من الانترنت)	upload	الرفع - يرفع (على الانترنت)
dress	يرتدي ملابس	undress - take off	يخلع ملابس
earn(ed)	يكسب - يجني مال	lose	يفقد - يخسر
effect	أثر	cause / reason	سبب
empty	فارغ	full	ممتلئ
exciting	مثير	boring	مُمل
exotic	أجنبي	native	محلي
exotic	مُذهل / مُذهل (غير اعتيادي)	usual - conventional	عادي - تقليدي
fair	غادل	unfair	ظالم - جائر
forget - forgot - forgotten	ينسى	remember(ed)	يتذكر
formal	بلغة رسمية	informal	بلغة دارجة
full-time	دوام كامل	part-time	جزئي - لبعض الوقت
generous	كرم - سخّي - جواد	mean / selfish	بخيل / أناني
hate	يكره	love / like	يحب
honest	أمين	dishonest	غير أمين - مُخادع
intelligence	الذكاء	stupidity	الغباء
intelligent	ذكي	stupid	غبي



isolated	مُعزِل / وحيد	sociable	اجتماعي
kind	طَيِّب - عَطُوف	unkind - cruel	سيء / قاسي
light	النور	dark - darkness	ظلام
lock	يقفل	unlock - open	يفتح
long-term	طويل الأمد	short-term / temporary	قصير الأمد - مؤقت
major	كبير - هام - رئيسي	minor - little - unimportant	صغير - غير هام
miserable	نعيس - بائس	happy - contented	سعيد - راضٍ
online	متصل بالإنترنت - على الإنترنت	offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت - ليس على الإنترنت
optional	اختياري	compulsory	إجباري
peaceful	هادئ / ذو سَكينة	noisy - agitated - hostile	صاخب - عدائي
personal	شخصي / خاص	public	عام
plump	مكتن - ممتلئ قليلاً	thin / slender / skinny	نحيف
popular	ذو شعبية	unpopular	مغمور - غير معروف
positive	إيجابي	negative	سلبي
regular	معتاد / مألوف - منتظم	irregular	غير مألوف - غير منتظم
relaxing	مريح	stressful - tiring	مُجهِد - مُتعب
right	صواب - صحيح	wrong	خطأ
save(d)	يُخَفِّذ	endanger(ed)	يُغَرِّض للخطر
save(d)	يُخَزِّر / يوقِّر	waste(d)	يُهدِّر - يُبدِّد
security	الأمن	danger / insecurity	الخطر / انعدام الأمن
send	يُرسل	receive	يستقبل
similar	متشابه	different	مختلف
sustainable	دائم	unsustainable	غير دائم
unique	فريد - مُميَّز	common - ordinary	عادي - شائع
voluntary	عمل تطوعي	compulsory / obligatory / paid	إجباري - مدفوع الأجر
wild	برِّي	domestic / tame	أليف / مستأنس
with	به - ذو	without	بدون

5 Expressions & Idioms التلميحات والمصطلحات

a boy of four	ولد عمره 4 سنوات	I'm afraid I can't	بؤسفى أنسى لا أستطيع
a cruise to remember	رحلة بحرية لا تُنسى	in a few years	خلال سنوات قليلة
a form of writing	أحد أنواع الكتابة	in a friendly way	بطريقة ودية
a full-time writer	كاتب مُتفرِّغ	in addition to	بالإضافة إلى
a mind map	خريطة ذهنية	in groups	في مجموعات
a new way to travel	طريقة جديدة للسفر	in my opinion	من وجهة نظري
a radio phone-in	برنامج إذاعي يشارك فيه الجمهور تليفونيا	in order to	لكي
a sense of responsibility	الإحساس بالمسئولية	in progress	مستمر
a serious problem	مشكلة خطيرة	in trouble	في مأزق
a victim of its own beauty	ضحية جمالها	informal English	الإنجليزية المألوفة
address ... by title	يخاطب ... بالاسم	instead of	بدلاً من
address ... by name	يخاطب ... باللقب	its rhythm is too slow	إيقاعه بطيء جداً
all over	في كل أنحاء	keep ... as a souvenir	يحفظ به ... كذكر
all without	كل ذلك بدون	keep ... safe	يُتَّقَى ... في أمان
an adventure story	قصة مغامرة	key information	المعلومات الرئيسة
an advert for	إعلان عن	kill animals for sport	بعضاد الحيوانات كرياضة
an example of	مثال على	leave busy city life behind	يتعد عن ضغوط حياة المدينة
angry with	غاضب من	lines that rhyme	سطور شعرية ذات قافية
any more	مرة أخرى	local population	السكان المحليين
around the world	حول العالم	long-term illness	مرض مُزمن
as far as I'm concerned	بقدر اهتمامي	made him give it back	جعله يُعيدها
as much as	بنفس الكَم	make it easy to say	يجعل من السهل قراتها
as often as I can	كثيراً لأقصى حد ممكن	make life worse for	يجعل الحياة أسوأ لـ
ask someone to your house	يطلب من شخص أن	make us all laugh	يجعلنا جميعاً نضحك
at a certain time	في وقت معين	my job was to	كانت وظيفتي هي أن
at breaktime	في الفسحة	no longer	لم يعد
at night	في الليل	none of them	لا أحد منهم
at the end of	في نهاية	not ... any more	لن ... مرة أخرى
at this age	في هذا السن	nursing people	تريض الناس



away on holiday	تُسافر في إجازة	on all our flights
be a role model to	يكون قدوة لـ	on board = aboard
be able to	يكون قادر على	on his way home
be admired for	يُحظى بالإعجاب بسبب	on my own
be arranged in	مُرتَّب على شكل	on social media
be badly injured	يُصاب بشدة	on the balcony
be based on guesswork	قائم على الظن	on the computer / smartphone
be best known for	مشهور أكثر بـ	on the islands
be connected to	يكون مُصل أو مُرتبط بـ	on the moon
be interested in	يهتم بـ	on the other hand,
be known as	معروف كـ	on the way there
be outside playing	يلعب بالخارج	over the moon
be praised for	يُثال الثناء بسبب	physical abilities
be special about	الشيء المُستَيز في	pieces of advice
be stressed about	مضغوط بسبب	quite the other way
be tired of	يُملّ من	radio show
busy (with) + (inf. + ing)	مُشغول بـ	read aloud
by candlelight	على ضوء الشمعة	Red Crescent
by day	نهارًا	respect for diversity
careful about	حرص على	revise for exams
click on the link	يقر على الرابط	riding on boats
close to	لصيق بـ	say unkind things about
compare and contrast	يقارن ويوضح التباين	seem hard to
continue (up) to	يستمر حتى	send Egypt to the World Cup finals
daily life	الحياة اليومية	show the reason for
date published	تاريخ النشر	similar to you
decision making	صناعة القرار - اتخاذ القرار	Social Media
difference in meaning	فرق في المعنى	stay abroad
different from / to	مختلف عن	stop it working
disabled children	الأطفال المُعاقين	stressed words
disadvantages to	مساوئ لـ	such a remote place

على جميع رحلاتنا الجوية  
على متن سفينة أو طائرة  
في طريق عودته للمنزل  
بمفردي  
على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي  
في البلكونة  
على الكمبيوتر / الهاتف الذكي  
في الجزر  
على القمر  
من الناحية الأخرى  
وفي الطريق إلى هناك  
سعيد جدًا  
قدرات بدنية  
تصانع  
على العكس تمامًا  
برنامج إذاعي  
يقرأ بصوت عالٍ  
الهلال الأحمر  
احترام التنوع  
راجع للامتحانات  
ركوب المراكب  
يتحدث بسوء عن  
يبدو صعبًا بالنسبة لـ  
يصعد بمصر لنهايات كاس العالم  
يوضح السبب لـ  
يشبهك  
وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي  
ببقي خارج البلاد  
يجعله يتوقف عن العمل  
كلمات يرتفع فيها الصوت  
باله من مكان ناء

early life	مرحلة مبكرة من العمر	summarize the main points	يُلخّص النقاط الرئيسة
easy to remember	من السهل تذكرها	take part in	يشارك في
environmentally-friendly	صديق للبيئة	talking to one another	يتحدثون إلى بعضهم البعض
everyday life	الحياة اليومية	thanks to	يُفضل
except for	فما عدا	that's all for now	هذا كل ما لدي الآن
expert at / on / in	خبير في	the details of the story	تفاصيل القصة
Faculty of Arts	كُلفة الآداب	the local council	المجلس المحلي
famous for	مشهور بـ	the poor law	قانون الفقراء - القانون السيء
feel differently	لديه شعور مختلف	the reason for	سبب لـ
find advice for	يبحث نصيحة لـ	the space provided	الفراغ المتاح
find him a good job	يبحث له وظيفة جيدة	the World Blood Donor Day	اليوم العالمي لتبرع بالدم
first of all	قبل كل شيء	there should be	يجب أن يكون هناك
for a while	لفترة من الوقت	there's nothing to do	لا يوجد ما فعله
for example,	على سبيل المثال	this was where...	هذا كان حيث ...
for no money = for free	مجانًا	to conclude/ in conclusion	والخلاصة هي
for the first time	لأول مرة	tourist destinations	أماكن يفتدها السائح
a piece of writing	عمل كتابي	tourist industry	النشاط السياحي
free time	وقت فراغ	travel books	أدب الرحلات
from all around the world	من كل أرجاء العالم	true for you	صحيحة بالنسبة لك
from different angles	من زوايا مختلفة	wedding party	حفل زفاف
giving blood	التبرع بالدم	what kind of person	أي نوع من الأشخاص
go on a boat trip	يذهب في رحلة بالقارب	when it is light	في النهار
go on a cruise	يذهب في رحلة بحرية	where to go	أين يذهب
go travelling	يذهب في رحلة	who else	من أيضًا
good to hear from you	إنه لشيء جيد أن أتواصل معك	with his mouth open	وكان فمه مفتوحًا
happiness maker	صانع السعادة	words that rhyme	كلمات تُقفي مع بعضها البعض
health problem	مشكلة صحية	working together	العمل معًا
Here's some advice	ها هي بعض النصائح	worldwide web	الشبكة الدولية



historic buildings	مباني تاريخية	write in clear simple words	يكتب مستخدماً كلمات بسيطة وواضحة
How about ... ?	ما رأيك في ... ؟	young people	الشباب
at Thanksgiving	في عيد الشكر	need help with	يحتاج مساعدة في
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	negative advice	نصيحة سلبية
at the touch of a button	بلمسة زر	no longer able to	لم يعد قادراً على
at the weekends	في العطلات الأسبوعية	normal breathing	التنفس الطبيعي
bad for	ضار به	old-fashioned	عفا عليه الزمن - عتيق
badly designed	سيء التصميم	on a flat surface	على سطح مستو
banner adverts	لافتات الإعلانات	on different occasions	في مناسبات مختلفة
be addicted to	مُدمن على	on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
be aware of	على وعي به	on the island	على الجزيرة
be careful about	يحرص على	on the menu	في القائمة
be careful with	يحرص على	on the side of	على جانب
be curious about	يشعر بالفضول / لديه حب استطلاع بخصوص	on their phones	على هواتفهم المحمولة
be distracted with / by	تشتت به	on top of	فوق
be friendly with	وتودع مع	on your profile	على حالتك (صفحتك الشخصية)
be friends with	يكون صداقات مع	one question at a time	سؤالاً واحداً في كل مرة
be happy about	يسعد به	open spaces	أماكن مفتوحة
be interested in	مهتم به	personally	شخصياً
be known for	مشهور به	plant life	الحياة النباتية
be late for	متأخر على	poor soil	التربة الرديئة
be right to	يكون محقاً في	positive advice	نصيحة إيجابية
be unkind to	بقسو على	possible solutions	حلول ممكنة
be upset with	غضبان من	rather than	بدلاً من - أفضل من
become a pioneer in	يصبح رائداً في	reliable sources	مصادر موثوقة
become known as	يصبح معروفاً كـ	see you later	أراك لاحقاً
by 2030	بحلول عام ٢٠٣٠	severe injury	إصابة شديدة

call for help	يطلب المساعدة	share food from one plate	يأكلون من نفس الطبق
climate change	التغير المناخي	since = ever since	منذ ذلك الحين
come very close to	يدنو جداً من	small changes to	تغييرات صغيرة في
different from / to	مختلف عن	small enough to	صغير بما يكفي لكي
distant past events	أحداث من الماضي البعيد	so far	حتى الآن
due to the fact that	يرجع ذلك إلى أن	So what?	وماذا في ذلك؟
each other	بعضهم البعض	social media behaviour	سلوك على مواقع التواصل
eager to	منهف لـ	solutions to	حلول لـ
easy to understand	يسهل فهمه	sound great	يبدو رائعاً
emergency services	خدمات الطوارئ	soup with noodles	حساء المكرونة
explanation of / for	تفسير / توضيح لـ	South-East Asia	جنوب شرق آسيا
face to face	وجهاً لوجه	spelling mistakes	أخطاء هجائية
facial expressions	تعابير الوجه	spend money on	ينفق مالاً على
fact-checking	توثيق الحقائق	spicy food	طعام متبل
far away	بعيد	stay fit	يظل لائقاً بدنياً
farming techniques	أساليب الزراعة	stay in touch with	يبقي على اتصال به
fast food	الوجبات السريعة	stay up late	يسهر لوقت متأخر
feel so alone	يشعر بالوحدة الشديدة	such as	مثل
find it hard	يجد من الصعب أن	sudden death	الموت المفاجئ
find us ready to	يجد أننا مستعدين لـ	sun cream	كريم واقٍ من الشمس
first aid kit	صندوق الإسعافات الأولية	sustainable solutions	حلول مستدامة
food production	إنتاج الغذاء	take an interest in	يُظهر اهتماماً به
food products	منتجات غذائية	take up a sport	يبدأ ممارسة رياضة
for ages	لمدة طويلة	targeted advertising	الإعلان الموجه
for many years to come	لسنوات عديدة قادمة	text messaging	التواصل عن طريق الرسائل النصية
for me	لأجلي	the findings of a survey	نتائج دراسة استطلاعية
for most people	بالنسبة لمعظم الناس	the flow of water	تدفق المياه



form of communication	أحد طرق التواصل	the latest software update	أحدث إصدارات البرنامج
formal English	اللغة الإنجليزية الرسمية	the main idea	الفكرة الرئيسية
free ... for	... مجاناً لـ	the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط
fun to use	ممتع في استخدامه	the negative side of	الجانب السلبي لـ
get cut down	يتم قطعها	the original text	النص الأصلي
get ill more often	يمرض كثيراً	the other day	مؤخراً
get sick from	يصاب بالآسيا من	the reason why	السبب في أن
get something ready	يجهز شيئاً ما	the rest of	بقية
go on a picnic	يذهب في نزهة	the whole text	النص بالكامل
go past	يعبر به	think fast	يفكر بسرعة
good for	مفيد لـ	this is why	لهذا السبب
green space	مساحة خضراء	to conclude	الخلاصة أن ...
growing world	العالم المتزايد	to do with	لها علاقة به
have nothing to do with	لا علاقة له	treat ... badly	يعامل ... بشكل سيء
healthy hearts	قلوب بصحة جيدة	two-day course	برنامج تدريبي مدته يومان
here he / she is	ها هو / هي	upload ... to a website	يرفع ... على موقع
I can't wait!	أنتظر بفارغ الصبر	urban farming	الزراعة في المدن
I see your point	أفهم ما تقصد	URL (uniform resource locator)	رابط (الموقع أو الصفحة)
in a logical order	بترتيب منطقي	use ... positively	يستخدم ... بشكل إيجابي
in a particular situation	في موقف معين	use first and third person	يستخدم ضمير المتكلم / المتكلمين
in a way that shows	بطريقة توضح أن	visit ... for Thanksgiving	يزور ... في عيد الشكر
in an unfriendly tone	بشرة عدائية	welcome to	أهلاً بكم في
in contact with	على اتصال به	well-written essay	مقال مكتوب جيداً
in different colours	بألوان مختلفة	What's up?	ماذا لديك؟ / ما الجديد؟
in difficult situations	في المواقف الصعبة	whether ... or not	سواء ... أم لا
In fact,	في الحقيقة	with clear meanings	ذو معاني واضحة
in general,	بصفة عامة	with help from	بمساعدة من

in response to	رداً على	worried about	قلق على
in the first place	في المقام الأول	wrong with	الخطأ في

6 Verb + Prepositions

add to	يضيف إلى	hear from	يتلقى أخبار
address ... by	يخاطب ... به	hear of	يسمع به / يعرف عن
admire ... for	يُعجب به ... بسبب	help ... with	يساعد ... في
agree about	يتفق في	know (...) about	يعرف (...) عن
arrange ... in	يُرتب ... على شكل	lean ... on / against	يسند ... على
arrange to	يرتب أن	learn about	يتعلم عن
ask for	يطلب	learn from	يتعلم من
be based in	مقره في (مكان)	learn to	يتعلم أن
be based on	مقره في (الفكرة)	live in	يعيش في
benefit from	يستفيد من	live with	يعيش مع
blow ... off	يُنفخ - يُطير ... من	make ... into	يحول ... إلى
break into	يقتحم	match ... to	يوصل ... به
break up	يُفكك	mix with	يختلط به - يتعامل مع
bring ... into / to	يُخبر ... إلى	move to	ينتقل إلى
care for	يهتم به	owe ... to	يدين به ... لـ ...
check for	يُفحص للوصول لـ	pay back	يرد الدين - يُسدد
choose ... to	يختار ... لـ	play for	يلعب لـ (نادي مثلاً)
choose from	يختار من بين	point at / to / towards	يُشير إلى
click on	ينقر على	praise ... for	يمدح ... بسبب
come from	يأتي من	put ... away	يضع ... جانباً
come out	يخرج - تُصدر	remove ... from	يُزيل ... من
communicate with	يتصل به / يتواصل مع	reply to	يرد على
compare ... with	يقارن ... به	rhyme with	يُفقي مع
complete (...) with	يُكمل (...) به	run away	يهرب
connect ... to	يربط ... به	run past	يجري متجاوزاً
connect with	يرتبط به	say ... about	يقول ... عن
cycle across	يقود الدراجة عبر		
deal with	يتعامل مع / يواجه		



decide to	يقرر أن	search for	يبحث عن
disagree about	يختلف في	send (...) to	يُرسل (...) إلى / يُهمل (...) لـ
disappear from	يختفي من	send away	يُطرد
donate ... for / to	يُضرب ... لـ	stay with	يقيم مع
drive ... to	يُرسل ... بالسيرة إلى	steal ... from	يسرق ... من
encourage ... to	يُشجع ... لكي	stop at	يتوقف في
escape from	يهرب من	take ... away	يأخذ ... بعيداً
escape to	يهرب إلى	take ... to	يأخذ ... إلى
find out about	يكشف - يعرف (عن)	talk about	يتحدث عن
focus on	يركز على	talk to	يتحدث إلى
get to	يصل إلى	teach ... (how) to	يُعلم ... كيف
get up	يُنهض	think of	يفكر في
go away	يُستعد - يسافر	trek across / through	يسير مسافة طويلة غير
go down	يُنهض - ينزل - يُقرب الشمس	trek into / in	يسير مسافة طويلة إلى داخل / في
go out	يُخرج	turn from ... to	يتحول من ... إلى ...
go past	يُمر به	work for	يعمل لدي
grow up	يُكبر - يتوحد	work in	يعمل في
hack into	يُخترق - يُقرص	work with	يعمل مع / في
happen to	يُحدث لـ	worry about	يقلق على
hear (...) about	يسمع (...) عن	write about	يكتب عن
adapt ... to	يُكيف ... مع	heat ... up	يُسخن - يُسخن
add ... to	يضيف ... إلى	help with	يساعد في
addict to	يُدمن على	increase ... by	يزيد ... بنسبة
advise ... to / not to	ينصح ... أن / ألا	invite ... to	يدعو ... إلى
agree with	يتفق مع	learn about	يتعلم عن
allow ... to	يُسمح / يُترك - يُسمح لـ	learn from	يتعلم من
apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	live on	يعيش على / في
argue with	يتجادل مع	look after	يرعى / يعتني به
ask ... for	يطلب ... من	look around	يبحث في المكان المحيط
ask ... to / not to	يطلب من ... أن / ألا	look back at	ينظر مرة أخرى إلى
belong to	يُخص	look for	يبحث عن

care about	يهتم به	look forward to + (inf. + ing)	ينتظر إلى
catch up with	ينضم إلى / يتواصل مع - يلحق به	lose up to	يفقد ما يقرب من
change ... into	يُغير ... إلى	order ... to / not to	يأمر ... أن / ألا
change to	يتحول إلى	pay ... for	يدفع ثمن
chat to / with	يتحدث مع	pay ... to	يدفع ... لـ
check ... against / with	يراجع ... على	persuade ... to	يقنع ... أن
choose from	يختار من بين	pick up	يُتناول - يلتقط
choose to	يختار أن	place ... on	يضع ... على
come / go back	يعود	plan to	يخطط أن
come into	يدخل	press down	يضغط لأسفل
communicate with	يتواصل مع	protect ... from / against	يحمي ... من
connect to	يدخل على	pull ... out	يُخرج - يُزجج / يُخلع
continue (to+ inf.) / (inf. + ing)	يستمر في أن	put ... down	يترك
continue to	يستمر في	put up	يضع - يرفع
cut down	يقطع / يجهت - يقلل	refer back to	يشير إلى
deal with	يتعامل مع - يواجه	relate to	يتعلق به
decide on	يختار / يحدد	remember to	يتذكر أن
decide to	يقرر أن	remove ... from	يزيل ... من
dig out of	يُخفر ليُستخرجه من	reply to	يرد على
disagree about	يختلف على	rise up	يرتفع - يهتف
encourage ... to / not to	يُشجع ... أن / ألا	run off	الخطف
expect ... to	يتوقع من ... أن	seem to	يبدو أن
explain ... to	يشرح ... لـ	sell ... to	يبيع ... لـ
fall down	يسقط / يقع	share ... with	يشارك ... مع
feel about	يشعر تجاه	speak to	يتحدث إلى
fight against	يُقاتل / يُقاتل ضد	start with	يبدأ به
fill in	يملأ (الاستمارة مثلاً)	stay up	يُستيقظ
		take ... away	يُبعد



## Listening Al Azhar tests

١. الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة الجيزة - القسم العلمى

1. James finished studying his term two days ago. He has too much free time as he is on his mid-year holiday. James decided to visit Egypt because he has good and happy memories there.

٢. الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة المنوفية - القسم العلمى

2. The Red Sea Coast is developing eco-tourism to protect the environment in Egypt. Tourists are taught to preserve the environment and avoid damaging the sea wealth and keeping coral reefs safe.

٣. الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة الشرقية - القسم الأدبى

3. Egypt is a great country. It has a lot of interesting places. Egypt's capital is Cairo. All people are kind. The formal language in Egypt is Arabic.

٤. الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة بنى سويف - القسم الأدبى

4. Ahmed Zewail was a great and famous Egyptian scientist. He discovered the Femtosecond. All the Egyptians are proud of Dr Zewail.





# New Hello!

## & Treasure Island

By A Group Of Supervisors

# Master Your Skills

الصف الأول الثانوي  
الفصل الدراسي الأول



موقع  
التفوق

AltFwok.com



EL-MOASSER

GUIDE

1<sup>st</sup>  
Sec.  
2023  
FIRST TERM



## Preface

### Dear Colleagues & Students

It's a pleasure to introduce this guide to cope with the latest trend in our educational system which adopts the assessment process that is based on measuring higher thinking skills (comprehension - application - analysis - synthesis - evaluation). This requires implementing new learning and teaching strategies.

### This guide aims at helping teachers to :

- Promote student's abilities through learning in an enjoyable, safe and cooperative setting.
- Enforce students' language skills which prepare them for the employment market.
- Foster students' learning skills to pass tests confidently all the academic year around.

Therefore, this guide is considered a comprehensive resource presenting language skills fundamentals which have already been taught in primary and preparatory stages. Besides, it covers all language skills according to curriculum national standards for the secondary stage.

### This guide consists of :

- A comprehensive presentation of structures.
- Reading comprehension passages with higher thinking skills questions.
- Pieces of creative writing, writing skills and how to write essays, letters, e-mails, and short stories.

Finally, a part deals with the principles of translation from English into Arabic and vice versa, in addition to useful language expressions.

We hope you find this guide not only beneficial, but interesting as well.

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

إِنَّ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ إِنَّا لَا نُضِيعُ أَجْرَ مَنْ أَحْسَنَ عَمَلًا  
صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ

### أعزائنا المعلمين والطلاب

يسعدنا أن نقدم لحضراتكم هذا الدليل الذي يواكب التطور الذي تشهده العملية التعليمية في السنوات الأخيرة، وما تتميز به من نظام التقييم الذي يهدف إلى قياس مهارات التفكير العليا (الفهم - التطبيق - التحليل - التركيب - التقييم) ومخرجات التعلم. ولتحقيق ذلك، كان لزاماً استخدام طرق تدريس حديثة تعتمد على الفهم والتحليل والاستقصاء وتنمية المهارات الحياتية وليس على أسلوب الحفظ والتلقين.

### ويقدم هذا الدليل الإرشادات وطرق التدريس الحديثة للمعلم التي تمكنه من :

- مساعدة الطلاب على تنمية مهاراتهم اللغوية بشكل عملي داخل بيئة تعليمية تتسم بروح التعاون والإيجابية.
- تحفيز الطلاب على التعلم المستمر باستغلال مهارات التعلم الذاتي ومهارات التواصل التي تؤهله لسوق العمل.
- تدريب الطلاب على مختلف أنواع أسئلة مهارات التفكير العليا ليكون دائماً مستعداً لاجتياز الاختبارات بثقة على مدار العام الدراسي بكفاءة.

### ويتكون هذا الدليل من عدة أجزاء هي :

- عرض شامل لكل القواعد اللغوية التي تم تدريسها في المرحلة الابتدائية والإعدادية وأيضاً الثانوية.
- فصل كامل يقدم عديد من قطع الفهم وأسئلة تختبر مهارات التفكير العليا.
- فصل كامل يشرح مهارات الكتابة وأنواع الكتابة (المقالات - الخطابات - رسائل البريد الإلكتروني - والقصص القصيرة)
- وأخيراً جزء يتناول مبادئ الترجمة من الإنجليزية إلى العربية والعكس بالإضافة إلى تعبيرات لغوية مفيدة.

نأمل أن يكون هذا الدليل ليس فقط مفيداً ولكن أيضاً ممتعاً.



# CONTENTS



## PART 1 Grammar

القواعد اللغوية

## PART 2 Skills

المهارات



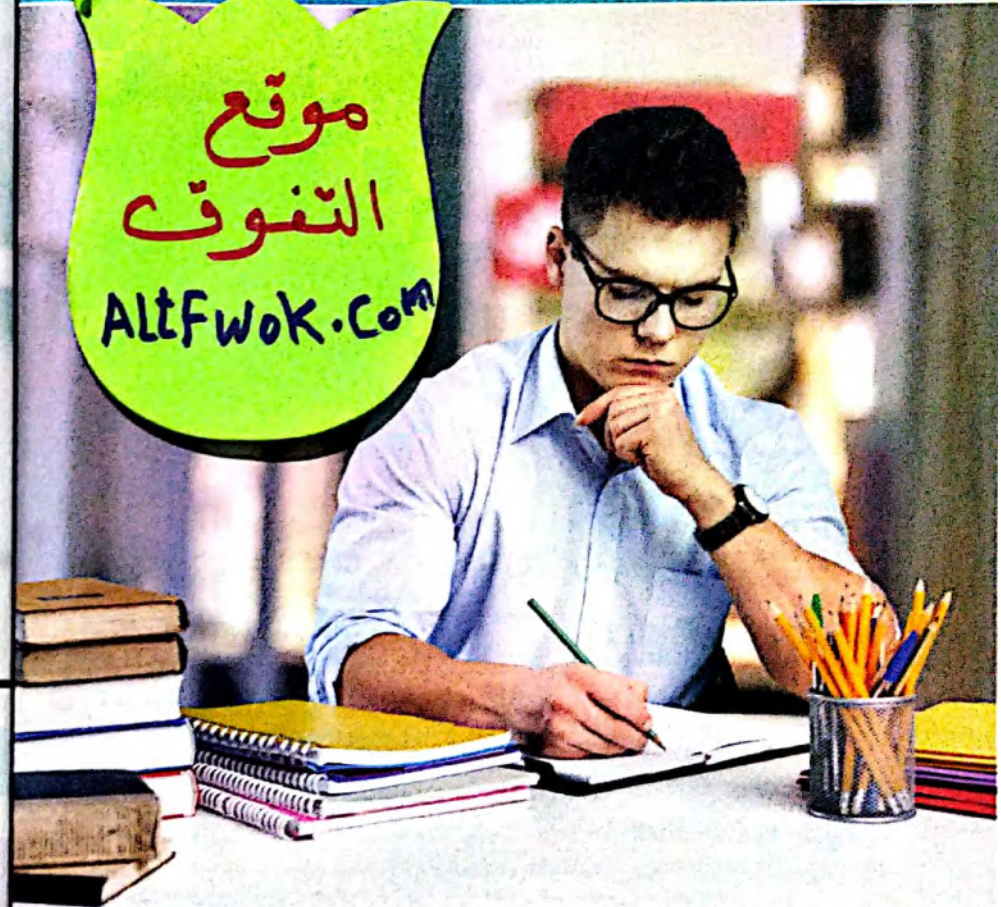
**تنويه**  
استخدام ملحق المهارات  
بصفة مستمرة أثناء العام الدراسي  
لنتمكن من تنمية مهاراتك اللغوية

## PART 1

## Grammar

القواعد اللغوية

موقع  
التفوق  
AltFwok.com



- 1- The Structure of the Simple Sentence
- 2- Parts of Speech
- 3- Tenses
- 4- Kinds of Sentences

١. بناء الجملة البسيطة
٢. أقسام الكلام
٣. الأزمنة
٤. الجمل بأنواعها

### تنويه

تابع مستواك أولا  
بأول إلكترونياً





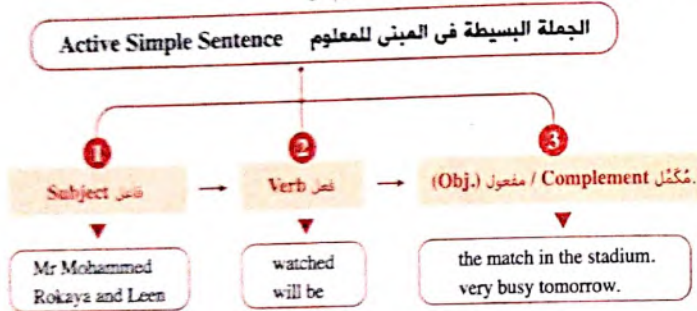
# 1 The Structure of the Simple Sentence

\* في هذا الجزء سترجع كيف تكتب الجملة. وهذا الموضوع مهم جداً لكي :

١. تفهم ما يقوله الآخرون (مهارة الاستماع).
٢. تُعبر عن أفكارك وانطباعاتك وما تريد (مهارة التحدث).
٣. تقرأ وتفهم وتحلل وتستنتج (مهارة القراءة والتفكير النقدي).
٤. تُنمي القدرة على التعبير الإبداعي (مهارة الكتابة: مقال - برود الكشوفتي - قصة... إلخ).
٥. تُتقن نقل الأفكار (المعنى المراد) من لغة لأخرى (فن الترجمة).

## أولاً : الجملة المبينة للمعلوم.

- تتكون الجملة الخبرية البسيطة المبينة للمعلوم من :



- المكونات الرئيسية الثلاثة للجملة البسيطة :

## 1 Subject الفاعل

١ الفاعل هو الذي يقوم بالفعل :

e.g. :- Ali ate a sandwich. - My horse won the race.

٢ يمكن أن يكون الفاعل هو موضوع الجملة (يقابله المبتدأ في اللغة العربية) :

e.g. :- Mariam is tall. - Sports make us fit.

٣ قد يكون الفاعل اسم إنسان / حيوان / مكان / شيء معنوي غير ملموس ... إلخ :

e.g. :- Rodayna studies medicine at university. (اسم إنسان)

- The cat caught a rat. (اسم حيوان)
- Our house is in Aswan. (اسم مكان)
- Cooperation makes people happy. (اسم معنوي)

١ قد يكون الفاعل اسم مفرد أو جمع [انظر الجزء الخاص بالاسماء (Nouns)] :

e.g. :- My sister is at home. - My sisters are at home.

٢ تحل ضمائر الفاعل التالية محل فاعل الجملة :

I - you - he - she - it - we - they

e.g. :- Omar is clever. = He is clever.  
- Nada is beautiful. = She is beautiful.  
- Esraa and Doaa are sisters. = They are sisters.  
- The lion and the tiger are strong. = They are strong.

٣ تُستخدم صفات الإشارة التالية كفاعل للجملة :

- this (هذه / للمفرد القريب) - these (هؤلاء / للجمع القريب)  
- that (ذلك / للمفرد البعيد) - those (أولئك / للجمع البعيد)

e.g. :- This is my friend. - These are my friends.  
- That was a good present. - Those were good presents.

- وتُستخدم صفات الإشارة أيضاً قبل فاعل الجملة :

e.g. :- This boy got high marks. - These boys got high marks.  
- That dog chased a cat. - Those dogs chased a cat.

٤ قد تُستخدم الضمائر غير المحددة التالية كفاعل للجملة :

- someone - somebody - something - somewhere  
- anyone - anybody - anything - anywhere  
- everyone - everybody - everything - everywhere  
- no one - nobody - nothing - nowhere

e.g. :- Someone took my tablet. - No one is at home.  
- Everyone wants you to succeed. - Anything can change your opinion.

٥ يمكن استخدام (One) بمعنى (المرء / الفرد) كفاعل للجملة :

e.g. :- One must help other people.

٦ تُستخدم (it) أحياناً كفاعل وظيفي أو مُبَيِّن في بعض الجمل :

e.g. :- It has been hot today. (It = The weather)  
- It is nine o'clock. (It = The time)  
- It was kind of you to help me. (It = The action itself)



نستخدم (There) كفاعل في بعض الجمل بمعنى (هناك / ها هو / ها هي / ها هم ....) للإشارة إلى الفاعل الأصلي الموجود بعد الفعل :

e.g. : - There is a fish restaurant on the corner.

- There goes Omar on his bike.

نستخدم (Here) كفاعل في بعض الجمل بمعنى (هنا / إلى هنا / ها هو / ها هي / ها هم ....) للإشارة إلى الفاعل الأصلي الموجود بعد الفعل :

e.g. : - Here's my camera.

- Here comes Ranya with her husband.

وقد يكون الفاعل عبارة اسمية :

e.g. : - The manager of the school wants all students to be clever.

- Some men and women attended the meeting.

- Everyone in our company works hard.

يمكن استخدام صفة أو أكثر قبل الفاعل :

e.g. : - A tall man welcomed us.

- A small car stopped in front of my shop.

- A clever young man wants to marry my sister.

يمكن استخدام الأرقام والأعداد الترتيبية كصفات قبل الفاعل :

e.g. : - Five students got the full marks in the exam.

- The first computer was very big.

يمكن استخدام صفات الملكية التالية قبل الفاعل :

my - your - his - her - its - our - their

e.g. : - Our grandfather built the family house in 1970.

يمكن عطف فاعل على فاعل آخر باستخدام الروابط التالية :

لا ... ولا / neither ... nor / إما ... أو ... or / and / or / not / either ... or / as well as = along with = in addition to إلى ... etc.

e.g. : - Ahmed and Abdu are friends.

- My cousins, as well as my uncle, are having lunch with us tomorrow.

يمكن استخدام ضمائر الملكية التالية كفاعل في بداية الجملة الثانية :

mine - yours - his - hers - ours - theirs

e.g. : - That isn't your bike. Yours is blue. (Yours = Your bike)

- This house is small. Mine is bigger. (Mine = My house)

يمكن استخدام الكلمات الآتية كضمائر فاعل في بداية الجملة الثانية :

some / any / a lot / many / much / several / each / every / all / both / one / two / three ... etc.

e.g. : - Not all people liked the film. Some said it was boring.

(Some = Some people)

- I didn't talk to Ayman or Ashraf. Both were very busy.

(Both = Both Ayman and Ashraf).

- You can give students an electronic exam. Each has a tablet.

(Each = Each student)

يمكن استخدام تعبيرات الكمية والتجزئة التالية قبل الفاعل :

some / any / no / part / a lot of / lots of / plenty of / many / much / (a) little / (a) few / several / عديد ... etc.

e.g. : - A lot of people visited my uncle in hospital.

يمكن استخدام التعبيرات التالية في بداية الجملة قبل الفاعل الرئيسي :

جملة رئيسية + ... + say / think / believe / expect / hope / ... + that

جملة رئيسية + ... + that + said / thought / believed / expected / hoped

e.g. : - People say that Omar has a lot of money.

- It is said that Omar has a lot of money.

يمكن استخدام بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان وبعض التعبيرات الأخرى في بداية الجملة قبل الفاعل :

e.g. : - Every day, I go to the gym.

- On my way to school, I stopped to buy a sandwich.

- Unfortunately, I lost my mobile.

وقد تُستخدم الصيغة (To + inf.) كفاعل للجملة (المبنى للمعلوم) :

e.g. : - To succeed is the dream of all students.

وقد تُستخدم الصيغة (To be + p.p.) كفاعل للجملة (المبنى للمجهول) :

e.g. : - To be thanked makes some people happy.

وقد تُستخدم الصيغة (Being + p.p. / adj.) كفاعل للجميل :

e.g. : - Being clever is the dream of everyone. (معلوم)

- Being hurt, he called for a doctor. (مجهول)



## 2 Verb الفعل

١ يأتي الفعل غالباً بعد الفاعل :

e.g. : - Magdi ate a sandwich.

- We will go shopping.

٢ يحدد الفعل زمن الجملة :

Sentence	الجملة	Tense	الزمن
He plays football.	إثبات	Present Simple	مضارع بسيط
He doesn't play football.	نفي		
He is playing football.	إثبات	Present Cont.	مضارع مستمر
He isn't playing football.	نفي		
He has played football.	إثبات	Present Perfect	مضارع تام
He hasn't played football.	نفي		
He has been playing football.	إثبات	Present Perfect Cont.	مضارع تام مستمر
He hasn't been playing football.	نفي		
He played football.	إثبات	Past Simple	ماضي بسيط
He didn't play football.	نفي		
He was playing football.	إثبات	Past Cont.	ماضي مستمر
He wasn't playing football.	نفي		
He had played football.	إثبات	Past Perfect	ماضي تام
He hadn't played football.	نفي		
He had been playing football.	إثبات	Past Perfect Cont.	ماضي تام مستمر
He hadn't been playing football.	نفي		
He will play football.	إثبات	Future Simple	مستقبل بسيط
He won't play football.	نفي		
He will be playing football.	إثبات	Future Cont.	مستقبل مستمر
He won't be playing football.	نفي		
He will have played football.	إثبات	Future Perfect	مستقبل تام
He won't have played football.	نفي		
He will have been playing football.	إثبات	Future Perfect Cont.	مستقبل تام مستمر
He won't have been playing football.	نفي		

٢ هناك أفعال لازمة (intransitive) بمعنى أنها لا تأخذ مفعول به مثل :

be - go - sleep - smile - cry - look = sound = seem = appear يبدو ... etc.

e.g. : - She smiled when she saw her son.

- He looks happy.

٣ هناك أفعال مُتَعَدِّية (transitive) بمعنى أنها تأخذ مفعول به أو أكثر مثل :

eat - play - visit - choose - take - give - like - see ...etc.

e.g. : - We saw a lion under a tree.

- She gave me some food.

٤ الأفعال الناقصة (Modals) التالية يأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر :

will - would - can - could - may - might - shall - should - must - needn't

e.g. : - Noha can drive a car.

- I will buy this T-shirt.

- You needn't go out now.

- You mustn't smoke here.

٥ الأفعال شبه الناقصة (Semi-modals) التالية يأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر :

have to - has to - had to - used to - need to - be going to - be able to  
- be supposed to من المفترض أن - be to من المفترض أن ...etc.

e.g. : - Amir has to arrive at school at seven.

- I used to live in the countryside.

٦ قد تحتوي الجملة على أكثر من فعل مساعد :

e.g. : - I have been sleeping for eight hours now.

- I will have finished my university course by next month.

٧ هناك أفعال يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) وهناك أفعال يأتي بعدها الفعل مضافاً له (ing) أو اسم :

e.g. : - She wants to work in a tourist company.

- He suggested having lunch outdoors.

٨ الفاعل المفرد يأخذ فعل مفرد والفاعل الجمع يأخذ فعل جمع :

e.g. : - She is clever.

- They are clever.

- Omar works hard.

- Omar and Karim work hard.



11 هناك أفعال تُسمَّى أفعال المطاوعة (ergative verbs) وهي الأفعال التي يمكن أن يُستخدم مفعولها كفاعل لها بنفس المعنى، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال :

bake	يخبز - يحف بفعل الحرارة	melt	يذوب - يذوب
boil	يغلي	move	يُحرَّك - يتحرك
break	يُكسر - ينكسر	open	يفتح - يفتح
burst	يُفجّر - ينفجر	run	يُدير - يجري
cook	يطبخ - يضع (يستوى)	sail	يقود السفينة - تُبحر
drive	يقود - ينطلق - يوصل	shake	يُرجّ - بهتز / يرتعش
fly	يُطير - يسافر جواً	tear	يُمزّق - يتمزّق
form	يُكوّن - يتكون	transform	يُحوّل - يتحول
grow	يزرع - ينمو	turn	يلف - يدور من تلقاء نفسه
heal	يُعالج الجرح - يلتئم	walk	يمشي - يأخذ ... للتمشية

- e.g. : - The hot weather **melted** the ice. (أذاب)  
 The ice **melted** in the hot weather. (ذاب)  
 - Farmers **grow** a lot of plants. (يزرع)  
 A lot of trees **grow** in the forest. (تنمو)  
 - I **walked** with my wife by the Nile. (يسير)  
 I **walked** my wife by the Nile. (أخذ ... للتمشية)

12 لوصف طريقة حدوث الفعل نستخدم ظروف الكيفية، ويأتي الظرف بعد الفعل أو في نهاية الجملة :

- e.g. : - I **walk carefully** in this busy street.  
 - I **walk** in this busy street **carefully**.

13 تأتي ظروف التكرار التالية قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد (be) والأفعال المساعدة :

أحياناً sometimes - غالباً often - عادة usually - دائماً always  
 etc. ... أبداً never - نادراً rarely = scarcely = seldom - بين الحين والآخر occasionally

- e.g. : - She **always** gets up early.  
 - He **is always** careful.

### 3 Complement (الكلمة الجملة)

1 المقصود بالـ **المُكمِّل** هو باقى الجملة الذي يأتي بعد الفاعل والفعل :

- e.g. : - I bought some fruit yesterday.

2 يمكن أن يكون **المُكمِّل** صفة (أو صفة بعدها اسم) نصف الفاعل وتأتي بعد أفعال الربط مثل :

be [am, is, are, was, were, has / have been, being, might have been, etc.]  
 become = get = grow = turn يصبح - seem = appear = sound = look يبدو -  
 remain يكون ذو مذاق taste - يكون ذو رائحة smell - يشعر / يكون ذو ملمس feel - يبقى / يظل remain

- e.g. : - She is tired. - Amr looks happy.  
 - My mother grew old. - Sama got angry.

3 يمكن أن يكون **المُكمِّل** اسم يُعرّف الفاعل أو يصفه :

- e.g. : - Alaa is a doctor. - Alaa is a clever doctor.

4 يمكن أن يكون **المُكمِّل** مفعول (اسم / صفة يتبعها اسم / عبارة اسمية ... إلخ) :

- e.g. : - I bought a car.  
 - I bought a new car.  
 - I bought a large new car.

5 يمكن أن يكون **المُكمِّل** أحد ضمائر المفعول التالية :

me - him - her - it - you - us - them - one

- e.g. : - An old friend called me.  
 - My friends have arrived. I'll welcome them.

6 يمكن أن يكون **المُكمِّل** جار ومجرور (حرف جر + اسم) :

- e.g. : - Mr Mohammed lives in Aswan.  
 - Abdulrahman plans to get married next year.  
 - Bassem works as a police officer.

7 يمكن أن يكون **المُكمِّل** ظرف زمان أو مكان :

- e.g. : - I have always lived here.  
 - She arrived yesterday.

8 يمكن أن يكون **المُكمِّل** ظرف كيفية (بدل على طريقة وقوع الفعل) :

- e.g. : - This old man walks slowly.  
 - She didn't sleep well.  
 - Karim studies hard.

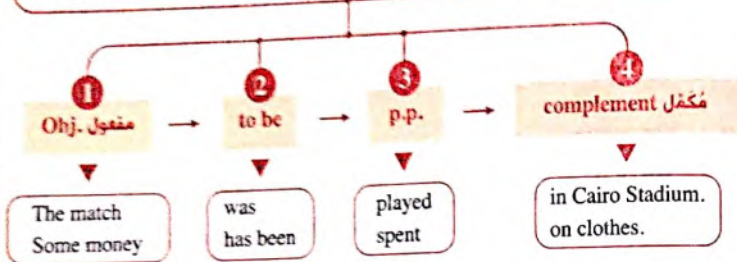


ليس بالضرورة أن يكون هناك مُكْمَل مع الأفعال اللازمة (التي لا تأخذ مفعول به):  
- Mr Ashraf didn't arrive.

e.g. : - The baby has slept.

ثانياً : الجملة المبنيّة للمجهول.

### الجملة البسيطة في صيغة المبني للمجهول Passive Simple Sentence



Sentence	الجملة	Tense	الزمن
He sells vegetables.	معلوم	Present Simple	مضارع بسيط
Vegetables are sold (by him).	مجهول		
He is selling vegetables.	معلوم	Present Cont.	مضارع مستمر
Vegetables are being sold (by him).	مجهول		
He has sold vegetables.	معلوم	Present Perfect	مضارع تام
Vegetables have been sold (by him).	مجهول		
He sold vegetables.	معلوم	Past Simple	ماضي بسيط
Vegetables were sold (by him).	مجهول		
He was selling vegetables.	معلوم	Past Cont.	ماضي مستمر
Vegetables were being sold (by him).	مجهول		
He had sold vegetables.	معلوم	Past Perfect	ماضي تام
Vegetables had been sold (by him).	مجهول		
He will sell vegetables.	معلوم	Future Simple	مستقبل بسيط
Vegetables will be sold (by him).	مجهول		
He will have sold vegetables.	معلوم	Future Perfect	مستقبل تام
Vegetables will have been sold (by him).	مجهول		

## 2 Parts of Speech اقسام الكلام



- وفيما يلي شرح شامل لكل هذه الأجزاء :

### 1 Nouns الأسماء

**People** : man – woman – girl – boy – uncle – Sama – Omar...etc.

**Animals** : whale – dog – bird – lion – cat – snake ... etc.

**Things** : plant – tree – rock – sea – love – beauty... etc.

**Place** : Paris – Asia – Space – Kitchen – Europe – Egypt ... etc

### Countable and Uncountable Nouns الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

#### A Countable Nouns الأسماء المعدودة

1 الأسماء التي تعدّ يكون لها مفرد وجمع وهي تجمع بإضافة (s/es/ies) مثل :

- a girl → girls
- an egg → eggs
- a bus → buses
- a library → libraries

2 هناك جمع غير منتظم مثل :

Singular	مفرد	Plural	جمع
child	طفل	children	أطفال
crisis	أزمة	crises	أزمات
datum	معلومة	data	معلومات
foot	قدم	feet	أقدام
goose	وزة	geese	أوز
man	رجل	men	رجال
medium	وسيلة إعلامية	media	وسائل الإعلام
mouse	فأر	mice	فئران
oasis	واحة	oases	واحات



ox	ثور	oxen	ثيران
phenomenon	ظاهرة	phenomena	ظواهر
tooth	سنة	teeth	أسنان
woman	امراة	women	نساء

٢ قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد يمكن أن نستخدم الآتي :

a / an	- My father bought a car. - I've just seen an accident.
One	- One student got the full marks.
Every / Each	- Every player in the team trains hard. - Each tourist has a camera.
This / That	- This girl is my daughter. - That motorbike belongs to me.

٣ قبل الأسماء الجمع يمكن أن نستخدم الآتي :

these / those أولئك / هؤلاء / a few / many / أي / some / بعض / a lot of / كثير من / several / عديد / two / three .....

e.g. : - I met several friends in the party.  
- I have a few books in my bag.  
- These boys are my cousins.  
- Five nurses are helping the surgeon.

## B Uncountable Nouns الأسماء غير المعدودة

١ الأسماء غير المعدودة لا يوجد لها صيغة جمع، وتشمل ما يلي :

- Liquids** السوائل  
water - juice - tea - coffee - oil - milk - soup - blood ... etc.
- Gases** الغازات  
oxygen - hydrogen - nitrogen - carbon dioxide ثاني أكسيد الكربون ... etc.
- Meals** الوجبات  
breakfast - lunch - dinner - supper

## 4. School subjects

المواد الدراسية

history - mathematics - physics - biology - الفيزياء - etc.

## 5. Languages

اللغات

English - Arabic - French - German ... etc.

## 6. Different activities

الأنشطة المختلفة

reading - smoking - writing - studying - shopping - eating ... etc.

## 7. Sports

الرياضات

football - volleyball - basketball - swimming... etc.

## 8. Materials

أسماء المواد عندما تستخدم بوجه عام

coffee - glass - gold - iron - lime حامض الليمون - stone - sand - soil - sugar - tea - wood ... etc.

## 9. Natural phenomena

الظواهر الطبيعية

lightning البرق - heat - snow - thunder الرعد - light - rain

## 10. Abstract nouns

الأسماء المجردة

honesty أمانة - hope - beauty - help - love - hatred كراهية  
progress تقدم - experience خبرة - courage شجاعة - confidence ثقة  
poverty الفقر - peace السلام - patience الصبر - evidence دليل ... etc.

## 11. Other nouns

أسماء أخرى

jewellery مجوهرات - money - laughter ضحك - rubbish  
work - cash نقدية - equipment المعدات - furniture اثاث  
baggage حقائب - clothing الملابس - electricity - traffic مرور  
luggage أمتعة - machinery - news - information - advice - money  
music - bread - cloth.... etc.

موقع التفوق AltFwok.com



١ تُستخدم هذه الكلمات مع الاسم الذي لا يعد :

a lot of - lots of - much - a little / little - some - any - all - most - none - no - this - that..... etc.

e.g. : - I'd like to have a little juice. (Not : a few juice)  
- How much money do you need? (Not : How many)

٢ لا يمكن استخدام ( these - those - one - a - an ) قبل الاسم غير المعدود :

e.g. : - This equipment is very necessary. (Not : These equipment)  
- I bought bread at the baker's. (Not : a bread)

٣ يمكن استخدام ( a - an ) مع بعض الأسماء التي لا تعد إذا سبقها صفة مثل :

e.g. : - I spent an enjoyable time in the countryside.  
- He had a good education at Oxford.

## 2 Pronouns الضمائر

Subject Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Object Pronouns ضمائر المفعول	Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية	Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية	Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة
I	me	my	mine	myself
He	him	his	his	himself
She	her	her	hers	herself
It	it	its	-----	itself
You	you	your	yours	yourself yourselves
They	them	their	theirs	themselves
We	us	our	ours	ourselves
One	one	one's	one's	oneself

## 1 Subject Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل

- تستخدم ضمائر الفاعل لتحل محل فاعل الجملة لتجنب تكراره :

e.g. : - I bought a car last month. - Ashraf (He) wrote a new article.  
- Aya (She) studies hard. - A lion (It) eats meat.  
- You came to school late. - Rokaya and I (We) like tennis.  
- Ayman and Mohammed (They) love mum.  
- Cats (They) eat fish.  
- One can achieve a goal by working hard.

## 2 Object Pronouns ضمائر المفعول

- تستخدم ضمائر المفعول لتحل محل مفعول الجملة وتأتي بعد الفعل وحروف الجر أيضًا :

e.g. : - Menna helped me with my homework.  
- We visited Ahmed (him) last Friday.  
- My father bought a bike for Leen (her).  
- Rahma chased the rat (it). - We won't help you.  
- They invited Rodayna and me (us). - She doesn't like goats (them).  
- He greeted Ahmed and Omar (them).

## 3 Possessive Adjectives صفات الملكية

- صفات الملكية تأتي بعدها اسم المملوك :

e.g. : - My sister is a teacher. - I think it is his coat.  
- Hanan decorated her flat. - An animal cleans its skin.  
- Never waste your time. - We sold our old car.  
- They renewed their visa. - Birds cooperate to look after their young.

## 4 Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية

- ضمائر الملكية تستخدم بدون اسم بعدها :

e.g. : - The blue bike is mine. - He used my pen and saved his.  
- My bag is small, but hers is big. - That house isn't yours; it's ours.  
- They asked us to leave our seats, but they kept theirs.



• لاحظ استخدام ضمائر الملكية بعد الصيغة التالية :

1. a / an + اسم مفرد + of + ضمير ملكية  
e.g. : - He is a cousin of hers. = He is her cousin.
2. ضمير ملكية + of + اسم جمع  
e.g. : - They are friends of ours. = They are our friends.

### ملاحظات على استخدام الضمائر

- لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد مع الكلمات الآتية و عند الإشارة إليها بضمير تستخدم ضمير جمع لكن يفضل استخدام ضمير مفرد يعود على المذكر وضمير مفرد يعود على المؤنث ميوطن بكلمة (or) :

(Someone / somebody / anyone / anybody / everyone / everybody / no one / nobody)

- e.g. : - Someone was knocking on the door. They made my sister afraid.  
= Someone was knocking on the door. He or she made my sister afraid.  
- Somebody took my pen. I didn't see them.  
= Somebody took my pen. I didn't see him or her.

- لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد وضمير مفرد مع الكلمات الآتية :

(Something / anything / everything / nothing)

- e.g. : - Something has fallen to the ground. It made a loud noise.  
- الضمير (It) يستخدم لغير العاقل المفرد (فاعل / مفعول) وفي حالة الجمع تستخدم (They) للفاعل و (them) للمفعول :

- e.g. : - The cat (It) eats fish. - Lions (They) eat meat.  
- Amal fed the cat (it). - I don't like rats (them).

- لاحظ استخدام (It) للتعبير عن الزمن والمسافة والطقس :

- e.g. : - It is half past nine. - It is a long way to school.  
- It is quite cold today.

- لاحظ أن (its) للملكية و يأتي بعدها اسم أو صفة ثم اسم :

- e.g. : - The fox moved its long tail. - The dog ate its food.

- أما (It's) تكون اختصار (It is / It has)

- It's (It is) a new car. - It's (It has) rained for two days.

- لاحظ الصيغة التالية :

ضمير مفعول It + (be) + object pronoun

- e.g. : A : Who opened the door ? B : It's me.

ضمير وصل + relative pronoun + ضمير مفعول / ضمير فاعل It is + subject / object pronoun

- e.g. : - It's I (me) who opened the door.

- يستخدم الضمير (one) بمعنى «المرء» وتدل على الناس بصفة عامة ويمكن استخدام (you) بدلاً منها :

- e.g. : - One (You) should eat healthy food.

- وفي حالة الملكية تستخدم (one's) ويمكن استخدام (your) بدلاً منها :

- e.g. : - It is easy to lose one's (your) money in a bus in Cairo.

### 5 Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة

- يستخدم الضمير المنعكس عندما يكون الفاعل هو نفسه المفعول :

- e.g. : - Ali hurt himself.  
- I bought myself a cold drink.  
- She saw herself in the mirror.  
- We'll pay for ourselves.

- يستخدم الضمير المنعكس للتأكيد عندما يأتي بعد الفاعل / المفعول :

- e.g. : - I myself polished the shoes. = I polished the shoes myself.

- يستخدم الضمير المنعكس بعد (by) بمعنى «بفرد» أو «بدون مساعدة» :

by myself = on my own = alone = without any help

- e.g. : - I went shopping on my own. (alone).

- He lives on his own. (alone / by himself).

- Did Ali paint that picture on his own (without any help) ?

- يمكن أن تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر after / for / on :

- e.g. : - The girls looked after themselves. - Always depend on yourself.

- هناك فرق بين (of his own / on his own) :



on his own = alone / without help

e.g. : - I live on my own. = I live alone.  
- I cleaned the kitchen on my own. = I cleaned the kitchen without help.

of his own = belonging to him and to no one else تدل على الملكية

e.g. : - I'd like to have a room of my own. (belonging to me)  
- لا نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حرف الجر (with) عندما يكون معنى «مع» ولكن نستخدم  
ضمائر المفعول (me - him - her - us) :

e.g. : - I went with herself. (X)

- I went with her. (✓)

- لا نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر الخاصة بالموقع أو المكان أو الاتجاه ولكن نستخدم  
ضمائر المفعول :

e.g. : - She doesn't want anyone to sit next to her.

- The car was coming fast towards me.

- لا نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد أفعال معينة (تصف أشياء يذوقها الإنسان بنفسه) مثل :

approach	يقترب من	rest	يستريح	stand up	يقف
remember	يتذكر	lie down	ينام	meet	يقابل
shave	يحتق	wonder	يتساءل	sit down	يجلس
wake up	يستيقظ	relax	يسترخي		
complain	يشكو	worry	يقلق		

e.g. : - He shaved in ten minutes.

تعبيرات تستخدم فيها الضمائر المنعكسة

- Enjoy yourself. = Have a good time.
- Take care of yourself. = Be careful.
- Help yourself (to). = Take what you want.
- Make yourself at home. = Behave freely as if it were your own home.
- Behave yourself. = Be polite / Behave well.
- He made a name for himself. = He became famous.
- He isn't feeling himself today. = He's feeling ill today.

## Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

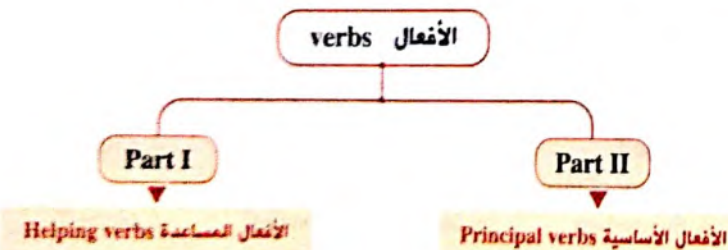
- We think that those stories are .....  
a. ours      b. us      c. we      d. our
- The film ..... wasn't very good, but I liked the music.  
a. itself      b. himself      c. herself      d. it
- These books belong to .....  
a. their      b. they      c. them      d. theirs
- The dog barked on seeing ..... in a mirror.  
a. its      b. it's      c. itself      d. it
- A: Ali, did you and Sami repair the broken window?  
B: Yes, we did. But I cut ..... on a piece of glass.  
a. mine      b. myself      c. ourselves      d. me
- Make ..... a cup of tea.  
a. you      b. your      c. themselves      d. yourself
- A: Is this your sister's bedroom?  
B: No, it's my bedroom. .... is downstairs.  
a. Herself      b. She      c. Hers      d. Her
- A: Who repaired your bicycle for you?  
B: Nobody. I repaired it .....  
a. my      b. mine      c. me      d. myself
- We got out of the water and dried .....  
a. us      b. we      c. ourselves      d. themselves
- The girl is feeling faint. Take ..... to hospital.  
a. herself      b. her      c. hers      d. yourself
- The door of this room sometimes opens .....  
a. themselves      b. by itself      c. oneself      d. himself
- Are you going to do this exercise .....?  
a. herself      b. themselves      c. yourself      d. himself
- My wife and I have just bought a new flat. .... is near to where  
we live now.  
a. Its      b. We      c. Itself      d. It



14. Our house is not as modern as .....  
 a. their b. her c. hers d. your
15. Children sometimes hurt ..... when they are playing.  
 a. them b. themselves c. ourselves d. himself
16. Your garden is bigger than .....  
 a. we b. us c. ours d. our
17. Did you both hurt .....?  
 a. yourself b. yourselves c. themselves d. herself
18. We wanted to buy the table, but ..... surface was damaged.  
 a. itself b. it's c. it d. its
19. Take an umbrella with ..... in case it rains.  
 a. yourself b. you c. yours d. your
20. These books aren't ..... They are ours.  
 a. theirs b. they c. them d. there's
21. I ..... and dressed in ten minutes.  
 a. showered myself b. showered with myself  
 c. showered by myself d. showered to myself

### 3 Verbs الأفعال

في الجزء التالي، يتم شرح الأفعال (verbs) من خلال نقطتين رئيسيتين هما :



- تنقسم الأفعال المساعدة إلى ثلاثة أنواع رئيسية :

### Part I Helping verbs الأفعال المساعدة



#### Verb to "be"

1 لاحظ تصريف فعل (to be) في الأزمنة المختلفة :

المصدر Inf.	التصريف الأول First Form	التصريف الثاني Second Form	التصريف الثالث p. p.
be	am - is - are	was - were	been

2 لاحظ توزيع تصريفات فعل (to be) مع الفاعل :

الضمير Pronoun	المضارع Present	الماضي Past
I	am / 'm / am not	was / was not / wasn't
He / She / It	is = 's / / is not / isn't	was / was not / wasn't
You / We / They	are = 're / aren't / are not	were / were not / weren't

3 يُستخدم فعل (to be) كفعل أساسي بمعنى (يكون / يوجد) :

- e.g. : - I am tired.  
 - She is not / isn't clever.  
 - They are / They're at school.

4 تُستخدم (be) كفعل أساسي بمعنى (يكون) بعد (to) :

- e.g. : - She wants to be a doctor.

5 يُستخدم (be) كفعل أساسي أو مساعد بعد الأفعال الناقصة : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالأزمنة)

- e.g. : - Omar will be 17 tomorrow. (فعل أساسي)  
 - Your eyes must be examined. (فعل مساعد)

ALTfWok.com موقع المتقون



- ١ يُستخدم كلاً من (am - is - are) كأفعال مساعدة لتكوين المضارع المستمر والمبني للمجهول في المضارع البسيط والمستمر : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالآزمنة)
- e.g. : - Rodayna is having lunch now. (مضارع مستمر)  
- The boys are taken to school by their mother. (مضارع بسيط مبني للمجهول)
- ٢ يُستخدم كلاً من (was - were) كأفعال مساعدة لتكوين الماضي المستمر والمبني للمجهول في الماضي البسيط والمستمر : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالآزمنة)
- e.g. : - Sama was watching TV. (ماضي مستمر)  
- A new school was built in our street last year. (ماضي بسيط مبني للمجهول)
- ٣ تُستخدم (being) بعد (am - is - are - was - were) كفعال مساعد ثان لتكوين المضارع المستمر والماضي المستمر المبني للمجهول : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالآزمنة)
- e.g. : - The house is being cleaned. (مضارع مستمر مبني للمجهول)  
- TV was being watched by Sama. (ماضي مستمر مبني للمجهول)
- ٤ تُستخدم (been) في تكوين الأزمنة التامة والمبني للمجهول :
- e.g. : - Omar has been ill recently. (مضارع تام المعلوم)  
- The player had been sent out before scoring any goals. (ماضي تام مبني للمجهول)
- ٥ تُستخدم الصيغة (being + adj.) للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالرباط)
- e.g. : - Because he was tired, he went to bed early.  
= Being tired, he went to bed early.
- ٦ تُستخدم الصيغة (be to + inf.) للتعبير عن الخطط والترتيبات الرسمية أو إعطاء الأوامر والتعليمات :
- e.g. : - The manager is to meet some important businessmen today.  
- You are to write an essay about tourism.

#### Verb to "do"

١ لاحظ تصريف فعل (to do) في الأزمنة المختلفة :

المصدر Inf.	التصريف الأول First Form	التصريف الثاني Second Form	التصريف الثالث p.p.
do	do - does	did	done

٢ لاحظ توزيع تصريفات فعل (to do) مع الفاعل :

الضمير Pronoun	المضارع Present	الماضي Past
I / You / We / They	do ≠ do not = don't	did ≠ did not = didn't
He / She / It	does ≠ does not = doesn't	did ≠ did not = didn't

- ٢ يُستخدم فعل (to do) كفعال أساسي بمعنى (يفعل / يقوم به) :
- e.g. : - She does / did her homework.  
- I do / did the shopping once a week.
- ٤ يُستخدم كلاً من (do - does) كأفعال مساعدة في النفي والسؤال في المضارع البسيط :
- e.g. : - He does not (doesn't) like fish.  
- Does he like fish ?  
- What does he like ?  
- They do not (don't) go out late at night.  
- Do they go out late at night ?  
- When do they go out ?
- ٥ تُستخدم (did) كفعال مساعد في النفي والسؤال في الماضي البسيط :
- e.g. : - We did not (didn't) see what happened.  
- Did you see what happened ?  
- What did you see ?
- ٦ تُستخدم (do - does - did + inf.) بشكل بلاغي في الجمل المثبتة للتأكيد :
- e.g. : - I do know who took the money.  
- You did hear what I said.

#### Verb to "have"

١ لاحظ تصريف فعل (to have) في الأزمنة المختلفة :

المصدر Inf.	التصريف الأول First Form	التصريف الثاني Second Form	التصريف الثالث p.p.
have	have - has	had	had

٢ لاحظ توزيع تصريفات فعل (to have) مع الفاعل :

الضمير Pronoun	المضارع Present	الماضي Past
I / You / We / They	have = 've ≠ have not = haven't	had = 'd ≠ had not = hadn't
He / She / It	has = 's ≠ has not = hasn't	had = 'd ≠ had not = hadn't



٢ يُستخدم فعل (to have) كفعل أساسي بمعنى (يملك / يتناول / يعاني من... إلخ) :

e.g. : - I have / had a headache.

- She has / had a lot of money.

٤ لاحظ أن نفي (have / has) كأفعال أساسية في المضارع البسيط هو (don't / doesn't + have) :

e.g. : - He doesn't have meals outdoors. (Not : he hasn't)

- I don't have tea or coffee at night. (Not : I haven't)

٥ لاحظ أن نفي (had) كفعل أساسي في الماضي البسيط هو (didn't + have) :

e.g. : - Aya didn't have a nice time. (Not: he hadn't)

٦ يُستخدم كل من (have - has) كأفعال مساعدة في المضارع التام :

e.g. : - He has bought a car. = He's bought a car.

- They have won the match. = They've won the match.

٧ تُستخدم (had) كفعل مساعد في الماضي التام :

e.g. : - He had taken a rest before going out.

### الأفعال الناقصة Modals

١ الأفعال الناقصة هي أفعال لا تؤدي معنى بمفردها وتحتاج إلى فعل في المصدر (inf.) معناها :

e.g. : - I can English well. (✗) - I can speak English well. (✓)

- You should your lessons hard. (✗) - You should study your lessons hard. (✓)

٢ هناك أفعال ناقصة رئيسية هي :

can - could - will - would - may - might - shall - should - must

e.g. : - I will go home. - She might be late. - Shall we leave now ?

للمزيد حول استخدام الأفعال الناقصة يمكن الرجوع إلى الأجزاء المخصصة للتعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام والقدرة :

### الأفعال والتعبيرات شبه الناقصة Semi-modals

١ هناك أفعال وتعبيرات شبه ناقصة (Semi-modals) مثل :

• ought to - used to - be going to + inf.

e.g. : - You ought to (should) be more careful.

- I used to go to the fields when I was young.

- Sama is going to join university.

• have to (has to / had to / will have to) من اللازم / من الضروري / يجب

e.g. : - I had / have / will have to follow the rules.

- Omar has / had / will have to renew his passport.

- لاحظ أن نفي (have to / has to) هو (don't / doesn't have to) :

e.g. : - He hasn't to get up early. (✗)

- He doesn't have to get up early. (✓)

- She hadn't to go to work yesterday. (✗)

- She didn't have to go to work yesterday. (✓)

• have got to / has got to من اللازم / من الضروري / يجب

e.g. : - I have got to leave now.

- لاحظ أن نفي (have / has + got to) هو (haven't / hasn't + got to) :

- I don't have got to leave now. (✗)

- I haven't got to leave now. (✓)

- لاحظ أن صيغة الماضي من (have / has + got to) هي (had to) :

e.g. : - She had got to look after her baby sister. (✗)

- She had to look after her baby sister. (✓)

• need / needs / needed to - needn't + inf.

• dare (to) يستطيع - daren't + inf.

e.g. : - You need to see a doctor.

- No one dares (to) argue with this manager.

- لاحظ عدم استخدام (to) بعد (daren't / needn't) :

e.g. : - I needn't to buy a new tablet. (✗)

- I needn't buy a new tablet. (✓)

- I don't need to buy a new tablet. (✓)

• had ('d) better + inf. / would ('d) rather + inf.

e.g. : - You'd better find another job. - I'd rather go to the park.

- لاحظ أن نفي (had better - 'd rather) هو ('d better not - 'd rather not) :

- I wouldn't rather have lunch outdoors. (✗)

- I would rather not have lunch outdoors. (✓)



## Part II Principal verbs الأفعال الأساسية

Verb forms أشكال الأفعال

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

## 1 Verb forms أشكال الأفعال

Inf. المصدر	First Form التصريف الأول	Second Form التصريف الثاني	p.p. التصريف الثالث	Present Participle اسم الفعل
be	am - is - are	was - were	been	being
do	do - does	did	done	doing
have	have - has	had	had	having
visit	visit - visits	visited	visited	visiting
go	go - goes	went	gone	going
try	try - tries	tried	tried	trying

وفيما يلي شرح تفصيلي لكل هذه الأشكال الخاصة بالفعل :

## Infinitive مصدر الفعل

١ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد الأفعال والتعبيرات الناقصة مثل :

can - could - will - would - shall - should - may - might - must - dare - had better - would rather ... + inf.

e.g. : - I can drive a car.

- Omar will arrive soon. - You had better take a rest.

٢ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد الأفعال المساعدة المنفية (don't / doesn't / didn't) :

e.g. : - She doesn't like fish.

- He didn't go out.

- I don't know who broke the glass window.

لاحظ أنه يستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد الأفعال المساعدة (do / does / did) في الجمل المثبتة للتأكيد

- Hani does smoke.

- They do know what I mean.

- I did break the vase.

٢ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد حرف الجر (to) لأغراض مختلفة :

e.g. : - I want to buy a car. (verb + to + inf.)

- She studies hard to get high marks. (لكي)

- To work hard is a good thing. (استخدام الصيغة المصدرية كفاعل)

٣ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل في الصيغة التالية :

let / make / see / hear / watch / notice + ضمير مفعول + inf. ...

e.g. : - My father let us go to the park.

- I saw Ahmed cross the street.

٤ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل في بداية الجملة لتكوين الأمر المثبت :

e.g. : - Open your books, please.

- Study your lessons before going out.

٥ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد أداة الاستفهام (Why) لتقديم اقتراحات :

Why + inf. ...? لِمَ ؟ - Why not + inf. ...? لِمَ لا ؟

e.g. : - Why walk when we can go by bus?

- Why not buy a cold drink?

## First form التصريف الأول

١ يستخدم التصريف الأول للفعل لتكوين زمن المضارع البسيط، و يضاف له (s - es - ies) إذا كان

الفاعل مفرد (He - She - It) :

e.g. : - Ahmed plays tennis in the club every Saturday.

- Ahmed and Karim play tennis.

- A lion eats meat.

- Lions eat meat.

٢ لاحظ أن صيغة المضارع البسيط من الفعل (be) هي (am / is / are) :

e.g. : - I am busy.

- He / She / It is old.

- You / We / They are hungry

٣ لاحظ أن صيغة المضارع البسيط من الفعل (have) هي (have / has) :

e.g. : - He / She / It has a big family.

- I / You / We / They have some friends.



## Second form (with object)

يستخدم التصريف الثاني للفعل لتكوين زمن الماضي البسيط :

- e.g. : - She **went** to the library with her friends.  
- They **watched** the match in the stadium.

## Third form (p.p.) التصريف الثالث للفعل

يستخدم التصريف الثالث للفعل في الحالات التالية :

١ بعد (have / has / had) لتكوين المضارع التام والماضي التام :

- e.g. : - He **has gone** shopping.  
- Mum **had prepared** lunch before we arrived home.

٢ بعد الأفعال المساعدة لتكوين المبني للمجهول :

- e.g. : - The window **was broken** by him.  
- The film **is shown** on this channel every month.  
- Our flat **will be decorated** soon.  
- The old man **has been helped** by his daughter.

٣ يُستخدم كصفة :

- e.g. : - **Polluted air** causes a lot of diseases.  
- I have some **written work** to do.

٤ تُستخدم كاختصار لعبارة الوصل في صيغة المبني للمجهول. لاحظ الأمثلة التالية جيداً :

- e.g. : - The trees **which were grown** by my uncle produce a lot of fruit.  
= The trees **grown** by my uncle produce a lot of fruit.  
- The criminal **who was arrested** last night is very dangerous.  
= The criminal **arrested** last night is very dangerous.

## "ing" Form (present participle) اسم الفاعل

يستخدم هذه الصيغة في الحالات التالية :

١ يُستخدم كفعل بعد (be / am / is / are / was / were / been) لتكوين الأزمنة المستمرة :

- e.g. : - He **may be sleeping** at home. - He **is watching** TV.  
- They **were having** lunch. - She **has been revising** her lessons.

٢ تُستخدم بعد أفعال المكان والحركة مثل (go / lie / come / be busy ....) :

- e.g. : - We **went fishing** last Friday.  
- I **lay looking** at the stars in the dark sky.

٣ تُستخدم بعد أفعال الإدراك التالية للدلالة على متابعة جزء من الحدث :

see / hear / watch / notice + اسم / ضمير + (inf. + ing) ...

- e.g. : - I **heard** someone **crying**.  
- He **saw** his friends **playing** in the park.  
- I **watched** the rabbits **eating** some carrots.

٤ تُستخدم في الصيغ التالية :

spend / waste + time / money + (inf. + ing) ...

- e.g. : - Don't **waste** your money (on) **buying** clothes!  
- I've **spent** three hours **shopping**.

find / catch + اسم / ضمير + (inf. + ing) ...

- e.g. : - His father **caught** him **playing** in the street.  
- They **found** their teachers **sitting** in the garden.

٥ تُستخدم كصفة :

- e.g. : - It was an **interesting** story.  
- I sat on the beach to watch the **setting** sun.

٦ تُستخدم كاختصار لعبارة الوصل في صيغة المبني للمعلوم. لاحظ الأمثلة التالية جيداً :

- e.g. : - The dog **which is sleeping** under the tree belongs to our neighbours.  
= The dog **sleeping** under the tree belongs to our neighbours.  
- The boy **who is wearing** a white shirt is my son.  
= The boy **wearing** a white shirt is my son.

٧ تُستخدم في عبارة اسم الفاعل (present participle clause) كبديل للعبارة السببية والزمنية. لاحظ الأمثلة التالية جيداً :

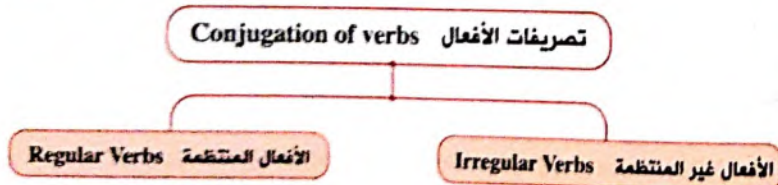
- e.g. : - After he **had put** on his coat, he left the house.  
= **Putting** on his coat, he left the house.  
- While I **was watching** the match at home, I fell asleep.  
= **Watching** the match at home, I fell asleep.  
- Because he **felt** very hungry, he went to the nearest restaurant.  
= **Feeling** very hungry, he went to the nearest restaurant.



### كيفية تكوين اسم الفعل :

- 1 مع معظم الأفعال، يُضاف المقطع (ing) لنهاية مصدر الفعل :  
e.g. : - read → reading - visit → visiting
- 2 إذا انتهى المصدر بحرف (e) ساكن (لا ينطق) فإنه يحذف قبل إضافة (ing) :  
e.g. : - write → writing - make → making  
- ويشذ عن ذلك أفعال مثل :  
e.g. : - dye → dyeing - singe → singeing
- 3 بتضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) إذا انتهى المصدر بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك مع الأفعال ذات المقطع الواحد :  
e.g. : - run → running - swim → swimming  
- stop → stopping
- 4 بتضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير المسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد مع الكلمات المكونة من أكثر من مقطع قبل إضافة (ing) بشرط أن يكون المقطع الأخير مشدداً في النطق (stressed) :  
e.g. : - regret → regretting - begin → beginning
- 5 إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرفين (ie) فإنهما يتحولان إلى (y) قبل إضافة (ing) :  
e.g. : - die → dying - tie → tying
- 6 إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرف (c) يضاف بعده حرف (k) قبل إضافة (ing) :  
e.g. : - panic → panicking - picnic → picnicking

## 2 Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال



## 1 Conjugation of Regular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال المنتظمة

- 1 بصفة عامة يتم تصريف الأفعال المنتظمة بإضافة (ed) لنهاية مصدر الفعل :  
e.g. : - visit → visited - watch → watched - land → landed
- 2 إذا انتهى المصدر بحرف (e) يضاف له حرف (d) فقط :  
e.g. : - like → liked - change → changed - bake → baked
- 3 بتضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة (ed) إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد مع الأفعال ذات المقطع الواحد :  
e.g. : - stop → stopped - ban → banned
- 4 بتضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير المسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد مع الكلمات المكونة من أكثر من مقطع قبل إضافة (ed) بشرط أن يكون المقطع الأخير مشدداً في النطق (stressed) :  
e.g. : - deter → deterred - regret → regretted
- 5 إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرف (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن فإنه يتحول إلى (i) قبل إضافة (ed) :  
e.g. : - study → studied - dry → dried - try → tried
- 6 إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرف (c) يضاف بعده حرف (k) قبل إضافة (ed) :  
e.g. : - panic → panicked - picnic → picnicked

## 2 Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

تنويه: الطالب غير مُلزم بحفظ كل الأفعال غير المنتظمة، لكن هذا التصنيف يُعتبر مُراجع لكل دارس. يراجع مُعظم الطلاب مشكلة في حفظ تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة (الشاذة)، ولتسهيل حفظ هذه الأفعال، سنقوم بتقسيم هذه الأفعال إلى مجموعات حسب طريقة تصريفها :

### 1 أفعال لا تتغير عند تصريفها :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bet (s) براهن	bet	bet
broadcast (s) بذيغ / بيت	broadcast	broadcast
burst (s) بنفجر	burst	burst
cost (s) كُلفت	cost	cost
cut (s) يقطع	cut	cut



hit (s)	ضرب	hit	hit
hurt (s)	يؤذي / يؤلم	hurt	hurt
let (s)	يسمح / يدع	let	let
put (s)	ضع	put	put
quit (s)	يترك / يقطع	quit	quit
read (s)	قرأ	read	read
set (s)	يضع / يضبط	set	set
shut (s)	يغلق	shut	shut

٢ أفعال يتغير فيها حرف واحد : فقط يتحول حرف (d) إلى (t) في نهاية الكلمة :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bend (s)	يَنحني / ينحني	bent
build (s)	يَبْنِي	built
lend (s)	يُقْرِض	lent
send (s)	يُرْسِل	sent
spend (s)	يَقْضِي وَاقْت / يَنْفِق	spent

٣ أفعال يتغير فيها (ay) إلى (aid) في نهاية الكلمة :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
lay (s)	يُضَع / يَبْسُط	laid
pay (s)	يُدْفَع (مالاً)	paid
say (s)	يَقُول	said

٤ أفعال يُضاف حرف (t) لنهايتها (يُستثنى الفعل hear) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
deal (s)	يُتَوَرَّع / يتعامل	dealt
dream (s)	يَحْلُم	dreamt
hear (s)	يَسْمَع	heard

lean (s)	يَمِيل / يَتَخَنى	leant	leant
leap (s)	يَقْفَز	leapt	leapt
mean (s)	يَعْنِي / يَقْصِد	meant	meant

٥ أفعال يتحول فيها (ell) إلى (old) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
sell (s)	يَبِيع	sold
tell (s)	يُخْبِر	told

٦ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (i) إلى (ou) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bind (s)	يَرْبِط	bound
find (s)	يَجِد	found
grind (s)	يَطْحَن / يَشْحَذ / يَسِّن	ground
wind (s)	يُفِّق / يَنْفِج	wound

٧ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (ee) أو (ea) إلى (e) لتكوين التصريفين الثاني والثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bleed (s)	يَنْزِف	bled
feed (s)	يُطْعِم	fed
flee (s)	يَنْزِي / يَخْلِي	fled
lead (s)	يَقْدُود / يُوْدِي إِلَى / يَعْيش (بِطَرِيقَةٍ مُعَيَّنَةٍ)	led
speed (s)	يُسْرِع	sped

موقع التفوق AltFwok.com



٨ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (i) إلى (a) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، و إلى (u) لتكوين التصريف الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
begin (s) يبدأ	began	begun
drink (s) يشرب	drank	drunk
shrink (s) يتكسّر	shrank	shrunk
sing (s) يغني	sang	sung
sink (s) يغرق (للأشياء) / يغوص	sank	sunk
spring (s) يقفز / يبرز	sprang	sprung
swim (s) يسبح	swam	swum

٩ أفعال ينتهي تصريفها بـ (ought / aught) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bring (s) يجلب / يُحضّر	brought	brought
buy (s) يشتري	bought	bought
fight (s) يقاتل / يواجه	fought	fought
seek (s) يسعى	sought	sought
think (s) يفكر / يعتقد	thought	thought
catch (s) يمسك / يقبض على / يصطاد	caught	caught
teach (es) يُعَلِّم / يشرح	taught	taught

١٠ أفعال بها (ee) يتم فيها حذف حرف (e) مع إضافة حرف (t) لإنهاء الفعل ما لم يكن موجوداً (تُستثنى الفعل feed) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
creep (s) يتسلّل / يزحف	crept	crept
feed (s) يُطعم	fed	fed
feel (s) يشعر	felt	felt
keep (s) يحتفظ بـ / يظل / يربّي	kept	kept

kneel (s) ركب على ركبتيه	knelt	knelt
meet (s) يقابل	met	met
sleep (s) ينام	slept	slept
sweep (s) يمسح / يندفع / يجرّ	swept	swept
weep (s) يبكي	wept	wept

١١ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير الحرف المتحرك إلى (o) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، ثم يُضاف إليه (en) لتكوين التصريف الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
awake (s) يستيقظ / يوقظ	awoke / awaked	awoken / awaked
break (s) يكسر / ينكسر	broke	broken
choose (s) يختار	chose	chosen
freeze (s) يتجمّد / يُجمّد	froze	frozen
speak (s) يتحدث	spoke	spoken
steal (s) يسرق	stole	stolen
wake (s) يستيقظ	woke / waked	woken / waked
weave (s) ينسج	wove	woven

١٢ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير المتحرك (i) إلى (o) لتكوين التصريف الثاني، وينتهي التصريف الثالث بـ (en) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
arise (s) ينشأ	arose	arisen
drive (s) يقود (سيارة)	drove	driven
rise (s) يرتفع / يزداد / تشرق	rose	risen
ride (s) يركب	rode	ridden
write (s) يكتب	wrote	written



١٣ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (eat) إلى (ore) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، و إلى (orn) لتكوين التصريف الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bear (s)	bore	borne / born
swear (s)	swore	sworn
tear (s)	tore	torn
wear (s)	wore	worn

١٤ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (ow) إلى (ew) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، و إلى (own) لتكوين التصريف الثالث (يُستثنى الفعل draw) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
blow (s)	blew	blown
draw (s)	drew	drawn
grow (s)	grew	grown
know (s)	knew	known
throw (s)	threw	thrown
fly (ies)	flew	flown

١٥ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (i) إلى (a) أو (u) لتكوين التصريفين الثاني والثالث ، و يتم حذف حرف (e) من نهاية الفعل إن وُجد :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
dig (s)	dug	dug
spin (s)	spun / span	spun
stick (s)	stuck	stuck
sting (s)	stung	stung
strike (s)	struck	struck

swing (s)

يتأرجح

swung

swung

١٦ أفعال يتشابه فيها التصريف الأول مع التصريف الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
become (s)	became	become
come (s)	came	come
run (s)	ran	run

١٧ أفعال يتشابه تصريفها الثاني والثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
babysit (s)	babysat	babysat
hold (s)	held	held
leave (s)	left	left
lose (s)	lost	lost
sit (s)	sat	sat
slide (s)	slid	slid
stand (s)	stood	stood
understand (s)	understood	understood
win (s)	won	won
shoot (s)	shot	shot

١٨ أفعال متنوعة في طريقة تصريفها :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
be (am / is / are)	was / were	been
do (es)	did	done
have / has	had	had
go	went	gone



أفعال متقاربة في نمط التصريف

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
beat (s) ضرب	beat	beaten
bite (s) عض / قضم	bite	bitten
hide (s) خسى	hid	hidden
eat (s) أكل	ate	eaten
fall (s) سقط / وقع	fell	fallen
forbid (s) منع	forbad / forbade	forbidden
forget (s) نسى	forgot	forgotten
get (s) حصل على	got	got / gotten
forgive (s) سامح	forgave	forgiven
give (s) أعطى	gave	given
see (s) رأى	saw	seen
shake (s) هز / رج / صالط	shook	shaken
take (s) أخذ	took	taken

أفعال يتم تصريفها بطريقتين دون اختلاف في المعنى :

inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
awake (s) استيقظ	awoke / awaked	awoke / awaked
bear (s) تدد / تحمل	bore	borne / born
burn (s) حرق	burnt / burned	burnt / burned
dream (s) حلم	dreamt / dreamed	dreamt / dreamed
dwelt (s) قطن / سكن	dwelt / dwelled	dwelt / dwelled
forbid (s) منع	forbad / forbade	forbidden
kneel (s) سجد على	knelt / kneeled	knelt / kneeled
lean (s) سعى	leant / leaned	leant / leaned
learn (s) تعلم	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
light (s) شعل / سبر	lighted / lit	lighted / lit

mow (s) جز العشب	mowed	mowed / mown
sew (s) بخيط	sewed	sewed / sewn
show (s) عرض	showed	showed / shown
smell (s) شم	smelt / smelled	smelt / smelled
sow (s) سذر	sowed	sowed / sown
speed (s) تسرع	speeded / sped	speeded / sped
spell (s) ينمحي	spelt / spelled	spelt / spelled
spill (s) سكب	spilt / spilled	spilt / spilled
spoil (s) تلف	spoilt / spoiled	spoilt / spoiled
swell (s) انتفخ	swelled	swelled / swollen
wake (s) يستيقظ	woke / waked	woke / waked

أفعال يتم تصريفها بطريقتين أو أكثر مع وجود اختلاف في المعنى :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bid عرض	bid	bid
bid (s) يأمر / يودع	bade	bidden
dive (s) يقفز إلى الماء برأسه أولاً	dove	dived
dive (s) بغوص سمكات	dived	dived
fit (s) يناسب في الحجم	fit	fit
fit (s) يُعَدَّل مَقاس / يُرَكَّب	fitted	fitted
hang (s) يُعَلَّق	hung	hung
hang (s) يعدم / يشنق	hanged / hung	hanged / hung
lay (s) يُعَد / يبيِّن	laid	laid
lie (s) يكذب	lied	lied
lie (s) يوقد / يستلقي	lay	lain
shine (s) يلمع / ينطق	shone	shone
shine (s) يسلط الضوء على	shone / shined	shone / shined
shine (s) يلمع / ينفل	shined	shined



## 4 Adjectives الصفات

Adjective :

الصفة

- الصفة هي كلمة تصف اسم وتأتي غالباً قبله :

e.g. : - Rodayna bought an **expensive** mobile yesterday.- I saw a **frightening** animal in the fields.- يمكن أن تأتي الصفة وبعدها الموصوف أو بدونها بعد فعل **verb to be** وأفعال أخرى مثل :  
(look / seem / appear / taste / feel / sound / smell)e.g. : - Leen **felt** cold. - Ahmed **looks** happy.- Mum's food **smells** delicious. - Ali is **clever**.- الصفات التالية لا تستخدم قبل الاسم مطلقاً و لكن تستخدم بعد **verb to be**  
وأفعال مثل **seem / look / feel** (أفعال الحواس) :لا يزال على قيد الحياة **alive** / غائب **absent** / مشتعل **alight** / **alone** / **asleep** / **awake** / **afraid**e.g. : - Roaa feels **afraid** when she is left alone.- We were **happy** that he was **alive**.

## 1 Similarity التشابه

- هناك أكثر من طريقة للتعبير عن التشابه أو تساوي طرفين في صفة ما ومن تلك الطرق ما يلي :

الطرف الثاني + **as** + الصفة + **as** + **be** + الطرف الأولالطرف الثاني + **as** + الاسم من الصفة + **the same** + **has / have** + الطرف الأولالاسم من الصفة + **the same** + **have** + الطرف الثاني + **and** + الطرف الأولالاسم من الصفة + **of the same** + **be** + الطرف الثاني + **and** + الطرف الأولالصفة + **be** + الطرف الثاني والطرف الأول + **Like**e.g. : - Aya is **as beautiful as** Mariam.= Aya has the **same beauty as** Mona.= Aya and Mariam have **the same** beauty.= Aya and Mariam are of **the same** beauty.= Like Aya, Mariam **is** beautiful.

- لاحظ عند النفي نستخدم (not as/so + صفة + as) :

e.g. : - Nabil is taller than Samy.

= Samy isn't as (so) tall as Nabil.

- لاحظ الاسم الذي يمكن استخدامه بعد (the same + noun + as) من الصفات الآتية :

adjective	noun	adjective	noun
expensive/ cheap	price	deep	depth
big / small	size	wide	width
old / young	age	long	length
far / near	distance	high / tall	height
strong	strength	heavy / light	weight

e.g. : - This house is as high as yours.

= This house has the same height as yours.

- The green blouse is as expensive as the red blouse.

= The green blouse is the same price as the red blouse.

## 2 Comparative adjectives صفات المقارنة

- تستخدم صفات المقارنة لتقارن بين طرفين في صفة مشتركة بينهما :

e.g. : - Malak is **taller than** Rodayna.

- A car is fast, but a train is faster.

- Films are **more exciting than** novels.- Chicken is **less expensive than** meat.

تكوين صفات المقارنة من الصفات القصيرة والطويلة

- تستخدم صفات المقارنة لتقارن بين طرفين في صفة مشتركة بينهم :

\* تكوين صفة المقارنة من الصفات القصيرة :

① يضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة :

e.g. : - quiet → quieter - cheap → cheaper - narrow → narrower

② إذا كانت الصفة القصيرة تنتهي بـ (e) ساكن (لا ينطق) نضيف في المقارنة (r) فقط :

e.g. : - wide → wider - nice → nicer

- large → larger - simple → simpler



- ٢ الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بـ (y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن تتحول إلى (ier) :
- e.g. : - lucky → luckier - healthy → healthier - easy → easier
- ٣ يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا جاء قبله حرف متحرك واحد بشرط أن تكون الكلمة مقطع واحد :
- e.g. : - hot → hotter - fat → fatter - thin → thinner
- \* تكوين صفة المقارنة من الصفات الطويلة :

more / less + adj. + the + than

- e.g. : - more / less expensive than - more / less terrifying than  
- more / less exciting than - more / less dangerous than

#### ملحوظات عامة علي صفات المقارنة

- يمكن استخدام less قبل الصفات القصيرة :
- e.g. : - Ahmed is stronger than Ali. = Ali is less strong than Ahmed.
- يمكن استخدام (even / much / a lot / far...) قبل صفات المقارنة لإعطاء قوة لمعنى الصفة :
- e.g. : - Travelling by train is **much** slower than travelling by plane.
- يمكن استخدام (slightly / a bit / a little...) قبل صفات المقارنة لإضعاف معنى الصفة :
- e.g. : - I had to drive **a bit** faster.
- يمكن استخدام صفتي مقارنة للدلالة على التغير المستمر في شيء :
- e.g. : - It's become **more and more** difficult to find a flat.
- لاحظ شكل الضمير بعد than (يكون "ضمير فاعل" إذا كان بعده فعل و "ضمير مفعول" في حالة عدم وجود فعل) :
- e.g. : - He is taller **than** I am.  
= He is taller **than** me.  
- We earn more money **than** they do.  
= We earn more money **than** them.
- يمكن استخدام المقارنة للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة ( كلما ..... كلما ..... ) :
- جملة النتيجة + صفة مقارنة + the + جملة السبب + صفة مقارنة + The
- e.g. : - **The harder** you study, **the higher** marks you get.

#### Superlative adjectives صفات التفضيل

- تستخدم صفات التفضيل لتقارن بين أكثر من طرفين في صفة مشتركة بينهم ( تمييز فرد عن مجموعة ) :
- e.g. : - Omar is the **cleverest** student in class.  
- The plane is the **fastest** means of transport.  
- Football is the **most** exciting sport.  
- Fish is the **least** expensive protein source.

- تكوين صفات التفضيل من صفات قصيرة المقطع :

١ توضع (the) قبل الصفة ثم يضاف (est) لنهاية الصفة :

- e.g. : - old → the **oldest** - strong → the **strongest**  
- tall → the **tallest**

٢ إذا كانت الصفة القصيرة تنتهي بـ (e) (لا ينطق) و قبلها حرف ساكن توضع (the) قبل الصفة ثم يضاف (st) فقط لنهاية الصفة :

- e.g. : - nice → the **nicest** - wide → the **widest**  
- simple → the **simplest**

٣ الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بـ (y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن توضع (the) قبل الصفة ثم تتحول (y) الي (iest) في نهاية الصفة :

- e.g. : - lazy → the **laziest** - heavy → the **heaviest**  
- noisy → the **noisiest**

٤ إذا انتهت الصفة قصيرة المقطع بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوقة بحرف متحرك واحد نضاعف الحرف الأخير مع إضافة (the) قبل الصفة و (est) في نهاية الصفة :

- e.g. : - big → the **biggest** - thin → the **thinnest**  
- hot → the **hottest**

- تكوين صفات التفضيل من صفات طويلة المقطع :

طويلة المقطع. the most / the least + adj.

- e.g. : - dangerous → the **most / the least** dangerous  
- interesting → the **most / the least** interesting



## ملحوظات عامة على صفات التفضيل

- يمكن استخدام (most) بدون (the) وفي هذه الحالة نسأل في المعنى (very) :

most + adj. (without the) = very

e.g. : - The information I've just heard is **most** important. = very important

- لاحظ استخدام صفة التفضيل مع الأعداد الترتيبية (first / second / third / fourth / etc.) :

e.g. : - Cairo is the **first** largest city in Africa.

- لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل في حالة وجود ضمير ملكية أو (s) الملكية قبل الصفة :

e.g. : - The femto-second is Zewail's **biggest** achievement in Chemistry.

- The femto-second is his **biggest** achievement in Chemistry.

- استخدام (No) بدلاً من أسلوب التفضيل :

باقي الجملة + صيغة التفضيل أو المقارنة + "verb to be" + فاعل  
طرف المقارنة + **than** + صيغة التفضيل أو المقارنة + "verb to be" + فاعل + No

باقي الجملة طرف المقارنة + as + **adj.** صفة + "verb to be" + as + فاعل + No

e.g. : - Omar was the **most** courageous man in the city.

= No man in the city is **more** courageous than Omar.

No man in the city is **as** courageous **as** Omar.

- The Nile is **the longest** river. = No river is **longer** than the Nile.

- Water is the **most** important liquid.

= No liquid is **more** important than water.

- المقارنة والتفضيل باستخدام **ever - never** :

+ فاعل ثانى + التمييز + صيغة تفضيل + "verb to be" + الفاعل الأول  
"have / has" ever + p.p. ...

+ فاعل ثانى + "have - has" never + p.p. ... + a / an

فاعل أول + **like** + تمييز + صفة بدون إضافات

- نلاحظ أن الصفة في جملة (ever) هي صيغة التفضيل أما الصفة في جملة (never) صفة من الدرجة الأولى (بدون إضافات) :

e.g. : - Ali is the **cleverest** boy I have ever seen.

= I have **never** seen a clever man like Ali.

- I have **never** watched a funny film like that.

= This is the **funniest** film I have ever seen.

- Zewail is the **most** important person I have ever met.

= I have **never** met an important person like Zewail.

- نلاحظ أن أداة الاستفهام which تستخدم عند السؤال للمفاضلة بين شيئين في صفة معينة (نستخدم صفة من الدرجة الثانية) :

e.g. : - Which is faster; the train or the plane ?

- Which is more exciting; the pyramid or the tower ?

- لاحظ أن أداة الاستفهام which يمكن أن تستخدم للمفاضلة بين أكثر من شيئين (صفة من الدرجة الثالثة).

- Which is the **most** expensive car ? - The red car.

## Irregular adjectives

## صفات غير منتظمة

Adj. / adv.	comparative	superlative
bad / badly / ill / wrong	worse than	the worst
far	farther ( further ) than	the farthest ( furthest )
fore	former than	the first
good / well / right	better than	the best
late	latter than / later than	the last / the latest
little	less than	the least
many / much	more than	the most
old	older / elder	oldest / eldest
real	more real	the most real

## Test Yourself

④ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A chair is ..... comfortable than a sofa.

a. less                      b. the least                      c. little                      d. least

2. This is ..... company in the world.

a. big                      b. bigger                      c. biggest                      d. the biggest

3. English is ..... than any other language.

a. easy                      b. easier                      c. more easy                      d. the easiest



4. You look much \_\_\_\_\_ than yesterday.  
a. happy b. happier c. happiest d. the happiest
5. Football is \_\_\_\_\_ popular game in Egypt.  
a. more b. most c. less d. the most
6. This is \_\_\_\_\_ picture I've ever seen.  
a. nice b. nicer c. nicest d. the nicest
7. This computer is not \_\_\_\_\_ expensive as the one that I bought yesterday.  
a. more b. less c. as d. most
8. The \_\_\_\_\_ tree in the world is in Sweden.  
a. old b. older c. eldest d. oldest
9. This is the \_\_\_\_\_ test I've ever taken.  
a. hard b. harder c. less hard d. hardest
10. He is not \_\_\_\_\_ reliable as his friend.  
a. so b. more c. less d. most
11. The food is not nearly so \_\_\_\_\_ as it was in the past.  
a. good b. better c. worse d. the best
12. Alaa is a \_\_\_\_\_ doctor than Omar.  
a. good b. better c. best d. the best
13. Water is the \_\_\_\_\_ expensive of all liquids.  
a. much b. least c. less d. more
14. An elephant is \_\_\_\_\_ as a tiger.  
a. fast b. faster c. fastest d. not as fast
15. Nobody in our company is \_\_\_\_\_ Peter.  
a. efficient b. as efficient as c. most efficient than d. as efficient
16. It was \_\_\_\_\_ of her to waste all her money.  
a. more foolish than b. less foolish c. foolish d. least foolish
17. Laptops are becoming \_\_\_\_\_ popular nowadays.  
a. less and more b. more and less c. much and more d. more and more
18. Climbing is the \_\_\_\_\_ dangerous sport in the world.  
a. more b. most c. less d. as
19. Mr Ali has \_\_\_\_\_ friends than me.  
a. many b. most c. the least d. more

20. The white flower is pretty, but I think the red one is even .....  
a. pretty b. prettiest c. prettier d. most pretty
21. Today is ..... hotter than yesterday.  
a. least b. little c. less d. most
22. My flat is ..... than yours.  
a. more big b. less big c. bigger d. the biggest
23. I don't read as ..... books as you do.  
a. much b. more c. most d. many

## 5 Adverb الظرف

- هناك خمسة أنواع من الظروف هي :

### Types of adverbs أنواع الظروف

- **Frequency التكرار** - I **often** get up early.
- **Degree الدرجة** - She was **very** happy yesterday.
- **Manner الكيفية** - He ran **quickly**.
- **Place المكان** - She travelled **abroad**.
- **Time الزمان** - He went to the park **yesterday**.

- وفيما يلي شرح مبسط لأنواع الظروف المختلفة :

### Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

١ تدل ظروف التكرار كما يتضح من اسمها على تكرار الحدث :

e.g. - I go to Alexandria **every summer**. - She goes to the cinema **once a month**.

٢ ظروف التكرار التالية مشتقة من كلمات زمنية، وتدل على تكرار الحدث كل فترة معينة :

daily - weekly - monthly - yearly / annually = every (day - week - month - year) = once a (day - week - month - year)



- e.g. : - We pay the taxes **yearly**.  
= We pay the taxes **every year**.  
= We pay the taxes **once a year**.

٢. ظروف التكرار التالية تأتي في نهاية أو نهاية الجملة :

every + (عدد) + (day - night - week - month - summer - year ...)

- e.g. : - I visit my aunt **every month** = **Every month**, I visit my aunt.  
- She calls her mother **every three days**.  
= **Every three days**, she calls her mother.

٤. ظروف التكرار التالية تدل على تكرار الحدث عدة محدد من المرات كل فترة زمنية، وتأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :

- e.g. : - **once** / مرة واحدة / **twice** / مرتين / **three times** ... + a / an / **every** + كلمة زمنية  
- I go to the club **twice a week**.  
= **Twice a week**, I go to the club.

٥. تُستخدم ظروف التكرار التالية قبل الفعل الأصلي أو بعد (to be) والأفعال المساعدة :

بانتظام regularly - عادة / normally / usually - بشكل ثابت constantly - دائماً always  
- أحياناً sometimes - غالباً often / frequently  
- مطلقاً never - بالكاد hardly ever - نادراً rarely / seldom - قليلاً little

- e.g. : - I **sometimes** go to the club.  
- Tom **is often** late for work.

- كما يمكن أن تُستخدم ظروف التكرار هذه في بداية أو نهاية الجملة للتركيز على معنى الطرف :

- e.g. : - **Sometimes**, I play football.  
= I play football **sometimes**.

٦. الظروف التالية تدل على النفي، وعند استخدامها في بداية الجملة فإن الفعل المساعد يتقدم على الفاعل :

فاعل + فعل مساعد + Scarcely / Rarely / Seldom / Hardly / Little / Never

- e.g. : - We **never** waste our time.  
= **Never** do we waste our time.  
- My mum **rarely** goes out.  
= **Rarely** does my mum go out.

## Adverbs of degree

ظروف الدرجة

١. أهم ظروف الدرجة في اللغة الإنجليزية هي :

a bit	قليلاً	nearly	تقريباً
absolutely	بشكل مطلق	pretty	بالفعل / حقاً
almost	تقريباً	quite	إلى حد ما
completely	تماماً	rather	إلى حد ما
enough	كاف / بما يكفي	really	بالفعل / حقاً
entirely	كلياً	scarcely	نادراً / قليلاً
extremely	لغاية	too	جداً / أكثر من اللازم
hardly	بالكاد	utterly	كلياً
just	فحسب / ترواً	very	جداً
little	قليلاً / قليلاً		

٢. تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة في الحالات التالية :

- قبل الصفات :

- e.g. : - Mr Omar is **very** tall.  
- I'm **a bit** tired.

- قبل الظروف :

- e.g. : - He speaks **quite** loudly.  
- She walks **very** slowly.

- قبل الأفعال :

- e.g. : - Aya has **nearly** prepared lunch.  
- She **just** smiled and went away.

٣. تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات العادية :

little / a bit - rather / quite - very - really - extremely

- e.g. : - The water is **very** hot. - I'm **extremely** tired.

٤. تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات القوية :

absolutely - utterly / entirely - completely

- e.g. : - This engine is **absolutely** excellent.  
- The temple is **utterly** ancient.



٥ يمكن أن تُستخدم (really / pretty) مع كل من الصفات القوية والضعيفة :

e.g. : - He is really angry / furious.

٦ تُعطي (enough) معنى إيجابي وتُستخدم قبل الاسم أو بعد الصفة والظرف :

e.g. : - He has enough money. (enough + noun)

- He is old enough to depend on himself. (adj. + enough)

- She works hard enough to pass the exam. (adv. + enough)

٧ تُعطي (too ... to) معنى سلبي وتُستخدم قبل الصفة والظرف :

e.g. : - The tea is too sweet to drink. (too + adj.)

### Adverbs of manner ظروف الكيفية

١ ظرف الكيفية يصف كيفية حدوث الفعل و يجب عن السؤال به (How) :

e.g. : - A : How does Omar walk? B : He walks quickly.

- A : How do they work? B : They work hard.

٢ يأتي ظرف الكيفية بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول :

e.g. : - Sama walks slowly. - Ali shouted at me angrily.

٣ تأتي الظروف التالية قبل الفعل وليس بعده :

usually – probably – possibly – definitely – surely – certainly

e.g. : - It is probable he will buy a car. = He will probably buy a car.

- He prays as usual. = He usually prays.

٤ يتكون ظرف الكيفية غالباً بإضافة (y / ly / ily) إلى الصفة :

١. بصفة عامة يتم تكوين ظرف الكيفية بإضافة (ly) إلى الصفة :

e.g. : - slow → slowly - quick → quickly

٢. وتُضاف (ly) حتى وإن كانت الصفة منتهية بحرف (l) :

e.g. : - careful → carefully - beautiful → beautifully

٣. الصفة المنتهية بـ (le) يتم حذف حرف (e) وإضافة (y) :

e.g. : - possible → possibly - probable → probably

٤. الصفة المنتهية بـ (y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن تتحول إلى (ily) :

e.g. : - easy → easily - happy → happily

٥. الصفة المنتهية بـ (ly) تتحول إلى ظرف باستخدام : (in a ..... way / manner) :

e.g. : - friendly way - ودود

- cowardly way - جبان

- Bassem is a good swimmer = Bassem swims well.

٦. هناك ظروف غير منتظمة مثل :

e.g. : - good → well

- fast → fast

- hard → hard

- late → late

- early → early

- He smiled in a fatherly manner (way).

٥. هناك بعض الظروف لها شكلين ومعنيين مختلفين :

deep	بعمق / عميقاً	deeply	بشدّة
free	مجاناً	freely	بحرية
hard	بجد / بصعوبة	hardly	بالكاد / تقريباً لا
high	عالياً	highly	بدرجة كبيرة
late	متأخراً	lately	مؤخراً / حديثاً
most	الأكثر	mostly	أساساً / في الغالب
near	بقرب	nearly	تقريباً
pretty	إلى حد ما	prettily	بشكل جميل

e.g. : - The ship sank deep in the ocean.

- I was deeply affected by your advice.

٦. يمكن مقارنة الظروف مثل الصفات الطويلة باستخدام :

more / less / أكثر / أقل + adv. + than

e.g. : - Rodayna draws more beautifully than Ahmed.

- Mr Ayman drives less fast than Mr Ashraf.

### Adverbs of place ظروف المكان

١. أهم ظروف المكان في اللغة الإنجليزية هي :

above	فوق / أعلي	eastwards	شرقاً
abroad	خارج البلاد	everywhere	في كل مكان



across	عبر	far	بعيداً
ahead	لأمام	here	هنا
around	حول	homeward	باتجاه البيت
away	بعيداً	in	بالداخل
back	للخلف	indoors	بالداخل
backwards	للخلف	inside	بالداخل
below	أسفل	nearby	قريب / مجاور
between	بين	outside	بالخارج
beyond	وراء / بعد	overseas	خارج البلاد
down	أسفل	there	هناك
downwards	لأسفل	west	في / باتجاه الغرب

٢) تُستخدم ظروف المكان لتحديد مكان حدوث الفعل :

e.g. : - We are meeting **here** next October.

٣) توضع ظروف المكان عادة بعد المفعول أو بعد الفعل :

e.g. : - I will wait for them **outside**.

- I will wait **outside** for them.

٤) قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى الاتجاه :

e.g. : - He went **north** to enjoy the good weather in Alexandria.

٥) قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى المسافة :

e.g. : - There's a gym **nearby**.

٦) قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى مكان شيء بالنسبة لأشياء أخرى :

e.g. : - The horse is **under** the tree.

٧) قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى الحركة :

e.g. : - The boat moved **backwards**.

## Adverbs of time

ظروف الزمان

١) ظروف الزمان التي تشير إلى وقت وقوع الحدث تأتي غالباً في نهاية الجملة :

yesterday - tomorrow - today - now - last week - later - etc.

e.g. : - I'll call you **later**. - I'm busy studying **now**.

- يمكن استخدام هذه الظروف في بداية الجملة للتركيز على معنى الظرف :

e.g. : - **Later**, I'll call you. - **Now**, I'm busy studying.

٢) ظروف الزمان التي تشير إلى وقت وقوع الحدث تأتي غالباً في نهاية الجملة :

e.g. : for + مدة / since + توقيت / all + مدة

- I have been waiting here **for ten minutes**.

- She has had this mobile **since 2017**.

٣) تُستخدم (yet) بمعنى (حتى الآن) في نهاية الجملة أو بعد (not) لتدل على شيء لم يحدث بعد وإن كان يُتَظَر حدوثه :

e.g. : - Have they arrived **yet**? - We haven't decided **yet**.

- A: Have you finished? - B: Not **yet**.

٤) تُستخدم (still) بمعنى (لا يزال)، وتوضع قبل الفعل الأصلي وبعد الفعل المساعد :

e.g. : - He is **still** waiting for his friends.

- Do you **still** live in Aswan?

- عندما يكون (be) فعلاً أساسياً فإن (still) تُستخدم بعده :

٥) عندما يكون هناك أكثر من ظرف زمان يكون الترتيب كالتالي :

التوقيت + when + التكرار + how often + المدة + how long

e.g. : - I worked for five hours.

- I have worked for five hours **every day**.

- I worked for five hours **every day last year**.

موقع التفوق ALTfWok.com



## Test Yourself

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He has no money. He is ..... poor.  
a. very      b. fairly      c. quite      d. extremely
2. You shouldn't climb the stairs .....  
a. careful      b. care      c. carelessly      d. careless
3. My sister is a good student, she studies her lessons .....  
a. well      b. good      c. goodly      d. willingly
4. My father ran very ..... and caught a thief.  
a. fastly      b. fast      c. fastness      d. fasten
5. I sometimes get up ..... and miss the school bus.  
a. late      b. lately      c. later      d. lateness
6. The team played the match very ....., so they lost it.  
a. bad      b. badly      c. badness      d. good
7. This girl behaves .....  
a. friendly      b. friend  
c. in a friendly way      d. friendliness
8. He couldn't buy the suit because it was ..... expensive.  
a. rather      b. quite      c. never      d. hardly
9. I had ..... an ordinary childhood.  
a. quite      b. quiet      c. quit      d. quickly
10. We like our English teacher. He is ..... a good person.  
a. quite      b. never      c. lately      d. hardly
11. It is raining .....  
a. heavy      b. heavily      c. heaviness      d. heavenly
12. Dalia does her work ..... She is efficient.  
a. good      b. well      c. proper      d. prepare
13. Samy was ..... exhausted when he finished the race.  
a. utterly      b. very      c. quite      d. rather
14. Bassam doesn't leave his office before he finishes his work. He is quite a ..... worker.  
a. harder      b. hardly      c. hardest      d. hard

15. Noha was ..... after she had cleaned the house all day. She slept for 12 hours after that.  
a. absolutely exhausted      b. absolutely tired  
c. very exhausted      d. not tired
16. Today, car engines burn petrol more ..... than in the past.  
a. efficient      b. efficiently      c. efficiency      d. inefficient
17. She's a bad writer. She writes English .....  
a. badly      b. worse      c. worst      d. bad
18. She works .....  
a. hardly      b. more hardly      c. hard      d. hardness
19. Don't behave ..... to be popular with people.  
a. rudely      b. rude      c. rudeness      d. rudest
20. She answered the questions .....  
a. accurate      b. more accurate  
c. accuracy      d. accurately





## 3 Tenses

## Part 1 Present Tenses

الجزء الأول : الزمن المضارع

## 1 The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

## Formation : التكوين

تتكون جملة المضارع المستمر من:

في الجمل المثبتة:

Subject + am / is / are + (inf. + ing) ....

e.g.: - Ali is reading a story.

- Aya and Heba are cooking lunch.

في الجمل المنفية:

Subject + am not / is not (isn't) / are not (aren't) + inf. + ing.

e.g.: - Ali is not (isn't) reading a story.

- I am not running fast.

- Aya and Heba are not (aren't) cooking lunch.

- كيفية إضافة (ing) للفعل:

• inf. المصدر + ing:

e.g.: - read → reading - visit → visiting

(١) إذا انتهى المصدر بحرف (e) ساكن (لا ينطق) فانه يحدف قبل إضافة (ing)

e.g.: - write → writing - make → making

- ويشذ عن ذلك الفعلين dye / singe :

e.g.: - dye → dyeing - singe → singeing

(٢) إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد وكان الفعل يتكون من مقطع واحد أو أكثر بشرط أن يكون المقطع الأخير مشدداً في النطق فانه يضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل

إضافة (ing)

e.g.: - run → running - begin → beginning

- stop → stopping - regret → regretting

- swim → swimming

(٣) إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرفين (ie) فانهما يتحولان الي (y) قبل إضافة (ing)

e.g.: - die → dying - tie → tying

(٤) إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (c) يضاف بعده حرف (k) قبل إضافة (ing)

e.g.: - panic → panicking - picnic → picnicking

- السؤال المبدوء بفعل مساعد معناه هل :

Am / Is / Are + subject + (inf. + ing) .... ?

e.g.: - Is Ali reading a story ?

- Yes, he is. / No, he isn't.

- Are you running fast?

- Yes, I am.

- السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word + am / is / are + subject + (inf. + ing) .... ?

e.g.: - What is Ali doing ?

- Who is running fast ?

- المضارع المستمر في صيغة المبني للمجهول :

Object + am / is / are + being + p.p. ....

e.g.: - Ali is reading a story.

(active)

- A story is being read by Ali.

(passive)

- She is watering the plants.

(active)

- The plants are being watered by her.

(passive)

## Usage : الاستخدام

1 To express actions that are happening now : التعبير عن إحداث تقع الآن :

e.g.: - I am revising for my test. - They are watching Tom and Jerry.

2 To express actions that are taking place around the present

التعبير عن إحداث تقع حول الوقت الحاضر وليس بالضرورة الآن :

e.g.: - We are taking exams these days.

- I'm reading a story for Naguib Mahfouz.

3 To express future arrangements

يعبر عن حدث في المستقبل كامل الترتيبات (الموعد معروف والأطراف المشتركة في الحدث تعلم ذلك) :

e.g.: - Our aunt is leaving hospital tomorrow morning.

- They are travelling on Monday.

- يستخدم المضارع المستمر مع كلمات زمنية مثل :

## Key words :

now - at the moment - at present - still ما زال - Look ! - Listen ! - Watch out ! ..... etc.

- لاحظ : لا يستخدم المضارع المستمر مع أفعال الحواس والتفكير والعاطفة بل يأتي معهم

زمن المضارع البسيط مثل :



PART 1

astonish	دهش	hate	يكره	need	بحاج
see	يرى	believe	يصدق	hear	يسمع
owe	يدين	seem	يبدو	belong	يخص
know	يعرف	own	يمتلك	smell	يشم
concern	يهتم به/يتعلق به	lack	ينقص	possess	يمتلك
suppose	يفترض	consist	يتكون	like	يحب
prefer	يفضل	surprise	يفاجئ	contain	يحتوي على
love	يحب	realize	يدرك	taste	يتذوق
depend	يعتمد	matter	يهم	recognise	يتعرف على
understand	يفهم	deserve	يستحق	mean	يعنى
remember	يتذكر	want	يريد	have	يملك

لا يستخدم الفعل (have) بمعنى "يملك" في المضارع المستمر ولكن يضاف له (ing) إذا استخدم بمعنى غير المعنى الأساسي (يملك) :

- e.g. : - I have a shower.  
- I'm having a shower.  
- I'm having my breakfast now.
- أمتلك دش  
انني أخذ دشا  
يتناول أو يأكل

2 The Present Perfect Continuous Tense زمن المضارع التام المستمر

Formation : التكوين

Subject + have / has + been + inf. + ing

- وغالبا ما تكون في الجملة كلمات تدل على الاستمرار :

since... / for... / for... now / all +

- e.g. : - He has been working there ever since he graduated.  
- It has been raining for three days now.  
- I have been playing football for about ten years.

- لاحظ صيغة النفي :

Subject + hasn't / haven't + been + inf. + ing ...

- e.g. : - They haven't been sleeping all night.  
- Rodayna hasn't been learning English for this long time.

- لاحظ صيغتي السؤال :  
Have / Has + subject + been + inf. + ing ... ?

- e.g. : - Have you been playing tennis for an hour?  
Yes, we have (been playing tennis for an hour).  
- Has Rodayna been learning English for this long time?  
No, she hasn't (been learning English for this long time).

Question word أداة استفهام + have / has + subject + been + (inf. + ing) ... ?

- e.g. : - How long have you been playing tennis?  
- What has Rodayna been learning for this long time?

Usage : الاستخدام

- يستخدم المضارع التام المستمر للتعبير عن :

- حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال مستمرا حتي الوقت الحاضر :

- e.g. : - He's been training really hard since the last Olympic Games.  
- I have been learning English since I was eight years old.  
- He has been working for them for about two years.

- حدث تم بانتظام حيث بدأ في الماضي وأستمر حتي الآن :

- e.g. : - For the last few months, I've been playing squash regularly.  
- حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي وله اثر علي الحاضر (تفسير لموقف في الحاضر) :

A : You look tired. What have you been doing?

B : I have been serving customers all day.

- يستخدم هذا الزمن مع الأفعال التي تستغرق وقتا طويلا وتدل على الاستمرارية :

study, teach, learn, read, write, play, run, paint, sit,  
stand, lie, sleep, cook, wait, rain, .....

- e.g. : - It has been raining since I woke up.

- يُستخدم المضارع التام وليس المضارع التام المستمر في الحالات التالية :

- عند بناء جملة المضارع التام المستمر للمجهول تتحول إلى المضارع التام :

Object + have / has + been + p.p. ....

- e.g. : - I have been studying English since I was in primary one. (active)  
- English has been studied (by me) since I was in primary one. (passive)



هناك أفعال لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة عموماً ومنها المضارع التام المستمر وهي :  
 أفعال المشاعر والحواس والإدراك والملكية والرغبة بالإضافة إلى (be) كفعل أساسي:

astonish	يدهش	hate	يكره
need	يحتاج	see	يرى
believe	يصدق	hear	يسمع
owe	يدين	seem	يبدو
belong	يخص	know	يعرف
own	يملك	smell	يشم
concern	يهم/يتعلق بـ	lack	ينقص
possess	يملك	suppose	يفترض
consist	يتكون	like	يجب
prefer	يفضل	surprise	يتفاجئ
contain	يحتوي على	love	يجب
realize	يدرك	taste	يتذوق
depend	يعتمد	matter	يهم
recognize	يعترف على	understand	يفهم
deserve	يستحق	mean	يعني
remember	يتذكر	want	يريد

- e.g. : - I have been knowing Mr Ayman for a few months now. (x)  
 - I have known Mr Ayman for a few months now. (✓)  
 - Ashraf has been being in Aswan for only one night. (x)  
 - Ashraf has been in Aswan for only one night. (✓)

مع الأفعال اللحظية التي لا يستغرق حدوثها وقتاً (يمكن وصفه بالاستمرار) مثل :

receive – arrive – break down – crash ...

- e.g. : - A car has been crashing into a tree. (x)  
 - A car has crashed into a tree. (✓)

عند ذكر مرات حدوث الفعل ، ومن الكلمات الدالة على ذلك :

two / three ..... / many / a few / few / several / a lot of /

lots of / all / plenty of ...+ مفعول جمع

- e.g. : - I've been watching all the judo at the Olympics this year. (x)  
 - I've watched all the judo at the Olympics this year. (✓)  
 - I have been scoring lots of goals. (x)  
 - I have scored lots of goals. (✓)  
 - I have been playing for four different teams. (x)  
 - I have played for four different teams. (✓)

## Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- At the moment, she ..... to be a primary school teacher.  
 a. trains b. was training  
 c. is training d. has trained
- I ..... on this English exercise for the last hour !  
 a. have been working b. had worked  
 c. worked d. were you working
- They have been doing the homework ..... 6 o'clock.  
 a. for b. ago c. from d. since
- She has been cleaning the house ..... two hours now.  
 a. for b. ago c. from d. since
- We ..... here for 6 years now and we don't intend to move.  
 a. lived b. have been living  
 c. were living d. has lived
- The boys ..... games for 3 hours now.  
 a. have played b. have been playing  
 c. are playing d. play
- He has been learning French ..... the age of six.  
 a. for b. since c. while d. when
- Ahmed has been learning English ..... he was 7 years old.  
 a. for b. ago c. when d. since
- Ali has been travelling ..... the last five days.  
 a. for b. ago c. when d. since
- She ..... hard all day.  
 a. has been studying b. has been studied  
 c. had to be studied d. will be studied



## Kinds of Sentences

## A Linking words (Conjunctions)

## 1 Conjunctions that express contrast

أدوات ربط تدل على التناقض

1 تستخدم الروابط التالية لتدل على التناقض وتضع هذه الروابط قبل الجملة - فعل ...

although - though - even though - even if - but - yet - however + subject + verb

- e.g. : - Although Sami is upset, he keeps smiling.  
 - Even if this car is expensive, I am going to buy it.  
 - Ali was born in London, yet he can't speak English well.  
 - It is hot. However, I won't turn the fan on.

1 تستخدم الروابط التالية لتدل على التناقض وتضع هذه الروابط (noun or gerund)

In spite of - Despite - Regardless of + (gerund or noun)

- e.g. : - In spite of her old age, she isn't married yet.  
 - Regardless of his wealth, he isn't satisfied with his life.  
 - Despite being wealthy, he isn't satisfied with his life.

- لاحظ أنه يمكن التعبير عن التناقض باستخدام (Whatever, However) في بداية الجملة كالآتي :

However + ظرف / صفة / ظرف

- e.g. : - However tall he is, he can't play basketball.  
 - However hard he works, he doesn't get a promotion.

Whatever + اسم + فاعل + فعل + ...

- e.g. : - Whatever the wealth he has, he is sad.

- لاحظ أنه يمكن التعبير عن التناقض باستخدام (as) كالآتي :

as + فاعل + فعل + صفة / ظرف

- e.g. : - Short as he is, he can jump so high.  
 - Well as he plays, he doesn't win the match.

In spite of  
Despite

+ the fact that + subject + فعل + verb

- e.g. : - Despite the fact that he is ill, he can work hard.

## 2 Conjunctions that express cause

روابط تدل على السبب

1 للتعبير عن السبب تستخدم الروابط التالية ويضعها قبل الجملة (فاعل + فعل + ... ) :

(because - as - since) + subject + verb

- e.g. : - She won the competition because she worked hard.

Because  
As  
Since

Soha has a heart problem, she can't do sport.

1 للتعبير عن السبب تستخدم الروابط التالية ويضعها (noun or gerund)

because of - due to - owing to - on account of -  
thanks to - through - for سبب + noun / (inf. + ing)

- e.g. : - My grandpa died due to a heart attack.  
 - Owing to his intelligence, he can do any difficult sum.  
 - Because of being ill, he went to hospital.

- لاحظ أنه يمكن استخدام (Being + adj) بمعنى (كونه / كونها / كونهم) للتعبير عن السبب :

- e.g. : - Being ill, he went to hospital.

- لاحظ أن هذه التعبيرات يمكن أن تأتي بعدها جملة كاملة :

Because of  
Owing to  
Due to  
Thanks to  
On account of

the fact that + subject + verb .....

- e.g. : - The teacher punished him because of being rude / because of the fact that he was rude.



### 3 Conjunctions that express result روابط تدل على النتيجة

تستخدم الروابط التالية للدلالة على النتيجة :

so - that is why - therefore - consequently - As a result of - Hence - thus

e.g. : - He was wet **so** he had a severe cold.

- Nada was born with a phobia of dogs **therefore** she can't stand seeing a dog in the street.

كذلك يمكن استخدام جملة  
so (adj. / adv.) that  
such (adj. + noun) that  
لتعبر عن النتيجة :

e.g. : - The book was **so** successful **that** it was sold like sweet.

- It was **such** a successful book **that** it was sold like sweet.

### 4 Conjunctions that express time روابط زمنية تدل على الزمن / الوقت

تستخدم الروابط الزمنية التالية للدلالة على علاقة زمنية بين حدثين ويأتي بعدها جملة (فاعل - فعل) :

When - While - As (Just as) - After - Before  
- By the time - till - until - As soon as

e.g. : - **While** it was raining, I fell down.

- **After** the train had left, Sally arrived at the station.

- **By the time** he got the prize, he had expected it.

- She didn't do the shopping **till** she had had her salary.

- We won't leave home **until** we have permission.

- **As soon as** Ali arrives, we will leave.

- لاحظ العلاقة بين الحدثين في الجمل السابقة.

- لاحظ أنه عند حذف الفاعل يستخدم (inf. + ing) بعد بعض هذه الروابط :

e.g. : - **While** raining, I fell down.

- يمكن استخدام (During) بدلاً من (While) ويشعرها (noun) :

e.g. : - I fell asleep **during** the film.

- لاحظ أنه تستخدم (On) بمعنى (When) ويشعرها (inf. + ing) أو (noun).

e.g. : - When she got the prize, she felt extremely excited.

- On getting the prize, she felt extremely excited.

- On his arrival, we started the party.

- يمكن استخدام (inf + ing) بعد (When) :

e.g. : - When reading the new novel written by Tom, he felt shocked.

### 5 Conditionals الجمل الشرطية

Present Simple → Present Simple  
• If زمن المضارع البسيط , زمن المضارع البسيط (Zero conditional)

e.g. : - If you **put** wood in water, it **floats**.

Present Simple → will + inf.  
• If زمن المضارع البسيط , زمن المستقبل البسيط (First conditional)

e.g. : - If I **remember** her address, I **will** tell you.

Past Simple → would + inf.  
• If زمن الماضي البسيط , could / might + inf. (Second conditional)

e.g. : If I **lost** Ahmed's CD, I **would** buy him another one.

Past perfect → would have + p.p.  
• If زمن الماضي التام , could / might + have + p.p. (Third conditional)

e.g. : If I **had been** more careful, I **wouldn't** have lost my book.

- يمكن استخدام "Were" مكان "If" في الحالة الثانية :

- If she **were** a tour guide, she **would** tell him about the monuments.

**Were** she a tour guide, she **would** tell him about the monuments.

- If he **played** well, he **would** win the game.

**Were** he to play well, he **would** win the game.

- يمكن استخدام (In case of) مكان (If) في الاثبات ويأتي بعدها اسم أو (inf. + ing) :

e.g. : If Ali **worked** hard, he **wouldn't** be fired from the work.

**In case of** working hard, Ali **wouldn't** be fired.



- يمكن استخدام ( But for / Without ) مكان ( If ) في النفي أو بدلاً من ( Unless ) ويأتي بعدها اسم أو ( int. + ing ) :

e.g. : - If Samia didn't eat vegetables, she wouldn't be healthy.  
Without eating vegetables, Samia wouldn't be healthy.

### 6 Conjunctions that express purpose روابط تعبر عن الغرض

1 Subject + present → so that  
in order that  
in the hope that من أجل / لكي  
+ فاعل + can / will / may + inf.  
e.g. : - We save money in the hope that we will buy a car.

2 Subject + past → so that  
in order that  
in the hope that + فاعل + could / would / might + inf.  
e.g. : - Ali went to the market so that he could buy some vegetables.

3 Subject + verb + to / so as to / in order to لكي + inf. المصدر  
e.g. : - She went there in order to enjoy the fine weather.  
- I study hard to reach my goal.

4 Subject + verb + not to / in order not to / so as not to + inf. لكي لا  
e.g. : - I go to bed early in order not to be late for school.

5 Subject + verb + in the hope of + inf. + ing  
e.g. : - I went home quickly in the hope of laying with my children before they slept.

6 Subject + verb + lest أن خشيّة أن + فاعل + inf. / should + inf.  
e.g. : - She turned away from the window lest any one see / should see her.

### 7 Conjunctions that express addition روابط المطفف والإضافة

1 and تستخدم "and" لربط جملتين بإضافة شيء إلى شيء آخر (تربط بين جملتين)  
e.g. : - We played tennis and went home.  
- Ahmed is studying and Rodayna is cooking.

2 Besides + noun or (inf. + ing) بالإضافة إلى

e.g. : - Besides doing homework, she helped her mother.  
- She helped her mother besides doing homework.

بالإضافة إلى ذلك (جملة) : Besides that + subject + فاعل + inf.  
e.g. : - She did her homework. Besides that she helped her mother.

3 in addition to + noun / (inf. + ing) بالإضافة إلى

e.g. : - In addition to doing homework, she helped her mother.  
- She helped her mother in addition to doing homework.

4 In addition + جملة بالإضافة إلى ذلك

- نستخدم in addition في أول الجملة أو في وسطها :  
e.g. : - In addition she did homework, she helped her mother.  
- She did homework. In addition, she helped her mother.

5 As well as + (inf. + ing). إذا كان فاعل الجملتين واحد بالإضافة إلى

e.g. : - We went to the market. We went to the zoo.  
- As well as going to the market, we went to the zoo.  
- إذا كان الفاعلان مختلفين بالجملتين فإن الفعل يتبع فاعل الجملة الأولى في حالة الربط به  
as well as كالتالي :

فعل يتبع فاعل الجملة الأولى ... + فاعل ثاني + as well as + فاعل أول

e.g. : - I as well as Ali have a car.  
- Eman as well as her brothers likes fish.

6 not only ..... but also (as well) ليس هنا فقط ولكن أيضًا

e.g. : - She not only arrived late, but she also forgot her books.  
- She not only arrived late, but she forgot her books as well.

- لاحظ : عند استخدام Not only في بداية الجملة نستخدم الفعل المساعد قبل الفاعل :  
e.g. : - Not only did she arrive late, but she also forgot her books.



7 Both ... and كلا من

e.g. : - Mr Ahmed is a doctor. His wife is a doctor.

- Both Mr Ahmed and his wife are doctors.

لاحظ : عند الربط by both ... and يكون الفعل في حالة الجمع

بأنى بعد "Both of" ضمير مفعول جمع (you, us, them) ويمكن استخدامه كفاعل أو مفعول للجملة

e.g. : - Both of the girls are polite.

- My aunt visited both of us yesterday.

8 Neither ... nor لا ... ولا

تستخدم neither ... nor لربط جملتين في حالة النفي

e.g. : - Rodayna isn't at home. Her brother isn't at home.

- Neither Rodayna nor her brother is at home.

لاحظ أن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني كالآتي :

e.g. : - Malak isn't lazy. Her sisters aren't lazy.

- Neither Malak nor her sisters are lazy.

عند استخدام Neither في أول الجملة يتقدم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل

e.g. : - I neither watched nor tried to watch the film.

- Neither did I watch nor tried to watch the film.

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- ..... Lemuel Gulliver was travelling at sea, there was a storm.  
a. Although b. If c. Because d. While
- They were accused of stealing money ..... they were innocent.  
a. despite b. although c. in spite of d. as
- He failed the exam ..... his intelligence.  
a. although b. however c. despite d. even though
- Cheap ..... the car was, I refused to buy it.  
a. however b. despite c. though d. as

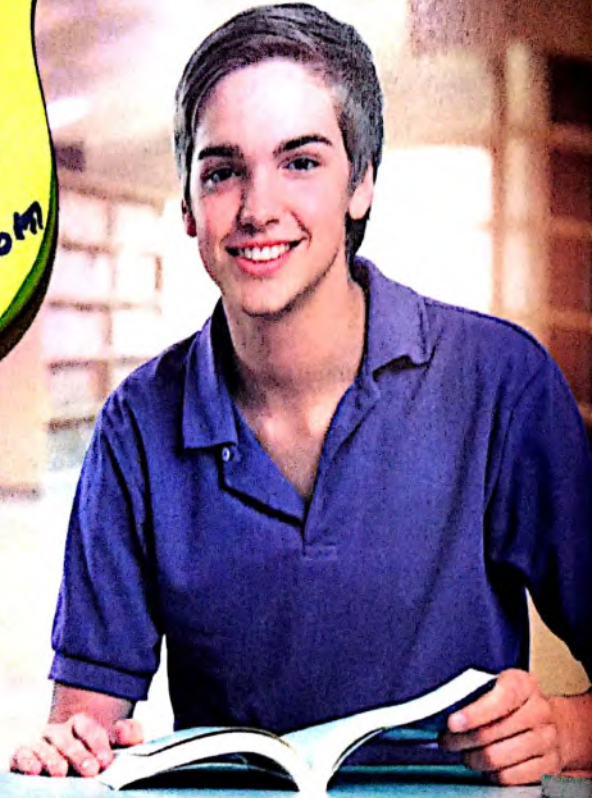
9 Kinds of Sentences

- They couldn't continue the race ..... the bad storm.  
a. owing to b. because c. since d. as
- He'd like to join the sports club ..... he can get fit.  
a. so as to b. as c. so that d. in order
- We visited Ahmed yesterday ..... congratulate him on his success.  
a. so that b. in order to c. so as d. because
- ..... did he get full marks but he was chosen as the ideal student as well.  
a. As well as b. Not only c. Beside d. In addition to
- ..... he was in debt, we decided to help him.  
a. Since b. Because of c. Owing to d. In spite of
- ..... cleaning the house, she did the shopping.  
a. In addition b. As well as c. However d. Also
- ..... you say, I'll never believe you.  
a. Despite b. However c. Whatever d. In spite
- ..... swimming makes me fit, I don't like it.  
a. Although b. Despite c. In spite d. Because
- I, as well as my friend, ..... to leave at once.  
a. am b. is c. are d. were
- Not only my brothers but also my sister ..... going to Alexandria.  
a. are b. is c. were d. have been
- Neither the library nor the bookshops ..... that book.  
a. has b. have c. is having d. are having





موقع  
التفوق  
ALTfWok.com



- 1- Reading Skill
- 2- Writing Skill
- 3- Translation

١. مهارة القراءة
٢. مهارة الكتابة
٣. الترجمة

## تنويه

تابع مستواك أولاً  
بأول إلكتروني



1

## Reading Skill

EL-MONASSER Reading Skill

## مهارة القراءة

How to answer a comprehension :

- \* كيفية الإجابة على قطعة الفهم :
- قطعة الفهم عبارة عن نص، يجيب الطالب على ثلاثة أسئلة (تبدأ بأدوات استفهام) :
- لا بد أن تقيس أسئلة قطعة الفهم المهارات التالية :

## 1 Giving the main idea or understanding reference

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية أو فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

## Topic الموضوع

- The topic / main idea of the passage is .....

= The text is mainly about .....

- موضوع النص هو / الفكرة الرئيسية للنص هي .....

= What is the topic / main idea of the passage?

= ما هو موضوع النص / الفكرة الرئيسية؟

- Which of the following titles best summarizes the main idea of the passage?

- أي من العناوين التالية توجز الفكرة الرئيسية للنص ؟

## Source المصدر

- This passage is part of / taken from / extracted from .....

- هذا النص هو جزء من / مأخوذ من / مقتبس من .....

## Title العنوان

- Which of the following would be the best title for the passage / story / article / extract?

- أي مما يلي يُعد العنوان الأفضل للقطعة / للقصة / للمقال / للاقتباس؟



## Reference

- The underlined word / pronoun refers to .....  
الكلمة / الضمير الذي تحته خط يشير إلى .....

## 2 Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

تخمين معنى مفردة لفوية في النص  
وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

## Synonym المرادف / المصنوع

- In line ..... the word ..... is closest in meaning to .....  
في سطر رقم ..... كلمة ..... أقرب ما يكون في المعنى لـ .....
- The underlined word ..... gives the meaning of .....  
الكلمة التي تحته خط ..... تعطي معنى .....
- Which of the following is equivalent in meaning to ..... ?  
أي مما يلي مرادف في المعنى لـ ..... ؟
- The word ..... in the passage gives the synonym of .....  
كلمة ..... في النص تعطي مرادف .....

## Antonym التضاد / العكس

- In the ..... paragraph, the word ..... is the antonym of .....  
في الفقرة رقم ..... كلمة ..... مضاد لـ .....
- The word ..... in the passage gives the opposite of .....  
كلمة ..... في النص تعطي عكس .....
- Which of the following gives the antonym of ..... ?  
أي مما يلي مضاد في المعنى لـ ..... ؟
- The word ..... has two meanings in the passage. Explain.  
كلمة ..... لها معنيين في النص. وضح .....

## 3 Understanding details and extracting information

فهم التفاصيل واستخراج المعلومات

وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

Yes / No questions

Wh-questions

- أسئلة تبدأ بفعل مساعد

- أسئلة تبدأ بكلمات استفهام

- أدوات وتعابير استفهامية هامة :

about whom	عن من	since when	منذ متى
for how long	لكم من الوقت	to what extent	إلى أي مدى
for whom	لأجل من	to whom	إلى من
from where	من أين	what	ما / ماذا
how	كيف	what ... for = for what	لماذا
how come	لماذا	what colour	ما لون
how far	كم بعد / لأي مدى	what size	ما حجم
how high	كم ارتفاع	what time	ما وقت
how long	كم طول المدة / المسافة	when	متى
how many	كم عدد	where	أين
how many times	كم مرة	where ... to	إلى أين
how much	كم كمية / كم ثمن	which	أي
how often	كم مرة	who	من (فاعل أو متعول غائب)
how old	كم عمر	whom	من (متعول غائب)
how tall	كم طول	whose	لن / ملك من
in / at which	في أي	why	لماذا
in what way	بأي طريقة	with whom	مع من



ونماذج أخرى مثل :

## True / Correct صحيح

- According to the passage, all of the following is true EXCEPT .....  
- حسب ما ورد في النص، فكل ما يلي صحيح ما عدا .....
- Based on the passage, which of the following is true about ..... ?  
- حسب ما ورد في النص، أي مما يلي يُعدُّ صحيحاً بما يخص .....

## False / incorrect خاطئ

- According to the passage, all of the following is false EXCEPT .....  
- حسب ما ورد في النص، فكل ما يلي خطأ ما عدا .....
- Based on the passage, what is probably untrue about ..... ?  
- حسب ما ورد في النص، أي مما يلي يُعدُّ غير صحيح بما يخص .....

## 4 Critical Thinking Skill مهارة التفكير النقدي

- عن أسئلة التفكير النقدي المرتبطة بقطع الفهم :
- تعتمد أسئلة التفكير النقدي على الفكرة الرئيسية للنص أو رأي / وجهة نظر القارئ.
- لا تطلب هذه الأسئلة معلومات مباشرة موجودة في النص.
- لابد أن تكون إجابة سؤال التفكير النقدي كما يلي :
- ١. تدل على فهم الموضوع والسؤال. \* منطقية أو عقلانية. \* صحة من الناحية العلمية.

## - نماذج من أسئلة التفكير النقدي :

- ١ تركر بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على الرأي الشخصي للطالب بخصوص الكاتب أو الأفكار الموجودة بالنص مثل :
- Do you think this passage was written by a young man or an old person? What showed this to you?  
- هل تظن أن كاتب هذا النص شاب أم شخص كبير في السن؟ ما الذي أوضح لك بذلك؟
- What job do you think the writer of this passage is? How do you know?  
- في رأيك، ما وظيفة كاتب هذا النص؟ كيف تعرف ذلك؟

## Reading Skill

تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على قياس القدرة على التعبير عن اتفاق أو اختلاف مع ما ورد في النص مع ذكر السبب :

- Do you agree with the ideas the writer has introduced / raised? Why / Why not?  
- هل تتفق مع الأفكار التي طرحها الكاتب؟ لم / لم لا؟
- Does the writer's idea make sense to you? Why / Why not?  
- هل فكرة الكاتب مفهومة لديك؟ لم / لم لا؟

- ٢ تركر بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على طلب أمثلة من عند الطالب لإثبات صحة أو خطأ ما ورد بالنص :
- What do you think of what the writer has said? Give examples of your own that can prove / disprove that.  
- ما رأيك فيما قاله الكاتب؟ اذكر أمثلة من عندك تثبت صحة أو خطأ ذلك.
- How would you put ..... into your own words?  
- كيف يمكنك صياغة ..... بأسلوبك؟
- What do you think would be an example of ..... ?  
- ماذا تعتقد أنه مثلاً لـ ..... ؟
- = Give an example of ..... = Illustrate .....  
- اذكر مثلاً لـ ..... / وضح .....

- ٣ تركر بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على أن يفترض الطالب أنه في موقف معين وكيف سيكون رد فعله :
- If you were the writer, would you have the same point of view? Give your reason(s).  
- لو كنت مكان الكاتب، هل كنت ستنتهي نفس الرأي؟ اذكر السبب / الأسباب.
- What would you (do) if you were in the writer's position? Explain why.  
- ما الذي كنت (ستفعله) لو أنك في مكان الكاتب؟ وضح السبب.
- If ..... hadn't ....., what do you think would have happened?  
- لو ..... لم يكن ..... ، ماذا تعتقد كان سيحدث ؟



٥ تركّز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على تقييم عرض الكاتب للموضوع وهل هو مناسب أم لا :

- Has the writer succeeded in making his ideas clear? Explain your opinion in detail.
- هل نجح الكاتب في توضيح أفكاره؟ وضع وجهة نظرك بالتفصيل.
- Is the writer's style suitable for the topic? How did he develop his ideas?
- هل أسلوب الكاتب مناسب للموضوع؟ كيف طوّر أفكاره؟

٦ تركّز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على تخيل ردود أفعال فئات معينة من الناس تجاه الأفكار الواردة بالنص :

- How do you think poor people / patients would view these .....? Illustrate.
- في رأيك، كيف سيكون رأى الفقراء / المرضى تجاه ذلك .....؟ وضع.
- How would people who differ in age or gender react to .....?
- كيف سيكون رد فعل الناس الذين يختلفون في العمر أو الجنس تجاه .....؟

٧ تركّز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على التعبير عن المغزى أو الدروس المستفادة أو التقييم الموجودة بالنص :

- How can you make use of (benefit from) .....?
- كيف يمكنك أن تستفيد من .....؟
- How could ..... be put into practice?
- كيف يمكن تطبيق .....؟
- What is the moral of the story?
- ما المغزى الأخلاقي للقصة؟

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق

**Vocabulary used in Reading comprehension questions :**  
مفردات بفاعلة الاستخدام في الأسئلة المرتبطة بفهم المقام

- لابد من مراجعة المفردات التالية، فستساعدك على فهم الأسئلة الواردة على نص القراءة :

abbreviation	اختصار	lead to	يؤدي إلى
according to	طبقاً لـ	lesson	درس
advantages	مزايا	line	سطر
analyse	يحلل	main idea	فكرة رئيسية
analysis	تحليل	make a comment	يعلق
antonym	مضاد / عكس	make clear	يوضح
apply to	ينطبق على	meaning	معنى
article	مقال	mention	يذكر
author	مؤلف	merits = advantages	مزايا
back with evidence	يدعم بالدليل	moral	مغزى أخلاقي
based on	قائم على	moralities	قيم أخلاقية
be against	بعارض	opinion	رأى
be for	يؤيد	opposite	عكس
bold	بارز	other than	بخلاف / غير ذلك
case	قضية	paragraph	فقرة
choice	اختيار	paraphrase	بعد صياغة
claim	يدعى / يزعم	passage	قطعة القراءة
classification	تصنيف	perspective	منظور
classify	يُصنّف	point of view	رأى / وجهة نظر
comment	علق / تعليق	practical	عملي



core	جوهر / لب	predict	يتنبأ
demerits = disadvantages	عيوب	principle	مبدأ
discuss	ناقش	pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب
effect	أثر / تأثير	quality	سمة / ميزة
equal	مساوي	rather than	بدلاً من
equivalent	مرادف	reject	يعارض / يرفض
essay	مقال	result in	يؤدي إلى
essence	جوهر / لب	short for	اختصار لـ
example	مثال	simplify	يُبسِّط
explain	شرح / يفسر	state	يذكر
express	يعبر عن	summarise	يُلخِّص
extra	إضافي / آخر	support	بدعم
impact	انطباع / أثر	synonym	مرادف
impression	انطباع / تأثير	underlined	تحت خط
introduce	يُطرح / يقدم	value	قيمة
		writer	كاتب

### Read and learn

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

All the different plants and animals in a natural community are in a state of balance. This balance is achieved by the plants and animals interacting with each other and with their non-living surrounding. An example of a natural community is woodland, and woodland is usually dominated by a particular species but there are also many other plants.

The plants of a community are the producers : they use carbon dioxide, oxygen, water and nitrogen to build up their tissues using energy in the form of sunlight. The plant tissues form food for the plant eating animals (herbivores) which are in turn eaten by the flesh-eating animals (carnivores). Thus, plants produce the basic food supply for all animals of the community. The animals themselves are the consumers, and are either herbivores or carnivores in a woodland community.

Examples of herbivores in a woodland community are rabbits, deer, mice, and snails, and insects, such as aphids and caterpillars. The herbivores are sometimes eaten by the carnivores. Woodland carnivores are of all sizes.

Some carnivores feed on herbivores and some feed on the smaller carnivores, while some feed on both : a tawny owl will eat beetles and shrews as well as voles and mice. These food relationships between the different members of the community are known as food chains or food webs. All food chains start with plants. The links of the chains are formed by the herbivores that eat the plants and the carnivores that feed on the herbivores. There are some organisms at the base of a food chain than at the top : for example, there are many more green plants than carnivores in a community.

Another important section of the community is made up of the decomposers. They include the bacteria and fungi that live in the soil and feed on dead animals and plants. By doing this, they break down the tissues of the dead organisms and release mineral salts into the soil.

### Understanding details & extracting information فهم التفاصيل واستخراج المعلومات

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Decomposers ..... soil for plants.  
a. disturb      b. enrich      c. kill      d. spoil
- The sun is ..... nutrition in plants.  
a. catalyst      b. an element  
c. responsible for      d. secondary for
- According to the passage, a natural community comprises .....  
a. living organisms      b. non-living organisms  
c. neither of them      d. both of them



Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

4. The underlined word "caterpillars" in the passage is similar in size to \_\_\_\_\_.
- a. forests      b. mice      c. moth      d. snails

Critical thinking skill

B. Answer the following questions :

5. According to the passage, what do you think the writer's message to man?
- a. Man should interact with the elements of nature to benefit from them.  
b. Man should interact with the elements of nature to damage them.  
c. Man should be indifferent.  
d. Man should leave the earth.
6. What are the three components of a food chain mentioned in the passage?
- a. Pasta, chili & meat.  
b. Vegetable, carrots & parsley.  
c. Plants, herbivores & carnivores.  
d. Peas, fungi & mushrooms.
7. From your view point, what is meant by the balance in the passage?
- a. balance between man and woman.  
b. balance between companies and producers.  
c. balance between herbivores and carnivores.  
d. balance between elements of nature.
8. Woodland has \_\_\_\_\_ species of plants.
- a. particular      b. common      c. surrounding      d. interacting
9. Woodland \_\_\_\_\_ are of all sizes.
- a. herbivores      b. carnivores      c. reptiles      d. mammals
10. All food Chains start with \_\_\_\_\_.
- a. meat      b. plants      c. men      d. organisms

Practise by yourself

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

People may be divided into two types, winners and losers. Winners are able to change their situations and become independent by being responsible for their own lives. They don't blame others for their mistakes. They do their own thinking. They listen to others and evaluate what they say, and then they make up their minds.

Although they may fail at times, yet they keep self-confidence. Winners overcome their bad experiences. They enjoy work, play, food and the world of nature. They freely enjoy themselves, but they can postpone it if duty calls.

Losers, on the other hand, never learn to take responsibility for their own lives. There are many causes why people can become losers : disease, poor nutrition, cruelty, unhappy relationships and bad experiences. These can interfere with the normal progress towards becoming a winner. But whereas winners fight these situations, losers hang onto them and use them as excuses. Losers usually feel anxious, unhappy and bored. They are afraid to try new things and often repeat their own mistakes again and again.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When the winners fail at times, they \_\_\_\_\_.
- a. always keep their self-confidence  
b. are afraid to try new things  
c. always repeat their own mistakes  
d. spend their time waiting
2. Losers are people who \_\_\_\_\_.
- a. try to change      b. blame others for their mistakes  
c. overcome their bad mistakes      d. learn to take responsibility
3. The opposite of "hang onto situations" in the last paragraph is \_\_\_\_\_.
- a. give them up      b. delay them  
c. dream of them      d. be independent
4. The underlined phrase "on the other hand" means \_\_\_\_\_.
- a. however      b. because      c. as      d. so



5. Winners are .....  
 a. responsible b. dependent c. careless d. lazy
6. Losers need to .....  
 a. change their ideas about others  
 b. stay losers forever  
 c. hate winners  
 d. fight winners
7. Which of the following is correct ?  
 a. People should turn failure into success.  
 b. People can't succeed.  
 c. People can't challenge to win.  
 d. People should be careless.
8. The word "anxious" has the same meaning of .....  
 a. brave b. responsible c. dependent d. worried
9. Losers are afraid to ..... new things .  
 a. give b. try c. repeat d. stay
10. One of the causes of being a loser is .....  
 a. good nutrition b. kindness  
 c. bad nutrition d. good relationships



Forms of composition you have to master for the exam  
 النصوص التركيبية التي يجب ان تتقنها للتفوق

عزيزي الطالب / عزيزتي الطالبة :  
 - لقد أصبحت مهارة الكتابة ركيزة أساسية في نظام التقييم الجديد ، وعلى الطالب أن ينمي هذه المهارة  
 لتصل لدرجة الإتقان ويكون مستعداً للكتابة عن أي موضوع ، وبصفة عامة يجب أن يتقن الطالب كتابة  
 جميع النصوص التالية :

- 1 A narrative essay /short story
- 2 A descriptive essay
- 3 A comparative/argumentative essay

مقال سردى أو قصة قصيرة  
 مقال وصفي

مقال مقارن (مقارنة بين الأشياء - لإظهار التشابه والاختلاف) / مقال جدلى

• Different forms like : formal and informal emails, job description, cooking recipes, letters, invitation cards, a book review or brochure.  
 جميع مختلفة مثل : رسالة البريد الإلكتروني الرسمية وغير الرسمية - وصف الوظائف - وصفات الطهي -  
 الخطابات - بطاقات الدعوة - عرض نقدي لكتاب - نشرة ... إلخ

ما المطلوب منك في الامتحان بخصوص الموضوع الإنشائي؟

- كتابة حوالى (١٥٠) كلمة بأحد النصوص (مقال - قصة ...)
- يتم إعطاء موضوعين أو أكثر لاختيار أحدهم للكتابة عنه
- يتم صياغة رأس الموضوع على شكل:  
 - عبارة قد تحتوي على العنوان المطلوب مباشرة  
 - حكمة أو قول مأثور يتخذ الطالب محوراً أساسياً لكتابة الموضوع الإنشائي  
 - سؤال مباشر

أمثلة :

Write about 150 words on ONE only of the following topics :

- An essay or short story about the statement: "For every joy, there is a price to pay."



- An essay or short story about the statement: "Setting a goal for yourself is the first step to achieve your ambition."
- Air pollution
- Why is it necessary to develop education in Egypt?

- وفيما يلي سيتم عرض مخطط لكيفية كتابة أهم ثلاث أشكال تعليمية وهي :

1 Essay writing

كتابة المقال

2 Short story writing

كتابة القصة القصيرة

## 1 Essay Writing

كتابة المقال

- ما الفرق بين الفقرة ( Paragraph ) والمقال ( Essay ) ؟

- الفقرة ( Paragraph ) عبارة عن مجموعة من الجمل تتعلق بفكرة معينة.
- المقال ( Essay ) عبارة عن مجموعة من الفقرات ( Paragraphs ) تناقش كل واحدة منها فكرة فرعية متعلقة بالفكرة الرئيسية للمقال ككل.
- يُفترض أن يحتوي المقال على أربعة فقرات على الأقل.

- إرشادات هامة لكتابة كل فقرة من فقرات المقال.

- عند كتابة كل فقرة من فقرات المقال، هناك إرشادات هامة يجب اتباعها، وذلك لإخراج المقال بشكل جيد من حيث الشكل ومن حيث المضمون:

- من حيث الشكل Form

- تحسين الخط وترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.
- ترك مسافة صغيرة ( ١ سم تقريباً ) في بداية السطر الأول فقط من كل فقرة.
- لا بد أن تبدأ كل جملة بحرف ( Capital ).
- وضع نقطة ( . ) في نهاية كل جملة، أو علامة استفهام ( ? ) في نهاية السؤال.

- من حيث المضمون Content

- يجب الاهتمام بالفكرة التي تعبر عنها الفقرة وتسلسلها مع أفكار الموضوع ككل.
- من المهم جداً أن تلتزم بالحدث عن الفكرة المطلوبة موضوعية وبساطة.
- ابدأ الفقرة بـ ( topic sentence ) أي جملة رئيسية تحتوي على الفكرة التي تناقشها الفقرة.
- لا بد من تنوع بدايات الجمل.
- استخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب للموضوع الذي تكتبه.
- استخدم جمل بسيطة حتى لا تقع في أخطاء، أنت في غنى عنها.

## The Form of the Essay

الشكل العام للمقال

Title العنوان

Education and Technology

→ It is clear that technology has made it easier to get, store and use information. That's what has made it important to use modern technology in the field of education. In this essay, I'm going to write about the forms of technology we can use in education and how they will make the educational process more effective and enjoyable.

→ Computers can be used to store and control electronic information. A teacher can use his or her computer to prepare lessons in a more attractive way. Smart boards have partly replaced traditional blackboards. A smart board makes learning more interactive and exciting. Children learn from videos that are available on the internet. This in turn will make the education process more enjoyable and effective.

→ Modern technology will make education more effective. A student will be able to search for information in different sources. With the help of their teachers, students will learn for life not for exams. Most exams will be done online. No stressing exams will make students and their parents suffer any more.

→ To conclude, the use of modern technology in the educational field will be very useful. However, there's a long way to go before achieving this. So, every citizen must be patient and cooperative.

المقدمة

Identiation

المقدمة في أول كل فقرة

المقدمة

المقدمة الأساسية

المقدمة الختامية



The main parts of the essay المقدمة

(1) Introduction :

- هي الفقرة الأولى في المقال وتطرح الفكرة أو الهدف من كتابة الموضوع. وكيف سيتم تسلسل وعرض الأفكار.

- بالنسبة للطالب الذي يجيد الكتابة، هناك أساليب مختلفة يمكن أن يبدأ بها فقرة المقدمة مثل :

1) جملة عامة تعبر بها عن الفكرة التي يدور حولها الموضوع :

- مثال : عند كتابة موضوع عن دور المعلم "The role of teachers" يمكن أن تبدأ كالتالي :
- No one can deny that teachers play a very important role in both students' education and their personal lives.
- لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن المعلمين يلعبون دوراً هاماً في تعليم الطلاب وحياتهم الخاصة على السواء.
- Or :
- We all owe much to our teachers and the important influence they have on our lives.
- جميعنا ندين بالكثير للمعلمين وتأثيرهم المهم في حياتنا.

2) حكمة أو مثل :

- A good teacher can inspire hope, ignite the imagination, and instill a love of learning.
- يمكن للمعلم الجيد أن يلهم الأمل وشعل الخيال ويغرس حب التعلم.

3) جملة تتضمن تعريف بالموضوع :

- A good teacher is not that person who gives the answers out to students but understands their needs and challenges and gives them tools of success.
- المعلم الجيد ليس مجرد شخص يقدم الإجابات للطلاب، ولكنه يفهم احتياجاتهم وتحدياتهم ويوفر أدوات لمساعدتهم على النجاح.

1) سؤال عام يتم طرحه في البداية لإثارة الموضوع :  
What role do teachers play in shaping the future of the nation?

- ما الدور الذي يلعبه المعلمون في صياغة مستقبل الأمة؟

بعض الجمل الافتتاحية التي تصلح لموضوعات المقالات الإيجابية

- بالنسبة للطالب الذي لا يجيد الكتابة، هناك مقدمات يمكن أن تساعد مثل :

- We all agree that ... is one of the most important things in our life and has its vital role nowadays.
- نتفق جميعاً أن ... واحد من أهم الأشياء في حياتنا وله دوراً حيوياً هذه الأيام.
- We all admit the importance and necessity of ... in our life.
- كلنا نقر بأهمية وضرورة ... في حياتنا.
- No wonder if we say that ... has (have) its (their) good and positive effects on us.
- لا عجب إذا قلنا أن ... له آثار طيبة وإيجابية علينا جميعاً.
- We all agree that .... is (are) very necessary and plays (play) an important part in our life.
- كلنا نتفق أن ... ضروري جداً ويلعب دوراً هاماً في حياتنا.
- We should put into consideration that ... has (have) become one (some) of the most important things in everyone's life.
- يجب أن نضع في الاعتبار أن ... قد أصبح واحداً من أهم الأشياء في حياة كل شخص.
- In my opinion, ... is really important and necessary nowadays. It may have good and positive effects on all of us. I think so because ... may bring all the good to our society.
- في رأيي ... هو حقاً مهم وضروري هذه الأيام وقد يكون له الأثر الطيب والإيجابي علينا جميعاً وإنني أعتقد ذلك لأن ... قد يعود بالنفع على مجتمعنا.
- No one can deny that ... plays a very important role in our life.
- لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن ... يلعب دوراً هاماً في حياتنا.
- There is no doubt that this subject has affected our thought and caused a great impact on us.
- لا شك أن هذا الموضوع قد أثر على فكرنا وأحدث تأثيراً بالغاً علينا.
- لاحظ أنه إذا كان الموضوع اسم يراعى استخدام أفعال تناسب الفاعل.



## بعض الجمل الافتتاحية التي تعلم لموضوعات المقالات السببية

• In my opinion, ... is serious and harmful nowadays. It may have bad and negative effects on all of us. I think so because ... may bring evils to our society.

- من وجهة نظري ... خطير وضار هذه الأيام. وقد يكون له آثار سلبية وسلبية علينا جميعاً. وأني أعتقد ذلك لأن ... قد يجلب الشرور إلى مجتمعنا

• There is no doubt that ... is one of the most dangerous phenomena in our life and has its bad and negative effects nowadays.

- مما لا شك فيه أن ... هي واحدة من أخطر الظواهر في حياتنا وكذلك له الأثر السلبى والسلبى في وقتنا هذا

• Frankly speaking, ... is one of the worst things in our life. Thus, our state spares no effort to fight it.

- بصراحة أقول أن ... واحداً من أسوأ الأشياء في حياتنا. وعلى هذا فإن دولتنا لا تفرح جهداً لكي تكافح وتقاوم هذا الشيء.

## (2) Body :

## مثل الموضوع (الجزء الرئيسى)

- لكي يكون المقال الذي تكتبه معبراً ومفهوماً وموثوقاً، عليك مراعاة ما يلي :

1. اقرأ عناوين الموضوعات جيداً واختر أفضلهم وأسهلهم بالنسبة لك.
2. تأكد أنك تكتب عن الموضوع المطلوب.
3. لا بد من تقسيم الموضوع لعدد من الأفكار.
4. تحدث عن كل فكرة في فقرة مستقلة.
5. استخدم جمل بسيطة وواضحة.
6. تجنب الكتابة بضمير المتكلم (إلا إذا كنت تتحدث عن شيء يخصك مثل هواياتك أو عاداتك أو شيء مفضل لديك ... إلخ).
7. يجب تنوع بدايات الجمل. ولتحقيق هذا الهدف يمكنك أن تستخدم ما يناسب من العبارات التالية في بدايات الجمل :

- Everyone knows that + جملة

- I don't exaggerate when I say that + جملة

- I reveal no secret when I say that + جملة

- It can't be denied that + جملة

- It goes without saying that + جملة

- يعرف الجميع أن ...

- لست أبالغ عندما أقول أن ...

- لا أفشى سراً عندما أقول أن ...

- لا أحد يمكنه أن ينكر أن ...

- غنى عن البيان أن ...

جملة + It is crystal clear that

جملة + It is known that

جملة + It is taken for granted that

جملة + There is no doubt that

من الواضح تماماً أن ...

من المعروف أن ...

من المسلم به أن ...

مما لا شك فيه ...

8. عند التعبير عن رأيك الخاص يمكن أن تبدأ جملتك بأحد التعبيرات التالية :

I think / believe that ... أعتقد أن ...

In my opinion, ... من وجهة نظري ...

As far as I am concerned, ... على حد علمي ...

9. عندما تريد أن تعطي مثالاً أبداً جملتك بـ :

For example, ... / For instance, ... على سبيل المثال ...

## (3) Conclusion :

## الخاتمة (الخلاصة)

- غالباً ما تتضمن فقرة الخاتمة ملخصاً (summary) للأفكار التي تم التعبير عنها أو النتيجة التي وصلت إليها.

- هذه النتيجة قد تكون نصيحة أو تحذير أو إعطاء رأي أو غيره.

## بعض الجمل الختامية التي يمكن استخدامها في الفقرات الختامية للمقال

• Finally, it is quite clear that ... (الموضوع) ... is really ... (صفة).

- أخيراً، من الواضح أن ... فعلاً ...

• I can end my speech saying that...

- يمكنني أن أنهى حديثي بالقول أن ...

• In brief, I think that ... is really ... باختصار، أعتقد أن ... يكون حقاً ...

• In the end, I hope I had pointed out all the aspects of this subject and made it clear. في الختام، أتمنى أن أكون قد تطرقت إلى كل جوانب الموضوع وجعلته واضحاً.

• To conclude, I hope my words were enough to illuminate the most vital sides of this subject.

- ختاماً، أتمنى أن تكون كلماتي كانت كافية لإلقاء الضوء على أكثر جوانب هذا الموضوع أهمية.

• To sum up, one can say that ... is really ...

- الخلاصة، يمكن للمرء أن يقول أن ... يكون فعلاً ...



## 2 Short Story writing كتابة القصة القصيرة

- ما الفرق بين المقال (Essay) والقصة القصيرة (Short story) ؟

- المقال (Essay) عبارة عن عرض أو نقاش لفكرة رئيسة عن طريق تقسيمها لمجموعة أفكار مرتبة. ويكون العرض موضوعي ومباشر.
- القصة القصيرة (Short story) عبارة عن وصف لموقف معين أو سرد لأحداث معينة.
- للقصة عناصر معينة مثل : الحكمة - الشخصيات - المكان والزمان - الحوار - المعنى الأخلاقي ... إلخ.

- ما أوجه التشابه بين المقال (Essay) والقصة القصيرة (Short story) ؟

- التشابه فقط يكون في استخدام اللغة، فالقصة مثل المقال تنقسم إلى فقرات (Paragraphs) يتناول كل منها فكرة معينة.
- القصة المطلوبة في نفس حجم المقال حوالي (١٥٠) كلمة.
- لابد من استخدام لغة بسيطة واضحة.
- يجب مراعاة التسلسل الزمني للأحداث.
- لابد من مراعاة علامات الترقيم.

## إرشادات هامة لكتابة القصة القصيرة :

- عند كتابة كل قصة قصيرة، هناك إرشادات هامة يجب اتباعها، وذلك لإخراج القصة بشكل جيد من حيث الشكل ومن حيث المضمون :

## (1) Plot حبكة القصة (الأحداث)

- وهي الأسلوب المُحكَّم الذي يتم به عرض الأحداث وتصاعدها وصولاً لقروة السوقف حتى الوصول للنهاية .

## (2) Setting المكان والزمان

- لابد من تحديد المدى الزمني والمكان الذي تدور فيه الأحداث.

## (3) Characters الشخصيات

- يجب الاهتمام بعرض وتطوير الشخصيات حتى تبدو حقيقية بالنسبة للقارئ. فالشخصيات هي التي تقوم بالأحداث في القصة ولابد أن تتطور مع تطور الأحداث.

## (4) Narrating السرد

- يجب الاهتمام بأسلوب الكتابة، واستخدام الجمل القصيرة يعطى تشويقاً ويجعل تسلسل الأحداث أكثر وضوحاً.

## (5) Moral المعنى الأخلاقي

- لابد أن يكون للقصة مغزى أخلاقي أو درس مستفاد يخرج به القارئ.

## Short Story Model

## نموذج للقصة القصيرة

## A situation of great fear

I lived in a small village where most farmers kept dogs to guard their animals and farms. They regarded dogs as a kind of danger alarm at night because dogs barked when they saw strangers in the streets. When farmers heard dogs' barking at night, they got ready to face the expected danger.

I was a young boy of about five when this situation took place. My uncle, who was a young man then, asked me to go with him to the farm. My father didn't want me to go but when I started to cry, he allowed me to go.

There on the farm, my uncle was busy doing some jobs here and there. I wandered around the field. I didn't realise that I had gone far away from my uncle.

Suddenly, I found myself face to face with a party of five large dogs. They all looked at me in a frightening way, their mouths were open and their tongues were hanging out.

I turned around and started to run. Fear made my legs weak. I was breathless and had no power to run. In seconds I was on the ground and the dogs surrounded me. I felt it was the end.

I was saved by a farmer who was in a nearby field. He carried me home where he told my father what had happened. I have never liked dogs since then.

موقع التفوق AltFwok.com







(د) اقرأ النص الذي لمت بترجمته ، هل فهمت نفس المعنى الذي فهمته من النص الأصلي؟ هل وصل إليك من النص المترجم نفس الإحساس الذي يصل من النص الأصلي؟ إذا لم يصل إليك نفس المعنى بنفس الإحساس ، فالترجمة غير سليمة.

## Part 1 Translation from Arabic into English

### الترجمة من اللغة العربية إلى الإنجليزية

#### 1 Starting the English Sentence كيفية بدء الجملة الإنجليزية

السؤال : كيف أبدأ الجملة الإنجليزية في الترجمة ؟

(1) إذا كانت جملة خبرية مبنية للمعلوم فهي تبدأ بالفاعل:

مثال : اكتشف الدكتور فاروق الباز المياه الجوفية تحت الصحراء الغربية.

- Dr Farouk El-Baz discovered underground water under the Western Desert.

(ب) إذا كانت جملة خبرية مبنية للمجهول فهي تبدأ بالمفعول الذي يتوب عن الفاعل.

مثال : بُني السد العالي لتخزين مياه النيل.

- The High Dam was built to store the water of the Nile.

(ج) إذا كانت جملة أمر تكون الترجمة كالتالي :

يتكون الأمر المثبت في اللغة الإنجليزية من :

تكملة + مفعول + Inf. الفعل في المصدر

مثال : اعمل بجد واحصل علي قدر كاف من النوم.

- Work hard and get enough sleep.

- يمكن أن توضع "always" في بداية جملة الأمر المثبت لتقوية المعنى :

مثال : دوماً ساعد الآخرين وقت الحاجة.

- Always help others in need.

- يتكون الأمر المنفي (النهي) في اللغة الإنجليزية من :

تكملة + مفعول + Don't + inf. الفعل في المصدر

مثال : لا تأخذ أي أدوية دون استشارة الطبيب.

- Don't take any medicines without consulting the doctor.

- يمكن أن تستخدم "Never" بدلاً من "Don't" في بداية جملة النهي لتقوية المعنى :

مثال : إياك أن تصادق الأشرار.

- Never make friends with evil people.

(د) إذا كنت تترجم سؤالاً بـ "هل" :

أبدأ بأحد الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة التالية حسب الزمن:  
Am / Is / Are / Was / Were / Do / Does / Did / Have / Has / Had  
Can / Could / Will / Would / Shall / Should / May / Might / Must / Ought /  
Need / Dare ....

- يأتي بعد الفعل المساعد أو الناقص فاعل إذا كان السؤال مبنياً للمعلوم :

مثال : هل سبق أن قرأت رواية لتشارلز ديكنز؟ (لاحظ الفعل في زمن المضارع التام)

- Have you ever read a Charles Dickens Novel?

مثال : أنتارس الرياضة بشكل يومي؟ / هل أنت معتاد على ممارسة الرياضة يوميًا؟ (لاحظ أن الفعل في صيغة المضارع)

- Do you practise sport every day?

- يأتي بعد الفعل المساعد أو الناقص مفعول إذا كان السؤال مبنياً للمجهول :

مثال : هل شُرح لك هذا الدرس بالأمس؟

- Was this lesson explained to you yesterday?

مثال : هل جرت العادة أن تنظف حجرتك كل صباح؟

- Is your room cleaned every morning?

- إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بـ (أليس / ألا) تبدأ الترجمة بالفعل المساعد المنفي:

مثال : أليست تنع نظاماً غذائياً؟ / أليس من عاداتك اتباع نظاماً غذائياً؟

- Don't you follow a diet?

مثال : ألا تهتم بمشاهدة الأفلام؟ (عادات في الحاضر)

- Aren't you interested in watching films?

(هـ) إذا كنت تترجم سؤالاً بأداة استفهام أبدأ بأحد أدوات الاستفهام التالية ثم أحد الأفعال المساعدة حسب الزمن:

What	ما / ماذا	Which	أي
Where	أين	When	متى
Why	لماذا	Who	من
Whose	لمن	How	كم / كيف

مثال : ما الذي يجب أن تفعله لتحمي البيئة من التلوث؟

- What should you do to protect the environment from pollution?

مثال : كيف لنا أن نواجه ظاهرة الغش في الامتحانات؟

- How can we fight exam cheating phenomenon?



## Now, test yourself

## Translate into English :

١. تعمل אחתי مضيفة طيران وترتدي زيّاً خاصاً بالشركة التي تعمل بها.
٢. تُستخدم الأقمار الصناعية في اكتشاف المياه الجوفية والمعادن والبترو.
٣. في كل عام يأتي السياح إلى مصر ليستمتعوا بالجو الجميل في الشتاء.
٤. تُبنى المدارس والجامعات في كل المحافظات لتوفر تعليم مناسب لجميع المصريين.
٥. تتطلع جميع شعوب العالم إلى العيش معاً في حب وسلام.
٦. ساعد والديك و اعمل بجد.

٧. لا تُكثر من الطعام ولا تنسى ممارسة الرياضة.

٨. اصنع ما شئت ، لكن لا تؤذي الآخرين.

٩. لا تتأخر على مدرستك ، ولا تضيع وقتك.

١٠. ألا تساعد أصدقائك وقت الحاجة؟

١١. هل تقوم بأعمال مفيدة في وقت فراغك؟

١٢. أنفعل أسنانك بالفرشاة مرتين يومياً؟

١٣. كيف تمكن قداماء المصريين من بناء الأهرامات؟

١٤. لماذا تضيع وقتك فيما لا يفيد؟

١٥. كم مرة تمارس الرياضة أسبوعياً؟

موقع  
التفوق  
Altfwok.com

## Related Vocabulary

air hostess	مضيفة طيران	minerals	المعادن
brush	يفسل بالفرشاة	peoples	شعوب
governorates	محافظات	special	خاص
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	waste	يضيع
manage to	يتمكن		

## 2 Tenses of Sentences أزمنة الجمل

السؤال : في اللغة العربية هناك زمني المضارع والماضي ، ويتم التعبير عن المستقبل بـ «سوف / س» + الفعل المضارع ، لكن في اللغة الإنجليزية يوجد حوالي إثني عشرة زمناً ، فكيف يتم ترجمة الأزمنة؟  
- تحتاج إجابة هذا السؤال إلى دراسة الأزمنة ومعرفة استخدامات كل زمن وهذا مشروط لدروس القواعد اللغوية ، لكن هنا سنتكلم في بعض العموميات التي قد تفيد إلى حد كبير في الترجمة:  
(أ) الجملة التي تدل على حقائق ثابتة أو عادات متكررة يُوضع فعلها في صيغة زمن المضارع البسيط : (inf. / inf. + s, es, ies)

- مثال : المخ البشري يتحكم في كل شيء نقوم به.  
- The human brain controls everything we do.  
مثال : يتسلم الكتاب والعلماء جوائز قيمة كل عام.  
- Writers and scientists receive valuable prizes every year.  
مثال : التعليم ليس غاية في حد ذاته، إنما وسيلة تؤدي إلى غاية.  
- Education is not an end in itself, but it is a means to an end.

(ب) الجملة التي تدل على حدث مستمر في الوقت الحالي يُوضع فعلها في صيغة زمن المضارع المستمر : (am / is / are + inf. + ing)

- مثال : في الوقت الحالي ، تبذل الحكومة جهوداً كبيرة لتحسين الصحة التعليم.  
- Nowadays, the government is exerting great efforts to improve health and education.

(ج) الجملة التي تدل على خبرات أو أحداث إنتهت للتو أو أحداث ماضية لها تأثير على الحاضر تُترجم إلى مضارع تام (have / has + p.p.) بشرط عدم ذكر توقيت حدوث الفعل :

- مثال : فاز أحمد بميداليتين ذهبيتين حتى الآن.  
- Ahmed has won two gold medals so far.  
- أما إذا تم ذكر توقيت حدوث الفعل فنستخدم الماضي البسيط (التصرف الثاني للفعل) :  
مثال : فاز أحمد بميداليتين ذهبيتين العام الماضي.  
- Ahmed won two gold medals last year.



(د) عادات الماضي يتم التعبير عنها كالتالي :

- always / usually / often / sometimes / occasionally / rarely / scarcely / seldom / never ..... التصريف الثاني

مثال : كان جدي أحيانا يأخذنا لزيارة أقرانيا في الريف.

- My grandfather sometimes took us to visit our relatives in the countryside.

(هـ) عادات الماضي التي تنوقف في الحاضر :

- used to + inf. - be + used to + ing

مثال : اعتدت الذهاب إلى المدرسة الابتدائية بدراجتي الصغيرة.

- I used to go to primary school on my small bike.

مثال : كانت جدتي معتادة علي عمل الخبز في المنزل.

- My grandmother was used to making bread at home.

(و) الجملة التي تعبر عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي غالبا تحتوي على كلمة « كان » فعل مضارع » تُترجم إلى ماضي مستمر (was / were + inf. + ing) :

مثال : كان أحمد يلعب كرة القدم مع أصدقائه عندما انكسرت ساقه.

- Ahmed was playing football with his friends when his leg broke.

(ز) الجملة التي تدل علي حدث تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي تستخدم ماضي تام (had + p.p.) :

مثال : انتهى المعلم من شرح الدرس قبل أن يعطينا بعض التمرينات.

- The teacher had finished explaining the lesson before he gave us some exercises.

(ح) الجمل التي تدل علي المستقبل ( سأفعل / سوف أفعل / لن أفعل ) تُترجم إلى الصيغة المناسبة من المستقبل (will + inf. / be going to + inf. / be + inf. + ing) :

مثال : ستحتفل هدى بعيد ميلادها الخامس الشهر القادم.

- Huda is celebrating her fifth birthday next month.

### Now, test yourself

#### Translate into English :

١. يتم إنشاء المكتبات العامة في كل مكان لتشجيع أفراد الأسرة على القراءة.

٢. يحذر الأطباء الناس من التدخين لأنه السبب في كثير من الأمراض.

٣. لم ينجح العلماء حتى يومنا هذا في إيجاد علاج لبعض الأمراض.

٤. أصبح تعلم اللغات والحاسب الآلي هاما للحصول على وظيفة.

٥. في القريب ، سوف تساعدنا التكنولوجيا على قيادة السيارات بأمان أكثر.

٦. في بعض المنازل الحديثة تستخدم الطاقة الشمسية في تسخين المياه.

٧. قد قام السد العالي بحماية مصر من الفيضانات ووفر المياه لوقت الحاجة.

٨. لن نتحقق أهدافك دون أن نعمل بجد.

٩. كنت غائبا من المدرسة عندما قابلت عمتي في الشارع.

١٠. اعتادت جدتي أن تحكي لنا قصصا شيقة.

١١. أحاول جاهدا أن أحل هذه المسألة الصعبة.

### Related Vocabulary

do my best	أحاول جاهدا	aims	أهداف
come true	تتحقق	smoking	التدخين
floods	الفيضانات	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
problem	مسألة / مشكلة	try hard	يحاول جاهدا
public	عام	warn (ed)	يحذر
set up	ينشئ	diseases	أمراض
cure	علاج	achieve	يحقق

### 3 Translating Adjectives and Adverbs كيفية ترجمة الصفات والظروف

السؤال : كيف أترجم الصفة إلى اللغة الإنجليزية وما هو موقع الصفة بالنسبة للموصوف ؟

(١) تأتي الصفة في اللغة الإنجليزية قبل الموصوف علي عكس اللغة العربية ، لاحظ :

- interesting stories - قصة شيقة - a beautiful girl - فتاة جميلة - a clever boy - ولد ماهر

مثال : العمل الجاد والخلق الحسن من سمات الإنسان الناجح.

- Hard work and good manners are some qualities of a successful person.

(ب) علي غير العادة ، تأتي الصفة في اللغة الإنجليزية بعد الموصوف و ليس قبله إذا كانت تصف أي من الكلمات التالية :

something / anything / everything / nothing - someone / anyone

/ everyone / none - somebody / anybody / everybody / nobody -

somewhere / anywhere / everywhere / nowhere



- شئ - ما مهم (something important) - شخص ما شرير (someone evil) - مثال : وضع أحمد شئ ما صغير الحجم في حقيبته
- Ahmed put something small in his bag.
- (ج) تأتي الصفة وبعدها موصوف أو بدون موصوف عند أفعال مثل : يبدو (sound) - له رائحة (smell) - له مذاق (taste) - يشعر (feel) - يصبح (become) - يصبح (be - get) - يبدو (look) - يبدو (seem)
- مثال : لقد أصبح عجوزاً / لقد أصبح رجلاً عجوزاً.
- He became old. / He became an old man.
- (د) إذا جاء بعد الاسم صفتان دون أداة ربط تبدأ بالصفة الأخيرة. لاحظ : رجل ثرى مشهور. - سيد شابة ذكية.
- a famous rich man  
- an intelligent young lady
- مثال : الجمعيات الخيرية المختلفة تساعد أطفال الشوارع المشردين.
- Different charitable organisations help homeless street children.
- (هـ) إذا جاء بعد الاسم صفتان وبينهما أداة ربط فإننا في الغالب نكتب الصفة الأولى أولاً ثم الثانية. لاحظ : رجل ثرى ومشهور. - سيد شابة وذكية.
- a rich and famous man  
- a young and beautiful lady
- مثال : العمل الجاد والمستمر هو الخطوة الأولى نحو تحقيق هدفك في الحياة.
- Hard and continuous work is the first step towards achieving your goal in life.
- (و) إذا وضعنا قبل الصفة "the" ولم يتبع الصفة اسم فنقص ذلك كل من يتصفون بهذه الصفة.
- The blind - رجال مكفوفين - blind men - رجل كفيف - a blind man
- مثال : ينبغي على الأغنياء مساعدة الفقراء.
- Rich people should help poor people.  
= The rich should help the poor.
- السؤال : وماذا عن الظرف؟ كيف يُترجم إلى الإنجليزية وأين يكون موقعه في الجملة ؟
- (1) ظروف التكرار التالية توضع قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد (be) ويمكن أن تأتي بعضها في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :
- always / usually / often / sometimes / occasionally / rarely / scarcely / seldom / hardly / never .....
- مثال : تحاول أمي دائماً الحفاظ علي بيتنا نظيفاً ومرتّباً.
- My mother always tries to keep our house clean and tidy.

Always my mother tries to keep our house clean and tidy.

I am usually at my work in time.

I walk quickly to my school.

It is your right to express your opinion freely.

I'm really angry with that bad neighbour.

I travel to Europe twice every summer.

Every summer, I travel to Europe twice.

### Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

- لقد حان وقت العمل الجاد من أجل بناء مستقبل وطننا العظيم.
- العلم الحديث والتخطيط الجيد ضروريان من أجل حياة أفضل.
- جاءت تنعجب إلى الفرائش مبكراً.
- يستخدم الطلاب المبرمجون أجهزة الحاسب الآلي في مدارسهم.
- يقدم العلماء شئ ما جديد كل يوم لخدمة البشرية.
- كان الجو حاراً للغاية طوال الأسبوع الماضي.
- يجب أن نتردد السيارة بحرص حتي تبقى بأمان.



٨. أحياناً أعمل في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع.

٩. المكفوفون يمكنهم التعلم والعمل.

١٠. الوجبات الصغيرة الخفيفة مفيدة للصحة.

١١. حصلت علي درجات مرتفعة بسبب العمل الجاد والمستمر.

١٢. يبدو هذا اللاعب غاضباً بعد خسارة المباراة.

## Related Vocabulary

home / homeland	الوطن	marks	درجات
light	خفيف	meals	وجبات
look / seem	يبدو	modern	حديث
losing	خسارة	planning	التخطيط
mankind	البشرية	humanity	البشرية

## 4 Special Cases (1) حالات خاصة (١)

السؤال : كيف أقوم بترجمة الفعل (يعتبر) المبنى للمعلوم، وكذلك الفعل (يُعتبر / يُعد) المبنى للمجهول؟

(١) يُترجم الفعل (يعتبر) المبنى للمعلوم كالتالي :

- ..... جملة + that + (حسب الزمن) consider + فاعل Subj.
  - ..... as + noun + (حسب الزمن) regard + فاعل Subj.
- مثال : تعتبر الحكومة التعليم استثماراً في مستقبل مصر.
- The government considers that education is an investment in the future of the country.
  - The government regards education as an investment in the future of the country.

(ب) يُترجم الفعل (يُعتبر) المبنى للمجهول كالتالي :

- ..... considered + (حسب الزمن) be + مفعول Obj.
  - ..... regarded + as + noun + (حسب الزمن) be + فاعل Subj.
- مثال : يُعتبر التعليم استثماراً في مستقبل مصر.
- Education is considered an investment in the future of Egypt.
  - Education is regarded as an investment in the future of Egypt.

السؤال : أحياناً يكون من الصعب ترجمة الأفعال (يعمل / يقوم / يتم)، فكيف أترجم الجملة حينئذ ؟  
هذا يحدث عندما لا تكون هذه الأفعال هي الأفعال الأساسية للجملة، وفي هذه الحالة يتم استبدالها بفعل مناسب للمعنى أو الاستغناء عنها والاعتماد على الفعل الأصلي :

مثال : تعمل جميع الدول على إيجاد حل لمشكلة التلوث.

هنا كلمة (تعمل) تؤدي معنى (تحاول)، فتترجم الجملة كالتالي :  
All nations try to solve the problem of pollution.

مثال : يقوم مُعلمو اللغة الإنجليزية بمدربتنا بشرح الدروس جيداً.

- هنا كلمة (يقوم) لا تؤدي أي معنى فيتم حذفها واستخدام فعل مشتق من الجملة (يشرح) ، وتُترجم الجملة كالتالي :

The teachers of English in our school explain lessons well.

مثال : يتم حل المشكلات التي تواجه الطلاب لمساعدتهم علي التعلم بشكل جيد.

هنا كلمة (يتم) لا تؤدي معنى ، فنحذفها و نترجم الجملة مبنية للمجهول كالتالي :  
The problems which face students are solved to help them learn well.

السؤال : ماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة عربية ليس بها فعل إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

(١) هناك الجمل الاسمية التي ليس فيها فعل و نستخدم (be) عند ترجمتها للإنجليزية :

مثال : العمل الجاد طريقك إلى النجاح.

Hard work is your way to success.

(ب) هناك الجمل الاسمية عند ترجمتها للإنجليزية نستخدم (be) كترجمة ل (هو / هي / هما / هم / هن) :

مثال : الطعام الصحي والرياضة هما مفتاحي الصحة الجيدة والسعادة.

Healthy food and sport are the keys to good health and happiness.

## Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. يعتبر المصريون نهر النيل مصدر الحياة لهم.

٢. يتم بناء طرق جديدة لحل مشكلة الازدحام المروري.

٣. يُعد السد العالي أفضل إنجاز للرئيس عبد الناصر.

٤. العمل هو سر الحياة ، و النجاح في العمل هو السعادة.

٥. يعتبر أبوي مشاهدة المباريات علي التلفاز مضيعة للوقت.



٦. تقوم الحكومة بتوفير التعليم لكل المواطنين.
٧. التعليم هو الطريق الحقيقي لمستقبل أفضل.
٨. يُعتبر الدكتور الباز رمز من رموز العلم في كل أنحاء العالم.
٩. إن الإنترنت أضخم مكتبة في التاريخ.
١٠. يقوم أبي بزيارة جدي في الريف كل شهر.
١١. إن زراعة الصحراء شيء ضروري لتوفير الغذاء.
١٢. تقوم الحواس بإرسال رسائل إلى المخ.

### Related Vocabulary

achievement	إنجاز	source	مصدر
a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت	symbol	رمز
president	الرئيس	traffic jam	الازدحام المروري

### 5 Special Cases (2) حالات خاصة (2)

السؤال : كيف أترجم جملة بها (لدى / لديه / لديها / عندي / عنده / عندنا / لها / لهم ... إلخ) وليس بها فعل؟

تُترجم مثل هذه الجمل حسب الجدول التالي مع مراعاة زمن الجملة :

I have	عندي - لدى - لي - أملك	You have	لديكم - لكم - تملكون
He has	عنده - لديه - له - يملك	We have	لدينا - لنا - نملك
She has	عندها - لديها - لها - تملك	They have	لديهم - لهم - يملكون
It has	لديه - لديها - له - لها	One has	لدى المرء - يمتلك المرء
You have	عندك - لديك - لك - تملك		

مثال : لدينا الكثير من الاهتمامات في وقت فراغنا.

- We have a lot of interests in our free time.

مثال : كان لأبي دور كبير في نجاحي.

- My father had a great role in my success.

مثال : سيكون للشباب دور كبير في تقدم الوطن.  
- Youth will have a great role in the progress of the country.

السؤال : كيف أترجم جملة تبدأ بـ (عليه / عليها / عليك / لابد / حتما / يجب / ينبغي ... إلخ) ؟

تُترجم مثل هذه الجمل حسب القاعدة التالية :  
- Subj. فاعل + must / should / ought to / have to / has to / had to + inf ....

مثال : علينا أن نحافظ على البيئة نظيفة.  
- We should keep the environment clean.

مثال : لابد أن نطيع والديك و نحترم معلميك.  
- You must obey your parents and respect your teachers.

مثال : كان علي أن أراجع دروسي جيدا لأجتاز الإمتحان.  
- I had to revise my lessons well to pass the exam.

السؤال : وكيف أترجم الكلمات (عسى / لعل / ليت) ؟

(1) إذا جاء بعد هذه الكلمات فعل مضارع فإنها تُترجم في الغالب إلى :

- I hope / I wish + to + inf.
- I hope + subj. + will + inf.
- I hope + subj. + inf. + (s / es / ies)

مثال : ليتني أقدر أن أساعدك.

- I hope / wish to be able to help you.
- I hope I will be able to help you.
- I hope I am able to help you.

(ب) إذا جاء بعد (لعل / ليت) فعل ماضي فإنها تُترجم في الغالب إلى :

- I wish + subj. + had + p.p. ...
- I regret not + inf. + ing ...

مثال : ليتني ذاكرت جيدا العام الماضي.

- I wish I had studied hard last year.
- I regret not studying hard last year.

السؤال : وكيف أترجم المضاف والمضاف إليه ؟

(1) نضع (of) بين المضاف والمضاف إليه أو نبدأ بالمضاف إليه ثم نضع المضاف بدون (of) :

standard of living	living standard	مستوى المعيشة
pollution of the air	air pollution	تلوث الهواء
the rate of birth	birth rate	معدل المواليد



(ب) تستخدم (s) الملكية غالبًا عندما يكون المضاف إليه عاقل أو اسم حيوان :

- My mother's house. (s) ملكية مفرد
- My parents' house. (s') ملكية جمع
- The parrot's tail is very long.

### Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. يجب أن نستخدم أفضل الطرق لتربية أطفالنا.

٢. تعمل الدولة على رعاية الشباب وتنمية مواهبهم.

٣. يجب أن ننشئ الأطفال على حب الوطن واحترام الوالدين.

٤. علينا أن نشارك بإيجابية في تقدم وطننا.

٥. علينا أن ندادم على تحسين ظروف حياتنا.

٦. يجب استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة في التعليم.

٧. من الضروري أن ننمي الإهتمام بالعلم لدى الصغار لإعداد جيل من العلماء.

٨. للعلماء دور هام في إيجاد حلول لمشكلات المجتمع.

٩. ليتني لم أنفق كل مالي في شراء هذه السيارة.

١٠. للتليفزيون دور مؤثر في ثقافة وسلوك المواطنين.

### Related Vocabulary

bringing up  
conditions  
culture  
effective  
generation  
interest

تربية  
ظروف  
ثقافة  
مؤثر  
جيل  
اهتمام  
positively  
progress  
share  
society  
solutions  
talents

إيجابية  
تقدم  
نشارك  
المجتمع  
حلول  
مواهب

### 6 Special Cases (3)

#### حالات خاصة (٣)

Translation

السؤال : كيف أترجم كلمة (لقد) ؟

(١) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن المضارع التام في حالة عدم وجود كلمة دالة على الماضي :

مثال : لقد اجتاز أخي امتحان القيادة مؤخرًا.  
- My brother has passed the driving test recently.

(ب) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن الماضي البسيط في حالة وجود كلمة دالة على الماضي :

مثال : لقد اجتاز أخي امتحان القيادة الأسبوع الماضي.  
- My brother passed the driving test last week.

(ج) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن الماضي التام مع الحدث الأول في حالة وجود حدث تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي :

مثال : لقد اجتاز أخي امتحان القيادة الأسبوع الماضي قبل أن يقوم أبي بشراء سيارة له بالأمس.  
- My brother had passed the driving test last week before my father bought him a car yesterday.

السؤال : حسنًا ... فكيف أترجم كلمة (قد) ؟  
لا توجد ترجمة للكلمة (قد) ، فهي تُحذف ونستخدم بدلًا منها زمن الماضي البسيط ويمكن المضارع التام :

(١) تُترجم جملة (قد + فعل مضارع) مثل (لقد) :

مثال : قد اجتاز أخي امتحان القيادة مؤخرًا.

- My brother has passed the driving test recently.

(ب) تُترجم جملة (قد + فعل مضارع) إلى (may / might + inf.) :

مثال : قد يسافر أبي إلى أسوان غدا.

- My father may / might travel to Aswan tomorrow.

السؤال : وماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة تبدأ بحرف التوكيد (إن) ؟

- الجملة التي تبدأ بمصدر أو (إن + مصدر / اسم) في اللغة العربية غالبًا ما تبدأ بـ (noun / inf. + ing) في اللغة الإنجليزية ويكون فعل الجملة مضارع بسيط :

مثال : إن تعلم اللغات الأجنبية والحاسب الآلي ضروري في الوقت الحالي.

- Learning foreign languages and the computer is necessary at present.

السؤال : وماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة تبدأ بـ (أن + فعل مضارع) وبعد الأفعال الناقصة ؟

(١) الجملة التي تبدأ بـ (أن + فعل مضارع) في اللغة العربية تبدأ بـ (To + inf.) في اللغة الإنجليزية :

مثال : أن تساعد في الحفاظ على البيئة نظيفة فهذا شيء جيد.

- To help keep the environment clean is a good thing.



(ب) كلمة (أن) بعد الأفعال الناقصة لا تُترجم :

مثال : يجب أن نجد حلولاً لمشكلاتنا الاقتصادية والاجتماعية.

- We should find solutions to our economic and social problems.

### Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. لقد فاز فريق كرة القدم بمباراة هامة.

٢. لقد وهب الله مصر الكثير من الاماكن السياحية والطقس الرائع.

٣. إن تحقيق التقدم لا يمكن أن يحدث إلا بتعاون الأفراد مع الحكومة.

٤. لقد أثبت الأطباء أن من لا يدخنون مطلقاً يعيشون حياة أطول.

٥. إن هوايتي المفضلة هي قراءة القصص الخيالية ولعب التنس.

٦. لقد أصبح ضروريا البدء في إنشاء مدن جديدة في الصحراء.

٧. إن إهدار مياه النيل جريمة في حق الوطن.

٨. إن مهارات الحاسوب لا غني عنها للحصول علي وظيفة جيدة في الوقت الحالي.

٩. إن البحث العلمي وسيلة هامة لتحديد شكل مستقبل أي أمة.

١٠. إن زراعه الصحراء وبناء المدن الجديدة يحل الكثير من المشاكل الاقتصادية والاجتماعية.

١١. إن زيادة الانتاج واجب وطني لمواجهة مشكلة تزايد السكان.

١٢. لقد وهب الله مصر كثير من الموارد الطبيعية.

١٣. إن سيناء جزء هام من أرض مصر يجب الاهتمام بتحصينها ورعاية أهلها.

### Related Vocabulary

against	في حق / ضد	nation	أمة
co-operation	تعاون	national	وطني / غومي
crime	جريمة	production	إنتاج
duty	واجب	research	بحث
fictional	خيالي	resources	موارد
grant (ed)	يهب	skills	مهارات
increasing	زيادة	wasting	إهدار
means	وسيلة		

### 7 Special Cases (4) حالات خاصة (4)

السؤال : كيف أترجم الجمل التي تبدأ بـ ( يوجد / كان يوجد / هناك / كان هناك / سيكون هناك .....  
البحر إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

تُترجم هذه الصيغة إلى :

- There + is / are / was / were / have been / has been / had been /  
will be / can be / must be ..... + noun اسم

مثال : يوجد الكثير من الطرق لتجنب الأمراض.

- There are a lot of ways to avoid diseases.

مثال : كان هناك مشكلة في محرك السيارة.

- There was a problem with the car engine.

مثال : سيكون هناك بدائل للترول في المستقبل.

- There will be replacements for oil in the future.

مثال : لابد أن يكون هناك حل لمشكلة تلوث الهواء.

- There must be a solution to the problem of air pollution.

السؤال : كيف أترجم الجمل التي بها ( كلما ... كلما ) إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

تُترجم هذه الصيغة إلى :

- The + subj. + verb ..... + the + subj. + verb ..... + صفة مقارنة

مثال : كلما تدرنت أكثر كلما أصبحت أكثر لياقة.

- The more you exercise, the fitter you get / become.

مثال : كلما تكون أكثر طولا كلما تستطيع أن تجري أسرع.

- The taller you are, the faster you can run.

السؤال : كيف أترجم المصير المتصل بفعل ؟

(1) مصير الفاعل المتصل بفعل يترجم بمصير فاعل (I - he - she - it - you - we - they) لاحظ :

كُتِبْتُ I wrote - كُتِبَتْ She wrote - كُتِبْنَا We wrote



- مثال : زوت جدتي مع أخي واشترينا لها هدية  
- I and my brother visited my grandmother and bought her a present.  
(ب) ضمير المفعول المتصل بفعل أو حرف جر يُترجم ضمير مفعول (me - him - her - it - you - us - them)  
مثال : سمعته يقول بعض المعلومات الهامة فاستمعت إليه حريصاً.  
- I heard him say something important, so I listened to him carefully.

- السؤال : كيف أترجم الضمير المتصل باسم ؟  
الضمير المتصل بالاسم يُترجم إلى صفة ملكية (أ - my - his - her - its - our - your - their - لا حظ :  
- كتابي my book - كتابها her book - كتابنا our book  
مثال : يبذل جميع المواطنين ما بوسعهم من أجل وطنهم.  
- All citizens do their best for their home.

### Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

- توجد بعض قواعد النظافة الشخصية التي يجب اتباعها لتجنب الأمراض.
- علمتني الحياة ألا أأحزن على ما ضاع مني لأنه ليس لي.
- كلما ساعدت الناس وقت الحاجة كلما شعرت بالسعادة.
- كان هناك حادثاً مروعاً على الطريق الصحراوي إلى أسوان.
- تحتاج الدولة جهودنا نحن الشباب لتحقيق التقدم.
- أعتقد أن الناس سوف تستمر في قراءة الكتب من أجل التمتع.
- كلما زاد العمل والإنتاج كلما ارتفع مستوى المعيشة.
- لا يوجد دين يدعو إلى القتل وترويع الناس.
- ندين بالكثير للعلماء لما قدموه لنا من إنجازات.
- أفكر جداً في دراسة الطب في الجامعة.
- تعطينا الشمس الحرارة والضوء، وهي مصدر للطاقة النظيفة.
- نعيش الآن عصر الاتصالات الذي جعل العالم عالماً مفتوحاً.

### Related Vocabulary

achievements  
age  
for fun

إنجازات  
عصر  
من أجل المتعة

in need  
owe  
standard of living

وقت الحاجة  
يدين  
مستوى المعيشة

### 8 Special Cases (5)

حالات خاصة (5)

- السؤال : وكيف أترجم الحمل الذي تبدأ به (من + صفة) إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟  
- تُترجم هذه الصيغة إلى :  
- It is + adj. + صفة + (for + ضمير مفعول + to + inf. ....  
مثال : من الجيد أن تقضي وقت فراغك بشكل مفيد.  
- It is good (for you) to spend your free time in a useful way.  
مثال : من الضروري أن يشارك الطلاب في الأنشطة المدرسية.  
- It is necessary for students to take part in school activities.

- السؤال : كيف أترجم المفعول المطلق إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟  
- بصيغة عامة يُحذف المفعول المطلق عند الترجمة للإنجليزية.  
مثال : تتأثر الصحة تأثراً كبيراً بالتدخين.  
- Health is greatly affected by smoking.

- السؤال : هناك أيضاً الأعداد، هل تُترجم أرقاماً حسابية أم حروفاً ؟  
(1) الأعداد من (1 - 9) تكتب هجائياً دائماً ، أما إذا زاد عن ذلك فيكتب أرقاماً حسابية :  
مثال : أرسلت دعوات الحفل لحسين مديناً لكن لم يحضره منهم إلا ثمانية.  
- I sent the invitations of the party to 50 friends, but only eight of them attended it.

- (ب) عندما تبدأ الجملة الانجليزية بذكر العدد فإنه يكتب هجائياً دائماً :  
مثال : وصل ثلاثين مسافراً إلى المحطة بعد أن غادر القطار.  
- Thirty passengers arrived at the station after the train had left.

- السؤال : وماذا عن حروف الجر ؟  
- لحروف الجر استخدامات يعرفها الطالب بالتدرج من خلال دراسته للغة ، و المهم هنا أن هناك بعض الأفعال التي لا تأخذ حرف جر مثل :

admire	يعجب به	include	يشمل على
affect	يؤثر على	join	يلتحق به
arrest	يلقبض على	obtain	يحصل على
avoid	يتجنب	owe	يدين به



celebrate	يحتفل به	pass	ينجح / يجتاز / يمر على
enjoy	يتمتع به	reach	يصل إلى
fear	يخشى أن	recognise	يتعرف على
feel	يشعر به	sacrifice	يضحى به

مثال : يؤثر التدخين على الصحة بشدة. - Smoking affects health badly.

### Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. من الضروري أن نهتم أكثر بالتعليم والصحة.
٢. من الطبيعي أن يكون لمصر جيش قوى يحمي حدودها وشرطة قوية تحمي أمنها الداخلي.
٣. من المتوقع أن تكون الحروب القادمة بين الدول هي حروب للسيطرة على مصادر المياه.
٤. تلعب مصر دورًا كبيرًا في منطقة الشرق الأوسط.
٥. تتأثر السياحة تأثرًا كبيرًا بالأحداث الجارية في العالم.
٦. يحذر الأطباء الناس تحذيرًا شديدًا من التدخين.
٧. تتطلع مصر تطلعًا كبيرًا لتحسين مستوى معيشة مواطنيها.
٨. تهتم الدولة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بالموهوبين وتقدم لهم مزايا قيمة.
٩. تولي الحكومة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بالأطفال لأنهم قادة المستقبل.
١٠. من الحكمة ألا تتخذ قرارًا إلا بعد تفكير عميق.

### Related Vocabulary

current events	الأحداث الجارية	pay attention	تولى اهتمامًا
deep thought	تفكير عميق	the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط
It is wise	من الحكمة		

### Part II Translation from English into Arabic

#### الترجمة من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية :

- الترجمة من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية أمر سهل وبسيط، ولقد تم تناول معظم الملاحظات التي قد تفيدك فيها ضمن الملاحظات الخاصة بالترجمة من اللغة العربية للغة الإنجليزية ولم يتبقى سوى بعض الملاحظات البسيطة سنتناولها فيما يلي :

#### السؤال : ما الذى يتطلبه ترجمة نص من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية ؟

- (١) قراءة وفهم النص الإنجليزي لمعرفة الفكرة العامة للموضوع.
- (ب) قراءة النص مرة أخرى بعناية للوقوف على الكلمات والتراكيب الصعبة.
- (ج) تخمين معنى الكلمات الصعبة من سياق الجملة فالمطلوب هو استنتاج المعنى.
- (د) بعد الانتهاء من الترجمة، اقرأ الترجمة العربية لتتأكد من أنها مكتوبة بأسلوب عربى سليم مع تجنب الترجمة الحرفية والأخطاء النحوية.

#### السؤال : كيف أترجم الفعل (be) عندما يكون فعلًا أساسيًا ؟

هناك طرق مختلفة لترجمة هذا الفعل حسب استخدامه فى الجملة الإنجليزية، منها :

#### (١) المعنى الأساسى للفعل (be) فى اللغة العربية وهو (يكون / يوجد) :

e.g. - My life was difficult when I was abroad, away from home.

كانت حياتى صعبة عندما كنت بالخارج بعيدًا عن الوطن.

(ب) يمكن ترجمة الفعل (be) بفعل آخر فى اللغة العربية غير (يكون / يوجد) حسب المعنى العام للنص :

e.g. - The wedding was last week.

- تم الزفاف الأسبوع الماضى.

- A knife is for cutting food.

- تستخدم السكين لتقطيع الطعام.

(ج) يمكن ترجمة الفعل (be) بضمير شخصى مثل (هو / هى / هما / هم / هن) فى اللغة العربية مثل :

e.g. - My mother is everything to me.

- إن أمى هى كل شىء بالنسبة لى.

- Our children are the joy of our life.

- أطفالنا هم بهجة حياتنا.

(د) يمكن إسقاط الفعل (be) نهائياً من الترجمة العربية للجملة :

e.g. - Ahmed is a hard-working student.

- أحمد طالب جاد فى العمل.

- My house is in a quiet part of the city.

- يقع منزلى فى جزء هادئ من المدينة.



السؤال : قالوا لي أن الفعل (have) متعدد المعاني، فكيف أتوجّه إلى العربية ؟

- هذا كلام صحيح، فهذا الفعل يستخدم بمعاني كثيرة منها :

(أ) المعنى الأصلي للفعل (have) هو (يملك / عنده / لديه) حسب الزمن :

- لدى / عندي / أملك منزلاً ذو حديقة صغيرة. - I have a house with a small garden.

(ب) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (تناول طعاماً أو شرباً) :

- I had some meat and rice for lunch yesterday.  
- تناولت بعض اللحم والأرز في العشاء أمس.

(ج) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (أقيم / يعقد / يحضر) :

- I will have a big party on the occasion of my daughter's success.  
- سأقيم حفلاً كبيراً بمناسبة نجاح ابنتي.

(د) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (يعاني / لديه معاناة) :

- She had a bad headache after the party.  
- لقد عانت من صداع شديد بعد الحفل.

السؤال : هل بالفعل كلمة (only) تحتاج لمعاملة خاصة في الترجمة ؟

نعم بالفعل، ولكي تترجم بشكل سليم لابد أن تتذكر دائماً أن هذا الفعل يقصر الكلمة التي تأتي بعده مباشرة :

- Only my mother helped me with my homework.  
- أمي فقط هي من ساعدتني في واجبي المنزلي.

- My mother only helped me with my homework.

- لم تقم أمي إلا بمساعدتي في واجبي المنزلي.

- My mother helped only me with my homework.

- ساعدتني أمي أنا فقط في واجبي المنزلي.

- My mother helped me with only my homework.

- ساعدتني أمي في واجبي المنزلي فقط.

السؤال : ماذا أفعل إذا كان فعل الجملة الإنجليزية مبنياً للمجهول ؟

(أ) يفضل تحويل الجملة الإنجليزية المبنية للمجهول إلى المبنى للمعلوم عند الترجمة للعربية طالما كان الفاعل معروفاً :

- The operation was performed by a well-known surgeon.  
- لقد أجرى العملية جراح مشهور. / أُجريت العملية الجراحية عن طريق جراح مشهور.

(ب) من الممكن استخدام الفعل (تم) يليه الاسم من الفعل الأصلي مثل :

- The task was carried out on time.  
- تم تنفيذ المهمة في الوقت المحدد. e.g.

## Now, test yourself

Translate into Arabic :

1. A good friend is a source of strength that keeps you going through all ups and downs of life.
2. Always do right. This will please some people and astonish the rest.
3. Awareness should be spread among citizens to make great efforts to reduce pollution.
4. Be free and respect others' freedom.
5. Being a good citizen requires a lot of civilised behaviour.
6. Children learn good habits by imitating of their elders.
7. Creative thinking is essential for success in life.
8. Currently, there're major powers trying to dominate the whole world through technology.
9. Don't cry over spilt milk.
10. Eat less, exercise more, and fill your eyes with sleep.
11. Egypt is one of the earliest cradles of human civilisation.
12. Everyone has the right to express their opinion freely and take part in the social life.
13. Experts believe that solar energy may have replaced oil by the 2050.
14. Good citizens are ready to sacrifice their lives when their country is in danger.
15. Great efforts have been made for the equality between men and women.
16. Growing older is a natural process that we cannot stop.
17. Habits, good or bad, are acquired in childhood.
18. Has technology made the world a better place to live in?
19. If an object causes you pain, you respond by moving away from it.
20. If you risk nothing, then you risk everything.
21. In order to be successful, you should have courage, ambition, self-confidence and self-dependence.
22. In the future, the world's supplies of oil will dry up.
23. In the third world countries, the number of smokers is increasing, mainly due to ignorance.
24. Inside their homes, children get their first lessons in behaving towards others.



## El Moasser's Glossary for Translation Vocabulary

- قاموس المعاصر للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالترجمة.

## Economy and work الاقتصاد والعمل

ambitions	تطلعات / طموحات	low income	دخل منخفض
bargains	صفقات	manufacture	يُصنع
budget	ميزانية	manufacturer	مُصنع
capital	رأس المال	marketing	تسويق
capitalism	رأسمالية	monopolist	محتكر
commerce	تجارة	monopoly	احتكار
commercial	تجاري	national duty	واجب وطني
compete	نافس	national economy	الاقتصاد القومي
congestion	التكدس / الزحام	national income	الدخل القومي
consume	يستهلك	nationalization	تأميم
consumer	مستهلك	nationalize	يؤمم
consumption	استهلاك	necessitate	يستلزم
cost of living	تكاليف المعيشة	overpopulation	الانفجار السكاني
creation	خلق / إيجاد	price control	ضبط الأسعار
crime	الجريمة	priorities	أولويات
current stage	المرحلة الراهنة	products	منتجات
dealer	وكيل	profits	أرباح
development	تنمية / تطوير	promote	يُرقي / يَزِدُّ
discount	تخفيض / خصم	prosperity	ازدهار
dissatisfaction	عدم إشباع	rate	معدل
due care	الاهتمام اللازم	rationalise	يُضبط / يُرشد
economic	اقتصادي	rationalization	ترشيد
economic	الأثرمة الاقتصادية	reclaim	يستصلح
crisis	موقر / اقتصادي	reclamation	استصلاح
economical	علم الاقتصاد	recycling	إعادة تصنيع
economics	خبير اقتصادي	reduction	تخفيض
economist	مشروع / منشأة	reform	إصلاح
enterprise	نفقات	renaissance	نهضة
expenses	مواجهه / مواجهة	resources	موارد
facing	مواجهة	revenue	عائد
famine	مالية	risky	خطير
finance	مال / بئول	sales / discounts	مبيعات / تخفيضات
financial	مالي	shares	اسهم
food shortage	نقص الطعام	short-term	قصير الأجل
		slogan	شعار
		slums / squatters	العشوائيات

foreign aids	معونات خارجية	long-term	طويل الأجل
funds	مدخرات	spread	انتشار / ينتشر
goods / commodities	السلع / البضائع	standard of living	مستوى المعيشة
grant(ed)	هب / يمنح	statistics	إحصائيات
greed	جشع / طمع	stock market	بورصة
growth	نمو	strict measures	معايير صارمة
handmade	صناعة يدوية	strict procedures	إجراءات صارمة
hard currency	عملة صعبة	subsidy	الدعم
high income	دخل مرتفع	tax	ضريبة
humour	الفكاهة / المرح	trade	تاجر / تجارة
in turn	بدوره	trader	تاجر
inflation	التضخم	unemployment	البطالة
inhabitants	سكان	unrest	اضطراب
inject	يضع	vast	كبير / شامل
insurance	تأمين	via	من خلال / عبر
investment	استثمار	violence	العنف
investor	مستثمر	welfare	رفاهية
job opportunities	فرص عمل	youth	الشباب
labour force	القوى العاملة		

## The Nile and saving water النيل وتوفير المياه

a matter of life or death	مسألة حياة أو موت	improve relationships	تحسن العلاقات
artery of life	شريان الحياة	International Treaty	معاهدة دولية
civilisation	الحضارة	lack of water	نقص المياه
constructive dialogue	الحوار البناء	majority	معظم / أغلبية
cradle	مهد	must	ضرورة
dam	سد	national security	الأمن القومي
date back to	يعود تاريخه إلى	Nile Basin	حوض النيل
demand for	الطلب على	Renaissance Dam	سد النهضة
downstream countries	دول المصب	shortage	نقص
drought	جفاف / قحط	supplies	موارد
Egypt's share	حصة مصر	main source	المصدر الرئيسي
emergency meeting	اجتماع طارئ	thirst	الظأ
essential	ضروري	tributaries	روافد
generate	يُولد	upstream countries	دول المنبع
company	شعبة	water security	الأمن المائي



consequently	لذلك	noncommunicable	غير ساري
contributions	إسهامات	noninfectious	غير معدى
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	nuclear	نووي
creativity	الأماع	nuclear waste	النفايات النووية
creatures	مخلوقات	observatory	مرصد
deforestation	إزالة الغابات	owe	يدين
destructive	مدمر	pathology	علم امراض الدم
developed countries	دول متقدمة	pharmaceutical	خاص بالصيدلة
developing countries	دول نامية	philosophy	الفلسفة
deviation	انحراف	photosynthesis	عملية البناء الضوئي
diabetes	مرض السكر	physical illness	مرض بدني
diagnose	يُشخص	physiology	علم وظائف الأعضاء
diagnosis	تشخيص للمرض	physiotherapy	العلاج الطبيعي
disaster	كارثة	pillars	ركائز
disastrous	مدمر / كارثي	positive	بُناء / إيجابي
distance learning	تعلُّم عن بُعد	potentials	قدرات
donation	تبرع	power plant	محطة توليد طاقة
drugs	عقاقير / مخدرات	preservation	صيانة
eagle	صقر	prevention	وقاية
ecology	علم البيئة	properly	بشكل صحيح
Egyptology	علم المصريات	proportional to	متناسب مع
end / target / goal	غاية / هدف	psychiatrist	طبيب نفسى
endanger	يُعرض لخطر	psychologist	عالم نفسى
epidemic	وباء	psychology	علم النفس
erosion	تآكل / تعرية	public opinion	الرأي العام
evergreen	دائم الخضرة	radiation	إشعاع
evils	شرور	rare species	فصيلة نادرة
existence	وجود	reactor	مفاعل
extinction	اندثار / إنقراض	reform	إصلاح
females	إناث	regional	إقليمي
fever	حمى	remarkable progress	تقدم ملحوظ
		remedy	علاج

field	مجال	respiratory system	جهاز تنفسي
fragile	هش / ضعيف	restoration	ترميم
frustration	إحباط	scales	قشور / موازين
generation	جيل / توليد (طاقة)	scientific research	البحث العلمي
genetic engineering	الهندسة الوراثية	seabed	قاع البحر
global warming	الإحتباس الحراري	self	النفس / الذات
harness	يُسخر	set up	يُنشئ
herbal medicines	الأدوية العشبية	sociology	علم الاجتماع
heritage	تراث	sooner or later	عاجلاً أم آجلاً
hibernation	بيات شتوي	sterilization	تعقيم
humidity	رطوبة	stubborn	عنيد
hurricane	إعصار	support	بدعم / دعم
ideal solution	حل مثالي	surgery	جراحة
immune system	جهاز المناعة	symptoms	أعراض
impact	أثر	tame	أليف
incurable	لا علاج له	techniques	تقنيات
indigestion	عسر الهضم	thanks to	بفضل
individual	الفرد	therapist	معالج
infection	عدوى	therapy	علاج
infectious	معدى	thinkers	مفكرين
injection	حقن	tide	المد والجزر
innovation	الابتكار	tornado	إعصار
insomnia	أرق	transfusion	نقل دم
instinct	غريزة / فطرة	tropical	إستوائي
intensive care	عناية مركزة	tumor	ورم
issue	قضية	vaccine	مصل / لقاح
kidneys	كليتين	vegetarian	إنسان نباتي
knowledge	المعرفة	vehicle	مركبة
limit	يُحد من / يقلل	waterfalls	شلالات
lungs	رئتين	wheel of production	عجلة الإنتاج
		zoology	علم الحيوان



## Literature &amp; Different Arts الأدب والفنون المختلفة

ancestors	أسلاف / أجداد	kindergarten (KG)	حضانة
aware	واع	loyalty	ولاء
awesome	مدهش / رهيب	manners	سلوكيات
barriers	حواجز	manuscripts	مخطوطات
borders	حدود	masterpieces	روائع
brain drain	هجرة العقول	merely	فقط
bringing up	تربية	motives	دوافع
bullying	مضطه	nobility	نبيل
censorship	رقابة	non-verbal	غير لفظي
coherence	ترابط / تناغم	nutrition	تغذية
commemorate	يحيى ذكرى	objective	موضوعي
cope with	يجري / يساير	obstacle	عقبة
core	لب / جوهر	peer	نظير / ند
corner stone	حجر الزاوية	personal interests	مصالح شخصية
craftsmen	أصحاب الحرف	personify	يُجسّد
creative	مبدع	playwright	كاتب مسرحي
cultural	ثقافي	potentials	قدرات
curriculum	مناهج	pre-historic	يخص ما قبل التاريخ
descendants	ذرية / نسل	principles	مبادئ
deterioration	تدهور / تدهور	procedures	إجراءات
edition	نسخة / طبعة	producer	مُنتج
elegance	إناقة	professional	مهني
enrich	يُثري	public library	مكتبة عامة
exceed	يتجاوز	public opinion	الرأي العام
faithfulness	إخلاص	reference	مرجع
fashion designer	مصمم أزياء	science fiction	خيال علمي
fashion houses	بيوت الموضة	spiritual	روحي
fashion show	عرض أزياء	sponsor	راعي
fine arts	فنون جميلة	sponsorship	رعاية
for entertainment	من أجل المتعة	storyteller	قصص
		strategy	خطة

## EL-MONSTER Glossary for translation Vocabulary

fortification	تحصين	sufficiency	إكتفاء
fortress	حصن	suspense	تشويق
glory	مجد	talented	موهوب
graphics	فن الجرافيك	tastes	أذواق
heritage	تراث	timid	متحفظ / خجول
hero	بطل	traditions	تقاليد
heroine	بطلة	UNESCO	منظمة اليونسكو
honest	صادق	unique	فريد
imagination	خيال	values	قيم
immigrants	مهاجرين	verbal	لفظي
immortal	خالد	vision	رؤية
incidents	أحداث	warmth	دفء
inspiration	الهام	weave	نسيج
invaders	غزاة	willingness	إستعداد
justice	العدالة	wonders	عجائب

## Politics &amp; Society السياسة والمجتمع

activist	ناشط	military	حربي / عسكري
administrative capital	العاصمة الإدارية	military secrets	أسرار عسكرية
ambassador	سفير	miracles	المعجزات
armed forces	قوات مسلحة	Muslims	المسلمين
assassinate	يقتل	nation	أمة
assassination	إغتيال	national security	الأمن القومي
belonging	الانتماء	national unity	وحدة وطنية
betray home	يخون الوطن	nationalism	القومية
bomb	قنبلة / يفجر قنبلة	negotiate	يفاض
carry out	يُنفذ	negotiation	التفاوض
citizen	مواطن	obstacles	عقبات
citizenship	المواطنة	parliament	برلمان
civilian	مدني	partner	شريك
civilized	متحضر	party	حزب
commitment to	الإلتزام بـ	peace	السلام
conflict	صراع		



congested	مكتسب	peace makers	صناع السلام
conspiracy	مؤامرة	policy	سياسة
constitution	دستور	politician	سياسي (شخص)
contribute to	يساهم في	politics	علم السياسة
cooperation	التعاون	pray	يدعو / يصلي
Cops	الأنباط	president	رئيس
crossroad	مُلتقى	prevail	يسود / ينتشر
democracy	ديموقراطية	prime minister	رئيس الوزراء
democratic	ديموقراطي	principles	المبادئ
devote	يكرس	progress	التقدم
dictatorship	ديكتاتورية	protective	واقى
difficulty	صعوبة - مازق	rebel	يشرد
diplomacy	دبلوماسية	rebellion	تمرد / مترد
domination	هيمنة / سيطرة	refugee	لاجئ
efforts	جهود	regime	نظام حكم
eliminate	يقضي على	rejecting	رفض - نهد
emigration	الهجرة	require	يتطلب
equality	مساواة	resistance	مقاومة
exert	يذل	restrictions	القيود - الضوابط
extremism	تطرف	revolutions	الثورات
extremist	متطرف	rights	حقوق
fatal	قاتل / خطر	sacrifice	بضحي - تضحية
flourish	يزدهر	secret agent	عميل سري
formal request	طلب رسمي	security forces	أجهزة الأمن
freedom	حرية	service	خدمة
government bodies	المؤسسات الحكومية	shield	درع
governorate	محافظة	spy	جاسوس
heavenly religions	الديانات السماوية	spying	تخابر
housing	الإسكان	stability	استقرار
human rights	حقوق الإنسان	strictness	الحزم
human values	القيم الإنسانية	subjects	رعايا
ignorance	الجهل	tendency	توجه
illegal	غير شرعي		

illiteracy	الأمية	terrorism	الإرهاب
impose	يفرض	terrorist	إرهابي
independence	استقلال	the state	الدولة
injustice	الظلم	tolerance	التسامح
intelligence	المخابرات	transitional stage	مرحلة إنتقالية
leak secrets	سرب أسرار	treason	خيانة عظمى
legal	شرعي / قانوني	treaty	معاهدة
lethal	قاتل	truce	هدنة
liberation	تحرير	tyranny	طغيان
loyalty	انتماء	victim	ضحية
major	كبير - رئيسي	violate	يستهك
martyr	شهيد	violation	انتهاك
		weapons	أسلحة

## Various Issues قضايا متنوعة

accommodation	إقامة	intimacy	ألفة - حمودة
acquire	يكتسب	journalism	صحافة
amateur	هواة	local tourism	ساحة داخلية
amuse	يسنع / يسلي	magical	ساحر - حُلاب
ancient / long-standing	عريق	major powers	قوى عظمى
annually	سنياً	manufacturer	صانع
athlete	لاعب ألعاب قوى	mass tourism	سياحة جماعية
attractions	أماكن جذب	miss the record	يفشل في تحطيم الرقم القياسي
audience	جمهور	monuments	أثار
ban	يحظر	motivate	يحث / ينفذ
bear	يحمل	mountaineers	متسلق الجبال
broaden	يوسع	multinational	متعدد الجنسيات
champion	بطل رياضي	news agency	وكالة انباء
championship	بطولة رياضية	Olympic games	الالعاب الاولمبية
coach/ trainer	مدرب	outlet	مُنتج - مخرج
competition	منافسة	pay	راتب / أجر
competitors	منافسين	pharaohs	فراعنة
conference tourism	سياحة المؤتمرات	physical fitness	لياقة بدنية
critical	نقد / حرج	professional	محترف
criticism	نقد	prohibition	حظر - منع
criticize	ينقد		



cultural tourism  
current events  
decisive  
deprive  
deviation  
dignity  
disasters  
disputes  
dominance  
dominate  
earner  
eco-tourism  
enrich  
equality  
erosion  
fair play  
farming  
finals  
flourish  
flow of traffic  
free press  
migration  
friendship  
gallantry  
generous  
glory  
grateful  
greed  
hard currency  
homesickness  
honour  
hospitality  
humour  
hurricanes  
ideal  
ignorance  
impression  
instruct  
interpret  
interpreter

سياحة ثقافية  
الأحداث الجارية  
حازم / حاسم  
يُحرم  
الإنحراف  
كرامة  
كوارث  
النزاعات  
هيمنة / سيطرة  
يهيمن / يسيطر علي  
مصدر دخل  
سياحة صديقة للبيئة  
يُشرى  
المساواة  
التعريه  
اللعب النظيف  
الزراعة  
نهائيات  
يزدهر  
انسياب المرور  
صحافة حرة  
هجرة  
الصدقة  
الشهامة  
كريم  
المجد  
شاكِر / ممتن  
جشع / طمع  
عملة صعبة  
حنين للوطن  
شرف / يكرم  
كرم الضيافة  
فكاهة  
أعاصير  
مثالي  
الجهل  
إنطباع  
يُعلم  
يترجم فوري  
مترجم فوري

propaganda  
public relations  
public transport  
purity  
rapprochement  
rare  
recreational tourism  
reinforce  
relationship  
resort  
rights  
risk  
rumour  
satisfy  
security  
seek  
self-confidence  
self-dependence  
selfishness  
set a record  
set an example  
settlement  
sightseeing  
silver  
source  
stamina  
stream  
surroundings  
take drugs  
teamwork  
therapeutic tourism  
tourist site  
tournament  
traffic regulations  
transition  
travel agency  
unite peoples  
unselfishness  
vacations  
victory  
virtues

الدعاية  
علاقات عامة  
المواصلات العامة  
نقاء  
التقارب  
نادر  
سياحة ترفيهية  
يعزز - يدعم  
العلاقة  
منتجع  
الحقوق  
خطر  
إشاعة  
يُرضى / يُشبع  
أمن  
يسعى / يرغب في  
الثقة بالنفس  
الاعتماد علي النفس  
الأنانية  
يسجل رقما قياسيا  
يعطي قدوة  
تسوية / حل  
زيارة المعالم  
الفضة / فضي  
مصدر  
قوة الاحتمال  
التيار  
الأشياء المحيطة  
يتعاطى المخدرات  
العمل الجماعي  
سياحة علاجية  
موقع سياحي  
دورة  
قواعد المرور  
تحوّل  
وكالة سفريات  
توحد الشعوب  
الإيثار  
عطلات / اجازات  
نصر  
الفضائل